John Adams
Library.

IN THE CUSTODY OF THE
BOSTON PUBLIC LIBRARY.

SHELF No.
ADAMS
250.4
v.5

The WORLD DISPLAYED;

OR, A

Curious Collection

OF

Voyages AND Travels.

Selected and compiled from the

WRITERS of all NATIONS;

BY

Smart, Goldsmith, & Johnson.

FIRST AMERICAN EDITION.

Corrected & Enlarged.

IN EIGHT VOLUMES.

VOL V.

Philadelphia.

Publish'd by Dobelbower, Key, and Simpson. 1795.

W. Harrison sen.r sculp.t

ADAMS 250.7-5

THE

TRAVELS

OF

RICHARD POCOCKE, LLD. FRS.

THROUGH EGYPT.

Containing his embarkation at Leghorn, September 7, 1737, and his arrival at Alexandria, with a deſcription of that city, and the monuments of antiquity found there; his voyage up the Nile, with a deſcription of the places at which he touched, particularly Grand Cairo, and the ancient city of Thebes; to which is added Mr. Norden's voyage from Aſſouan, (the place where Dr. Pococke returned) to Derri, a town ſituated near the ſecond cataract of the Nile, concluding with an account of the riſe of that river, and its fiſh; the climate, vegetables, beaſts, birds, and reptiles, of Egypt; together with the cuſtoms and manners of the inhabitants.

WE embarked at Leghorn on the 7th of September 1737, and on the 29th of the ſame month arrived at Alexandria in Egypt, being only a week in our voyage, from the time when we loſt ſight of Sicily.

For many ages Egypt was governed by its own kings, till it was conquered by the Perſians under Cambyſes. At length Alexander, with the conqueſt of Perſia, obtained the poſſeſſion of this country, and made Ptolemy, his general, king of Egypt, under whoſe deſcendants it remained, till it became a Roman province. On the diviſion of the empire, Egypt be-

longed to the Eaſtern Emperors: but ſoon after the eſtabliſhment of the Mahometan religion, it was taken from them by the Saracens, and was governed by different families, till in 1270 the Mamaluke government took place, under which conſtitution a ſlave was always advanced to the throne, and no ſon could ſucceed to his father's crown: but this government was ſuppreſſed by Sultan Selim, and it ſtill remains in the Ottoman family.

On the return of Alexander from conſulting the oracle of Jupiter Ammon, he was ſo pleaſed with the ſituation of Rhacotis, that he ordered a city to be built there, which from him was called Alexandria. This new city became the capital of the kingdom, a territory was annexed to it, and it was made a diſtinct province of itſelf. The Arabian hiſtorians ſay, that when the city was taken by the Saracens, it contained 4000 palaces, as many baths, 400 ſquares, and 40,000 Jews who paid tribute.

The ports of Alexandria were formed by the iſle of Pharos, which extended acroſs the mouth of the bay, and towards the weſt end was joined to the continent by a cauſeway, and two bridges 90 paces long. On a rock encompaſſed by the ſea, at the eaſt end of the iſland, was the famous Pharos, or light-houſe, which ſeems to be the ſpot on which one of the two caſtles is built, at the entrance of the new port; and the pillars ſeen in a calm ſea, within this entrance, may be the remains of that ſuperb ſtructure. I ſaw theſe pillars when I went out in a boat in a calm day, and could perceive the bottom; but my making ſuch nice obſervations ſo near the caſtle was much taken notice of, and I was told that ſeveral ſoldiers, who were that day on guard in the caſtle, were puniſhed for ſuffering me to examine the port with ſuch exactneſs.

[*Nothing can be more beautiful than to view from hence the mixture of antique and modern monuments,

* Thoſe ſentences incloſed in crotchets are the remarks of Mr. Norden, who alſo travelled up the Nile.

A VIEW of the *CITY* of ALEXANDRIA.

which every where offer themſelves to your view. When you have paſſed the ſmalleſt caſtle, called the Little Pharrillon, you perceive a row of great towers joined to each other by the ruins of a thick wall. A ſingle obeliſk has ſufficient height to make itſelf remarked, where the wall is fallen down. If you turn yourſelf a little farther, you perceive that the towers appear again, but only in a diſtant view. New Alexandria afterwards makes a figure with its minarets; and at a diſtance beyond this column riſes the column of Pompey, a moſt majeſtic monument. You likewiſe diſcover hills that appear to conſiſt of aſhes, and ſome other towers. At length the view is terminated by a great ſquare building that ſerves as a magazine of powder.]

The old walls of the city ſeems to have been built on an eminence that extends from Cape Lochias towards the eaſt, the remains of a grand gate being to be ſeen in the road to Roſetto; and from thence the foundations of the walls may be traced to the canal. The outer walls round the old city are beautifully built of hewn ſtone, and ſeem to be ancient. They are defended by ſemi-circular towers, twenty feet in diameter, and about 130 feet aſunder: at each of them are ſteps to aſcend up to the battlements, there being a wall round on the top of the walls built on arches. The inner walls of the old city, which ſeem erected in the middle ages, are much ſtronger and higher than the others, and defended by large high towers.

The palace, with the ſuburbs belonging to it, was a fourth part of the city; within its diſtrict was the Muſeum, or Academy, and the burial-place of the Kings, where was depoſited the body of Alexander, in a coffin of gold; which being taken away, it was put into one of glaſs; in which condition it probably was when Auguſtus took a view of the corpſe of that hero; and, ſcattering flowers over it, adorned it with a golden crown.

The ſtreet which extended the whole length of the city, from the gate of Necropolis to the gate of Canopus, is ſaid to have been 100 feet wide, and had doubtleſs many magnificent buildings, as appears from the pillars of granite ſtill remaining in two or three parts. Among theſe was the Gymnaſium, or Public Schools, to which were porticoes above half a quarter of a mile in extent. Theſe may have been where there are great ruins to the weſt of that ſtreet, and ſeveral large pillars of red granite ſtill ſtanding. The Forum, or court of juſtice, was alſo probably another edifice in this magnificent ſtreet, and might be where ſome pillars remain nearer the ſea.

But the moſt extraordinary remains of Alexandria, are the ciſterns that are built under their houſes, and ſupported by two or three arches or columns, for receiving the waters of the Nile by the canal, as they do at this day. This canal of Canopus comes to the walls near Pompey's pillar, and has a paſſage under them. But the water is not only conveyed to the ciſterns from the canal where it enters the city; but alſo before from ſeveral diſtant parts of the canal, by paſſages under ground to the higher parts of the city. The deſcent to theſe ciſterns is by round walls, and the water is drawn up by windlaſſes. But the great lake Mareotis, which was formerly navigable, is now generally dry, and has only water in it after great rains.

[We are informed by hiſtory, that the caliſh or canal was made to facilitate commerce, and for the conveyance of goods from Cairo to Alexandria, without expoſing them to the dangers that attend the paſſage of the mouth of the Nile. The people alſo reaped another advantage from it; the city of Alexandria being deſtitute of freſh water, was by this means ſupplied. But the decay of commerce, and the ruin of the country, no longer permitted the inhabitants to be at the expence of keeping it in repairs. Hence at preſent it reſembles a ditch ill kept up, and has ſcarcely water

enough to ſupply the reſervoirs of New Alexandria. However, from the place where the aqueduct begins, it is lined with walls, which you may trace the whole length of the plain, quite to Alexandria. For though this aqueduct be under ground, its vent-holes at certain diſtances ſhew the way it takes to diſcharge itſelf into the reſervoirs or ciſterns, which are only found in the ancient city. When that city ſubſiſted, all the ground it occupied was made hollow for reſervoirs, the greateſt part of which are filled up, and no more than half a dozen remain. All the arches of theſe reſervoirs are made of brick, and covered with the ſame matter impenetrable by water, with which the walls and reſervoirs are covered that one ſees at Baiæ and at Rome, in the baths of ſeveral Emperors.]

The materials of the old city have been carried away to build the new, ſo that there are only a few houſes at the Roſetto and Bagnio Gates, ſome moſques, and three convents within the old walls.

A moſque towards the gate of Necropolis, is called the Moſque of a thouſand and one pillars. I here obſerved four rows of pillars to the ſouth and weſt, and one row on the other ſides. It is ſaid that this was a church dedicated to St. Mark, at which the Patriarch reſided, it being near the gate without which 'tis ſaid the Evangeliſt was martyr'd. The other great Moſque is that of St. Athanaſius, where there was doubtleſs a church of the ſame name. At the church of the Copti convent, they pretend to have the head of St. Mark. The Greeks and Latins have alſo each a convent in the old city: but there being always ſome poor Arabs encamped about within the walls, it is dangerous being abroad after ſun-ſet, when all the company begin to retire. All over the city are ſeen fragments of columns of beautiful marble, the remains of its ancient grandeur and magnificence. Among the reſt is an obeliſk 63 feet high, of one ſingle piece of granite: but two of its four faces are ſo diſfigured by time, that you can ſcarcely ſee in them the hieroglyphics with which they

were anciently covered. This is ſtill called the obeliſk of Cleopatra. Near it lies another broken.

The lofty Corinthian column, called Pompey's Pillar, is ſituated on a ſmall eminence about a quarter of a mile to the ſouth of the walls; and as Strabo makes no mention of it, it was probably erected after his time, perhaps in honour of Titus or Adrian. Near it are ſome fragments of pillars of granite marble, four feet in diameter; and it plainly appears that ſome magnificent building has been erected there, and that this noble pillar was placed in the area before it. Some Arabian hiſtorians ſay, that here was the palace of Julius Cæſar. This pillar is of granite, and, beſides the foundation, conſiſts only of three ſtones; the capital is judged to be eight or nine feet deep, and of the Corinthian order, the leaf ſeeming to be the plain laurel or bay leaf. A hole having been found on the top, it has been thought that a ſtatue was erected upon it. The ſhaft, taking in the upper torus of the baſe, is of one piece of granite marble 88 feet nine inches high, and nine feet in diameter. The pedeſtal with part of the baſe, [which are of a greyiſh ſtone reſembling flint] are 12 feet and a half high; and the foundation, which conſiſts of two tier of ſtone, is four feet nine inches; ſo that I found the whole height to be 114 feet.

To the weſt, beyond the canal of Canopus, are ſome catacombs, which conſiſt of ſeveral apartments cut in the rock on each ſide of an open gallery: on both ſides of theſe apartments are three ſtories of holes, big enough to depoſit the bodies in

[Upon deſcending the hill, you enter a plain covered with buſhes that bear nothing but capers; and advancing farther, you come to a foreſt of date-trees. Their fruitfulneſs ſhews the benefit they receive from the neighbourhood of the canal, whoſe waters are conveyed to them by ſome ſmall channels made by art between the trees.]

[The borders of the great canal are covered with different ſorts of trees, and peopled by flying camps of

Bedouins, or wandering Arabs; who there feed their flocks, by which they maintain themſelves in food; but in other reſpects live in great poverty.]

About four leagues from Alexandria, is Abouſtir, called by Europeans Bikiere. This town is ſituated on the weſt-ſide of a wide bay, a chain of rocks extending from it to a ſmall iſland about half a mile long, and a furlong in breadth. In this iſland are the remains of ſome ſubterranean paſſages, and of a piece of a ſtatue we conjectured to be a ſphynx. About two miles nearer Alexandria are the ruins of an ancient temple in the water, with broken ſtatues of ſphynxes, and pieces of columns of yellow marble. Near this building are other ruins, part of which appears to have been a grand portico, there being many pieces of columns of grey and red granite. To the ſouth of theſe are many pillars of red granite, and from the order in which they lie, ſeemed to have belonged to a round temple. Moſt of them are fluted, and three inches in diameter.

[Nearer the city are ſeen on the ſhore cavities in the rocks, uſed as agreeable retreats; where the people enjoyed the cool air, and without being ſeen but when they choſe it, ſaw every thing that paſſed in the port. Some jutting rocks furniſhed a delightful ſituation, and the natural grottos in thoſe rocks gave the opportunity of forming there, by the aſſiſtance of the chiſſel, real places of pleaſure. Entire apartments are made in this manner, and benches contrived in the rock afford ſeats where you may be ſecured from the wet or bathe in the ſea, which covers the bottom of the grotto. On the outſide they had little harbours ſheltered from all the winds. If they would enjoy the view of the port, they eaſily found a place without the grottos ſhaded from the heat of the ſun. Theſe agreeable retreats have no other ornaments from art, but being in ſome places ſmoothed by the chiſſel; and the reſt has the natural ſhape of the rock.]

[Oppoſite the point of the peninſula that forms the port, is a cavern, which is commonly termed the

temple. The only entrance is a little opening, through which you pafs lighted by flambeaux, ftooping for 20 paces, when you enter a pretty large fquare hall. The top of the ceiling is fmooth, but the bottom and fides are covered with fand, and the excrements of bats and other animals that harbour there. From hence you pafs through another alley into a round cavern, the top of which is cut in the form of an arch. It has four gates oppofite to each other, each adorned with an architrave, a cornice, and a pediment, with a crefcent on the top. One of thefe gates ferves for an entrance; the others form each a niche, that only contains a kind of cheft, faved out of the rock in hollowing it, and large enough to contain a dead body. Thus it appears that what is in the country efteemed a temple, muft have been the tomb of fome great man, or perhaps a fovereign Prince. A gallery, which continues beyond this pretended temple, feems to fhew that farther on there are other ftructures of the fame nature.]

[As to the new city of Alexandria, it may be juftly faid to be a poor orphan, who had no other inheritance but the venerable name of its father. The prodigious extent of the ancient city, is, in the new, contracted to a fmall neck of land, which divides the two ports. The moft fuperb temples are converted into plain mofques; the moft magnificent palaces, into houfes of bad ftructure; an opulent and numerous people have given way to a few foreign traders, and to a multitude of wretches, who are the flaves of thofe on whom they depend. This place, once fo famous for its commerce, is no longer any thing more than a place of embarking; it is not a phœnix, that revives from its own afhes; but a reptile, fprung frrm the duft and corruption with which the Koran hath infected the whole country.] Yet notwithftanding the meannefs of the buildings in general, in feveral houfes built round courts on porticos, they have placed a great variety of columns moftly of granite, that were once the ornaments of the ancient city.

On the 24th of October we ſet out from Alexandria, in order to proceed to Roſetto. In this journey I had the honour to accompany the Engliſh conſul. We came to a ferry, over the outlet of a lake, that is ſuppoſed to have been the lower pars of the Canopic branch of the Nile. On the other ſide is a kane, where paſſengers repoſe, and think themſelves ſafe from the attempts of the Arabs, who rarely go to that ſide. All the country is a ſandy deſart, where the ſand changes ſo often, that it would be difficult to find the way, were it not for 11 pillars erect acroſs the plain, at about the diſtance of half a mile from each other. At one of theſe pillars an arch is turned, and an earthen vaſe placed under it, which, by ſome charity, is kept full of Nile water for the benefit of travellers.

The Conſul was met by his Vice-Conſul of Roſetto, and by many of the French, about a league from that town. On our coming to ſome ſandy hills, I was ſurpriſed at ſeeing a magnificent tent, where a handſome collation was prepared. After this repaſt we all mounted fine horſes, ſent by the Governor of the city, and each was attended by a groom on foot, in which manner we continued our journey to Roſetto. The next morning the Governor ſent a preſent of ſheep and fowls to the Conſul, which was probably returned by a preſent of much greater value.

Roſetto, called by the Egyptians Raſchid, is on the weſt ſide of the branch of the Nile anciently called Bolbitinum, and is eſteemed one of the moſt pleaſant places in Egypt. It is near two miles in length, and conſiſts of two or three long ſtreets. The hills about this town ſeem as if they had been the ancient barriers of the ſea. The fine country of Delta on the other ſide of the Nile, and two beautiful iſlands a little below the town, afford a delightful proſpect. To the north the country is improved with pleaſant gardens of citrons, oranges, lemons, and almoſt all ſorts of fruit, va-

riegated with groves of palm-trees, ſmall lakes, and fields of rice.

The inhabitants have a great manufactory of ſtriped and other coarſe linens; but the chief buſineſs of the place is the carriage of goods between this town and Cairo; all European merchandizes being brought from Alexandria hither by ſea, and ſent from hence in other boats to Cairo; as thoſe brought down the Nile from Cairo, are here put into large boats to be ſent to Alexandria. For this purpoſe the Europeans have their Vice-Conſuls and Factors here to tranſact their buſineſs, and letters are regularly brought from Alexandria, to be ſent by the boats to Cairo; however, letters of greater conſequence, that require diſpatch, are ſent by foot meſſengers acroſs the deſarts.

At Roſetto I ſaw two of thoſe naked Saints, who are commonly ideots, and are treated with great veneration in Egypt; one a luſty elderly man, and the other a youth of about 18 years of age. I obſerved the people kiſs the hands of the latter, as he went along the ſtreets; and was told, that on Fridays, when the women go to the burial-places theſe naked ideots frequently ſit at the entrance of them, when they not only kiſs their hands, but ſhew them the ſame reſpect that was paid to a certain heathen idol, and expect to receive the ſame advantages from it. One of the Saints I myſelf afterwards ſaw ſitting at the door of a moſque in the high-road without the gates of Cairo, with a woman on each ſide of him; but though the caravan was going to Mecca, and a multitude of people were paſſing by, they were ſo accuſtomed to ſuch ſights, that no notice was taken of them.

About two miles north of Roſetto, on the weſt ſide of the river, is the caſtle of that town, which I went to ſee. It is a ſquare building, with round towers at the corners, built of brick caſed with ſtone; it has port-holes near the bottom: about them I obſerved ſeveral pieces of yellow marble, many of which

had hieroglyphics on them, and might be pieces of ſome broken obeliſk.

While I was at Roſetto I went to pay a viſit to the Greek Patriarch of Alexandria, who uſually reſides at Cairo, and being introduced by the Dragomen or interpreter to the conſul, I had all the honours done me that are uſual at an eaſtern viſit. A lighted pipe is brought you by a ſervant; then a ſaucer of ſweetmeats is carried about, and a little in a ſmall ſpoon given to each perſon. After the coffee is ſerved, every one is given a baſon of ſherbet, by a ſervant with a handkerchief on his arm, for them to wipe after they have drank. When it is time to go away, the hands of the gueſt are ſprinkled with roſe-water, with which he rubs his face. The incenſe is then brought, which he receives leaning his head forward, and holding out his garment on each ſide to receive the ſmoke. But this compliment is only paid where they would ſhew a particular regard; the maſter making a ſign for it, when he thinks it time to end the viſit, or the gueſt offers to go; but it is never done when the viſitor is much ſuperior, till he makes a motion to retire. Every thing is done in theſe viſits with the greateſt decency, and the moſt profound ſilence; the ſlaves or ſervants ſtanding at the bottom of the room, with their hands joined before them, watching with the utmoſt attention every motion of their maſter, who commands them by ſigns.

I embarked with the conſul for Cairo, on the 4th of November, on board a fine galley. Theſe are flat-bottomed veſſels, with three maſts; as they are nearly half covered, they have one large handſome room, and a ſmaller near the ſtern for the women, when there are any on board. They have lattice windows all round, and ſwivel guns faſtened towards the prow. They ſail well againſt the current, with a good briſk wind; but in a calm, or when the wind is contrary, and not very high, they are drawn along by the men on ſhore, with a cord faſtened to the maſt. When they are obliged to lie by, as they commonly do in the night, the people

amuſe themſelves by telling long Arabian ſtories; and if they are obliged to ſtop by day, the boatmen frequently paſs away the time in acting low farces.

Sailing on the Nile is extremely pleaſant, from the richneſs and fertility of the country on its banks. The villages with palm-trees planted round them, appear like ſo many delightful groves; and when the country is overflowed, they are all beautiful iſlands. In December, which is here the middle of ſpring, Egypt appears in its moſt lovely dreſs: many plants are then in full bloſſom, and the country is covered with green corn and clover.

Stopping at a village for want of wind, we viſited the governor of the place, who offered us coffee, and at our departure ſent after us a preſent of 50 eggs. On our arrival at Ouardin, we alſo waited on the governor, who would have entertained us, and not only ſent us a lamb and 100 eggs, but came on horſeback to the boat to return the viſit; and the uſual honours being paid him, it was intimated that he would think wine an acceptable preſent; which was accordingly ſent him after it was dark, to prevent giving umbrage to the more conſcientious Muſſelmans.

About a ſmall day's journey from this town is the deſart of St. Macarius, where are four Copti convents, much reſorted to by the Copti Chriſtians. I was informed, that about thoſe convents are a great number of wild boars. At a ſmall diſtance beyond them are the lakes of Natrou, and the Baher Bellomah, or ſea without water; where there are eagle-ſtones, and the rocks in this place have ſome reſemblance to ſhips.

The night before we finiſhed our voyage was ſpent in mirth and firing of guns, on our being met by our friends. The next morning having paſſed through the village of Hele, we were joined by a great number of people that came to meet the conſul, who, mounting a fine horſe, was preceeded by ſix Janizaries; and a man went before, ſprinkling water on the ground, to lay the duſt. In this manner he entered the city,

followed by his friends and dependents riding on aſſes; no chriſtian, except a conſul, being allowed to ride on a horſe into the city.

As I chooſe to finiſh my account of Delta, and the country about it, before I give a deſcription of Cairo, I ſhall do it in this place, though I did not make a voyage on the eaſtern branch of the Nile till I left that city, on my going out of Egypt.

Four or five miles from the mouth of this branch of the Nile is ſituated Damiata, a large town, but moſt of it ill built, it being chiefly inhabited by fiſhermen and Janizaries. At the north end it has a very fine large tower of hewn ſtone, perhaps built by the Mamalukes, after they had recovered Damiata from the chriſtians. The country from thence to Gaza is chiefly inhabited by Arabs, who are under no regular government; and the people of Damiata have ſuch an averſion to European Chriſtians, that one of them cannot go into a part of the town not uſually frequented by thoſe of his religion, without being inſulted. This particular averſion to Europeans, ſeems to be handed down to them from their forefathers, and to be occaſioned by the Holy War, the chief ſcene of which in Egypt was about Damiata, which was taken by the Chriſtians, and afterwards reſtored to the Egyptians, as part of the ranſom of Lewis IX, who had been taken priſoner. No perſon muſt appear here in the European dreſs. I myſelf was two or three times inſulted; and having the black ſaſh round my head, often worn by the Janizaries, one of them who paſſed by pulled it off, which put a ſtop to my walks into the town. They have here a ſtrict law againſt taking away the cables and anchors left by the ſhips driven out to ſea; and yet ſome of the principal perſons will frequently employ their own people to take them, and then negociate with the captain for money to have them reſtored out of the hands of thoſe they pretend they dare not diſcover. The trade here conſiſts in the exporting of rice and coffee to Turkey, and the im-

portation of ſoap from the the coaſts of Syria, and of tobaccoo from Latikea.

Proceeding from Damiata to Cairo, we paſſed by the large city of Manſoura, on the eaſt ſide of the Nile, which I conjecture to be Tanis, the Zoan of the Scriptures. The canal which runs north of this town falls into the lake Menzale. The country on each ſide of this branch of the Nile, is even more beautiful than on the banks of the other already deſcribed, it being thicker ſet with villages ſurrounded by pleaſant groves of palm trees. We ſtopped at the port of Great Mahalla, and rode on hired aſſes about four miles to the city, which is large, and ſituated between two canals: it is tolerably well built, and is the capital of the province of Garbieh. There are about 500 Copti Chriſtians there, who have a little mean church. I was recommended to a merchant here, who was, I think, a native of the parts towards Morocco: but, though he had made four pilgrimages to Mecca, was a very honeſt and worthy Muſſelman. He gave me a man who ſpoke the Lingua Franca, (a corrupt Italian uſed in the eaſt) to attend me wherever I pleaſed; and a very good apartment in a kane that belonged to him. The next morning he ſent us a very handſome collation, when I firſt taſted the butter of Egypt in its greateſt perfection, and found it very delicate. At night we were ſerved with a very plentiful ſupper; but though he came to us before we had done, he would not eat: for this is the cuſtom in the Eaſt, if they come while perſons are at table, which they ſeldom do, except they attend on thoſe of very ſuperior rank.

The next day I proceeded to the village of Baalbait, four or five miles to the north-eaſt. It is ſituated about a furlong to the eaſt of the canal Thabanea, on one of thoſe artificial eminences on which Buſiris was probably built, a city famous for its temple dedicated to Iſis; there being great remains of a temple there, the moſt coſtly in its materials of any in Egypt. From theſe ruins, which are on the low ground, the temple ſeems

to have been about 200 feet long, and 100 broad; and at about 100 feet diſtance it is ſurrounded by a mound raiſed to keep out the Nile. The outſide of this ſtructure was of grey granite, and the inſide and columns of red; the capitals being the head of Iſis. There appears to have been four rows, of 12 columns each, in the temple; but what commanded my attention ſtill more, was the exquiſite beauty of the ſculpture; for though the figures are only about four feet high, there is ſomething ſo fine, and ſo divine, in the mein of the deities and prieſts, that far exceeds any thing I ever ſaw in that way. The natives are conſtantly deſtroying theſe fine fragments of Egyptian antiquities, and I ſaw ſome of the pillars cut into mill-ſtones.

From this place we returned to the boat, and proceeding towards Cairo, paſſed by Semenud and Abouſir, two conſiderable towns. Having entered the Nile where it runs in one ſtream, we find, about a league to the eaſtward, the remains of the ancient city of Heliopolis, which is the *Or* of the Scriptures. This was a city of great antiquity, famous for the worſhip of the ſun. A large mound encompaſſes the whole; and and at the entrance on the weſt end are the ruins of a ſphynx, of a bright ſhining yellow marble. Almoſt oppoſite to the gate, but a little more to the ſouth, is an obeliſk 67 feet and a half high: and there was doubtleſs another to the north. The prieſts of Heliopolis were the moſt famous of all Egypt for the ſtudy of philoſophy and aſtronomy, and were the firſt who computed time by years of 365 days. Herodotus came here to be inſtructed in all the learning of the Egyptians; and Strabo when he came to this city, was ſhewn the apartments of Plato and Eudoxus.

A little to the ſouth of the above incloſure is the village of Matarea. The Chriſtians of the country have a tradition, that the holy family lay concealed here for ſome time when they came into Egypt; and add, that a tree opened and became hollow, to receive and ſhelter them from ſome bad people. The Coptis

even pretend to ſhew the very tree, which is hollow, and of the ſort called Pharaoh's Fig, and take away pieces of it as relics; but the Romans ſay that the tree fell down, and was carried away by the Monks of the convent belonging to Jeruſalem.

The city of Grand Cairo conſiſts at preſent of three towns or cities, a mile diſtant from each other; that is, Old Cairo, Cairo properly ſo called, and the port named Bulac. In Old Cairo are what are commonly termed Joſeph's Granaries. Theſe are only ſquare courts encompaſſed by walls about 15 feet high, built chiefly with brick, and ſtrengthened with ſemicircular buttreſſes. They are filled with corn, having only room left to enter at the door. The grain is covered over with matting, and the doors ſhut only with wooden locks; but the inſpectors of the granaries fix their ſeal upon a handful of clay, which they put on the locks, and uſe as wax. [Here is depoſited the corn that is paid as a tax to the Grand Signior.] It is brought from Upper Egypt, and diſtributed out to the ſoldiers as a part of their pay. [This granary, notwithſtanding its name, is not very antique: its walls are partly of the time of the Saracens.]

At the north end of old Cairo is a magnificent plain building, for raiſing the water of the Nile to the aqueduct. This ſtructure is ſaid to have been erected by Campion, the immediate predeceſſor of the laſt king of the Mamalukes: is is an hexagon; each ſide is between 80 and 90 feet long, and about as many in height. The water comes into a reſervoir below, and is drawn up by five oxen which turn ſo many Perſian wheels, that empty the water into the aqueduct: theſe wheels are turned at the top of the building, to which there is an aſcent on the outſide for the oxen to go up. Both this edifice and the aqueduct are built with free-ſtone; and are for conveying water to the caſtle. The aqueduct is ſupported by arches and piers of different dimenſions; the former being from ten to fifteen feet wide, and the piers about ten. I numbered 289 arches.

Theſe are low towards the caſtle hill, where the water runs into a reſervoir, whence it is raiſed up to the caſtle by ſeveral wheels one over another.

Oppoſite to this water-houſe is the canal that conveys the water to Cairo, which ſeems to be that made by Trajan. Near the mouth of it they annually perform the ceremony of opening the canal, with great rejoicings, by breaking down a mound when the Nile has ariſen to a certain height.

Old Cairo is at preſent reduced to a very ſmall compaſs, it not being above two miles round: it is the port for the boats that come from upper Egypt; and ſome of the Beys have houſes there, to which they retire at the riſing of the Nile. The Coptis have twelve churches and a convent, moſtly in one quarter of the town; and pretend that the Holy Family was in a cave in the church dedicated to St. Sergius. Theſe churches are generally adorned with columns in the front: they have two ayles, with galleries over them ſupported by pillars; and the part for the altar is ſeparated by a partition that is often finely adorned with carving, and inlaid with ivory and tortoiſe-ſhell. The Roman Catholics have an hoſpital belonging to the fathers of the Holy Land; and the Jews have a ſynagogue, ſaid to have been built about 1600 years ago, in the manner it now is, which nearly reſembles our churches. They pretend that the prophet Jeremiah was on the very ſpot where they uſually read the law, and that they have a manuſcript of the Bible written by Ezra, which is held ſo ſacred that none are permitted to touch it: it is in a niche in the wall about ten feet high, before which a a curtain is drawn, and lamps kept continually burning. There are here alſo about half a dozen moſques with their minarets, among which that named Amrah is ſaid to have been a church; but what is moſt remarkable, is its having near 400 pillars, which, with their capitals, ſeem to have been collected from ſeveral ancient buildings.

[At half a league to the ſouth of old Cairo is the great moſque of Atter-Eunaby, ſituated on a point of land projecting into the Nile. For this moſque the Mahometans have a great veneration, from the tradition that Omar their firſt Califf, going to the place where it was afterwards founded to his honour, left the print of his foot upon a piece of marble. This edifice has nothing extraordinary, except a gallery of antique columns, ſo ill ranged, that frequently the capitals, turned topſy-turvey, ſerved as pedeſtals, and the pedeſtals are employed to ſerve as capitals.]

From old Cairo I made a ſhort excurſion to the pleaſant iſle of Raoudah or Roida, which is oppoſite to it. The channel of the Nile between is dry when the water is low. This iſland is near a mile long; towards the north end is the village of Roida, and at the ſouth end is the Mikias, or houſe in which is the famous pillar for meaſuring the Nile. This is fixed in a deep baſon; the bottom of which is on a level with the bed of the river, the water paſſing through it. This pillar which is placed under a dome, and crowned with a Corinthian capital, is divided into meaſures for obſerving the riſe of the waters; and from the court that leads to the houſe, is a deſcent to the Nile by ſteps, on which the common people believe that Moſes was found, after he had been expoſed on the banks of the river.

Half a mile to the north of old Cairo is Caſſaroline, where there are gardens of citrons, oranges, lemons and caſſia; but it is moſt remarkable for a convent of Derviſes, who affecting an extraordinary ſanctity, may be ſaid to live in their moſque, which is a large ſquare room, covered with a very fine dome.

Balac is ſituated about a mile farther to the north, and is near two miles round. This being the port for all boats that come up the river from all the parts of Delta, it has a cuſtom-houſe, with many warehouſes, and kanes for travellers; but is remarkable for nothing but its fine bagnio.

The city of New Cairo, which is ſeated about a mile from the river, extends eaſtward near two miles to a mountain, and is about ſeven miles round: but it is ſaid to have been larger when it was the centre of trade from the Eaſt-Indies. It was then walled round; but only part of the wall, with the caſtle, and ſome magnificent gates, built by the Mamalukes, are now ſtanding. The canal, cut from the Nile, runs through the city; but it is only to be ſeen from the back of the houſes built on its banks; and though there are ſeveral bridges over it, yet houſes being built on each ſide of them, the view of the water is even there intercepted; but when it is dry it appears like a ſtreet, the people paſſing along it. However, from the time when it begins to dry, the ſmell of the mud and ſtagnated waters becomes very offenſive.

[One of the moſt ſingular cuſtoms obſerved at Cairo, is the ceremonies obſerved at opening this canal. When the Nile begins to ſwell, they caſt up a bank of earth acroſs the end of the ſtreet near the river; and in the month of Auguſt, when the water is ariſen to a proper height, the Baſſa, attended by his guards, proceeds on horſeback, along the canal, and coming to the end of it, ſtrikes the bank, takes horſe, and riding back, leaves ſeveral perſons to break it down. On his return from the bank, he is followed by great crowds ſinging and ſtriking each other with cudgels: the water at length flows in, accompanied by a number of men and boys ſwimming, while others throw one another into it, and ſhew a thouſand idle pranks. Fireworks are diſcharged, and all the time the canal is filling, it is covered with boats filled with young men ſinging and playing upon inſtruments, to ſhew their joy for the fertility produced by the Nile.]

If we form an idea of ſeveral ſquares about the city, from a quarter to three quarters of a mile round, that receive and retain the waters of the Nile, conveyed to them by the canal, as the river riſes, we ſhall have a pretty juſt notion of the ſeveral lakes, which, during the greateſt part of the year, are in the city: when no-

thing can be imagined more beautiful, for they are ſurrounded by the beſt houſes; and in the ſummer, when the Nile is high, are covered with the fine boats and barges of all the perſons of diſtinction, who ſpend the evenings with their ladies on the water. Concerts of muſic, I am told, are never wanting, and ſometimes fire-works are added. All the houſes round are in a manner illuminated, and the windows filled with ſpectators. This pleaſing ſcene is however much altered when the waters are gone off, and nothing appears but mud. Yet this is ſoon ſucceeded by the agreeable view of the green corn, and afterwards of harveſt, in the midſt of a great city, on the very ſpot where a few months before the boats were ſailing.

The ſtreets, like thoſe of all the Turkiſh cities, are very narrow. The wideſt extends the whole length of the place; but would only be conſidered in Europe as a lane: and the others are ſo narrow, that the inhabitants frequently ſpread a ſlight ſtuff acroſs the tops of their houſes from one ſide to the other, to defend them from the ſun. Moſt of the ſtreets, or at leaſt each end of every diſtrict, is ſhut up at night with gates, and guarded by two or three Janizaries, ſo that no idle people can lurk about them without being diſcovered. Several ſtreets conſiſt only of ſhops, without any houſes, and are locked up at night when the traders return home; and ſhops of the ſame trade are generally together.

The Turkiſh houſes in general, eſpecially in Cairo, make a diſagreeable appearance; they are commonly built round a court, where they are ſeen to the beſt advantage: nothing but uſe is conſidered in the ſide next the ſtreet; as every ornament is reſerved for the ſaloon within. Thus being built below of ſtone, and above of a ſort of cage-work, ſometimes filled up with unburnt brick, with few or no windows towards the ſtreet, they are very diſagreeble to thoſe who have obſerved the regularity and beauty of European cities. I went to ſee ſome of the beſt houſes in Cairo, and found that

the Great have a ſaloon for common uſe, and another for ſtate; and as they have four wives, each has a ſaloon with apartments that have no communication with the other parts of the houſe, except the common entrance for the ſervants, which is kept locked; and the private entrance, the key of which is kept by the maſter. A machine, that turns round like thoſe uſed in nunneries, receives any thing they want to take in or deliver out, without their ſeeing one another.

At the houſe of Oſman Bey, there is a fine ſaloon with a lobby before it; the grand room, is an oblong ſquare with an octagon marble pillar in the middle; this room is inlaid on two ſides, about eight feet high, with pannels of grey marble, each bordered with Moſaic work; but the end at which one enters, and the ſide where are the windows, are not finiſhed in this manner: the ſopha extends all round the room, furniſhed with the richeſt velvet cuſhions, and the floor is covered with fine carpets.

I alſo viſited a much more ancient edifice, ſaid to have been built by Sultan Naſir Iben Calahoun, or Calaun, the ſeventh King of Egypt of the race of the Mamalukes, who lived about the year 1279, which is alſo built round a ſmall court. The entrance to the grand apartment is by a fine old door, ſomewhat in the Gothic taſte. It has a magnificent ſaloon in the figure of a Greek croſs, with a cupola in the middle, and is wainſcotted ten feet high in a very coſtly manner: round at top, about two feet deep, are Arabic inſcriptions; then for two feet more are works of mother of pearl and fine marbles, in the figure of ſmall arches. Below this the wall is covered with pannels, ſome of the fineſt marbles, and others of mother of pearl; all the pannels are ſurrounded with a border of Moſaic work in mother of pearl and blue ſmalt, or a ſort of glaſs that is not tranſparent.

In and about the city are ſeveral magnificent moſques; but that of Sultan Haſſan, near the foot of the caſtle hill, exceeds them all in the ſolidity of the

building, and in its grandeur and magnificence, which ſtrikes the beholder in a ſurprizing manner. It is very lofty and of an oblong ſquare figure, crowned with a cornice all round, that projects a great way, and is adorned, after the Turkiſh manner, with a kind of groteſque carving. The entrance is inlaid with ſeveral kinds of marble, carved as at the top. The aſcent was by ſeveral ſteps; but theſe are broken down, and the door walled up; becauſe in public inſurrections the rebels have often taken ſhelter there.

To the north-eaſt of the town is a fine moſque called Kubbe-el-Azab; which is about 60 feet ſquare, with a beautiful dome over it, raiſed on a baſe of 16 ſides, in each of which is a window. It is wainſcotted round with all the moſt beautiful marbles, among which are ſeveral fine ſlabs of red and green porphyry; the borders round the pannels are carved and gilt; above is a ſort of frize, covered with ſentences cut in large gilt characters called the Couphe, in which they here anciently writ the Arabic language. The walls above have Arabic inſcriptions in letters of gold, and the whole cupola is painted and gilt in the fineſt manner. All over the moſque are hung glaſs lamps and oſtriches eggs. Adjoining to this edifice are ſeveral apartments built for the prieſts, and ſome grand ones for the perſons of rank who ſometimes reſide here.

The caſtle of Cairo is ſituated on a rocky hill, and is ſaid to have been built by Saladin. It is walled round, and of very difficult acceſs; but it is ſo commanded by a hill to the eaſt, as to be of no ſtrength ſince the invention of cannon. At the weſt-end are the remains of very grand apartments, ſome of them covered with domes, and adorned with pictures in Moſaic work: but this part of the building is now only uſed for weaving, embroidering, and preparing the hangings and coverings they annually ſend to Mecca. I ſaw them about this work; and though they think it a profanation for a Chriſtian ſo much as to touch thoſe rich damaſks, I ventured to approach them.

Above this is a higher ground, near a grand ſaloon called Joſeph's-Hall, from which there is a moſt delightful proſpect of the city, the pyramids, and all the adjacent country. It was probably a terrace to the ſaloon, which is now open on every ſide, except to the ſouth, and is adorned with very large and beautiful pillars of red granite, ſome of which have capitals of the Corinthian order, others are very plain; ſome are only marked out in lines like leaves, and many of them are only plain ſtones, that have but little reſemblance to capitals. In the weſt part of the caſtle is the gaol, which the common people will have to be the priſon in which Joſeph was confined. About the middle of the caſtle is a large court, on the ſouth ſide of which are the Baſſa's apartments, and the great Divan, which I had the pleaſure of ſeeing: the Beys aſſemble three times a week under the Kaia or prime miniſter of the Baſſa, and the latter, whenever he pleaſes, ſits in a room behind, that has a communication by ſome lattice windows. A ſtranger may enter with the Conſul's Dragoman, or interpreter; and being afterwards conducted to the Baſſa's coffee-room, is civilly entertained by his people with ſweat-meats and coffee. At a ſmall diſtance is the mint, where they coin their gold, and ſmall pieces of iron waſhed over with ſilver. Theſe are called Medines, and are of the value of three farthings. In the caſtle is alſo a well, that has been much admired on account of its great depth, it being cut through the ſide of the rock, and the water being brought up by ſeveral Perſian wheels turned by oxen and placed over one another. This is called Joſeph's well, not from the Patriarch Joſeph, but from a Grand Vizier of that name, who had the care of the work under Sultan Mahomet, about 700 years ago. In ſhort, this caſtle, which is about a mile in circumference, reſembles a little town: but the greateſt part of it is in a very ruinous condition.

To the ſouth of the caſtle is a ſort of ancient ſuburb called Caraffa, at the entrance of which are ſome mag-

nificent tombs covered with domes, ſaid to be the monuments of ſome Kings of Egypt: the people ſay they are the Califfs, the relations of Mahomet, who conquered this country; and ſo great a veneration have they for them, that they oblige the Chriſtians and Jews who paſs this way, to deſcend from their aſſes out of reſpect to them.

On my going up to the top of the hill which commands the caſtle, I obſerved ſeveral grottos all up the ſide in many ſtories, ſeveral of which are inacceſſible: but there is a way to others by a narrow terrace: they are generally lofty rooms eight or ten feet ſquare. On the top, towards the brow of the hill, are two rooms with holes on the top to let in the light. Over which is raiſed a place, where the Great often go to enjoy one of the fineſt proſpects in Egypt, it commanding a view of Cairo, and of all the country, eſpecially into Delta, as far as the eye can reach. Over the ſouth cliff is a moſque in which was interred the Sheik Duiſe, who has given name both to the hill and the moſque. This ſtructure is painted all over the inſide with flowers on a red ground. We had free admittance every where; the Sheik ſpread a carpet before the moſque, and ſerved a collation, of which we partook. On an eminence beyond the moſque, is a ſolid ſtone building about three feet ſquare, on which the Sheik mounts to pray on any extraordinary occaſion.

The principal part of the inhabitants ſeem to be deſcended from the Mamaluke race. There are alſo ſome Greeks, many Jews, and a few Armenians. Of the Europeans there are ſettled here only the Engliſh, French, and ſome Italians from Leghorn and Venice. When any of the Engliſh happen to die in any part of the Levant, where there is no Engliſh Chaplain, they are interred with the Greeks, and according to the ceremonies of their church.

The European merchants, conſidering how much they are confined, live agreeably enough among themſelves; they are generally ſociable with thoſe of their

own nation, and in ſo plentiful a country poſſeſs whatever is capable of making life paſs agreeably. They ſpend the morning in buſineſs, and often paſs the remainder of the day in the fields and gardens to the north of Cairo; there being little danger within a mile of the city. Sometimes the whole day is ſpent in diverſions; and as great part of their affairs is tranſacted by the Jews, they have a relaxation from buſineſs, both on the Jewiſh and Chriſtian Sabbath. When the Nile has overflowed its banks, and little buſineſs is to be done, they retire to their houſes at old Cairo and Gize, where they paſs their time as agreeably as the circumſtances of the place will admit.

The trade of Cairo conſiſts in the importation of broad-cloths, tin and lead, and the exportation of coffee, ſena, flax, and ſeveral drugs moſtly brought from Perſia. The natives alſo import raw ſilk from Aſia, which they chiefly manufacture into ſattins, and ſilks in imitation of thoſe of India, and ſome places they make a coarſe kind of linen. Sugar, of the growth of this country is alſo made here: but it is neither cheap nor fine: there is, however, a very fine ſort made for the uſe of the Grand Signior; but it is very dear, and not commonly to be met with for ſale. Furniture for horſes, and lattices for windows, of braſs, iron, and turned wood, are made here in great perfection. In the province of Delta and about Menoufieh, fine matting is made of dyed ruſhes, and from thence ſent not only all over the Turkiſh empire, but to moſt parts of Europe.

Amidſt the curioſities obſerved at Cairo, that of the hatching of chickens is none of the leaſt. This laſt is performed by heating ovens of ſo temperate a heat as to imitate the natural warmth of the hen, and putting about 8000 eggs in an oven, the chickens are produced in twenty-two days. This employment is continued four months, during which ſome hundred thouſand chickens are hatched in this manner and ſold. If it

happens to thunder, great numbers of the chickens miſcarry; beſides, the chickens thus hatched often want a claw, a rump, or are ſome other way imperfect. I have been informed, that only the people of one village are maſters of the art, and that at the proper time of the year they ſpread themſelves all over Egypt.

There are few arts in any perfection higher up the Nile, or indeed in any other parts of Egypt; this, with the convenience of water-carriage, makes Cairo a place of great trade; and, as little credit is given by the Turks, there is generally a vaſt conflux of people at this city.

* The monuments near Cairo, moſt worthy of the curioſity of a traveller, are the pyramids, which have been formerly ranked among the ſeven wonders of the world, and ſtill demand our admiration. It is remarkable that theſe ſuperb monuments are no where to be found but in Egypt. Indeed there is one at Rome, which ſerves for a tomb to C. Ceſtus; but it is no more than a mere imitation, and is ſurpaſſed in ſize by the leaſt of thoſe in Egypt. Theſe are ſituated upon the rock, at the foot of the high mountains that accompany the Nile in its courſe, and ſeparate Egypt and Lybia. They have been all raiſed as ſepulchres; but their architecture, as well on the inſide as without, is extremely different, with reſpect to diſtribution, materials, and grandeur; ſome are open, others ruined, and moſt of them are cloſed; but there are none that have not been damaged. The prodigious quantity of materials uſed in conſtructing them, renders it impoſſible that they ſhould be all built at the ſame time; and thoſe that have been the laſt erected, greatly ſurpaſs the firſt in grandeur and magnificence. They are the works of the remoteſt antiquity, and even more early than the times of the moſt ancient hiſtorians whoſe writings have been tranſmitted to us; the very epo-

* This account of the Pyramids of Memphis is chiefly taken from the obſervations of the ingenious Mr. Norden; with which we have intermixed thoſe of the learned Dr. Pococke.

cha of their beginning, was loſt at the time when the firſt Greek philoſophers travelled into Egypt. It is not improbable that the invention of pyramids was owing to the ignorance of the people, in having no other method of covering a great circumference, before the art of arching and employing columns to ſupport a roof were invented. It is indeed a mortifying conſideration, that the moſt durable works in architecture, have been owing to ignorance: thus the famous aqueducts of the ancients, the remains of which are the wonder of the preſent times, were owing to their not knowing that water in pipes would riſe up nearly the ſame height as that from which it falls.

The common people of Egypt have a tradition, that there were anciently giants in that country, who raiſed, without much difficulty, the pyramids, and the vaſt palaces, and the temples, whoſe remains are at preſent the ſubjects of our admiration. But this ridiculous opinion is confuted, by obſerving, that had this been the caſe, the entrances of the caves, from whence they have drawn ſtones for theſe purpoſes, would have been larger than they are; that the gates of the buildings which ſtill ſubſiſt, would have had more height and breadth; that the paſſages of the pyramids, at preſent ſo narrow that ſcarcely a man of our times can drag himſelf along lying on his belly, would have been by no means proper for men of ſuch a ſtature; and that the coffin in the largeſt and laſt pyramid is an inconteſtible proof of the falſity of all ſuch extravagant ideas, ſince it determines the ſize of the prince's body for whom the pyramid was built; and the paſſages ſhew, that the workmen were not of a larger ſize than the prince, ſince the entrance and the egreſs ſcarce give ſufficient room for men of the common ſtature.

The principal pyramids are at the ſouth-eaſt of Gize, a village three hours voyage up the Nile from Cairo, and ſituated on the weſtern ſhore. As it is believed that the city of Memphis was near this place, they are commonly called the pyramids of Memphis. On your

arrival there, you find four of the pyramids that deſerve the greateſt attention of the curious; for though there are ſeven or eight others in the neighbourhood, they are not to be compared with the former, eſpecially as they have been almoſt entirely ruined. The four principal are nearly upon the ſame diagonal line, and about four hundred paces diſtant from each other. Their four faces exactly correſpond to the four cardinal points, the north, the ſouth, the eaſt, and the weſt. The two moſt northerly are the greateſt, and have five hundred feet perpendicular height, and according to Mr. Greaves, who meaſured the bottom of the firſt, it is exactly 693 Engliſh feet ſquare; and therefore covers ſomething more than eleven acres; the inclined plane is equal to the baſe, and the angles and baſe form an equilateral triangle. The number of ſteps has been very differently related; but they are between 207 and 212. Theſe ſteps are from two feet and a half to four feet high, and are broad in proportion to the height. But though the two others are much leſs, they have ſome particularities, that cauſe them to be examined and admired. It appears that the rock at the foot of the mountains, not being every where level, has been ſmoothed by the chiſſel. This rocky plain is about 80 feet perpendicularly above the level of the ground, that is always overflowed by the Nile, and is a Daniſh league in circumference. Notwithſtanding its being a continual rock, it is almoſt covered with a flying ſand, brought thither by the wind from the adjacent high mountains: in this ſand is a great number of ſhells and petrified oyſters; a thing the more ſurpriſing, as this plain is never overflowed by the Nile, which beſides has not throughout its whole courſe any ſhell-fiſh. In this quarter we alſo find theſe beautiful flint-ſtones, which, on account of the ſingularity of their colours, are much more eſteemed than agate, and of which ſnuff-boxes and handles for knives are made at Cairo.

A pyramid is the moſt ſolid figure that can be given to any building. There is no way to ruin it but by

beginning at the top; for it reſts upon a baſe too firm to be attacked in that part, and whoever would undertake it would find as much difficulty as there was to raiſe it.

The moſt nothern of theſe great pyramids is the only one that is open; and as we meet with that firſt, I ſhall begin my deſcription with it. It is neceſſary to be very near it, in order to form a juſt idea of the extent of its enormous bulk. The external part is chiefly built of great ſquare ſtones cut from the rock, which extends along the Nile, where to this day we ſee the caves from whence they have been taken. The ſize of theſe ſtones is not equal: but they have all the figure of a priſm, that they may lie perfectly cloſe together. It might be imagined that each range ſhould form an even ſtep round the pyramid; but the architect has only obſerved the pyramidical figure, without troubling himſelf about the regularity of the ſteps, and it appears that this inequality of the ſtones, which differ four, five, and even ten inches, is the reaſon why ſo many travellers, who have counted the degrees of the pyramids, always differ with regard to the number. Theſe kind of ſteps were not deſigned for mounting or deſcending; and regularity was ſought no farther than was neceſſary for the general ſhape of the pyramid, and for the facility of the work. We find that their external lays are only compacted by the weight of the ſtones, without mortar, without lead, and without cramps of any metal; but in the body of the pyramid they have been obliged to uſe a mortar mixed of lime, earth and clay. This plainly appears at the entrance of the ſecond paſſage of the firſt pyramid, which has been opened by force. At its four corners it is eaſily perceived, that the lower ſtones are placed on the rock without any other foundation; but beyond them, quite to the middle of each face, the wind has formed a ſlope of ſand, which on the north ſide riſes ſo high, that it affords a commodious aſcent quite to the entrance of the pyramid, which is about 48 feet high.

On getting up to the entrance you diſcharge a piſtol to frighten away the bats, after which two Arabs, whom you are obliged to have for your attendants, enter and remove the ſand, with which the paſſage is almoſt ſtopped up. After theſe precautions, you ſtrip yourſelf to your ſhirt, on account of the exceſſive heat conſtantly felt in the pyramids: In this condition you enter the paſſage, every one of the company having a wax candle in his hand; for the torches are not lighted till you are in the chambers, for fear of cauſing too much ſmoke. Being arrived at the extremity of the gallery where the paſſage is forced, you find an opening barely a foot and a half in hight, and two feet in breadth; yet through this hole you are obliged to paſs. The traveller, inſtead of creeping, commonly lays himſelf down and each of the two Arabs, that went before, takes one of his legs, and thus drag him through over the ſand and duſt.

On having paſſed this ſtreight, which is luckily no more than two ells long, you find a large place, where you commonly take ſome refreſhments; and this gives courage for penetrating into the ſecond gallery.

It is here proper to obſerve, that all theſe paſſages, except the fourth, are nearly of the ſame ſize, that is three feet and a half ſquare, and lined on the four ſides, by great ſtones of white marble, ſo poliſhed, that this, with the acclivity of the way, would render them impaſſable, were it not for little holes cut for reſting the feet in. It coſts a great deal of trouble to advance forwards, and if you make a falſe ſtep, you will ſlide backwards to the place from whence you ſet out: however, by obſerving theſe holes, you proceed commodiouſly enough, though always ſtooping, to the end of the ſecond paſſage, where is a reſting place, on the right hand of which is an opening into a kind of well, wherein nothing is to be found but bats: and you deſcend not by means of any ſteps, but by a perpendicular pipe, as chimney-ſweepers deſcend a chimney.

At the extremity of this reſting-place begins the third gallery, leading to the inferior chamber. It runs horizontally in a ſtrait line. Before the chamber are ſome ſtones, with which the way is embarraſſed, but with ſome trouble you ſurmount that difficulty; and find that the inſide of the chamber is alſo covered with ſtone. This chamber has a ſharp raiſed vault, and is throughout coated with granite, once perfectly poliſhed, but at preſent extremely black with the ſmoke of the torches uſed in viſiting it. Whoever would examine the way through which they have drawn the ſtones into this room, muſt expoſe himſelf to the ſame ceremony as is practiſed in paſſing from the firſt gallery to the ſecond; but few are willing to take that trouble, as it is known that it does not reach far, and there is nothing to be ſeen in it but a niche.

Having viſited the lower chamber, you return to the reſting place, and aſcend upwards by faſtening your feet as before, 'till coming to the end of the fourth gallery, you meet with a little platform. You muſt afterwards begin to climb again; but ſoon finding a new opening, where you may ſtand upright, you contemplate a ſort of little-room, which is at firſt no more than a palm's breadth larger than the galleries, but enlarges itſelf afterwards on both ſides; and at length, by ſtooping for the laſt time, you paſs the remainder of the fifth gallery, that leads in a horizontal line to the upper chamber, which like the former, is coated with great ſtones of granite. On the left ſide is a coffin of granite, of the figure of a parallelopiped, without any other ornament. It is extremely well hollowed, and, on being ſtruck with a key, ſounds like a bell. Near this coffin you perceive a very deep hole, made ſince the building of this pyramid was finiſhed. It is probable that there was a cavity underneath; for it looks as if the pavement had ſunk in. In this chamber are alſo two little paſſages, which are choaked up with ſtones thrown in by the curious to know their depth.

While, in this room, people commonly discharge a pistol, which makes a noise resembling thunder. You then return in the same manner you came, and with the same difficulty, on account of the stones and sand with which the entrance is embarrassed.

As soon as you are out of the the pyramid, you dress, wrap up yourself warm, and drink a glass of some strong liquor to preserve yourself from a pleurisy, occasioned by the sudden change from an extremely hot to a temperate air. At length having gained your natural heat, you mount up to the top of the pyramid, in order to enjoy a delightful prospect of the country around it. The method of ascending is by the angle to the north-east; and when the steps are high, or one step entirely broke away, you are obliged to look for a convenient place, where the steps are entire, or a high step is mouldered away so as to make the ascent more easy. On the top you perceive, as well as at the entrance and in the chambers, the names of abundance of people who have at different times visited this pyramid, and were willing to transmit the memory of their being there to posterity. Herodotus supposes that this pyramid was built by Cheops king of Egypt.

Having well considered this first pyramid you take leave of it, and approach the second, which, on your coming nearer, appears even higher than the first; but this is owing to its standing on a more elevated foundation; for in other respects they are both of the same size. The only difference is, that the second is so well closed, that you see not the least mark which shews that it has been opened, and that its summit is coated on the four sides with granite so well joined and polished, that the boldest man would not attempt to go up it.

On the eastern side you see the ruins of a temple, the stones of which are of a prodigious size, they being six feet broad and deep, and most of them sixteen or seventeen feet long, and some of them twenty-two, the whole building being 180 feet in front, and 160 in depth.

Then deſcending inſenſibly, you arrive at the Sphynx, whoſe enormous bulk attracts your imagination; but it is ſcarce poſſible to avoid feeling ſome indignation at thoſe who have ſtrangely diſfigured its noſe. This ſphynx is cut out of a ſolid rock; and what has been thought by ſome to be joinings of the ſtones, are only veins in the rock. This extraordinary monument is ſaid to be the ſepulchre of Amaſis. It is about 27 feet high. The lower part of the neck, or beginning of the breaſt, is 33 feet wide, and it is about 113 feet from the fore part of the neck to the tail. But the ſand is riſen up in ſuch a manner, that the top of the back is only ſeen.

The third pyramid is not ſo high as the two former by 100 feet; but in other reſpects it reſembles them. It is cloſed like the ſecond, and is without any coating. On the eaſt ſide of this pyramid was alſo a temple, which is more diſtinguiſhable in its ruins than the other; the ſtones whereof it was compoſed, are likewiſe of a prodigious ſize.

The fourth pyramid is 100 feet leſs than the third. It is without coating, is cloſed, and reſembles the others; but has no temple. It has, however, one ſingularity, which is, that its ſummit is terminated by a ſingle great ſtone, that ſeems to have ſerved as a pedeſtal. It is beſides ſituated out of the line of the others, being a little more to the weſt.

Theſe four great pyramids are ſurrounded by a number that are ſmaller, and which have for the moſt part been opened; and two of them are in ſuch ruins that one cannot even diſcern the chamber.

[If you want any other ſubject to ſatisfy your curioſity, you need only approach two antique bridges, raiſed on a plain annually overflowed by the Nile, at about half a league to the eaſtward of the firſt pyramid, and the ſame diſtance from the mountains. The firſt of theſe bridges extends north and ſouth, and the other

eaſt and weſt. Being ſituated in a tract of country not more expoſed to the waters than the other plains, it is impoſſible to conceive the reaſon of their foundation; but their fabric, and the inſcriptions we find on them, ſhew that they were built by the Saracens. That which extends from the north to the ſouth has ten arches; it is 241 feet in length, and 20 feet four inches in breadth. They are built with large pieces of free-ſtone, and are raiſed 22 feet above the horizon.]

Some time after, I went to viſit the pyramids of Saccara, which are not ten miles diſtant from thoſe of Gize. On my arrival at Saccara, which is a poor mean village at the foot of a hill, having letters of recommendation, I went to the houſe of the Sheik, who, according to cuſtom, ſent his proviſions before me, and promiſed, after being at the moſque at noon, it being then Friday, to accompany me to the pyramids that were near, which he accordingly did; and that day, and the two following, I made my obſervations with the more exactneſs, as few perſons have deſcribed any thing particular here except the catacombs. Theſe pyramids extend from north to ſouth, and are ſituated at the foot of the mountains in a plain, that ſeems as if nature had contrived it for that purpoſe, it not only being of great extent, but ſo high, that it is never overflowed by the Nile; and it appears that the ancient city of Memphis extended almoſt to this place.

One of theſe pyramids riſing above the reſt is called Il-Henem-Elkebere-El-Barieh, or the Great Pyramid to the North. As there are heaps of ſtones around it that have fallen off, and I had no inſtruments to take the level, I was obliged to meaſure the pyramid at a diſtance, by beginning oppoſite to the angles; and in this manner found the north ſide to be 710 feet, and the eaſt ſide 690. The perpendicular height is 345 feet, and on the top the north ſide is 20 feet, and the eaſt ſide only 15. There are 156 ſteps, each from two to three feet high. This pyramid is built of the ſame

kind of free-ſtone as the others; but was caſed with a fine hard ſtone, which in ſeveral parts is ſtill remaining, though a great deal is fallen down. On the north ſide, about one third of the way up, is an entrance three feet five inches wide, and four feet two inches deep. The ſtones within are of the height and the breadth of the entrance, and about five feet long. We entered this paſſage, which is ſteep, and has holes cut as reſts for the feet: but it was with great difficulty we made our way for the laſt twenty-five feet, the paſſage being almoſt filled up with ſand. Having paſſed through, we entered a room twenty-two feet and a half long, and eleven feet ten inches broad. At the height of ten feet ſix inches a tier of ſtones projected on each ſide five inches inwards: and in the ſame manner twelve tiers projected one further than another, till they meet at the top. To the weſt of this room is ſuch another; and at the further end of both, in the middle of the fifth and ſixth tiers of ſtone, is a door, each of which leads to a ſmall room, as I was informed by a gentleman who contrived a ladder in order to get up to it. Theſe rooms are of a ſmooth white ſtone, but not very large, there being only ſeven ſtones in length, and three or four in width.

About a mile to the ſouth-eaſt is another great pyramid, called the Great Pyramid to the South, which is about 600 feet ſquare at the bottom. It is very remarkable, that it ſeems to incline with a greater angle from the height of 280 feet than it does below. It appears to have been caſed all the way up, and is built of very good hewn ſtone even within, as I obſerved where the outer ſurface is in ſome places broke away: for it is ruined in many parts; but not ſo as to render it poſſible for any perſon to get to the top.

On a lower ground nearer to the eaſt-edge of the mountain, and about two miles to the eaſt of the laſt great pyramid, is one built of unburnt brick, which ſeems to be made of the mud brought from the Nile; it being of a ſandy black earth, with ſome pebbles and ſhells in it; and mixed up with chopped ſtraw, in or-

der to bind the clay together, as unburnt bricks are now made in Egypt, and many other parts of the eaſt. Some of theſe bricks I found thirteen inches and a half long, ſix inches and a half broad, and four inches thick; and others fifteen inches long, ſeven broad, and four inches three quarters thick; but they were not laid ſo as to bind each other. This pyramid is much crumbled and ruined. On meaſuring it I found it to be 157 feet on the north ſide, and 210 on the weſt; it being much broke away on the eaſt and weſt ſides. It is 150 feet high, and at the top meaſured 43 feet by 35. By what I could judge from its preſent ſtate, I concluded that it was built with five degrees, each being 10 feet broad and 30 deep; but the deſcent to it is eaſy, as the bricks are crumbled away.

The other pyramids are of ſtone, and of different ſizes; they are all in a ruinous condition, and may amount in the whole, to about twenty.

Another day I went to ſee the catacombs, which are in the ſame plain in which the pyramids are ſituated; and was firſt conducted to that of the mummies. The entrance to it is by a kind of well about four feet ſquare, and twenty feet deep, cut through a ſlaty rock: but this rock is covered with ſand, that is often moved by the wind, and fills up the holes. However, ſome of theſe wells are caſed with large unburnt brick, as far as the depth of the ſand. The uſual method of letting people down with ropes being very painful, I had provided myſelf with a rope-ladder, by which I deſcended more conveniently, though not without being incommoded with the ſand falling from the top. There were, I obſerved, holes on each ſide to deſcend by; but moſt of them ſeemed worn away, and to be of no uſe. On being got to the bottom, I found myſelf in a paſſage five feet wide, and about fifty feet long, almoſt filled up with ſand: having got to the end of it, I turned down another paſſage on the left hand about ſix feet high, on one ſide of which were apartments with benches about two feet above the floor. On theſe I

ſuppoſe the mummies were placed; but if they were ſet upright, there muſt have been ſome method of ſupporting them. On the other ſide are narrow cells juſt big enough to receive a large coffin. At the end of this alley I turned on my right hand into another which was narrower, and on each ſide were niches, that ſeemed deſigned for coffins placed upright. From this paſſage are cut oblong ſquare apartments, filled with the remains of mummies; and probably here the inferior perſons of a family were depoſited, and piled upon one another, while the heads of the family were placed in the niches. Each family had perhaps originally its burial-place, and as the family increaſed, they branched out their ſepulchral grotts, that every deſcendant might have a ſeparate place for his family.

I then went to the catacomb of the birds, which has the ſame kind of entrance, only it is about thirty feet deep: the paſſage from it is about eight feet wide, and almoſt full of ſand. This catacomb is much more magnificent than the others, it being the ſepulchre of thoſe birds, and other animals, worſhipped by the ancient Egyptians; for when they happened to find them dead, they embalmed them, and wrapped them up with the ſame care as they did human bodies, depoſiting them in earthen vaſes covered over and ſtopped cloſe with mortar. In one of the irregular apartments I ſaw larger jars that might be for dogs and other animals; of which ſome have been found, but they are now very rare.

Having deſcribed theſe catacombs, we ſhall now take a view of the ancient methods obſerved by the Egyptians in embalming human bodies. According to Herodotus, there were certain perſons appointed for this buſineſs, who had three prices according to the beauty of the workmanſhip. In the moſt eſteemed method of embalming, they extracted the brains by the noſe with a crooked iron, and then poured in drugs; afterwards they opened the body, took out the bowels, waſhed the inſide with palm wine, and having rubbed

into it pounded perfumes, filled it with myrrh, caſſia, and other ſpices, and then ſewed it up. After this they waſhed the body with nitre, then let it lie ſeventy days, and having waſhed it again, wound it up in ſwathes of linen, beſmearing it over with gums, which the Egyptians uſed inſtead of glue. The relations then took home the body, and incloſing it in the wooden figure of a man, placed it in the catacombs. Another method of embalming was injecting turpentine of cedar, with a pipe, into the body, without cutting it; they then ſalted it for ſeventy days, and afterwards drew out the pipe, which brought the bowels with it by the fundament: the nitre dried up the fleſh, leaving nothing but ſkin and bones. The third way was only by cleanſing the inſide with ſalt and water, and ſalting it for ſeventy days.

From what Diodorus obſerves, one would imagine that there was a way of preſerving the bodies much ſuperior to either of the former; for, according to him, their eye-brows and eye laſhes, with the form and appearance of the whole body were ſo well preſerved, that they might be known by their features: whence many of the Egyptians kept the bodies of their anceſtors in houſes adorned at a very great expence, and had the pleaſure to ſee their fore-fathers, who had been dead many years before they were born, and to obſerve all their features as well as if they were living. But it does not appear that any bodies were ever diſcovered embalmed in this manner.

A body I brought from Egypt, when I returned to England, was in a coffin made with boards, the holes between which were filled up with linen and fine plaſter. Four folds of cloth were over the head, the upper one painted blue. Under theſe was a compoſition about half an inch think of gum and cloth, burnt by the heat of the things applied to it; and next to the ſkin was a coat of gum or bitumen of the thickneſs of a wafer. The hinder part of the head was filled with bitumen, which had been poured in at the noſe, and had pe-

netrated even into the bone of the ſkull. The body was bound round with a bandage made of linen, about three quarters of an inch broad, under which were four folds of cloth, then a ſwathe two inches broad, and under that eight different bandages of the ſame breadth, laid acroſs from the ſhoulders to the hips on the other ſide. Under this was a cruſt of linen about an inch thick, burnt almoſt to aſhes, but ſticking together by means of the gums with which it had been ſmeared. The arms were laid acroſs the breaſt, the right hand over the left, and the hands lying towards the face. From the hips to the feet were eight bandages two inches broad, one covering about half the other; and under theſe were bandages an inch thick, conſumed by time and the heat of the drugs: but the outer bandages did not ſeem to have been beſmeared with gums. The coffin in which the body was put, was formed of two pieces of wood, hollowed ſo as to receive the body, and, being put together, were faſtened with broad pegs in the top, fixed in holes in the lower part. They were cut into the ſhape of a human body, as bound up after it is embalmed; and both the coffin and body wrapped up in linen were covered with a thin plaſter, and painted.

The birds in the laſt mentioned catacomb were embalmed much in the ſame manner, being dipped in gums and aromatic drugs, and bound up with many folds of linen.

I returned from viſiting the catacombs ſooner than was expected, and, on my unlocking the door of the room the Sheik had given me at his houſe, a little girl about eight years old ran out of it againſt me; and laying hold of her ſhe cried out; but I let her go, it being here a great affront for any one to lay hands on the fair ſex. On my entering the room I ſaw a hole had been broke through the ceiling, though it was ten feet high: and I ſuppoſe the mother had let the child down by a rope, to rifle my baggage, and to convey what they thought proper up the ſame way ſhe

came down. I had caught them in the beginning, and therefore little was loſt; though doubtleſs they thought they ſhould find treaſures, as they imagine the Franks, as they call all Europeans, abound in money. I was a little vexed at this treatment, but thought it moſt prudent to take no notice of it; and the next morning took my leave, the Sheik ſending a man to conduct me to Cairo.

Being recommended to the Caſhif or governor of Faiume, who was going into that province I joined him at Old Cairo, at the houſe of Oſman Bey, where I had a room aſſigned me, and the Caſhif invited me to ſup wtth him; when, having brought ſome ſpirituous liquors as a preſent to him, I took care that he ſhould be ſupplied at ſupper, and I found him a merry, chearful companion.

In the morning we ſet out, and came to the large village of Mocanan, with fine plantations of palm-trees about it. Proceeding two miles farther to the ſouth-weſt, we reached Metrahenny, where I obſerved heaps of ruins, and a mound extending a mile north and ſouth, and then north-weſt to the pyramids near Saccara; which I conjecture might be a rampart thrown up to defend the ancient city of Memphis. We then paſſed over the Canal of the Pyramids, and ſtopping, I had my carpet laid at a diſtance; but the Caſhif invited me to him, and I partook with him of a collation of bread, raw onions, and a ſort of ſalt-pickled cheeſe. After which we purſued our journey, and at length paſſed the night in a grove of palm-trees. The Caſhif ſent for me to come to him, and I preſented him the liquor I had brought, ſitting with him for ſome time; but he being viſited by a great Skeik, I retired; and he afterwards ſent me part of his ſupper, which had been dreſſed for him at a neighbouring village.

The next day we aſcended ſome low ſandy hills to the ſouth-weſt, which abound with the Egyptian pebble. We afterwards paſſed through an uneven ſandy

deſart, and came to a vale bounded on the north by ſmall hills made up of large oyſter-ſhells, with a very little red clay between. Thoſe on the ſurface were not at all changed; but many below, and in the plain, are petrified. We at length arrived at Tamiea, at the end of the deſart, where a canal runs into the lake Mœris. The Arabs who came out to meet the Caſhif, exerciſed themſelves all the way on horſeback, by purſuing each other with the pike. When one has the advantage over another, he engages him; he then turns ſhort, and rides away, the other purſuing him till he finds an opportunity to ſtrike, and then he runs off in the ſame manner. Coming at laſt to the large village of Sennours, we went to the houſe of the Governor of the place, where a great ſupper was prepared for the Caſhif. A coarſe brown woollen cloth being ſpread over the whole length of the room, cakes of bread were laid all round it and about ten diſhes, repeated ſix or ſeven times, were placed all along the room: as a ſmall ſheep boiled whole, a roaſted lamb, pilaw, fowls roaſted, many diſhes of ſtewed meat, ſweet ſlummery, meat roaſted in ſmall pieces, and the like. At the head of the table ſat the Caſhif, with the great people by him: I might have ſat among them, but I kept my ſeat on the ſopha; and when the perſon on the Caſhif's right hand aroſe, the Caſhif called me to take his place, and ſhewed me great civility. It is cuſtomary for every one, as ſoon as he has done, to get up, waſh his hands, and take a draught of water, thus there is a continual ſucceſſion, till at laſt the poor come in and eat what is left; for the Arabs never ſet by any thing that comes to their tables. When they kill a ſheep they dreſs it all, call in their neighbours, and afterwards live on bread and their other mean fare. In the morning we had a grand collation in the ſame manner, conſiſting of the beſt ſort of bread made with butter, honey, fried eggs, green cheeſe, and other things.

We were now in the fertile province of Arſinoe, ſaid to be the fineſt ſpot in all Egypt, and the only

part which naturally produces olives. But though the people might make the moſt excellent oil, what they make has an ill taſte; which is probably owing to their letting the olives hang too long, in order to obtain the greater quantity of oil.

We now purſued our journey, and reached Faiume, after paſſing through the ruins of the ancient Arſinoe, and croſſing a bridge over a large canal that runs along the north ſide of the new town.

Faiume is the reſidence of the Caſhif, or Governor of the province; it is about two miles in compaſs, and is very ill built, chiefly of unburnt brick. Here live ſeveral rich people, who have villages belonging to them: and alſo ſixty Arabs, who have the title of Sheiks, with one at their head, who is a perſon of great intereſt; and theſe all go to the Divan of the Cadi, which is held twice a week. The inhabitants have here a manufacture of the mats they lay on the floors of their rooms: they are alſo famous for making roſe-water, which is uſed in many things they eat, as well as to throw on the gueſts before they offer the incenſe. They are likewiſe ſaid to make coarſe cloths, and cheap ſtuffs; to prepare leather, and to make the leathern bags in which they carry water on the backs of camels. The Franciſcans of the convent of Jeruſalem, who here go under the denomination of phyſicians, have a ſmall convent, and the Coptis have a church four miles off, though there are many Chriſtians in the town. There are vineyards about two leagues to the weſt, where the Chriſtians make very good white wine: they have likewiſe fine raiſins, and the Mahometans make a ſyrup of the juice of the grape by boiling it; this is brought to the table, and is very agreeable food. I had here an apartment in the Caſhif's houſe; and his people perſuaded me to ſend back my horſes, promiſing that I ſhould be well ſupplied; but I was afterwards obliged to hire very bad horſes at an extravagant price. I was daily furniſhed with proviſions in my own room, and ſometimes the Caſhif ſent for me to dine with him, when the

drams went plentifully round while we were eating, and he diverted himſelf with jeſting with two or three who ſeemed to be with him as dependants, expecting ſome little government; for when the Turks are in private they lay aſide their gravity, and are as merry as the Europeans. While I was here it hailed and rained almoſt all one morning, and likewiſe rained very hard all the following night; which the people were ſo far from conſidering as any advantage, that they told me rain cauſes ſcarcity, the overflowing of the Nile being ſufficient to water the country. There are about this town no other remains of the ancient city of Arſinoe, but great heaps of ruins.

On my leaving Faiume, I proceeded to the ſouth-weſt, and, at about three miles diſtance from that town, came to a very remarkable obeliſk of red granite, called the pillar of Bijige, from the village of Bijige near it. It meaſures four feet two inches on the north ſide, and ſix feet ſix inches on the eaſt; it is forty-three feet high, and each ſide is divided by lines into three columns, each of which is filled with hieroglyphics. This obeliſk is much decayed all round for ten feet high, and the weſt ſide is almoſt entirely defaced.

We now proceed moſtly through groves of young palm-trees; and obſerved about the country ſeveral vineyards, the vines of which are diſpoſed in a very particular manner; we then paſſed by corn-fields, and afterwards over uncultivated lands: and, having croſſed the dry bed of a canal, came to another canal called Bahr-Joſeph, which runs into the lake Mœris, and is 100 yards broad, with clifts on the eaſt-ſide, at leaſt 40 feet high, and on the weſt about 30: though it was about 50 feet broad, it was then very ſhallow: the country to the weſt is called Neſle, where the harveſt is, I believe, forwarder than in any part of Egypt; for on the 16th of February, I have ſeen barley of that year cut and threſhed.

On my entering the large village of Neſle, which is cloſe by the Nile, I went to the Sheik's houſe, which

is built about a court, and has a round turret at the north-weſt corner, with cannon for its defence. I had a letter from the Caſhif to the Sheik; but he not being at home, one of the chief Arabs agreed, for about the price of three guineas, to furniſh me with four Arabs on horſeback, and a camel to carry water and proviſions. We ſet forwards about four the next morning, and proceeding about two hours to the north-weſt, took a ſupply of freſh water. From that place the ſandy plain begins, and paſſing over it we at length ſaw at a great diſtance ſome remains of the temple of the Labyrinth; and being about a league from it, obſerved ſeveral heaps of ruins covered with ſand, and many ſtones all around, as if ſome great building had been there: this, which is called the town of Caroon, ſeemed to have been of a conſiderable breadth from eaſt to weſt, and the buildings extended on each ſide towards the north, to the lake Mœris and the temple. This without doubt is the ſpot where once ſtood the famous Labyrinth, which, Herodotus ſays, was built by the twelve Kings of Egypt, when the government was divided into twelve parts, as ſo many palaces for them to meet in, and tranſact the affairs of ſtate and religion. "Of this Labyrinth he adds, there are twelve ſaloons, "or covered courts, with gates oppoſite to each other; "ſix towards the north, and ſix towards the ſouth, in "continued lines. They are ſurrounded by the ſame "outward wall. The apartments are on two floors, "the one under ground, and the other over them: "three thouſand in all, each conſiſting of fifteen "hundred. Thoſe above ground I myſelf have ſeen "and gone through, ſo that I ſpeak from my own "knowledge; but thoſe beneath being the ſepulchres "of the kings, and of the ſacred crocodiles, the ru-"lers of the Egyptians were by no means willing to "ſhew them. The upper apartments I myſelf ſaw to "be greater than any other human works: for the out-"lets at the top, and the various windings through "the ſaloons, gave me infinite ſurpriſe, as I paſſed

" from a ſaloon into apartments, and from apartments " into bed-chambers, and into other rooms out of the " bed-chambers, and from apartments into ſaloons. " The roof of the whole is ſtone, as well as the walls. " The latter are adorned with ſculpture: each ſaloon " has a periſtyle of white ſtones admirably joined to- " gether. Quite cloſe to the line where the Labyrinth " terminates is a pyramid of 240 feet, on which large " animals are engraven: the way into the pyramid is " under ground." This is the account given of it by Herodotus. It was ſo extraordinary a building, that Dædalus came to Egypt, on purpoſe to ſee it, and built the labyrinth in Crete for king Minos, on the model of this. But little is now to be ſeen of theſe boaſted pieces of art, but heaps of ruins, broken pillars, ſhattered walls, and cornices, many of which are of a kind of brown marble.

Going over the ſpot where this magnificent ſtructure once ſtood, I came to the foundation of an oblong ſquare building, formed of a reddiſh ſtone or marble. Some ſemicircular pilaſters placed upon it, have only one hewn ſtone at the bottom, and all the remains of the edifice above are of brick plaſtered over. Whatever this building was, it ſeems to have been repaired in this rough manner. More to the eaſt are the remains of an oblong ſquare edifice of white hewn ſtone plaſtered over, with a ſort of baſe and plinth ranging round. Near this is a particular ſort of ruſtic building, that ſeems to have been a gate. At length we came to ſome remains of the grand ſtructure itſelf, which is now called Caſa Caroon, or the caſtle of Caroon. It had a portico of ruſtic work, which is almoſt entirely deſtroyed, it being no where above ſix feet high. The front is more ruined than any other part. The upper ſtory in the middle is fallen down: but in the other parts there are forty-four tiers of ſtone, each nine inches deep, and conſequently it is there thirty-three feet high; there are ſigns of a cornice ranging round, with ſome ornaments of ſculpture. In the length of this building are

four rooms, with door-places crowned with double cornices, together with ornaments of the winged globe, and over each is a work like a falſe door, alſo ornamented with double cornices, and one of them adorned with ſculptures of hawks. In a falſe door on each ſide of the entrance to an inner room, below, is a niche cut with a ſhell at the top, and there are ſeveral ſmall niches in the ſides of the walls of the other apartments. There are many ſtones ſcattered about the plain near the building, among which are ſeveral round ones that ſeem to have compoſed the ſhafts of columns.

Having taken a full view of theſe ruins, I returned to Faiume, and from thence ſet out with a caravan for Cairo. The firſt day we went to Tamiea, where we lay in the yard of a kane under my tent; there being no rooms, except a few huts inhabited by common women. We proceeded the next day to Daſhour: from which place I went the day after to Saccara, and from thence to Grand Cairo.

As I had taken the reſolution to ſail on the Nile into upper Egypt, the Conſul procured letters from the great Sheik Oſman Bey, the head and protector of the Arab race, to the Bey of Girge, the Prince of Akmim, and the great Sheik of Fourſhout. I made proviſion as for a long voyage, purchaſing a quantity of tobacco, rice, coffee, ſoap, red ſhoes, and other things for preſents, not forgetting arms and ammunition for our defence. I had the happineſs to meet with a boat belonging to the Prince of Akmim, and to be recommended to Malim Soliman, who was going in it. This was a very worthy Copti, for whom I ſhall always have the utmoſt regard. He had the principal management of the affairs of that prince, though he would never accept of any office under him. It was thought proper that I ſhould take upon me a name familiar to the people; ſo it was agreed that I ſhould be called Joſeph, with Malim, or Maſter, the uſual title given to Chriſtians in this country. I had alſo let my beard grow, and aſſumed the habit of a Copti, with the black gown of

ceremony, and had a large blue and white handkerchief looſe about my neck, hanging down before; and on other occaſions a ſheet of the ſame kind, brought round my body, and over my head. Beſides, I had the blue garment or ſhirt, which is put on over all, to go out with at any time in diſguiſe with the boatmen. In this manner I ſet out with my ſervant and dragoman, or interpreter, on the 6th of December 1737, when I embarked in a ſmall hired boat, and at night came up with the great boat at Turphaier, which is on the iſland that I ſuppoſe to be the great iſle of Heracleopolis, made by a canal croſſing from the Nile to the old bed of that river under the hills. The great boats, ſuch as this in which we embarked, have a maſt about the middle, and another towards the prow. Part of the boat is covered with matting, by means of poles ſet upright, with others tied acroſs at the top of them; under which ſhelter the people ſit, and in the night take repoſe.

The next day we went on with a gentle gale, having had a view of the pyramids of Saccara and Daſhour, to the north-weſt from Turphaier. We paſſed by many villages, and arrived at Righah, where we ſtopped, it being cuſtomary to lie by at night, there being many ſhoals in the Nile; and travellers always ſtay in the boat to defend it from being attacked by robbers, and to hinder people from coming privately on the ſide of the boat as they ſometimes do, to ſteal any thing within their reach.

On the 8th, having little wind, we went aſhore on the eaſt, at the convent of St. Anthony. There, as in moſt of the monaſteries in Egypt, the prieſts are ſeculars, and live in the convent with their wives and children. Several of them were employed in carrying ſtones to repair their convent; and taking us for officers who came to demand the poll tax, told us, on our aſking how many there were of them, that there were no more than we ſaw: but on our undeceiving them, they ſhewed us their convent, which is walled round,

to defend them from robbers. They have a tolerable church, and ſhew ſeveral things that have a relation to St. Anthony, who, they ſay, went from thence into the deſart, by the red Sea, where he was the firſt founder of the monaſtic life. As crocodiles are hardly ever ſeen ſo low as this, they are fond of ſtories that they can go no lower, and that if they come ſo far, they turn on their backs. There are no churches about the country but ſuch as are termed monaſteries, becauſe it is probable that few beſides thoſe of the monaſteries were ſuffered to remain.

We afterwards came up to Beneſuief, a town about a mile round, but very ill built of unburnt brick; though it is the capital of the province of the ſame name, and the reſidence of a Bey. The inhabitants carry on a great manufacture of a ſtriped narrow carpet ſtuff without nap, made of wool and coarſe thread, and uſed by the inferior people to cover the cuſhions of ſophas: they alſo make coats for their children of this ſtuff without ſleeves, it being wove ſo as to ſerve for that uſe without being cut. After paſſing by ſeveral other places, we reached Bibeh, a little town in which there is a convent of St. George; and ſoon after came up with the iſle of Fetne, which is a very beautiful ſpot, planted with mellons and cucumbers; theſe were planted in rows about ſix feet aſunder, with canes of Turky wheat ſtuck in obliquely over them, to defend them from the weather; and in ſome parts they are ſheltered by a ſort of ruſh, ſet along in a trench. Here we lay by at night.

On the 9th we proceeded up the river, but met with nothing remarkable till the 12th, when we came to ſome hills on the eaſt, that end at the river. The men being obliged to tow the boat along, I went aſhore, and obſerved grottos cut all over the mountains, which were doubtleſs the ſepulchres of the people on the weſt-ſide of the river. All theſe hills are rocks of petrified ſhells, moſtly the cockle.

On the 14th we had a good wind, and paſſing by Minis, the reſidence of the Caſhif of the province of that name, came up with the ruins of the city of Antinoopolis, built by Hadrian in honour of Antinous his favourite, who was drowned there; but now called Enſineh. It is ſaid that the city was three or four miles round. Among theſe ruins I ſaw ſtill ſtanding a large pillar with a Corinthian capital, on the top of which was a ſquare ſtone, that was probably to ſet ſome ſtatue upon. I had alſo a view of a very fine gate that was of the Corinthian order, and of excellent workmanſhip. Near this place is a village of Chriſtians called Ebadie, whoſe greateſt ſecurity among ſuch bad neighbours ſeems to be a notion that has prevailed, that no Mahometan can live there. Higher up is Meloni, ſituated near a mile to the weſt of the river. This town, which makes a tolerable appearance, is about a mile round, and the ſhops are well built. It is at the head of nine villages, which compoſe a ſmall principality belonging to Mecca, and ſubject to the Emir Hadge, who is commonly one of the greateſt Beys, and has the care of conducting the caravan to Mecca. This perſon appoints a Sub-governor of the country, who lives in as much ſtate as the Caſhifs. This place annually ſupplies Mecca with 390,000 adeps or ſacks of corn, which are ſent by way of Cairo, Suez, and the Red Sea, it being a very rich corn country.

About three miles from Meloni is the village of Archomounain, on the ruins of an ancient city, which I ſuppoſe to be Hermopolis. It ſeems to have been of an irregular form, extending above a mile from eaſt to weſt, and more than half a mile from north to ſouth. It is ſituated near two miles from the river, and little appears but heaps of rubbiſh all over the ſite of the old city, except a grand portico of an ancient temple, conſiſting of twelve pillars, ſix in a row, and nine feet in diameter. On every part of theſe pillars, and of the ſtones laid on them, are hieroglyphics; on the pillars alſo are ſome remains of paint, and the cieling is a-

dorned with ſtars. Among the ruins I likewiſe ſaw ſome pieces of columns of granite marble.

We ſailed on, and all the way from Souadi to Manfalouth obſerved grottos cut in the mountains, [once the abode of hermits, but occupied at preſent by a ſort of Arabs, who follow the profeſſion of pirates upon the Nile. They have a Scheik, but do not obey him any farther than they pleaſe: neither do they trouble themſelves about the Turkiſh government, which often purſues them to puniſh their robberies; but they ſhelter themſelves by retiring into the mountains. In different places of theſe rocks, the echoes are ſo diſtinct, that not a ſingle ſyllable is loſt.] I obſerved ſeveral openings into the mountains, where are great ruins of walls built with unburnt brick, from the river up the ſide of the hills. A little further is a convent cut out of the rock, the church of which is ſerved by a prieſt who comes from Manfalouth. This laſt town, which I ſuppoſe to be Lycopolis, is a mile from the river, and about a mile round. It is tolerably well built, and a Caſhif reſides there, who governs the province. It is alſo a biſhop's ſee; and there are about 200 Chriſtians in the place; but their church is at Narach, where the common people believe that the holy family ſtaid till the death of Herod. [The moſques of Manfalouth give it a beautiful appearance at a diſtance. The adjacent country is very fertile, and we find there all ſorts of fruit in abundance. Oppoſite this town, on the eaſtern border of the Nile, there is a Copti convent abſolutely inacceſſible. Thoſe that would enter it are obliged to get themſelves raiſed up in a baſket, by means of a pulley; from whence it has obtained the name of the Pulley Convent.]

On the 15th we paſſed by Sciout, about two miles from the river, which I went to on my return. It is finely ſituated on an eminance that is divided into three parts, being higheſt at each end, and is in the midſt of a very fine country. There is a large lake by the city, filled by a canal from the Nile, over which there

is a bridge of three Gothic arches. This may be reckoned one of the beſt cities in Egypt: It is well built, and adorned with gardens, which extend about two miles from the ſouth-eaſt to the north-weſt. A Caſhif reſides here, who governs the province of Sciout. There is a Copti biſhop with about 500 Chriſtians in the town, whoſe church is a league off, the hills to the eaſt being at about that diſtance, and cut into a great number of grottos. This I ſuppoſe to be Antæopolis, the capital of a province of that name, ſo called from Antæus, who was overcome by Hercules. [The above grottos are made in the mountain called Tſchebat el Kofferi, which you aſcend for two hours before you arrive at the firſt gate; and having paſſed it, you enter a great ſaloon, ſupported by hexagonal pillars cut in the rock itſelf. The rocks are adorned with paintings, which are plainly to be diſtinguiſhed even at preſent, and the gold that was employed there glitters on all ſides. We perceive ſome openings, leading to other apartments, but they are filled with rubbiſh. There is another apartment above to which you may arrive, though with great difficulty, by climbing up on the outſide. It is ſmaller than the firſt, and has no pillars, but is painted like the other. On each ſide of this ſecond ſaloon is a tomb of the ſame ſtone with the mountain, with which they form a continued body. One is open, and the other cloſed, but almoſt buried in the ſand. This ſuperior ſaloon had alſo a communication with other apartments, but they are likewiſe cloſed up.]

Near a mile to the weſt of the river we ſaw Aboutig, which is a pretty large town, and a Biſhop's ſee: this was perhaps the Hypſele of the ancients. Near the town was encamped an Arabian Sheik who commands this country. Theſe Governors often go round their territories, encamping near towns and villages, in many of which they have houſes, in order to collect their tribute, which moſtly conſiſts in cattle. In the evening we came to Gaua-Kiebre, where is a very

beautiful portico of a temple, containing 18 pillars in three rows: theſe have a very ſingular kind of capital, and the ſhafts of the pillars are enriched with hieroglyphics, executed in a more maſterly manner than any I have ſeen in Egypt. It appears to have been a very magnificient building, not only from the portico, but from the vaſt ſtones that are ſeen about it; one I found to be 21 feet long, eight broad, and four deep; and another 30 feet long and five broad. At ſome diſtance, behind the portico, is a ſtone ſhaped like the top of an obeliſk; on one ſide is a niche, as if for a ſtatue, and hieorglyphics are cut on it. On the 16th we came to the territories of the Prince of Akmim, which begin at Raigny. Near this place is the grotto of the famous ſerpent Haredy, mentioned by travellers.

[This grotto is the tomb of a pretended Turkiſh Saint, and is adorned with a cupola raiſed above the mountain. The Arabs affirm, that Sheik Haredy, having died in this place, was buried here, and that God, by a particular favour, transformed him into a ſerpent that never dies; but heals diſeaſes, and beſtows favours on all who implore his aid. It appears, however, that this miraculous ſerpent makes ſome diſtinction of perſons, and is much more propitious towards the great lords than towards the inferior people. If a Sheik is attacked with any diſorder, the ſerpent has the complaiſance to ſuffer himſelf to be carried to his houſe; but a perſon of the common rank muſt not only ſhew a deſire of his viſiting him, and make a vow to recompenſe him for his trouble, but ſend a ſpotleſs virgin on the important embaſſy: for the fair alone can have any influence on him; and if her virtue ſhould be the leaſt ſullied, he would be inexorable. On her entering into his preſence ſhe makes him a compliment, and with the moſt humble ſubmiſſion, intreats him to ſuffer himſelf to be carried to the perſon who wants his aſſiſtance. The ſerpent, who can refuſe nothing to female virtue, begins at firſt with moving its tail; the virgin redoubles her intreaties, and at length the

reptile ſprings up to her neck, places itſelf in her boſom, and there remains quiet, while it is carried in ſtate in the midſt of loud acclamations to the houſe of the perſon who diſpatched the ambaſſadreſs. No ſooner is it brought in the room, than the patient begins to find himſelf relieved. Yet this miraculous phyſician does not withdraw; for he is very willing to remain ſome hours with the patient, if during the whole time they take care to regale his prieſts, or his ſaints, who never quit him. All this goes on marvellouſly well, provided no diſbeliever or Chriſtian comes; for his preſence would diſturb the feaſt, and the ſerpent, who would perceive him, would immediately diſappear. In vain would they ſearch for him, he is no where to be found; and ſhould he even have been carried to the other ſide of the Nile, he would be able to return inviſibly to the tomb. In ſhort, the Arabs boldly aſſert, that if this ſerpent was cut in pieces, the parts would join again upon the ſpot, and that this attempt could not put an end to his life, ſince it was deſtined to be immortal.

The Chriſtians, who claim a ſuperior degree of wiſdom to the Arabs, very piouſly believe that this pretended ſaint is the devil himſelf, who, by the juſt judgment of God is permitted to miſlead this blind and ignorant people; and they are confirmed in this belief, by a tradition that it was to this place the Angel Raphael baniſhed the devil Aſmodi. But I am perſuaded, that both the Arabs and theſe Chriſtians offend againſt the rules of reaſon. Before we conſider a thing as miraculous or ſupernatural, it is neceſſary to be certain whether the fact be real; whether the circumſtances are ſuch as are pretended; and whether any fraud is uſed. I agree that the ſerpent is there; it cannot be denied; but he cannot be immortal: he unundoubtedly dies like other ſerpents, and the prieſts who draw a profit from him, ſubſtitute another of the ſame kind in his room. Were they indeed to cut the ſerpent in pieces, and were the parts ſeen to join again, it might be eſteemed an inconteſtible proof of its im-

mortality; but they could never be brought to that, and when the Emir Akmim ordered them to make this trial in his preſence, the prieſts excuſed themſeves from the experiment. The virginity of the ambaſſadreſs is ſecured by her being ſo young as to be free from ſuſpicion; and ſerpents are known to be attracted by certain odours and herbs, with which the girl may be rubbed: at leaſt ſhe is adorned with chaplets and garlands of flowers, in which they take care not to forget ſuch as are agreeable to the ſerpent. In ſhort, if it be aſked how it is poſſible that it ſhould diſappear from the ſight of ſo many people, I anſwer, that it is ſufficient to conceive that theſe prieſts are excellent jugglers, and there will be no difficulty in imagining them capable of conveying away the ſerpent in the preſence of a great number of ſpectators, without the moſt attentive and quick-ſighted being able to perceive it: whoever has ſeen the tricks daily played by the mountebanks in the great ſquare before the caſtle of Cairo, muſt have been ſtruck with feats much more remarkable than this.]

On the 17th we arrived at Akmim, which is about a mile to the eaſt of the river, ſituated on a ſmall eminence that ſeems to have been raiſed by art, and a canal from the Nile encompaſſes moſt part of the town. This I ſuppoſe to be Panopolis, anciently famous for workers in ſtone, and for the linen manufacture; at preſent the inhabitants make coarſe cottons. It is now the reſidence of the prince of Akmim, who enjoys the title of Emir or Prince. This family, two or three generations ago, came from Barbary, and took ſuch meaſures as to become governors of a large territory, by renting the land, according to cuſtom, of the Grand Signior. This reſembles the other towns of the Arabs, only the ſtreets are wider; the quoins of their houſes are of burnt brick, but all the reſt of bricks only dried in the ſun. Several pillars of red granite ſtand in a ſquare of the town, and in a moſque I ſaw many pillars of granite and other marble, probably taken from an ancient temple, ſome

of the ruins of which are ſtill to be ſeen. In the portico of another moſque is a piece of grey granite five feet long, and near two broad, on which there was a Greek inſcription that has been almoſt entirely eraſed. As I was recommended to the Franciſcan miſſionaries by their Prefect, I went to their convent, where I dined and ſupped with them in their hall, and the firſt day many of the Catholic Coptics came to ſee me, there being about two thouſand Chriſtians in and about the town, and I was told that two hundred of them are converts to the church of Rome.

While here I went with my friend Malim Soliman, to wait on the prince with a letter from Oſman Bey, and a preſent of ſeveral glaſs veſſels. He was not dreſſed like an Arab, but appeared in a Turkiſh habit, and received me with great civility. He is much beloved by his ſubjects, particularly the Chriſtians, who both now, and in the time of his father, have been on a good footing here: for the mother of the preſent prince was a Chriſtian ſlave, and never loſt her regard to thoſe of that religion; and this prince is thought to be much inclined that way. The miſſionaries at firſt came here under the character of phyſicians, and were received by this prince's father, as well as by himſelf, into their palaces. Some years ago, the former was accuſed, to the government above, of being a Chriſtian, on which 500 ſoldiers were ſent to conduct him to Cairo; but eſcaping with the miſſionaries to the mountains, and having friends at Cairo, the ſoldiers were recalled, and he returned to his capital: but about a year after died ſuddenly, greatly lamented by his people.

We ſpent a day in viſiting ſome places without the town, and proceeded three miles to the eaſt of the uninhabited convent of the martyrs, on a low hill near the foot of a mountain; from thence we went into a very narrow valley between high ſteep precipices, and in two miles came the convent called Dermadoud, which is one of the moſt diſmal retreats I ever ſaw; it only conſiſts of

grottos cut in the rock, except a ſmall brick church that has ſeveral inſcriptions in Coptic on the plaſter within. From the convent, a very narrow dangerous way, is cut out of the perpendicular rock to a ſmall building half way up the mountain, which might be ſome hermit's cell. Beyond this monaſtery is a ſteep aſcent up the valley; and for half a mile before we came to the convent the way is ſo obſtructed with great ſtones that have fallen down from the rocks, that it is impaſſable for horſes. This may have been a retreat in times of perſecution, and be afterwards frequented on account of the fine water which diſtils in drops from the rocks, and is the only water I met with in Egypt that does not certainly come from the Nile. Near it are ſeveral grottos and little cottages, probably built by the Chriſtians, who ſometimes come and ſpend a day here, and have ſervice in the church. Leaving this valley, we went to the weſt to a village called El-Gourney, over which the hills are cut into ſepulchral grottos, in ſeveral ſtories, about three-quarters of the way up; ſome of theſe are ſingle rooms; others have two or three, one within another; they have moſtly three niches in them about three feet deep, and three feet from the ground, being cut up to the ceiling, in which they doubtleſs depoſited their dead. I obſerved many bones and ſwathes lying about. Several of the rooms were painted but without figures, only one had an Ibis repreſented in the ceiling, and ſome very odd figures on the ſides, particularly a man tied to the body of a four-footed beaſt.

I alſo went to two ancient magnificent convents on the weſt ſide of the Nile. On our paſſing through Souadgy, a Copti invited us to take coffee, and a collation of dates, treacle and bread, and would not be refuſed: he therefore laying a carpet before his door, we ſat down and complied with his invitation. At our departure he generouſly preſſed us to return and take a lodging at his houſe, or to dine with him the next day. Leaving the town we ſaw a young woman ſitting by the

way-ſide unveiled, with braſs ornaments about her neck. We paſſed by ſeveral ſmall lakes made by the overflowing of the Nile, covered with a greater number of wild fowl than I had ever before ſeen, and at length came to the convent, called Der-Embabſhai, which is ſurrounded by a foſſee half a mile in compaſs. The entrances and quoins of the building are of ſtone, and moſt of the reſt of brick. The gate to the north is adorned with Corinthian pilaſters, and an entablature above, with a relief of St. George on each ſide; but the greateſt part of the church is fallen down, and they now only make uſe of the eaſt end, which is encloſed. As the monks have no place to carry a ſtranger into, they prepared a collation for us in the weſt end of the church, which they always do, when any one comes to whom they would ſhew extraordinary reſpect. We afterwards walked out for two miles, and it being a fine evening when we returned, we took the refreſhments they had prepared for us, ſeated on matts abroad at the door of the chapel. They ſtuck the wax-lights of the church into their cakes, inſtead of candleſticks, and we took our repoſe in the chapel. The next morning we viewed the great convent, which is about a mile to the north, and built of hewn ſtone. We obſerved ſeveral remains of ancient pillars, and ſtones of red granite, in and about both the convents; ſo that I conjecture the city of Crocodilipolis, mentioned by Ptolemy, was here, and the people have a tradition, that a large city extended one monaſtery to the other. There are great marks of magnificence in both the churches, and theſe convents were doubtleſs erected on the firſt eſtabliſhment of Chriſtianity in Egypt, they being built according to the architecture of the Greeks after it began to decline: and as I ſaw a ſculpture of an eagle with a croſs before it, and another eagle on a crown, they made me conjecture, that this great convent was erected by the empreſs Helena. The churches of both the convents are built after the ſame model,

with columns of the Corinthian order, but not executed in the beſt manner; ſeveral of them have a croſs inſtead of the roſe in the capital. The prieſts of the great convent entertained us with coffee, and offered to kill a ſheep, if we would ſtay and dine; but we proceeded through clouds of duſt to Akmim; for the wind being high, it raiſed the ſands to ſuch a degree, that we could ſee no farther before us, than if we had been in a thick fog, and it was ſo troubleſome to our eyes, that we ſhould rather have choſen the moſt ſtormy weather, attended with rain.

I was at Akmim at Chriſtmas, and ſat up almoſt all the night of the eve of that feſtival to ſee the Copti ceremonies in the Roman church; for though they are converts to the church of Rome, they retain their own ceremonies, and only make ſome few alterations in part of their prayers. As ſoon as the ſervice was ended, which was not before day, I had a meſſage from Malim Soliman, that I muſt paſs the whole day with him; accordingly I went to his houſe, and coffee being ſerved, we all found it neceſſary to take ſome reſt, on account of the fatigue of the preceding night. At noon a great dinner was ſerved up in an open ſummer-houſe. There were twenty-five diſhes, which moſtly conſiſted of rich ſoups, and a ſort of ragoos, to which were added, pigeons and fowls ſtuffed with rice, and roaſt lamb. I was the only perſon at the table ſerved with a plate, or that had a knife and fork: his ſons-in-law, with ſome others of his relations, waited at table; for ſo great a ſubordination is obſerved throughout all the eaſt, with regard to different degrees and ſtations, that ſons and inferior relations, never ſit before their parents, unleſs they are ſeveral times deſired to do it. Firſt, a very rich dram was ſerved, and at dinner ſome wine, of which I had made him a preſent, was given round. After we had drank coffee, we walked out of the town to ſee his garden, where we had coffee again, and then returned to his houſe. After ſupper he aſked me if I would lie there or at the convent.

Thus the day was paſſed in the manner of a Turkiſh viſit; every thing being far beyond whatever the Arabs pretend to.

I alſo went a ſecond time to ſee the prince, who ſaid he wondered he had ſeen me but once; he even deſired me to make his houſe my own, and to command what I pleaſed.

I here agreed for a boat and four men to go up with me to the cataract, and back again, paying them about the value of half a crown a day, with a certain quantity of corn and lentils by the month, and finding them in coffee. Indeed I afterwards found that they expected to have a ſhare of every thing I had: for it is the nature of the Arabs to deſire whatever they ſee. When we had agreed, the Coptis who were preſent, according to their cuſtom, ſaid a prayer. Malim Soliman, and ſome other friends, attended me to the boat, and his ſervants brought me a preſent of a large baſket of bread, ſome fine cakes, and a ſheep. At parting, the Coptis ſaid a prayer, and wiſhed me a ſafe return, that we might again pray together.

I left Akmim on the 28th of December, and in ſome time came to Menſheech, a poor ill-built town, about a mile in compaſs; but to the ſouth of it there are conſiderable ruins of a great city. It is ſurrounded by a foſſee, and all along by the river are conſiderable ruins of a quay, built with ſhort piers to receive the boats into docks, where they might be ſheltered from the weather, and in one part it is built in a ſemicircle, with flights of ſteps in different parts. Among the ruins I obſerved ſeveral pedeſtals, cornices, and pieces of granite. This ſeems to have been Ptolemais, mentioned by Strabo, as the greateſt city in the Thebaid. The prince of Akmim having written to an officer of the town to give me ſome letters for Aſſouan, I waited on him with a preſent of rice and ſoap, which are here acceptable: he entertained me very civilly at his houſe, and gave me letters to his friends at Aſſouan. I afterwards went to ſee the maſter of the veſſel in which I

came from Cairo, who had invited me to his houſe. He entertained me with coffee, and a hot ſharab, as they call it, made with ſugar and ginger; but people of ſuperior rank uſe cinnamon, and drink it like tea. We ſat round a pan of coals, and three Mahometans ſung Arabian ſongs, beating time with their hands, and playing on a tambour.

[I went to the bazar, and found it better furniſhed than thoſe I had met with elſewhere. Indeed the barques uſually ſtopping here, contribute to render this a place of trade, and commodities are brought thither every market day, becauſe the people are always ſure of ſelling them. This place is famous for a ſort of ſweetmeat, made here in great quantities, of which the Turks and Arabs are very fond. There are here great numbers of very handſome pigeon houſes. The town has a moſque, and likewiſe a very large churchyard, where one may obſerve the different monuments with which they honour the memory of the dead. This laſt diſtinction it owes to the height of its ſituation, which induces the people to bring thither the dead of all the neighbouring places, that they may not be expoſed to the annual inundation of the Nile. As I was walking in the bazar, I met with two of their pretended ſaints, whom the market had drawn thither: they were entirely naked, and ran like madmen through the ſtreets, ſhaking their heads, and crying out with all their might. A courtezan was alſo there; her face and boſom was unveiled, and her ſhift was white, whereas that of other women is blue. Her head, neck, arms, and legs, were adorned with abundance of trinkets; but all theſe embelliſhments did not characteriſe her ſo well as her impudent air, and laſcivious geſtures. One would think, that theſe ſort of women muſt, in all countries, have a common mark of diſtinction: this however had an extraordinary one, which was, that ſhe infinitely exceeded all others in uglineſs.

The Chriſtian Coptis, as alſo the proſelytes de Progaganda have in this town, and even through all the dominions of the Prince of Akmim, very great privileges: they are not afraid here to ſtrike a Muſſelman; though in other places they cannot do without running the riſque of being murdered.]

The next day we purſued our voyage, and after ſome time had high rocky hills to the eaſt, that are almoſt perpendicular, in which there are many grottos. We ſoon reached Girge, on the weſt; this is the capital of Said or Upper Egypt; it is near two miles in compaſs, and is pretty well built. The Sangiack or Governor of Upper Egypt reſides here. I went to the convent of the the Franciſcan Miſſionaries, who paſs for phyſicians, but have privately a church, and about 150 converts; but they are frequently in great danger from the inſolence of the ſoldiers, ſo that they have been two or three times forced to fly, and their houſe has been plundered. I was conducted by one of the Fathers to the Caimacam of the town, who is chief Governor in the abſence of the Bey, and being in a dropſy, had him called in to viſit him. I ſhewed this great man the letter I had from Oſman Bey to the Sangiack of Girge, and having made him a preſent of two boxes of French prunellas, he gave me a letter to Aſſouan, near the cataract. We then went to the Aga of the Janizaries, who was according to their cuſtom, ſitting under the gateway leading to his houſe. He received us with much civility, he having been one of the Father's patients, and giving me four letters, I ſent him the ſame preſent I had made the Caimacam. Afterwards we waited on a Turk, who, I was informed, had ſome ſuperior command over the Janizaries of the caſtle of Aſſouan; to him I gave a letter from the Prince of Akmim, and to the preſent I made the others, added a large baſket of rice. He did not give us a very polite reception; but wondered why the Franks viſited the cataracts, and aſked, if I had a watch to ſell; which was an intimation that he wanted one

for a preſent: however, on his ſeeing what I had brought, he ordered me a letter, which he ſaid would protect me as far as the three caſtles, that is to the end of the Grand Signior's dominions.

On the 31ſt I ſet forward in the boat from Girge, with an Aleppine of the Roman Greek church, who lived in the convent of Furſhout, and paſſed by the large iſle of Domes, ſo called from a tree of that name, with which it abounds. I now firſt ſaw large floats of earthenware; theſe are about 60 feet long, and 30 wide; they being a frame of palm boughs tied together about four feet deep, on which they place a layer of large jars with their mouths uppermoſt; on theſe they make another floor, and then put on another layer of jars, and ſo a third, which laſt are ſo diſpoſed as to trim the float, and leave room for the men to go between. On each ſide they have four long poles, with which they direct its motion down the river.

On the 3d of January, the wind not favouring us, we ſtopped at a place about three miles from Furſhout. We mounted on aſſes without bridles, and only a piece of coarſe cloth tied on the back for a ſaddle; but the Preſident of the convent having notice of our arrival, ſoon met us with horſes, on which we rode into Furſhout, which is a poor ill built ruinous town, about a mile round. Yet here reſides the Great Sheik, who is governor of all the country on the weſt, almoſt as far as Aſſouan. The adjacent country is very pleaſant, all the roads to town being planted with acacia-trees. Here the Franciſcan Miſſionaries have a convent under the name of phyſicians, and have a large ſaloon where they receive their company, which in private ſerves for a chapel. I waited on the Shiek's Secretary, with a preſent of five or ſix pounds of coffee; in return he ſent a live ſheep to the convent to entertain me with, and introduced me to the Sheik, who was in the Arab dreſs, ſitting in a corner of his room by a pan of coals: he roſe on my entrance, and on my leaving him I gave him three letters, and my ſervant brought in my

preſent, which conſiſted of two boxes of prunellas, two of other ſweatmeats, and ſome gluſs veſſels. He aſked where I intended to go? I told him to the cataract. He replied, with a good natured ſmile, that a boat of Franks lately went up; and that the people ſaid they came to diſcover the way into the country, in order to return and take it, and then deſired to know what I wanted to ſee? I told him the ruined cities. He obſerved that we had not ſuch ruins in England, and aſked whether, if they ſhould go into our country, we would permit them to ſee every thing; adding, that he would give me letters and a man to go with me; ſo that I might be aſſured I ſhould travel ſecurely. I afterwards went to ſee the Sheik's garden, which in the middle was planted with vines, and in the other parts like an orchard, with orange, lemon, acacia, palms and other trees. On the morning of the 8th of January the Secretary came to the convent, where he had his carpet laid, and ſending to his houſe for coffee and other refreſhments, we breakfaſted together, and at about ten I dined with the Fathers; the Secretary eating the dinner he had ordered for himſelf in another part of the convent, ſome of which he ſent to us, he not being accuſtomed to ſit at a table. After which we all ſet out together to go to the boat. The friendly Secretary ſent me a preſent of a large ſheep alive, with bread and ſugar-canes, and at about two in the afternoon, we ſet ſail.

On the 9th, about midnight, we arrived at Dendera, which is ſurrounded with woods, and ſituated about half a mile from the river; and did not chuſe to go much about, on account of its being the firſt day of the great Turkiſh feaſt Bairam, after the concluſion of their month of faſting. Some of our men went to the moſque in a gown of white cotton ſewed up before, a habit of ceremony worn in thoſe parts; and poſſibly the uſe of the ſurplice might take its riſe from this, as a veſt of ceremony worn when they went any where in high dreſs. Having letters to two Mahometans here

I carried them ſome ſmall preſents, and they recommended me to the Governor, who ſent his brother with me to Amara, which lies about a league to the ſouth, where are the ruins of the ancient Tentyra. The inhabitants were great worſhippers of Venus and Iſis, to each of whom they built a temple. From the many heaps of ruins that are ſeen here, the city appears to have been large, and to have been much frequented ſince the time of its ancient ſplendor. People ſeem to have lived in the temples, and to have built their houſes of unburnt brick near them: in particular, there are ſeveral on the top of the great temple, which is 200 feet long, and 45 broad. The chief remains of the ancient buildings are very near each other. Theſe are two gates and four temples, that ſeem to have a relation to each other. The grand temple already mentioned, appears entire; only ſome apartments, which ſeem to have been at the top, are deſtroyed, and ſix or ſeven of the rooms below are filled up. There are ten flights of ſteps to the top, and the pillars are adorned with large capitals of the head of Iſis, and over them compartments in baſſo relievo of excellent ſculpture, finely executed, in the beſt taſte and workmanſhip of any I have ſeen in Egypt; each capital conſiſting of four ſuch faces, one on each ſide, with the compartments of relief over them: and I conclude that they muſt have been executed by one of the beſt Greek ſculptors. At the end of the grand room are four ſtories of hieroglyphics in ſeven compartments, each having two or three human figures, ſome of which are defaced. There are alſo four ſtories of hieroglyphics on the outſide; and probably, before the ground was raiſed, there were five both within and without. On the outſide of the ſouth end are cut five coloſſal figures together, and two more beautiful than the reſt, at each corner. Round the top of the edifice are ſeveral ſpouts, with an arnament over them of the head and ſhoulders of the ſphynx. This was, doubtleſs, the temple of Iſis.

Having with the greateſt ſatisfaction viewed theſe fine remains of antiquity, I returned to the town. At parting my friends ſent me a preſent of a lamb; and the Governor's brother came to the boat for his preſent, which was a baſket of rice, ſome coffee and ſoap.

We now purſued our voyage with a fair wind, and paſſed by the canal that goes to the city of Coptos, which is at preſent remarkable for making the beſt earthen ware in Egypt, it being very light, and much eſteemed: but they could never be prevailed on to make the vaſes with broad bottoms, that they might ſtand without danger of falling; ſo that the people are obliged to ſet them in wooden frames.

A little higher up on the weſt, we paſſed by Etouerat, where are made thoſe large jars that are carried down the ſtreams on floats, on which we ſaw people placing them for the voyage.

A little farther we came up with Kept, a village at ſome diſtance from the river. This was the ancient Coptos, which is inhabited both by the Egyptians and Arabians; for the Nile below the city running to the weſt, this was the firſt convenient place for carrying on the trade to the Red Sea, the river being nearer to it here than at any other place below: and this, with the difficult navigation of the Red Sea to the north, cauſed the trade for the merchandiſes of India and Arabia to to take this channel. In the early ages of Chriſtianity this city became famous for the great reſort of chriſtians to it in times of perſecution; and this is the firſt riſe of the name of Coptis, which it is ſaid the Mahometans gave in deriſion to the Chriſtians of Egypt.

At length, coming to the port of Cous, we rode two miles through a flat country full of dome-tres to that miſerable town built of unburnt brick. It was the ancient Apollinopolis, and is ſituated on an artificial eminence; but there are no remains except of one ſmall temple, on which is a Greek inſcription in ho-

nour of Apollo, and the other Deities worſhipped in it. While I was viewing this temple; one of the great Sheik's officers, in a Turkiſh dreſs, came and aſked me with much civility to drink coffee; but it being late I declined the invitation. I afterwards went to the great Sheik's Secretary, to be introduced by him to his maſter, and made him a ſmall preſent. We ſat down on a mat in the open court, where our horſes were tied; and I was treated with very indifferent fare, conſiſting of an ill taſted ſeed, mixed with oil, onions, bread and water; our entertainment concluded with coffee. After which he went with me to the Sheik, whom we found laid down to take his repoſe on a ſopha, in a ſmall room, dreſſed in a kind of blue ſhirt over ſome other garments, with one of his officers ſitting by him. I went up to the ſopha, and delivered my letters from the Prince of Akmim, and an officer of the Janizaries at Girge, and then my preſent, as uſual, was laid before him, which conſiſted of a bag of rice, leaf tobacco, Joppa ſoap, and a pair of red ſhoes. Then letting him know that I deſired a letter to ſee the antiquities of Carnack and Luxerein, he ordered it to be wrote, and deſired me to go and drink coffee with the Secretary. But I went on board, leaving my interpreter to bring the letters; on which the Secretary ſent me a preſent of a ſheep. The Sheik let me know, by my interpreter, that he adviſed me to ſee Carnack and Luxerein now, and not as I propoſed, at my return; for as he was going to encamp there, I ſhould ſee every thing with the greater ſafety.

I very readily complied with this advice, and on the 12th proceeded with a man the Sheik had ſent to conduct me; and ſtopping oppoſite to Zenieh, where the Sheik of Carnack has his reſidence, I the next day went to that Sheik with a letter I had from his ſuperior, and the Sheik of Fourſhout, and, making him a preſent, he treated me very civilly, and ſent me a ſheep in return. I now went to Carnack, which is part of the ancient Thebes, where there are ruins of a moſt

magnificent temple: but on my beginning to meaſure the firſt gate I came to, the man the Sheik of Fourſhout had ſent with me, who had no authority here, told me I muſt not venture to do ſo, without the permiſſion of the great Sheik, who had encamped near the river; on which, ordering him to conduct me to him, he brought me to the village of Carnack, where I found the Sheik I had been with in the morning, who freely gave me leave to meaſure and write down what I pleaſed, on which I returned to the temple; the Sheik himſelf ſtaid with me there two or three hours, and the people of the village ſeeing me meaſuring came about me. I dined in the temple; and having ordered my boat to lie near the Sheik's camp, I in the evening waited on him in his tent, on which he invited me to ſup with his ſecretary; but I excuſed myſelf, and returned to my boat, accompanied by the ſecretary, who, coming on board, partook of ſome refreſhments. Theſe encampments are in the regular manner of an army: in the middle was the large green tent of the Sheik's, who ſat in a corner of it, accompanied by three or four of his officers. In this manner they encamp about their territories to get their tributes, which are paid in kind. I continued here, and had the liberty of viewing the temple as often as I pleaſed; the men conſtantly dreſſing my dinner in the boat, and bringing it to the temple. The cavalcade belonging to the Sheik one day paſſing by, a great number of perſons rode into the temple, and talked to me; I was alſo once viſited there by the Sheik's ſon of the place, who conducted me to a part of the temple inhabited by women; and, giving them notice to keep out of the way, I went in and viewed it. One day likewiſe, the Caia, or firſt officer of the Sheik, came and dined with me, and I made him a preſent; which he returned, by ſending me a lamb.

[The great and famous city of Thebes was on both ſides of the river; according to ſome, it was built by Oſiris, and according to others, by Buſiris the Second,]

who appointed its circuit; adorned it with magnificent buildings, and rendered it not only the moſt opulent city of Egypt, but of the whole world. It was called Dioſpolis, or the city of Jupiter, and afterwards it obtained the name of Thebes. Its opulence and power were every where known, and Homer thus ſpeaks of it:

> Not all proud Thebes' unrival'd walls contain,
> The world's great empreſs on th' Egyptian plain,
> That ſpreads her conqueſts o'er a thouſand ſtates,
> And pours her heroes through a hundred gates,
> Two hundred horſemen, and two hundred cars,
> From each wide portal iſſuing to the wars.
>
> POPE.

Diodorus ſays, "We have heard that not only this king, but many of his ſucceſſors were ambitious to improve the city with preſents of gold and ſilver, with ivory, and a multitude of coloſſal ſtatues, and that there was no city under the ſun, ſo adorned with obeliſks of one entire ſtone. Of four temples that were of an amazing ſize and beauty, there was one the moſt ancient of all, whoſe circumference was thirteen ſtadia, its height forty-five cubits, and the thickneſs of its walls twenty-four feet. The buildings, indeed, have remained to modern times; but the gold and ſilver, and all the coſtly ivory and precious ſtones, were pillaged by the Perſians, when Cambyſes ſet fire to the temples of Egypt. 'Tis ſaid, that the Perſians having transferred this opulence to Aſia, and, having carried artiſts with them from Egypt, built thoſe magnificent palaces, Perſepolis, Suſa, and others in Media. So great, they ſay, were the riches of Egypt at that time, that from the rubbiſh, after plundering and burning, was taken more than 300 talents of gold, and of ſilver 2300 talents."

The hundred gates above mentioned, are commonly thought to have been the gates of the city; but there are no ſigns of walls round it, nor were walled towns common in Egypt: however, as it is obſerved, that

two hundred armed chariots could be ſent out of them, others rather ſuppoſe them to belong to the palaces of the princes and great men, who could on an emergency ſend chariots to the war. Of the four remarkable temples, that which I now viewed was doubtleſs that mentioned by Diodorus Siculus, as of a moſt extraordinary ſize; the ruins of this ſtupendous building extending near half a mile in length; the deſcription he here gives of the height and thickneſs of the wall has been thought to be very extravagant, and beyond all the rules of probability, yet it will appear to any one who examines the remains of this temple, that in both theſe reſpects they in ſome parts exceed the account given by Diodorus.

To this temple there are no leſs than eight grand entrances, to three of which were avenues of a great length between ſphynxes, placed on each ſide, two of them have ſixty of theſe ſtatues on each hand. After this, at one of the entrances, you come to four grand gates, at a conſiderable diſtance behind each other, in a direct line to the temple; they are about 35 feet deep, in length 150, and, before the ground was raiſed, muſt have been from 50 to 60 feet high. Theſe ſtructures leſſen every way from the bottom to the top, like a pyramid. The firſt of them is of red granite finely poliſhed, and beautifully adorned with hieroglyphics, in four ſeries without, from the top downwards, and three on the inſide, in each of which are the figures of two men bigger than the life, of exquiſite workmanſhip: farther on each ſide are coloſſal figures about fifteen feet high, with hieroglyphics under them; and in this latter manner the other gates are adorned, but without the compartments. On each ſide of theſe gates there alſo ſeem to have been coloſſal ſtatues. On the outſide of the firſt is a ſtatue of red granite on one ſide, and on the other a ſtatue of a kind of granite that ſeems compoſed of ſmall pebbles; one alſo remains within of white marble, without the head. On meaſuring the head of one of them, I found it five feet ſix inches long. The

next gate is very much ruined, and has only two ſtories of coloſſal figures to the ſouth, and one to the north. The third gate has hieroglyphics all round, and coloſſal figures of men; and here are remains of a ſtatue of white marble, the head of which has a ſerpent on its caſque; this head meaſured four feet and a half from the top to the lower part of the neck. The fourth gate is now a heap of ruins, before which are ſome pieces of a ſtatue of red granite, the trunk of which I found to be ſeven feet and a half broad. To the eaſt of this gate, before the main building, is a large pond, that was probably a reſervoir of the Nile water, for the uſe of the temple. The Greeks gave to theſe gateways the name of ante-gates, or veſtibules. From them walls were built, that not only extended to the other gates, to make the entire encloſure of the temple, but to encloſe particular courts between the gates and that ſtructure.

There is another ſuperb entrance, about 150 paces to the weſt, with the ſame kind of avenue of ſphynxes leading to a gateway, and all the reſt have the appearance of extraordinary magnificence. The grand entrance to the weſt, which may be called either a gate or a front to the great court before the temple, is extremely noble, and yet has the greateſt plainneſs and ſimplicity, without any hieroglyphics or other ornaments, and very nearly reſembles what we term the ruſtic; it is forty feet broad, the bottom being a ſolid wall of that thickneſs. In the front are two ſtories of ſmall windows; but the upper ſtory is ruined in many parts, that at a diſtance it reſembles battlements.

Within this gate is a large open court, with a terrace eighty feet broad, and ſix feet above the ground, as it is now raiſed, to which I ſuppoſe there were ſteps up from the colonade that is on each ſide of this ante-temple. Theſe pillars have ſquare capitals; and on each ſide of the middle walk to the inner part of the temple, there was a very grand colonade of pillars, above forty feet high, and eight feet in diameter, with

large capitals like vaſes worked with figures in lines; at the farther end of theſe pillars are two coloſſal ſtatues of red granite, much mutilated and the heads broken off.

The wall of the inner temple, though much ruined, has more grandeur and magnificence than to be found in any other building I ever ſaw: the door is very high, and yet in a juſt proportion, and the walls on each ſide are adorned with beautiful hieroglyphics and figures of men in ſix compartments, above nine feet high and twelve wide, every compartment having the figures of three men. On entering the inner temple you find ſixteen rows of columns one way, and eighteen another. The two middle rows are eleven feet in diameter, the others eight, with only capitals of ſquare ſtone. Above the middle rows the temple was higher than in the other parts, having a ſort of windows over the ſpace between every two pillars, with twelve lattices of ſtone in each. Every part of this temple, both on the inſide and without, is covered with hieroglyphics, and other repreſentations. Within, however, are the ſculptures of no human figure; but on the outſide, particularly on that to the north, are carved the repreſentations of battles with horſes and chariots, one of which I obſerved to be drawn by ſtags.

But to proceed with the inner part. On each ſide of the entrance in the eaſt end of the temple, is an obeliſk thirty-ſix feet four inches high, and ſix feet ſquare. Farther to the eaſt are two other obeliſks, ſeven feet ſix inches ſquare, and ſeventy-three feet high; but one of theſe laſt is fallen down. All theſe obeliſks are of red granite, and are covered with hieroglyphics. At a ſmall diſtance from theſe obeliſks are two walls ſeparated by an entrance in the middle, and on the weſt ſide of theſe walls are coloſſal buſts. Continuing along the middle, to the eaſt, we come to a ſmall room of red granite, and all along are apartments that perhaps ſerved for the prieſts.

I having fully examined theſe noble antiquities, the Sheik's ſon offered to go with me four miles to the eaſt of the Carnack; I gladly accepted his propoſal, and he came early in the morning to the boat with horſes. Upon this I laid a carpet on the bank of the river, and having entertained him with coffee, we ſet forwards towards the temple, accompanied alſo by the Caia or ſteward of the Great Sheik. In this excurſion we ſaw that the ground where it is ſown, is laid in broad hillocks, round which there are ſmall irregular channels, the corn not being ſown on the top, but only near the channels, in order that it may be the more eaſily watered, by a ſmall canal from the Nile, which conveys the water to all parts. About 200 feet to the north of the temple we ſaw a grand gate, adorned with four compartments of hieroglyphics. The walls in the front of the temple, between the pillars, are now only about ſeven feet high, and are likewiſe covered with hieroglyphics. There is a pillar on each ſide of the door, adorned with ribs riſing from the bottom, and branching into leaves at the top to form the capital; and beſides, the ſhaft is incircled in two places by ſeveral bandages. The other pillars are of a different kind, and have a more heavy appearance. All this temple is very much deſtroyed except the front, and even that is not perfect. The grand gate is however entire, and I ſaw near it a ſphynx about four feet long. The ancient city of Thebes, probably, extended to this place. Returning, I viewed the ruins of what I ſuppoſe to be a round temple. It appeared to have been 175 feet in diameter, and to the weſt of it were ſome remains of a grand gate-way.

On my return, I entertained my conductors with coffee at the boat, and the Sheik's ſon having ſhewn me great civility, I made him ſuch a preſent as I thought would be agreeable to him. Two days after I went to ſee that part of Thebes which was to the weſt of the river, and is now called Gournou. On my going on that, I ſent to the Sheik, to whom I had a letter

from the Great Sheik of Fourſhout, on which he came to the boat, and conducted me to his houſe at the village of Gournou. The Sheik there furniſhed me with horſes, and we ſet out to go to Biban-el-Meluke. When we had proceeded a mile to the north, we came to a kind of ſtreet; for the rocky ground on each ſide riſing about ten feet high, had on each hand a row of rooms cut in it, ſome of them ſupported with pillars; and as there is not here the leaſt ſign of raiſed buildings, I could not help imagining that, in the earlieſt times, theſe caverns might ſerve as houſes, and be the firſt invention after that of tents, when they might be contrived as a better ſhelter from the weather, and the coldneſs of the nights.

At length having paſſed through ſome other valleys where the mountains ariſe to a great height, we came to a round opening like an amphitheatre, and aſcending it by a narrow ſteep paſſage, came to Biban-el-Meluke; that is, The gate or court of the kings, here being the ſepulchres of the kings of Thebes. The vale where theſe grottos are, is covered with rough ſtones, that ſeem to have rolled from above, it may be about 100 feet wide, and the hills on each ſide are high ſteep rocks, in which the grottos are cut in a moſt beautiful manner, in long paſſages or galleries under the mountains, out of a cloſe white free-ſtone, that cuts like chalk, and is as ſmooth as the fineſt ſtucco work. Four or five of theſe galleries, one within another, from 30 to 50 feet long, and from 10 to 15 feet high, generally lead to a ſpacious room, in which is the king's tomb, with his figure cut in relief on the lid, or painted at full length upon it. Both the ſides and ceiling of the rooms are cut with hieroglyphics of birds and beaſts, ſome of them painted, and as freſh as if they were but juſt finiſhed, though they muſt be above 2000 years old.

One of theſe ſepulchres, in particular, is moſt beautifully adorned with hieroglyphics cut in the ſtone, and painted. The entrance, which is a deſcent, is cut through

the rock, and is open at the top for thirteen feet; then, for eight feet more, the ceiling is an inclined plane, anſwering to the deſcent under it. The galleries within have hieroglyphics cut on each ſide, firſt in a ſort of compartments next to the ceiling, in the manner of a frize; lower down, figures are cut repreſenting mummies; below theſe are hieroglyphics all down the ſides, divided by lines into different columns. In the middle of the ceiling are figures of men, for about three feet in breadth, with ſtars on each ſide. The king's tomb is of one ſtone of red granite, ſeven feet nine inches high, eleven feet eight inches long, and above ſix feet broad, the cover being made to ſhut into it. Upon it is cut the figure of the king in mezzo-relievo, with an hieroglyphical inſcription. The room is adorned with different columns of hieroglyphics, with the figures of men, bulls, and hawks.

In the great room belonging to another of the grottos, is the ſtatue of a man with a ſceptre in his hand; and on the ceiling is painted a large figure of a man, holding a particular ſort of ſcepter, with wings hanging down lower than his feet, and covering his whole body. On each ſide of the entrance are four men cut in the ſtone above the natural ſize, with the heads of hawks and other animals.

Having, with the utmoſt pleaſure, viewed theſe extraordinary ſepulchres of the Kings of Thebes, by the help of the wax-lights we brought with us, being much fatigued we agreed to ſit down and take ſome refreſhments in this retired place, but unfortunately we had forgot to bring water, and the Sheik being in haſte to go, we returned, and at our arrival at the boat, the Sheik was ſo obliging as to ſtay and eat with me, which they rarely do.

The next day I viſited two very extenſive apartments cut in the rock on the ſouth ſide of thoſe hills we went to the day before. To one of them is a deſcent of ten ſteps to a ſpacious area cut in the rock, which leads to a room ſupported by ſquare pillars alſo cut out of the

rock, and beyond it is a long room with pillars on each ſide; all the apartments are adorned with hieroglyphics; but the ſtone is in ſome places black and ſcaled, as if damaged by fire. Beyond theſe rooms the apartments extend down ſeveral ſteps to the right; and one part leads to a gallery cut round the rock, which has ſome apartments on the ſide, where there are holes cut perpendicularly down to other apartments below. I there ſaw doors and openings, and there are probably as many apartments beneath as there are above. One would be apt to imagine that theſe were habitations for the living, and that they were cut under the palaces of the Kings of Thebes, if they were not themſelves places for them to retire to in order to avoid the heat.

The other grotto is cut under a ſmall hill, near the appearance of a grand entrance under the mountains. The way to that entrance is by a valley which ſeems to have been divided by walls or mounds into four parts. One dug much deeper than the reſt, ſeems to have been a reſervoir of the water of the Nile; and the others extend towards ſome remains of buildings. To the weſt is a room over which is a well turned arch. This room ſeems to have been uſed as a Chriſtian church, and the hieroglyphics which are in ſmall columns extremely well cut, have been covered with plaſter; on which is painted Chriſt ſurrounded with a glory.

From hence I went and took a particular view of the ruins of a large temple, a little way to the ſouth-eaſt. At a diſtance from it are the ruins of a pyramidal gate, and of a very large coloſſal ſtatue, broke off about the middle of the trunk: it is 21 feet broad at the ſhoulders; the ear is three feet long, and from the top of the head to the bottom of the neck is 11 feet. In the firſt court of the temple are two rows of ſquare pillars, on each ſide of which is a ſtatue, but the heads of all of them are broke off. Theſe ſtatues have each the lituus in one hand, and the flagellum or whip in the other, as commonly ſeen in the ſtatue of Oſiris. In the ſecond court are the remains of two coloſſal ſtatues

ſitting; they are of black granite, and the head of one of them, which lies on the ground, is three feet five inches long. A great number of pillars belonging to the temple are ſtanding, and many others are deſtroyed; but from the ruins it appears to have been a magnificient ſtructure. [In this edifice we obſerve two ſorts of pillars, one more beautiful than the other. Their thickneſs and ſolidity give them a delightful appearance at a diſtance; on approaching them, the hieroglyphics are agreeable to the ſight; and when you are quite near, their colours have a fine effect. This ſort of painting has neither ſhade nor degradation. The figures are incruſted like the enamel on the dial-plate of watches, with this difference, that they cannot be detached. I muſt own that this incruſted matter ſurpaſſes in ſtrength every thing I have ſeen of this kind. It is ſuperior to the Al-freſco and the Moſaic work; and has the advantage of laſting a longer time. It is ſurprizing to ſee how the gold, ultra-marine, and other colours have preſerved their luſtre to the preſent age.]

From this temple I went to the ſtatues, which I ſhall call the coloſſal ſtatues of Memnon; but the Sheik hurried me from thence, ſaying he was near his enemies; I however went to them again early in the morning, and ſpent above half a day at them. Theſe coloſſal figures front the Nile. The firſt ſeems to repreſent a man, and the other a woman: they are both of the ſame ſize, and that is prodigious; for they are 50 feet in height, from the baſes of the pedeſtals to the ſummit of the head. They are ſitting upon ſtones almoſt cubical, of 15 feet in height, and as many in breadth; but the back part of each ſtone is higher than the fore part, by a foot and a half. They are on plain pedeſtals, five feet high.] The ſtatue to the north has been broken off at the middle, and has been built up with five tier of ſtones; but the other is of one ſingle ſtone: the feet have the toes broken off, and the features are mouldered away by time. The ſides of the ſeats upon which they are ſitting, are covered with hiero-

Vol. 12

Scot & Mantice

TWO COLOSSAL STATUES

With the Ruins of the Palace of Memnon

glyphical figures; on the pedeſtal of the imperfect ſtatue is a Greek epigram; and on the inſteps and legs are ſeveral inſcriptions in Greek and Latin, ſome being epigrams in honour of Memnon; but the greater part are teſtimonies of thoſe who have heard his ſound: for one of them has been thought by ſome to be the famous ſtatue of Memnon, which at the firſt or ſecond hour, they pretend, uttered a ſound occaſioned by the rays of the ſun ſtriking on it.

At a ſmall diſtance from theſe ſtatues are the ruins of ſeveral others, particularly one of yellow granite almoſt entire, and twelve feet long from the top of the head to the thigh; and part of it is ſunk in the earth. Going on to the hills I obſerved an area cut out of the rock, and many ſtones lying about it covered with hieroglyphics; this ſeems to be a part of the grand temple, to which theſe ſtatues probably formed an avenue from the great ones. We at length entered between the hills, and came to a temple which had afterwards been a convent. It has no hieroglyphics on the outſide; the cornices over the doors are fluted, and adorned with the winged globe. Having taken a full view of theſe things we returned to the river.

While I was abſent, the natives having taken umbrage at my copying the inſcriptions, came to the boat, and ſaid, that they would ſee whether this ſtranger would dare to come out another day, dropping ſome expreſſions as if they would aſſault the boat by night: for they ſeemed very deſirous of my leaving the place; from their being ſtrongly poſſeſſed with the notion that the Europeans have the power of diſcovering treaſures. I however talked of going abroad the next day, being deſirous of ſeeing, if poſſible, the temple of Medinet Habou; but the Sheik coming to the boat, and being informed of what had paſſed, adviſed me to depart. But I ſaw this place on my return.

I then proceeded up the river a ſmall league to Luxerein or Lacſor. On my arrival there, early in the morning, I carried a letter and a preſent to the Sheik;

and the Sheik of Carnack's ſon came to me there, provided a dinner for me, and was ſo obliging as to ſtay with me all day. I there viewed the remains of the large and magnificent temple, which was doubtleſs a part of the ancient Thebes on the eaſt ſide of the river. This noble building agrees with the deſcription Diodorus gives of the ſepulchre of Oſymandus, which he ſays was a mile and a quarter in circumfererence.

[The ſuperb ſepulchre of that monarch is thus deſcribed by Diodorus. "At its entrance is a gate 200 "feet in length, and 45 cubits in height. Having "paſſed it, you come to a ſquare ſtone periſtyle, each "ſide of which is 400 feet. Inſtead of pillars it was "ſupported by the figures of animals, 16 cubits in "height, each cut out in a ſingle ſtone, and carved in "an antique manner. The whole roof, 12 feet in "breadth, conſiſting of ſtones of that ſize, was va-"riegated with ſtars on a bluiſh ground. After this "periſtyle was a gate in other reſpects reſembling the "former; but more abundantly wrought with all kinds "of ſculpture. At this laſt entrance are three ſta-"tues, each cut out of one entire ſtone, the Syenites, "and one of them in a ſitting poſture, is the largeſt in "all Egypt, its foot exceeding ſeven cubits. The two "others placed at its knees, the one on the right, "the other on the left, are the repreſentations of the "daughter and mother, and are in ſize inferior to the "former. This work is not only worthy of eſteem "on account of its bigneſs, but is wonderful in its "workmanſhip, and excellent in the nature of the "ſtone, as in ſo great a bulk there is not the leaſt "crack or ſtain to be ſeen. It has this inſcription: "I AM OSYMANDUS, KING OF KINGS. IF ANY ONE "IS DESIROUS TO KNOW HOW GREAT I AM, AND "WHERE I LIE, LET HIM SURPASS ANY OF MY WORKS. "Another ſtatue of his mother ſtands by itſelf; it is "twelve cubits high, and of an entire ſtone, having "three diadems on its head, to ſignify that ſhe was "the daughter, wife and mother of a king. Through

" this gate is another periſtyle more remarkable than
" the former, in which are various ſculptures of the war
" he waged with thoſe that revolted at Bactria, againſt
" whom he ſent an army of 400,000 foot, and 20,000
" horſe. In the firſt of the walls the king was repre-
" ſented as beſieging a citadel ſurrounded by water,
" the foremoſt in danger, with a lion fighting by his
" ſide. In the ſecond wall were wrought the captives
" led by the king, deprived of their private parts and
" their hands; by which ſeems to be ſignified, that they
" were effeminate and deſtitute of hands in dangerous
" exploits. The third wall was adorned with ſculpture
" and elegant paintings, repreſenting the King offer-
" ing oxen as victims, and the triumph he celebrated
" on account of his victory. In the middle of the pe-
" riſtyle, in the open air, was an altar built of the moſt
" beautiful ſtone, of a prodigious ſize, and admirable
" workmanſhip. At the laſt wall were two ſtatues in
" a ſitting poſture, each of one entire ſtone, twenty-
" ſeven cubits in height: near which were three
" paſſages made from the periſtyle, leading to an edi-
" fice ſupported by pillars, formed in the manner of a
" muſical theatre, each ſide containing 200 feet. In
" it was a multitude of wooden ſtatues, repreſenting
" ſuits of law; and on the wall were carved thirty
" perſons, with Juſtice in the middle, from whoſe
" neck was ſuſpended the figure of Truth, with her
" eyes ſhut, and a number of books lying by him.
" After that was a walk of various buildings, in which
" were repreſented the moſt delicious viands. The
" figure of the king was carved and likewiſe ſtained
" with colours, offering to the Gods the gold and ſil-
" ver which he annually received from the mines of
" Egypt. After that was the ſacred library, upon
" which was inſcribed, THE REPOSITORY OF THE
" MEDICINES OF THE SOUL. Contiguous to it were
" the images of all the Gods of Egypt, and the king
" making ſuitable offerings to each; and alſo ſhewing
" Oſiris, and his aſſeſſors in the infernal regions, that

" he had led a life of religion, virtue, and humanity. " On the ſame ſide as the library, was a noble building " that contained the images of Jupiter and Juno, and " likewiſe of the king himſelf; in which alſo the body " of the king appears to have been depoſited. Around " it was a multitude of buildings adorned with ſculp- " tures of all the animals conſecrated in Egypt. From " thence were ſteps to the top of the ſepulchre, which " after you had paſſed, there was upon the monument " a golden circle, 365 cubits in circumference, and a " cubit in thickneſs, on which were marked the num- " ber of days in the year, the riſing and ſetting of the " ſtars, with their influence and ſignifications, accord- " ing to the Egyptian aſtrologers. They report that this " circle was taken away by Cambyſes, when he ſub- " dued Egypt. Such, it is ſaid, was the ſepulchre of " king Oſymandus :"] let us now view its remains.

We firſt come to two obeliſks that are probably the fineſt in the world; they are now ſixty feet above the ground, and might be ſeventy or eighty, according as the ground has riſen, which is evidently a great deal. They are ſeven feet and a half ſquare, and at bottom might be eight feet. The hieroglyphics, which are in three columns down each ſide, are cut with a flat bottom, an inch and a half deep, and the granite has perfectly retained its poliſh, which is the fineſt I ever ſaw. On the top on each ſide is a perſon ſitting on a throne, and one offers ſomething on his knees; theſe figures are likwiſe below. Lower down are three hawks, then three bulls, and at about the diſtance of every foot is an owl. I alſo obſerved monkeys, hares, dogs, ſerpents, birds, and the heads of camels and inſects; but about half the pyramid of the weſtern obeliſk is broke off, and the ſouth-weſt corner of the eaſtern one is for about ſix feet high a little battered.

At a little diſtance is a pyramid at a gate two hundred feet long, and at preſent fifty-four above the ground. On each ſide of the entrance is a coloſſal ſtatue thirteen feet and a half above the ground; they are of grey gra-

nite, and the ſhoulders are only three feet and a half above the ſurface of the earth. In the front of the pyramidal gate are windows and ſculpture, particularly a perſon ſeated on a throne, holding out one hand which has a ſceptre or a ſtaff in it, and ſurrounded by others in poſtures of adoration. On the other ſide, a perſon is repreſented in a car, as galloping and ſhooting with a bow, with many chariots after him; this may have a relation to the wars of this king againſt the Bactrians. Within this gate is a court almoſt filled up with cottages, with ſome pillars that once compoſed part of a colonade; beyond which was another gate that is now in ruins, and beyond it another court, which contained the hiſtory of the king cut all around on the walls, and had a large and beautiful altar in the middle. The pillars in this court are forty feet high; but the work in the capitals is not in relief, but only cut out in lines. The walls of the rooms are adorned with ſculpture. A deity is carried in a ſort of a boat by eighteen men, preceded and followed by a perſon holding a particular enſign. I alſo obſerved on the walls, a man leading four bulls with a ſtring; a perſon ſitting and another kneeling to him; alſo inſtruments of muſic, and men kneeling who have the heads of hawks.

In the evening I left Luxerein, and landed at Erment on the weſt, the ancient city of Hermonthis, the capital of a province of that name. We went to the houſe of the Sheik, who conducted us to the old city in the midſt of a large plain, where are the remains of a ſmall temple, adorned with hieroglyphics both within and without, that ſeems by the many hawks cut in it, to have been dedicated to Apollo. At ſome diſtance are the remains of a beautiful building, that appears too grand for a Chriſtian church, on the firſt eſtabliſhment of Chriſtianity in the fourth century: yet it has croſſes cut on ſome of the ſtones; with Coptic paintings and inſcriptions in many parts of it, that are plaſtered: there are, however, little remains of the edifice,

except the weſt end, where the rooms had galleries over them, which might be for the women. Some of the niches ſeem to have been hewn into a rough ſhell at the top, as if they had at firſt been built ſtraight. The pillars ſeem to have been of one ſtone of red granite, after the Greek architecture of the Corinthian order. The ſemi-circles, and rooms at each end, were probably made by the Chriſtians. This might be the temple of Jupiter, and it was probably rebuilt in the Greek taſte, under the government of the Ptolemies.

On the 18th of January we went on with very little wind, and ſhot at a crocodile, as he was going into the water from a ſandy iſle. We had reaſon to believe the ball ſtruck him; for inſtead of walking in ſlowly, as is uſual with them, he opened his mouth and jumped five or ſix feet into the water. The next day we came to Eſne, on the weſt, a conſiderable town for thoſe parts; we went aſhore and ſtaid about an hour, when the men wanting a ſtone for ballaſt, the people knowing I was an European, would not let them take it into the boat, ſaying, that if the Franks took away that ſtone, they would by their magic art, draw away their hidden treaſures. This place, and the antiquities about it, I ſaw on my return. I had letters to the Caſhif, who was then abſent; but I had ſent him before, and his people were ready to go with me. I carried letters and a preſent to one of the Seriffs, who went with me to ſee the temple. [It is cloſed on three ſides, and in the front are twenty-four columns that appear well preſerved. A channelled border runs all round the top of the edifice; but in the middle of the front is a cartouche, or ornament, ſuch as are ſeen in all the principal gates of Egypt. A ſemi-corona borders the whole edifice, the ſide of which is filled with hieroglyphical figures, that ſeem of the moſt ancient kind, and appear to have been executed in haſte. The columns ſupport ſtones placed croſswiſe, on which reſt great tables that form a roof, adorned in the ſame manner as the ſides with hieroglyphics. It is, however, eaſy to perceive that the

figures of the inſide are by another hand, and executed with more care than thoſe ſeen at the outſide; but none of theſe hieroglyphics are incruſted with colours. The columns are likewiſe covered with hieroglyphical figures, which in ſome places are ſmall and very much crowded. It is remarkable, that in all this temple one capital of a column does not reſemble another; for though the proportion is the ſame, the ornaments are different. The inſide of this edifice is blackened by the ſmoke of fire formerly made there; however, all the parts are well preſerved except the gate, and the intermediate ſpaces between the front columns, which have been filled up by the Arabs, in order to ſhut up their cattle in the temple, which at preſent ſerves for no other uſe.]

We alſo went about three miles to the north-weſt to ſee another temple, which I conjectured might be the temple of Pallas, at Latapolis, where both that goddeſs and the fiſh Latus were worſhipped. In this temple there are likewiſe ſeveral ſorts of capitals, ſome of which reſemble the Corinthian, but with a very flat relief. On the inſide are three ſtories of hieroglyphics of men, about three feet high, and at one end the loweſt figures are as large as the life; one of them, I obſerved, had the head of the Ibis; and in ſeveral parts of the wall I ſaw the figure of a woman ſitting. The ceiling is adorned with a variety of animals, and painted in very beautiful colours; among them is a man ſitting in a kind of a boat, with a circle round him. This temple appears to have been uſed as a church; for I ſaw ſome Coptic inſcriptions in black letters on the walls, and was told that there had been a convent there.

A mile to the ſouth of Eſne is the monaſtery of St. Helena, by whom it is ſaid to have been founded; but it has been more commonly called the convent of the martyrs. Here is a great burial-ground not leſs than a mile round. Many of the tombs are magnificent, they having a dome or four arches, with a little cupola on the top. Some of them have a croſs, and others an

eagle cut in them, with a Greek inſcription. The convent, with its church, are however but mean; there are only two monks in it, who cannot marry; but their relations, both women and children, live with them. This is the laſt church in Egypt.

On the 20th we came to Etfou, which was once the Great Apollinopolis. I went to the Sheik's houſe, with a letter from the Sheik of Fourſhout. When he knew who it was from, he kiſſed the letter, and put it to his forehead as a mark of reſpect. I made him a handſome preſent, which he received with great civility; and when the letter was read, and I deſired to ſee the ruins, he put his hand up to his head, as a mark of his compliance, and that he took me under his protection. He himſelf went with me, and ſhewed me the temple, and a grand pyramidal gate. [This laſt monument of antiquity is perfectly well preſerved; but the Turks have converted it into a citadel. There runs all round a ſemicircular corona, ſuch as is commonly ſeen round the Egyptian buildings. No cornice is to be ſeen about the edifice; but it may have been ruined, or have fallen down. This edifice is in general well deſigned, and its ſimplicity gives it a very pretty appearance. Upon its faces are three rows of hieroglyphical figures, which ſeem as if deſigned to repreſent infants, though their ſtature ſurpaſſes that of men. The ſouth and north ſides ſcarce differ in any thing, except that the former has ſeveral windows, of which the four lowermoſt, made on each ſide of the gate, are very high, and give a diagonal light that falls obliquely. Above the gate is a cartouch or ornament, like thoſe we have already remarked in ſome other edifices. The other antique monument is the temple which was dedicated to Apollo; but the greateſt part of it is buried under ground, and the Arabs have made no ſcruple of employing what they have been able to take away, in making ſome vile pigeon-houſes.]

While I was meaſuring the ruins of the temple, a great many people came about me, and on my giving

my book to a ſervant to hold for me, a young man, who was the Sheik's nephew, ſnatched it out of his hand, and ran away with it. The Sheik and my ſervant ran after him. Mean while I continued meaſuring and writing on another paper, till the Sheik returned with his pike, having thrown off his outward garment when he went in ſearch of his nephew, whom it is ſaid he would have killed, had he overtaken him. The brothers had been competitors for the government of this village; and the Sheik now conducted me to his houſe, where matters were carried ſo far, that I was afraid we ſhould have ſuffered in the tumult, the brother being favoured by many of the people. I was deſirous of going to the boat; but was told that the Sheik would be offended if I did not ſtay to eat with him. I was privately informed that I might have my note-book, if I would give about the value of a crown, to which I conſented, and it was accordingly brought me. We now ſat down to eat out of a large wooden bowl, full of thin cakes broke into ſmall bits, with a ſyrup mixed with them; but the Sheik ſat at a diſtance, and would not eat with us. Afterwards he mounted his horſe, and attended me to the boat, followed by ſeveral perſons, and having made me a preſent of a ſheep, came into the boat, and ordered a letter to be written to the great Sheik. About an hour after the Sheik left us, his ſon came riding to the river, to inform us that his father having been told I had given money to have my book reſtored, had obliged them to return it, and had ſent it to me. Thus this worthy Arab gave an inſtance of fidelity that is rare to be met with.

We now ſailed on, and as we approached towards Hajar Silcily, the rocks on the weſtern ſhore appeared as if cut for a grand gateway. A little farther to the ſouth, I ſaw five regular entrances into grottos, cut equally diſtant in the rock, and above them a cornice or half-round ſeemed to have crowned the work; but only the half-round remained. Proceeding to Hajar Silcily, or the rock of the chain, the Nile grew

exceeding narrow and rapid; for I ſuppoſe it is not above one hundred yards wide; the rocks encroaching on the river on each ſide. It had its name from a chain being formerly drawn acroſs to defend the paſs, and I was ſhewn a rock on the eaſt ſide, where I was told the chain was faſtened. This rock on the weſt ſide is cut into ſomething like four niches, or ſmall open temples, ſeemingly deſigned for the worſhip of ſome deities, which are adorned with cornices, pilaſters, and hieroglyphics. Here alſo are ſome pillars cut out of the rock, which are ſtill entire, with their pedeſtals. Over theſe is a tree, a man on horſeback, and another leading the horſe, all cut out of the rock in relievo, in an oblong ſquare compartment, after the Greek taſte.

[On the inſides of the grottos there is not ſufficient day-light to diſtinguiſh objects; the light entering only at the door of each grotto; this gave me ſome concern, but at length I perceived an opening at the top, which allowed me the view of four figures in alto relievo; they are of the natural ſize; two men ſit in the middle, with their arms laid acroſs their breaſts, and on each ſide ſits a woman, who takes hold of the arm of the man who is next her. I could not avoid feeling a juſt deteſtation at the malice and ſuperſtition of the Turks or Arabs, who have ſtrangely deformed theſe figures, eſpecially in the face. On one ſide of this group is an hieroglyphical table, cut in baſſo relievo, with much pains, and what gives it a greater value is, its being perfectly well preſerved to the preſent time; though the rock in which all theſe grottos are cut, conſiſts only of a yellowiſh ſandy ſtone. The hieroglyphical table probably contains the epitaphs of the perſons whoſe bodies have been encloſed in this grotto.]

A little above this place the Nile reſumed its natural breath, and there is a ſandy ground, with a gentle aſcent on each ſide. We afterwards paſſed by ſeveral ſandy iſlands, on which we ſaw many crocodiles; particularly on one there were near twenty of them, which

ſeemed to be from 15 to 20 feet long. On our ſhooting at them, about half of them went into the water, and on firing the ſecond time they all diſappeared.

We afterwards came to a large iſland, to the eaſt of which is the village of Com-Ombo. [The principal monument in the place is ſituated behind a mountain of ſand, and on another ſide is concealed by ſome miſerable cottages: but theſe cannot prevent a curious traveller contemplating with great ſatisfaction theſe beautiful ruins. The building reſts upon twenty-three well wrought pillars adorned with hieroglyphics. The ſtones that ſerve to cover the top, are of a prodigious ſize; and we clearly ſee that the architrave, which is at preſent ſplit in two, was anciently a ſingle ſtone. Under its cornice is the cartouche, the uſual ornament of their gates, which is very neatly cut. All the ſtones are full of hieroglyphics, and the pillars are above 24 feet in circumference. It is a pity that this edifice cannot laſt long: two ſides of it are but barely diſcernable: part is already covered with earth, and the pillars, as well as the reſt of the building, are three quarters under ground. At about 50 paces diſtance, at the declivity of a mountain, is another antique monument, about 18 feet in height, with a niche that is ſquare in the middle; but wider at the top than the bottom. The ſides are thick ſet with hieroglypics, which are much decayed towards the ground, and the back-part is almoſt buried under the ſand. This edifice is entirely built of large ſquare blocks of a whitiſh ſtone, that nearly reſembles marble. This monument might, perhaps, have been an altar, the table of which may have been taken away or have fallen to the ground; and, perhaps, an idol was placed in the niche I have mentioned.]

We now proceed to the port of Laſherrad, where the Caſhif of Eſne was encamped; we would have paſſed him, but his men called to us, and the boatmen did not dare to proceed. We were thus ſtopped, becauſe by the covering of our boat we were judged to

be Europeans. I had letters to the Caſhif; but did not know that he was the perſon to whom they were directed; I carried him a preſent of coffee, tobacco, and ſome other things; which he ſaid I had no occaſion to give him: he readily conſented to my ſeeing the antiquities; but the Arab Sheiks of Laſherrad, being preſent, oppoſed it, on which I returned to the boat, and paſſing by ſeveral iſlands arrived on the evening of the 21ſt at Aſſouan,

This is a poor ſmall town, with a kind of fortreſs or rather barracks for the Janizaries, who have in reality the command of the country. The preſent fortreſs, which is ſurrounded by two or three ſlight walls of no more ſtrength than a common garden fence, is to the ſouth of the town, which is on a gentle riſing from the river, and extends to a height that is over the water, which I ſhould think was the north end of the ancient Syene. There are but two Chriſtians in the place, one the Aga's ſervant, and the other the Caimacam's Secretary. On my waiting on the Aga of the Janizaries with letters from Muſtapha, Aga of the Janizaries at Girge, and from the Sheik of Fourſhout, he treated me with coffee, and made me a preſent of a lamb; in return, I ſent him a preſent of tobacco, rice, coffee and other things. He very obligingly ſent two Janizaries to guard the boat, and invited me to take a lodging in an apartment that belonged to his own houſe, though it was ſeparate from it. The Chriſtian Secretary of the Caimacam, or civil Governor, telling me that I ſhould make his maſter a preſent, the people and Janizaries about the boat ordered him to get out of it, there being a jealouſy between the civil and military power. The Aga, on being informed of this, ſent me word that I need not make preſents to any one: this he repeated on my waiting upon him, adding, that he would take me under his protection, ſo that no one ſhould injure me; I therefore removed to the lodging he had allotted. A Turk belonging to Oſman Bey, who happened to be there, kindly offered his advice

on all occaſions, viſited me, and brought me a preſent of a dozen of pigeons and ſome dates. Some other Turks came to ſee me, and one of them, as a token of reſpect, brought me the trifling preſent of a bunch of radiſhes.

On the eminence over Aſſouan are the ruins of the ancient city of Syene, which is exactly under the Tropic of Cancer; but the principal part of that city ſeems to have been on a lower hill to the ſouth. Going between the two hills near the river to the ſouth-weſt, I ſaw two pillars of granite ſtanding, and two triangular pillars, of an extraordinary kind, with their baſes lying down. Nearer the river I obſerved two oblong ſquare columns of granite; and about the middle, between the brow of the hill and the river, is a building that may poſſibly be the obſervatory deſcribed by Strabo, as erected over a well, for making aſtronomical obſervations; the hole at the top, which are much larger below than above, I imagine were to try the experiment in relation to the ſhadows at noon-day.

Having viewed theſe ruins, I went about a mile to the ſouth-eaſt, to the quarries of granite; for the country to the eaſt, the bed of the river, and the iſlands, are all red granite. The quarries are not worked in deep; but the ſtone is hewn out of the ſides of the low hills. I obſerved ſome columns and an obeliſk marked out in the quarries, and ſhaped on two ſides; they ſeemed to have worked in round the ſtones with a narrow tool, and, when the ſtones were almoſt ſeparated, they probably forced them out with large wedges.

Oppoſite to Syena is the iſland Elephantine, in which was a city of that name. It is about a mile in length, and at the ſouth end a quarter of a mild in breadth; but to the north it ends in a point. In this iſland there was a temple to Cnuphis and a nilometer to meaſure the riſe of the Nile. I obſerved there the remains of a ſmall temple, before which is a ſtatue about eight feet high, ſitting with the hands acroſs on the breaſt, and

a lituus in each. On a wall before the temple is a Greek inſcription, which is in many parts defaced. In the midſt of the iſland are the remains of one ſide of a magnificent gate of red granite, finely adorned with hieroglyphics. [Its ſouthern part is mountainous and covered with ruins, moſt of which are buried under the earth. Among others, I found an ancient edifice ſtill ſtanding, though covered with earth at the top, as well as on the ſide: it is ſtill called the temple of the ſerpent Cnuphis; but it reſembles a ſepulchral monument more than a temple. It is incloſed by a kind of cloyſter, ſupported by columns: at the four corners, and in its breadth, it has a wall; but in the middle you ſee only a ſingle column. This incloſure contains a grand apartment that has two large gates, the one to the north, the other to the ſouth; and the inſide is almoſt entirely filled with ſtones and earth. The walls, covered with hieroglyphics, are bedawbed with dirt, and blackened by the ſmoke of fires made there by the ſhepherds. In the midſt of that apartment I obſerved a plain ſquare table, without any inſcription, and imagined that there might be underneath an urn or mummy, and I was tempted to get it lifted up; but the ſuperſtition of the government and people would not permit it. A traveller would think himſelf happy in having the liberty to obſerve theſe ancient edifices in quiet, and he muſt not attempt any thing farther. I ſhall never forget that, on our caſting anchor before Aſſouan, the populace ran in crowds to ſee, as they ſaid, the ſorceres experienced in the black art. The length of the building on the inſide is about 80 feet, and its breadth about 20. There is near it a kind of pedeſtal made of great blocks of white ſtone, loaded with Greek inſcriptions.]

About this iſland are ſeveral ſmaller iſlands, as four to the ſouth and two to the weſt, and alſo ſeveral large rocks of red granite. I croſſed over to the Lybian ſide of the Nile, where there is a ſandy valley, and, proceeding about a mile, came to a large ruinous uninhabited monaſtery, which, I ſuppoſed was dedicaten to

St. George, his picture, as big as the life, being painted on the walls; upon them are alſo ſeveral other bad paintings, and ſome Coptic inſcriptions. Returning to Aſſouan, I went aſhore upon the rocks to the eaſt, oppoſite to the ſouth end of Elephantine, where the rocks are very high, and on one of them I ſaw ſome hieroglyphics.

I afterwards ſet out from Aſſouan, and rid towards Philæ, paſſing near the quarries, and going along a road that ſeems to have been made by art, between little hills and rocks of red granite, ſome of which were diſtinguiſhed by having hieroglyphics carved upon them. This road was divided into two parts, by a mound in the middle of it. We at length paſſed over to the iſland of Philæ, which is high and very ſmall, it not being above a quarter of a mile long and half a quarter broad. The city ſeems to have been on the eaſt ſide, and it appears that there were no other buildings on the iſland, but what had a relation to the temples; for Diodorus ſeems to inſinuate, that no perſon but the Prieſts were permitted to land, on account of the ſacredneſs of the place; and accordingly the whole iſland appears to have been walled round, ſomething in the manner of modern fortification, and great part of that wall ſtill remains. The particular ſort of Ethiopian hawk worſhipped here, I obſerved cut among the hieroglyphics in ſeveral parts, and repreſented with a long neck, extended wings, and a ſerpent coming out from it. The temple of the hawk is built with freeſtone, near the water, on the weſt ſide of the iſland. In the court of the temple, which is of great length, is a row of pillars on each ſide, that have a great variety of capitals. Beyond this is an inner court, adorned with very beautiful columns, the capitals of which are wrought in baſſo relievo in ſomething like leaves and branches, above which is the head of Iſis on each of the four ſides. On the outſide of this inner court are very large coloſſal figures, cut on the ſouth ſide of a great pyramidal gate. At the entrence to the eaſt, is an obeliſk on each ſide

within, of red granite, and near it a lion alſo on each ſide. Between the weſt ſide of the grand area and the water, there is only a narrow terrace with doors to it from the portico, and the whole ends at the water to the ſouth, with a parapet wall, at which are two obeliſks about two feet and a half ſquare, raiſed on their pedeſtals. The iſland riſes here twenty or thirty feet above the water, affording a proſpect about a mile ſouth to the granite hills, where the Nile turning, the view is terminated by thoſe hills in a moſt agreeable romantic manner, all together having a noble and beautiful appearance.

To the eaſt of this ſtructure is an oblong ſquare building open on all ſides. The capitals of the columns which have ſome reſemblance to thoſe of the Corinthian order, may be reckoned among the moſt beautiful in Egypt, and were probably of the laſt invention, they being the only capitals of that kind I ſaw in Egypt.

Returning about half a mile by the way we came, we turned off to the weſt, in order to take a view of the cataract, when, having proceeded about a mile farther, we came to the port for the boats that came from Ethiopia, where we found moſt of the people negroes. Here is no village, but only ſome little huts made of mats and reeds. At this place the people enter their goods, and convey them by land to Aſſouan, and in the ſame manner, the goods brought from lower Egypt are alſo conveyed thither by land from Aſſouan. The chief import here conſiſts in dates, which the people of Aſſouan buy, both for their own uſe, and to ſend into other parts of Egypt: ſo that on both ſides the Egyptian and Ethiopian navigation end at the cataract. I never ſaw nature diſcover ſo rough a face as there: on the eaſt ſide nothing is to be ſeen but rocks, on the weſt the hills are either ſandy or black rocks: above, to the ſouth, there ſeems to be a high rocky iſland, and higher up rocky cliſts on each ſide, and below to the north are ſo many rocks, that little of the

water can be ſeen. We now went on to the north, the Nile running through the rocks; but the people knowing that I came to ſee the cataract, ſtood ſtill, upon which I aſked them, when I ſhould come to it, and to my great ſurpriſe, they told me that was the cataract. The bed of the Nile is croſſed by rocks of granite, which in three places, at ſome diſtance from each other, divide the ſtream, making three falls at each. The firſt we came to was the leaſt, the fall appearing to be not more than three feet. The ſecond, which is a little lower down the river, winds round a large rock or iſland, forming two ſtreams: this iſland to the north may be about twelve feet high; and it is ſaid, that at high water the Nile runs over this rock; but ſuppoſing the river to be then five feet higher below the rock, the fall may be about ſeven or eight feet: farther to the weſt are other rocks, and again to the weſt of them is a third ſtream. Going ſomewhat lower, I obſerved a third fall which appeared to be greater than that of the others. There is another cataract at Ibrim, which is ſaid to be twelve days journey from this place; ſome alſo ſay there is a third cataract; and others, that there are ſeven mountains and ſeven cataracts.

[The ancients had a ſtrange notion of the inhabitants of the cataracts being ſtunned and rendered deaf by the noiſe of the falling water. Lucan thus deſcribes them:

> Who that beholds thee, Nile! thus gently flow,
> With ſcarce a wrinkle on thy glaſſy brow,
> Can gueſs thy rage, when rocks reſiſt thy force,
> And hurl thee headlong in thy downward courſe;
> When ſpouting cataracts thy torrent pour,
> And nations tremble at thy deaf'ning roar;
> When thy proud waves with indignation riſe,
> And daſh their foamy fury to the ſkies?
>
> ROWE's Lucan.]

I here ſaw the corn in ear at the latter end of January, the coloquintida was full grown, and the little apple called Nabok was almoſt ripe, which in Delta was

ripe in November. In the lower parts of Egypt, the time of growth for ſuch fruit, I ſuppoſe to be after the overflowing of the Nile; but here, after the great heats are paſt. I now ſaw the people driving camels loaded with ſenna, and was told that each load was worth about 200 medins, or near 12s. 6d. The Baſſa grants a licenſe to one perſon who is generally a Jew, to buy all the ſenna; he is obliged to take all that is brought to Cairo; and one Engliſh merchant only has the privilege of purchaſing it of him.

On my return to Aſſouan, the relation of a ſoldier I had brought from the Sheik of Fourſhout, as a mark of reſpect, ſent me a ſupper ready dreſſed, in hopes, I ſuppoſe, of a return of greater value. And the laſt evening I was there, the Aga likewiſe ſent me a ſupper of goats fleſh boiled, and well peppered, pilaw, barley broth, and hot bread; deſiring that what was left might be given to the boatmen, and not to his people.

The next day, having all my goods put on board, I took leave of the Aga, and ſome of his relations attended me to the boat; when the wind not permitting us to begin our voyage back, I paſſed the day in the boat with thoſe who came to ſee me. Among the reſt I was viſited by a genteel man, brother to the Caimacam of Girge: I had ſeen him at the Aga's, and was now in a country where I thought I met with a friend wherever I ſaw a Turk, or a perſon of the middle parts of Egypt. He behaved with great civility, and ſeemed to be a very good ſort of a man. The Chriſtian Secretary of the Caimacum, intruſted me with a letter, and a ſum of money of the value of three or four pounds, to be delivered as directed in Akmim; a very great ſum in that country, and a truſt he would ſcarcely have repoſed in one of his own country that was going to Cairo; though he was ſenſible I ſhould ſoon leave Egypt, and he would never ſee me more. He at the ſame time preſented me a live ſheep, and in return I made him a preſent.

As Dr. Pococke proceeded no farther up the Nile, we ſhall before we follow him down that river to Cairo, attend Mr. Norden up it as far as Deir or Derri. The Aga at Aſſouan, and other perſons in the town had intereſted themſelves in his ſafety, and uſed every argument to prevent his advancing farther, obſerving that he would infallibly be deſtroyed, ſince he was not going among men, but among ſavage monſters, who would murder a man for a parat, in what manner then will they deal with you, ſaid the Aga, who carry ſuch treaſures? but all his arguments had no effect, and Mr. Norden reſolved to proceed. The Aga, notwithſtanding his fears for his ſafety, ſent his own brother to accompany him; he had alſo with him a Janizary, with ſeveral Romiſh prieſts who had come with him up the Nile, beſides ſeveral ſervants and a Jew valet. Being furniſhed with letters of recommendation to the principal perſons on the coaſt, they ſet out, while the natives took leave of them, as of perſons doomed to deſtruction.

Mr. Norden ſet out from Aſſouan on the 22d of December, a month before Dr. Pococke's arrival at that town, and by the Aga's order had thirteen dromedaries, three horſes, and as many aſſes, to carry him, his attendants, and baggage, to the haven of Morroda, above the cataract. He there embarked in a boat, with his attendants; viewed the antiquities already deſcribed by Dr. Pococke, in the ancient iſle of Philæ, and proceeding up the river, ſoon reached Daboude, a village where he could have wiſhed to land, in order to examine ſome ancient edifices that appeared in ſight; but the wind being favourable, he was obliged to be ſatisfied with a diſtant view of them. He obſerved a grand edifice of great length, built of very large free-ſtones, cloſed on all ſides, except the front, where there is a great gate, and as it were two windows on each ſide formed by four columns. At the top of the edifice runs a plain cornice; under which, as well as at the four angles, is the aſtrigal, or moulding common

in the Egyptian buildings. This ſtructure is encompaſſed with a pretty high wall, that is much damaged, eſpecially towards the portal. Oppoſite the front are three portals ſucceeding one another, which ſeem to make a paſſage leading to a canal forty feet broad, that terminates in the Nile. This canal is filled with ſand, but its borders are lined with a thick wall formed of great blocks of ſtone. There are columns to be perceived on the inſide of the principal edifice, which appears to have anciently ſerved as a temple: but beſides this ſtructure there is a vile modern piece of ſtone work, that diſhonours theſe ancient buildings, and renders the proſpect a little confuſed.

Higher up is Hindau, a village where he perceived four or five columns, that are the remains of abundance of ancient buildings; and for above the ſpace of a quarter of a league, the walls and foundations of ſuperb edifices were ſeen on every ſide; but all are in ruins, and almoſt covered with ſand.

They now advanced to the iſland Gieſiret Mabues, ſituated ſix leagues above the cataract, and pretty near the eaſtern ſhore of the Nile: oppoſite to it, on the ſame border of the river, is Sahdaaeb, a village where is an ancient edifice, the front of which is only adorned with a plain moulding; and its ſquare portal reſts upon a baſe ſix feet in height, formed of great blocks of ſtone very artfully joined together. This edifice is ſurrounded by a wall. Near Teffa, which is on the confines of Egypt and Nubia, they alſo ſaw ſome remains of ancient buildings, which, like the laſt, were built of white ſtones perfectly well joined together. The columns on the inſide are ſtill ſubſiſting; but thoſe that were without are ruined.

At eight in the evening when they were not above a gun-ſhot diſtant from the village, an incident happened that let them know the character of the inhabitants. Theſe ordered them to bring the barque to land, that they might ſee the Franks, and have ſome of the riches they carried with them: but this being

refuſed, a muſket was fired at the barque from each ſide of the river; this inſult was returned by a double diſcharge of ſeven muſkets towards the place whence the voice came: but the natives having hid themſelves behind ſome ſtones, received no damage. They were, however, ſilent for ſome time; but ſoon reſuming their courage, began to fire again, and to give abuſive language. This did not pleaſe thoſe in the barque: they therefore called out to them, that if they did not deſiſt, they would land, and entirely exterminate them, which had its effect, and no more was heard of them.

The next day there being no wind, they lay before a village named Scherck Abohuer, which has a diſtrict of near two leagues in extent. The pilot, who was a native of the place, aſſuring them that they would find his countrymen a good ſort of people, and that they might land with the utmoſt ſafety. Mr. Norden viſited the adjacent parts, and at a ſmall diſtance obſerved along the Nile an antique quay, made of ſtones, all cut in the form of priſms, and ſo well joined together, that there was not the leaſt ſpace between. Near it were five or ſix cottages, built with ſtones, entirely covered with hieroglyphics; but no edifice could be diſcovered whence they were taken, all was deſtroyed, and nothing could be found but heaps of ſtones, alſo adorned with hieroglyphics, done by a good hand; but they had never been painted. The greateſt breadth of the land, from the mountain to the border of the Nile, is in this diſtrict no more than an hundred paces. At leaſt, if in ſome places it has a little more extent, in others it has much leſs.

The wind being fair at eight o'clock the next morning, they immediately ſet ſail; Mr. Norden took a view of ſeveral villages, and ſome inconſiderable ruins. They now came to the moſt difficult paſſage in the whole Nile. The river is here entirely croſſed by rocks concealed under the water; at the ſides of the rocks the river is of great depth, and the intermediate ſpaces form eddies or whirlpools. Thoſe in the barque conducted them-

ſelves with all the precaution that ſo dangerous a paſſage required; but the misfortune was, that the barque did not obey the rudder: ſhe ſtruck upon a rock, and continued in a frightful ſituation. She was taken hold of preciſely in the middle, and the whirl of the water made her turn upon the rock as upon a pivot. There was too great a depth in the water for the ſailors to ſtand on the bottom; the perſon who had the care of the barque would have perſuaded the crew to go out with a cord, and to draw it off by ſwimming; but they repreſented that the eddies would prevent their making any way in the water. All on board now ſaw themſelves in imminent danger. Happily the current and the wind beat againſt the barque at the ſame time, and this was their ſafety; the barque by this means in a little time diſengaged itſelf without farther aſſiſtance, and thoſe on board took ſuch advantage of the wind, that they were ſoon out of danger.

After ſome time they came up with the village of Dekke, which is remarkable for the remains of an ancient temple at a ſmall diſtance. It has no hieroglyphics, yet is in the taſte of the ancient Egyptian buildings, and may paſs for magnificent. At length they arrived at Schemedereſchied, a village where they ſtaid all night.

The next morning they ſet ſail from thence, and ſoon after an adventure happened which ſhews the diſpoſition of theſe people, Mr. Norden was examining the names of the places by which they had paſſed the preceeding day: the Commander of the veſſel, and the Jew valet were ſitting near him, and repeating the names of thoſe places that were already written, while he corrected them by their pronunciation, when a paſſenger ſtarted up, threw himſelf upon Mr. Norden, ſeized the paper he held in his hand, and tearing it into pieces, retired quietly to his place, where he ſat down as if nothing had happened. Mr. Norden, not being able to underſtand the meaning of this inſolence, was reflecting with himſelf whether he ſhould reſent it or not, when thoſe

who were preſent burſt into a loud laugh. Upon this he aſked the reaſon, and they explained to him the whole myſtery. The fellow was unwilling he ſhould know the place from whence he came, becauſe he might return ſome years after into Nubia, and, and bringing more people with him, might make himſelf maſter of the country; alledging that if he knew the name of the village where he was born, and had it in writing, he ſhould not fail to be taken as well as the reſt: and that this was the ſole cauſe of his ſnatching the paper, in which the name was going to be written.

Mr. Norden could ſcarcely forbear laughing at the fellow's ſimplicity; but to prevent the conſequences of ſuch a humour for the future, he aſſumed a very ſerious air, ordering the commander of the veſſel, to draw near the bank, and put that inſolent fellow on ſhore, adding, "The barque is entirely ours; it is "by courteſy we give any one a paſſage, and when "any body behaves inſolently we ſhall turn him out." The fellow, who was indeed a paſſenger, now humbly begged to ſtay, and promiſed to behave better for the future; upon which Mr. Norden ſuffered himſelf to be prevailed on, and the man from that time was quiet and tractable.

In the mean time they paſſed by ſeveral other villages, and the wind falling calm, they faſtened the barque on the weſtern ſhore, near a village named Sabuna, in the neighbourhood of which are ſome remarable antiquities; but they have not ſo magnificent an appearance as thoſe of Dekke, nor are the ſtones ſo well joined together, there being pretty large openings between them. The edifice is, however, built in the ancient Egyptian taſte, and though the portal is damaged, the reſt continues ſtanding. Theſe ruins are in the plain covered with ſand, where from ſome broken walls there appear to have been other buildings of a vaſt extent.

They had here all round them nothing but mountains and ſandy rocks. The mountains, to which the

Nile reaches in its inundation, are ſloping ~~and~~ and cultivated up to the top. This tract of ground was filled with beans, and lupines, that had been planted there, and the ſummit was crowned thickets of thorns that grew up of themſelves.

The next morning they again ſet ſail, and in the afternoon, approaching a village named Koroſcoff, ſituated on the eaſtern ſhore, the natives called out to them to bring the barque to land. They obeyed, and then heard that the Schorbatcſhie, the father of the Caſhif Ibrim, was there at his country-houſe. Upon this they went on aſhore, and Mr. Norden waited upon this potentate, accompanied by the brother of the Aga of Aſſouan, the Jew valet, and the Jananizary who went with them as a guard. They found the great man ſeated in the middle of a field, expoſed to all the heat of the ſun, and employed in deciding a diſpute between two men about a camel. He had the look of a wolf, and was dreſſed like a beggar. An old napkin, which was formerly white, made his turban, and a red-dreſs, ſtill more old, ſcarce covered his body, which appeared through the holes. Mr. Norden ſaluted him in the ordinary manner; but as he had brought no preſent, he did not ſo much as aſk him to ſit down; but he placed himſelf by him, without aſking his permiſſion, and put into his hands the letters the Aga of Aſſouan and his ſon had furniſhed him with. The latter he put in his turban, but read the others with great attention; after which he turned to thoſe who were pleading, each of whom ſeemed to imagine he ſhould gain his cauſe by dint of noiſe. The Schorbatſchie ſometimes intermixed his voice, and made himſelf ſo well heard, that it could not be doubted but that he was the judge.

As this trial ſeemed as if it would not be ſoon ended, Mr. Norden ordered the Jew to ſpeak to the Effendi, who was preſent, in order to prevail on the Schorbatſchie to diſpatch him ſpeedily. This the Effendi did, and on the Schorbatſchie's hearing from him that the

Jew was Mr. Norden's interpreter, he aſked him, why his maſter had not brought him a good preſent. "You "go too faſt, replied the Jew. What, aſk for pre- "ſents before you have done him the leaſt ſervice! "Shew yourſelf his friend, and you will ſee that he "will pay you well." This flattering hope entirely changed the gentleman's behaviour; he aſſumed an air of mildneſs; ſaluted Mr. Norden, and told him that he had nothing to do but to go to Derri; that he would be there before him, where he would give him entire ſatisfaction. At the ſame time he ordered his ſon to conduct him to his country houſe, to ſhew it him, and to ſend a goat as a preſent to the barque.

Mr. Norden by this means ſaw his country ſeat, which might with more propriety be termed a ſtable, and while he was looking at it, his conductor choſe from ſeven or eight ſhe goats the pooreſt he could find. As they were returning to the barque, the Jew told Mr. Norden, that the Effendi, who was a native of Cairo, had ſhewed great ſurpriſe, at their having dared to advance ſo far, and had obſerved, that they might think themſelves happy if they eſcaped in ſafety. But he ſeemed to give little attention to this diſcourſe. On his arrival at the barque, he found that the goat, lean as ſhe was, was become a bone of contention. The crew laid claim to it, and maintained that the Schorbatſchie had ſent it for their ſupper; the commander of the veſſel ſided with them; but the valet being unwilling to ſurrender it, the diſpute grew warm, and Mr. Norden was obliged to maintain his right by ſerious menaces; but having thus determined the property of the goat in his own favour, he generouſly made a preſent of it to the crew.

Mr. Norden had now no ſooner ſet ſail, than the commander of the barque, declared that he would not upon any conſideration carry him farther than Derri, and that nothing ſhould induce him to proceed to the ſecond cataract. Theſe diſcourſes, added to the Effendi's advice, cauſed Mr. Norden to make ſeveral ſerious

reflections: but he was too far engaged to draw back, and was reſolved to continue advancing, to ſee what would be the reſult of it. In the mean time he thought proper to impoſe ſilence on the commander of the veſſel, and to aſſure him, that, in what manner ſoever things might turn out, they ſhould always have it in their power to demoliſh him; and that if any misfortune befel them, they ſhould conſider him as the author of it, and be ſure to make him the firſt victim. Theſe menaces made him change his tone, and he ſwore, that if Baram Caſhif, to whom the boat belonged, would permit it, he would, with all his heart, convey them as far as he could ſail: but he exhorted Mr. Norden, and his attendants, to take care of offending that tyrant, of whom he gave a dreadful deſcription, though he was his maſter.

A calm coming on, and the current driving them back, they faſtened the barque near Amada, a village on the weſtern ſhore, almoſt oppoſite to Koroſkoff; where Mr. Norden landed, in order to ſee an ancient Egyptian temple, which in length of time had gotten into the hands of the Chriſtians. On the walls are paintings of the Trinity, the apoſtles, and ſeveral other ſaints; and where the plaſter has fallen off, the hieroglyphics that are underneath begin to appear. This temple is ſtill entire; but a monaſtery that had been built near it, is abſolutely ruined.

Mr. Norden having taken a drawing of it, withdrew; he had perceived nobody on the way; but near the barque he met with one of the natives on horſeback, entirely naked, only his breaſt was covered with a goat's ſkin. He was armed with a long pike, and a buckler made of the ſkin of the rhinoceros. This man ſtopt him; but after aſking him ſome queſtions, and finding he was not underſtood, rode off.

The Nile was here ſo ſhallow, that in ſeveral places the barque could ſcarcely paſs.

The next morning the wind being north they were obliged to tow the boat along the ſhore during the

whole day. It was now remarked, that the ſlope on the ſhore of the river was for the moſt part covered with lupines and radiſhes, the ſeed of which ſerves for making oil. There were likewiſe ſome other plants, ſuch as ſuccory and burnet. Mr. Norden remarked here an odd method of croſſing the Nile. Two men were ſitting on a truſs of ſtraw, while a cow ſwimming before, one of them held in one hand her tail, and with the other guided the beaſt by a cord faſtened to her horns. The other man, who was behind, ſteered with a little oar, by means of which he kept at the ſame time the balance. The ſame day, he likewiſe ſaw ſome loaded camels croſſing the river. A man ſwimming before, held the bridle of the firſt camel in his mouth; the ſecond camel was faſtened to the tail of the firſt, and the third to the tail of the ſecond; while another man brought up the rear, and took care that the ſecond and third camels ſhould follow in a row.

Two days after, they arrived at Deir or Derri, which is ſituated on the eaſtern ſhore of the Nile, pretty near the place where the river begins to direct its courſe towards the weſt. The news of their arrival had gone before them; for, on their faſtening their bark to land, a crowd of people were running in order to ſatisfy their curioſity by ſeeing them. Mr. Norden being told that the Schorbatſchie was returned, and had aſſembled other Princes at his houſe, immediately waited on him, attended by one of the prieſts, who underſtood the language, and the Jew valet. They found theſe petty princes in a grand divan, and were received with much civility. Baram Caſhif ſat as preſident, and, after the firſt compliments, let Mr. Norden know that they had been conſulting together about him; and as they intended to promote his voyage, they had thought it was beſt for him to ſtay at Derri till the arrival of the new Caſhif; when they ſhould go to war with a people that dwelt in the neighbourhood of the ſecond cataract, and as they ſhould lead an army of 500 men, he would travel in good company, and with the utmoſt ſafety. The

whole divan teſtified their being of the ſame ſentiments: but Mr. Norden, perceiving that a plot was laid for him, anſwered, that he and thoſe with him preferred continuing their voyage upon the Nile in the barque they had hired: but that, however, they would conſider on the offer which had been made them. Baram Caſhif being then informed that Mr. Norden deſired to have a private conferrence with him, he conſented and appointed the hour. On which our traveller roſe up, ſaluted the divan, and returned to the barque, in order to conſult with his companions in the voyage, on the meaſures moſt prudent to be taken.

The propoſals of the divan, joined to what they had been told at Aſſouan, made every one think it would be madneſs to go any farther, and that it was neceſſary to turn back as ſoon as poſſible. At the hour appointed Mr. Norden waited upon Baram Caſhif, and informed him, that there were none of them in a condition to bear ſo long a journey by land, and that they begged of him as a favour, that he would oblige the commander of the barque to convey them to the ſecond cataract. He anſwered, that the barque was his; that if his ſervant had engagad to carry him farther, he had exceeded his orders; that, beſides, the water of the Nile was too ſhallow ro render it poſſible to go up the Nile as far as the cataract, and that they would he forced to ſtop ſomewhere upon the way with his barque, which would be a great loſs to him. Mr. Norden replied, "Since it is not poſſible to advance by water, and on "the other hand, we are unable to go by land, we "we have no other meaſure to take than to return "back." "You may, he replied, but it ſhall not "be with my barque. I want it; and you muſt take "your things out of it as ſoon as poſſible."

Mr. Norden could not now doubt of the bad deſigns formed againſt him. There was then no other barque at Derri, and even if there had been one, nobody would dare to carry him in it without the permiſſion of this man, who was a real tyrant. Mr. Norden, there-

fore, by means of the Jew and the prieſt, offered him all the advantages he could hope for in letting the barque, and after many difficulties the bargain was made, the man who commanded it was called, and they all ſwore, holding their hands on their beards, to ſtand to the agreement. Baram Caſhif was ſo ſatisfied with it, that he made Mr. Norden a preſent of two new zagaies, or darts, and the pizzle of a young elephant, which he ſaid he had carried above ten years; and, on his returning to the barque, he ſent after him a goat, and a baſket of dates.

Mr. Norden now ſent him a preſent of tobacco, ſtrong liquors, and other things: but his affairs had already taken a different turn; the Schorbatſchie had heard of the agreement, and being apprehenſive of loſing, by the departure of the boat, all the advantages he had expected, had talked with Baram Caſhif, and made him change his ſentiments. He therefore rejected the preſent, ſaying they had made a fool of him, and that he muſt have things of greater value.

The Jew returning with this report, they could ſcarce give credit to what he ſaid: they, however, commiſſioned the father to wait on him again. Baram Caſhif gave him a very cold reception; told him a thouſand fooliſh things, and the prieſt obſerving, that he ought to conſider they were under the protection of the Grand Signior, he anſwered in a ſeeming rage; "I "laugh at the horns of the Grand Signior; I am here "Grand Signior myſelf, and will teach you to reſpect "me as you ought. I know already what ſort of "people you are, added he. I have conſulted my "cup, and have found by it, that you are thoſe of "whom one of our prophets has ſaid, There would "come Franks in diſguiſe, who, by little preſents, and "by a ſoothing and inſinuating behaviour, would paſs "every where; examine the ſtate of the country; go "to make a report of it, and afterwards returning with "a great number of Franks, conquer and exterminate

" us all. But I will take care of that: you muſt quit " the barque without delay."

The father having at his return repeated this diſcourſe, it was reſolved not to quit the barque but with life. However, early the next morning Mr. Norden waited on Baram, accompanied by the prieſt, who ſpoke the language, and by the Jew. The Caſhif ſoon appeared, repeated his accuſtomed cant, and offered to conduct them to the cataract; but on their letting him know, that they had no mind to go thither, he demanded large preſents. Upon this Mr. Norden aſked him by what right he formed ſuch pretenſions; and what he meant by playing thus with his oath, and breaking the bargain he had made? Enraged at theſe reproaches, he ſwore that he would make them know who he was, and threatened to take away their lives; to which Mr. Norden only anſwered, that they ſhould be able to take their meaſures, and quitting him without taking leave, they went immediately to the Scorbatſchie.

This officer, who was as great a villain as the other, treated them with much the ſame language. On which Mr. Norden roſe up, and raiſing his voice, cried, " Tell him if they have taken their reſolution, we have " taken ours, and will wait the iſſue with our weapons " in our hands." Upon this he went to the door, and the father, as well as the Jew, having interpreted what he ſaid, followed him cloſely.

As they were croſſing the market-place, in order to haſten to the barque, Baram Caſhif, who was there, ſent for Mr. Norden, and being then in his good humour, made him ſit down by him, and, ſaluting him, ſaid he muſt clothe him like an Emir, and make him other preſents, which he mentioned. Mr. Norden promiſed to content him, provided he would immediately give orders for their departure, and the bargain ſeemed to be again concluded. As no agreement was yet made with the Schorbatſchie, Mr. Norden propoſed to return to him; but the Caſhif deſired that

the others might be ſent, and that he would ſtay with him till they came back.

This being agreed to, they were no ſooner alone, than the Caſhif ordered ſome dates and water to be brought, and treating Mr. Norden with great civility, made him underſtand, that he ſhould give him ſome of his ſhirts, with ſome coffee, rice, &c. This he promiſed by ſigns, and in broken Arabic. The Caſhif, filled with joy, renewed his careſſes; but it was viſible they were owing to his avarice. Both the Arabs and the Turks are accuſtomed to put what they eſteem moſt valuable in the folds of their turban, and thoſe of their ſcarf, and Baram Caſhif wanting to know whether he did not carry ſomething valuable about him, began with filling his pockets with dates; and then putting ſome into his ſcarf, and his turban, took care to ſearch, at the ſame time, whether he could not find any thing in them: but Mr. Norden had wiſely taken every thing out before he left the barque, ſo that he loſt both his labour and the dates.

In the mean while the prieſt and the Jew returned, without being able to prevail on the Schorbatſchie; on which Baram Caſhif told Mr. Norden, that if he would ſtay with him and let the others go, he would treat him as his own brother; but that gentleman, after thanking him for his offer, entreated him to finiſh the affair, and give orders for his departure. To this he conſented, and, taking them to his houſe, made freſh propoſals; and it was agreed that he ſhould have Mr. Norden's ſuit of clothes, a pair of piſtols, ſome powder and ball, and fifteen ſevillans; that the ſame ſum ſhould be given to the Schorbatſchie, that, beſides, the Caſhif ſhould receive thirty-five ſevillans for the hire of the barque, ſix ſevillans ſhould be given to the man who was to command it, and three to the ſailors. On theſe conditions they were to ſail in the night, that they might do it with the greater ſafety. The Caſhif then told them, he would go and make the Schorbat-

ſchie hearken to reaſon, and afterwards come to the barque, to ſee the preſents deſigned him.

Our travellers now haſted to the barque, where they immediately cauſed every thing they had bargained for to be taken out of their cheſts, to prevent their being obliged to open them in the preſence of the Caſhif, taking care to conceal all their houſhold utenſils, with a thouſand uſeful trifles, and to expoſe nothing to the ſight but weapons, of which they had a pretty good ſtock.

In about an hour Baram Caſhif arrived, and ordering every body on the bank of the Nile to retire, entered the barque, and, having ſeen his preſent, appeared well ſatisfied. He deſired that it might be concealed from the Schorbatſchie, who was coming, and kept till it grew dark, when he would ſend one of his ſlaves for it. But the Schorbatſchie, on his arrival, appeared diſſatisfied with the bargain, and refuſing to accept of a piece of common red cloth, ſufficient to make him a ſuit of clothes, retired diſcontented. Baram Caſhif, however, bid them fear nothing, for he would ſtand to his agreement. Who would not have thought that he now acted ſincerely? eſpecially as the man who had the care of the boat, came, and ſaid he had received orders from his maſter to ſail, and for that purpoſe put freſh merchandiſes on board. Yet at night no ſlave came for the preſent; and this rendering Mr. Norden uneaſy, he ſent the Jew and the Aga's brother to ſee what occaſioned this delay; but after ſtaying till paſt midnight, they returned with the melancholy news that the Caſhif ſwore to deſtroy them; and talked of having cheſts of gold before he would ſuffer them to eſcape.

The Effendi then came to the barque, and told them he was extremely concerned at the ſad circumſtances in which he ſaw them. "You have to do with devils, "and not men, ſaid he. I have the unhappineſs to "be obliged to live with them. I maintain myſelf in

" my poſt becauſe I can write, which they cannot do
" themſelves: but I abhor the manner in which they
" treat ſtrangers, whence no barque any longer comes
" here. I know not what it is that reſtrains them with
" reſpect to you: but, before your arrival, it was de-
" bated in the Divan, whether they ſhould get rid of
" you immediately, and in what manner they ſhould
" ſet about it. After great diſputes, it was agreed to
" conduct you into the deſarts, under the pretence of
" accompanying you to the cataract. What they
" would have done with you when there, the prophet
" only knows: but all they ſaid about a war, were lies
" intended to make you fall into the ſnare. Believe
" me, you have to do with the greateſt villain on
" earth. He has killed nine men with his own hand,
" who were his friends, and ſome of the moſt power-
" ful men of the country. It is this that has rendered
" him ſo formidable; he ſupports his power by the
" preſents, he makes to ſome, out of what he plunders
" from others. He might be really a Caſhif, did he
" but dare to go to Tſchirche, to aſk for the Caffetan;
" but he is deterred by the complaints often carried
" thither againſt him; thus he rather chuſes to ſend
" thither ſome ſilly young fellow, in whoſe name he
" governs. Beſides, added the Effendi, he is drunk
" every night;—he then reſembles a madman—he lies
" with his own daughters—In ſhort, he is the vileſt
" wretch I ever knew."

Thoſe in the barque heard this dreadful character, without anſwering a word; and only aſked his advice, which he was unable to give them. In this uncertainty he left them, and they continued in it the whole night.

At break of day a ſlave from the Caſhif came to tell the commander of the barque, that he muſt throw all the baggage of the Franks on ſhore, and oblige them to quit the veſſel; but they immediately informed him, in the preſence of the ſlave, that he ſhould not touch any thing that belonged to them; that they were reſolved not to quit the barque, but with life; and that

the firſt perſon who ſhould attempt to force them out ſhould be laid dead on the ſpot. They promiſed, however, to talk with the Caſhif, and Mr. Norden had the courage to go immediately to his houſe, attended by the interpreters.

They were received with great coldneſs, and on their mentioning his ſecond agreement, he flew into a rage, crying, Get you gone, get you gone. They did not ſtay to have this brutal compliment repeated; but went to the Schorbatſchie, to know from him what they had to expect. They arrived at his houſe before he was up, and found many people aſſembled there, all of whom were eager to talk with them, and to aſk for ſomething. The prieſt who was with them, repeated what they ſaid, and their ridiculous requeſts gave them occaſion more than once to laugh. One of their Saints who had ſilently ſtood in a corner of the room, at length approached them, and being offended at their good humour charitably told them in lingua Franca, which he ſpoke very ill, that they ought not to be ſo merry, ſince it would better ſuit them to weep; for before the day was ended, they would, perhaps, have loſt all their gaity. But this council made no great impreſſion upon them. This man lately come from Algiers, and was half naked; but his pretended character of being a Saint, occaſioned his being treated with great veneration.

The Schorbatſchie at laſt appearing, they wiſhed him a good day, which he coldly returned. Mr. Norden then deſired the interpreter to aſk him, whether they might hope to come to an agreement with him. "Give me, ſaid he, five or ſix purſes, and then I will "talk to you. I muſt ſee your cheſts. I will go this "day to the barque; you ſhall open them for me, and "if they are not filled with gold, you ſhall ſhare with me what they contain." To this, Mr. Norden reſolutely replied, "that he ſhould not ſee the inſide of his "cheſts, nor break them open; bnt that he might "depend upon it, that the perſon to whom he gave

" the commiſſion would not return to tell him what he " had found there." To this menace the Schorbatſchie gave no anſwer; but after looking earneſtly at Mr. Norden, turned towards his own people, and directed his diſcourſe to them.

They had now heard enough to form a judgment of what they were to expect, and therefore retired, in order to return to their barque: but the Caſhif being ſitting in grand council in the market-place, and ſeeing them paſs by, called to them; and on their proceeding, ſtill ſent a ſlave after them, on which they went up to him. He was now no longer the ſame man; he received them with an air of gaiety, and, having made them ſit down by his ſide, aſked Mr. Norden why he would not give him a cheſt of gold, ſince he had ſo many. Mr. Norden inſtantly aroſe, in order to go away, without making him any anſwer; but the Caſhif, taking hold of his clothes, obliged him to ſit down again, and aſking why he did not anſwer him, he told him that he was a pitiful fellow, without honour or conſcience, and therefore he would have nothing farther to ſay to him. The interpreter heſitating, Baram, perceived it, and ordered him with a ſtern look to tell him all, without omitting a ſingle word, which he having done, Baram, inſtead of being offended, as was expected, ſet up a laugh; and Mr. Norden added, that he had offered him too much already; but if he would let him go immediately, he would not regard what was paſt; and would add ſome little preſents that would be agreeable to him. This the Caſhif ſeemed to reliſh; he loaded him with careſſes, and called him his brother; demanded ſome purſes for himſelf, and others for the Schorbatſchie, and, in ſhort, formed other pretenſions, to which Mr. Norden made no anſwer: but being preſſed to ſpeak, he told him that they had no more than was neceſſary for their voyage, and would give him nothing; that it was true he had made him promiſes, but as the Caſhif had broke his word, he was diſpenſed with from keeping his word with him; that he ſhould have nothing but by

force, and that he was going to the barque, to put every thing in order for his reception. The Caſhif heard this with patience, and only anſwered, that he had force enough to deſtroy them, was he diſpoſed to it. "We know it, cried Mr. Norden; we were informed of your evil diſpoſition before we left Aſſouan, and there took the precaution of having the "inſults we might ſuffer here revenged, in caſe we "ſhould be unable to revenge ourſelves."

Upon this he aroſe and returned to the barque, with a firm reſolution of quitting it no more. But he had not been there half an hour before the Caſhif ſent for the interpreter, on which the Jew went; and ſoon returned with the news, that he begged they would ſend him the preſents that had been agreed upon, and alſo ſome other trifles, on which conditions he promiſed to let them depart immediately, and to accompany them himſelf to a certain diſtance. Though little credit could be given to what he ſaid, the preſents were ſent, and alſo the money for himſelf and the Schorbatſchie.

About noon the Caſhif came to the boat with two bullies and ordered every thing to be got ready for ſailing; when aſking Mr. Norden if he was now ſatisfied with him, he replied, that he could not have thought he would have been ſo honeſt, and that he was at preſent very much inclined in his favour. This was ſaying too much. "Since you are favourably inclined "towards me ſaid, he, give me ſomething." They appeared a little reluctant; but he would not give over his demand, and it was neceſſary to part with ſeveral other trifles. The worſt of it was, that he had never done aſking, and had no ſooner got one thing than he wanted another, and would not leave diſputing for it, till he got it.

In the mean while they had proceeded a good way, and night coming on, the Caſhif landed at Keravaſchie, and ordering his ſupper to be got ready, eat it in the open air, at a little diſtance from the barque. In the mean while a ſervant of one of the prieſts, who had

been robbed of a riding coat, went to make his complaint to the Caſhif, who by this time began to grow drunk. He fell into a violent paſſion, roſe up, drew his ſabre, and ſwore that whoever had committed the robbery ſhould forfeit his life. The coat was ſoon found, and the ſlave who had ſtole it threw himſelf at his feet, to implore his mercy; our travellers alſo entreated for him, and he was happily pardoned; for had Baram killed him, they would have been obliged to pay him for the loſs; this was the leaſt that could have happened from it: they were therefore much concerned at the ſervants having carried his complaint to the Caſhif without their knowledge: but he did not foreſee the conſequence.

Baram Caſhif, before he left the barque had obliged them to pay two ſevillans to each of the bullies he had brought with him. He himſelf had ſqueezed them the whole day, and had left off aſking only becauſe he ſaw nothing more to aſk for: but now he ſeemed deſirous to return to the charge; and ſent them word that he deſigned to come to the barque to take his leave of them: but the brother of the Aga of Aſſouan, who ſupped with him, prevented it; by repreſenting that he had ſqueezed them ſo much, that they were provoked beyond all patience, and that he would not be anſwerable for his life, if he attempted ſo much as to enter the barque again.

Notwithſtanding the Caſhif was drunk, theſe repreſentations had their effect, and he contented himſelf with ſending his wiſhes of a good voyage; but let them know, that he had juſt received intelligence, that his Sultana was brought to bed, and deſired they would be ſo good as to make the child a preſent of ſome ſilver baubles. They promiſed to ſend them, but took care not to do it till they were ready to depart. At laſt they found themſelves happily eſcaped out of the hands of this tyrant, and congratulated each other on being quit at ſo cheap a rate. As they had no wind, they

had recourſe to their oars, which, with the aſſiſtance of the current, made them advance ſo faſt, that they ſoon loſt ſight of the fire Baram Caſhif had kindled, in order to warm himſelf.

In this paſſage from Aſſouan to Derri, there is the greateſt difficulty in getting proviſions: nothing is to be found but a few ſheep and goats that are extremely lean, and the latter good for nothing: poultry is very ſcarce, and conſequently eggs are not common: with reſpect to bread, the natives grind no more corn than they want for their own immediate uſe, and the cakes they make of it are not above half baked. But what is ſtill more diſagreeable, when you purchaſe any thing, its being ſold, delivered, and paid for, does not make a perfect ſale. Mr. Norden's valet had bought a ſheep near Dendour, which one of the natives brought to the barque, in order to ſell it. After much wrangling, he left it for two ſevillans, and went away with the money: but in half an hour's time returned to demand his ſheep, offering to give back what he had received. Exaſperated at this proceeding, they refuſed to break the bargain; beſides, they wanted the ſheep. But the man being obſtinate, made a terrible outcry, which brought ſo many of his countrymen about him, that to avoid coming to extremities, they complied with his requeſt, on condition of his returning the ſevillans. The comedy did not end here: a moment after he returned with the ſame ſheep, for which he aſked three ſevillans. They would have turned him away; but when he ſaw that they did not ſeem to want his ſheep, he pretended to oblige them to take it for the price they had given him at firſt. They heſitated at this. At laſt he came to an agreement, and the ſheep continued with them for one ſevillan and ſome meaſures of corn, which was however, leſs in value than what was given him at firſt.

The people from Aſſouan to Derri, not being accuſtomed to croſs the Nile in canoes, have different ways of ſupplying the want of them. Two of theſe

have been already mentioned, and Mr. Norden here gives a third. They ſit aſtride upon a great piece of wood, placing their clothes on their heads in the form of a turban, and then making uſe of their arms as oars, croſs the river without much difficulty. This method is in uſe where there are even more crocodiles than here, and yet no accidents happen from it. And thoſe who bathe every day in the Nile make uſe of no precautions againſt that animal.

In ſixty days they arrived at Morrada, the port above the cataract, the people, as they paſſed, being every where ſurprized at finding that they were ſtill alive, and at ſeeing that they had eſcaped from Aſſouan.

We left Aſſouan on the 27th of January, but a cold and contrary wind obliged us to lie by about a league below the town. There is ſuch a ſcarcity of fuel in theſe parts, that the natives are obliged to burn either the reeds of Indian wheat, or cow-dung dried; the latter is the fuel generally uſed by the poor throughout Egypt. On the 8th of February we arrived at Kept, where I ſtaid two days to view the antiquities. One of the Mahometans, to whom I had a letter to deliver, came to me the laſt day, and took me to ſee ſome things I had not yet obſerved. On our return, he conducted me to the boat, and having earneſtly entreated me not to depart till I had heard farther from him, ſome time after very kindly ſent me a preſent of a kid, and two baſkets of bread.

On the 11th we arrived at the port of Badjoura, and went to the convent of Furſhout, after which I waited on the great Sheik, whom I found ſitting with a Mahometan Prieſt, and eating beans boiled in the ſhells. I delivered him my letter from the Sheik of Etfou, and he aſked me, ſmiling, whether the people attempted to detain us and if they tore my book; adding, "they "thought you were in ſearch of treaſures."

On the 12th we arrived at Girge, and went to the convent. The Bey was encamped to the ſouth of the city; but when I went to the camp, he was at his ha-

rem in town with his ladies; but he ſoon came on horſeback, attended by about eight ſlaves; and on his arrival, the muſic played in the camp for about a quarter of an hour. I went to his magnificent tent, and found him ſitting on a ſopha in the corner, on the right hand as one enters. He was a perſon of a fine countenance with a graceful ſmile; but when he pleaſed he could aſſume a ſtern and majeſtic look, and I thought his manner more nearly reſembled that of our great men in Europe, than any I had ſeen in this part of the world. I delivered him a letter from Oſman Bey, and my ſervant placed my preſent before him, conſiſting of a dozen boxes of French prunellas, and a fine covered glaſs vaſe for ſherbet. He gave me a very civil reception, deſired me to ſit, and ordered coffee. On my requeſting the favour of ſome letters to the governors under him, he enquired where we had been, and ſmiling, aſked, if I had found any treaſures. I then went to the Secretary's tent, where the letters being written, I returned with them to the Bey, and he put his ſeal to them.

We then proceeded to El-Berbi, where, as I have already ſaid, was a temple, and this place I ſuppoſe to have been the ancient Abydus. On my returning to the boat, in order to depart, I was informed they had taken away the oars, demanding a duty of about fifteen ſhillings; but on my ſending to the Governor, I found they had aſked for three times as much as their due. On the 14th we arrived at Akmim, where I went to the convent, and afterwards I waited on the Prince, who gave me ſome letters I wanted on the way to Cairo; and on the 17th landed at Raigny, where the religious Sheik of the famous ſerpent Heredy was at the ſide of the river to receive us. I carried the Prince of Akmim's letter to the Sheik of the village, who entertained us with a grand collation, and went with us to the grotto of the ſerpent. We aſcended between the rocky mountains for about half a mile, and coming to a place where the valley opens wider, ſaw a building like a

Sheik's burial-place, in which is a large cleft in the rock, out of which the ſerpent is ſaid to come.

On the 20th we came to Meloui, where I waited on the ſardar, with a preſent of Engliſh cutlery ware, and ſome other things. He gave me a very obliging reception, and ſaid he would either go with me himſelf to ſee the temple of Archemounain, to have half the treaſures I found, or he would ſend his Secretary. The next day I went to the town, when the cavalcade of the Sardar going towards Archemounain, with the Caia, attended by a great number of people, with kettle-drums and other muſic, I followed riding on a very indifferent aſs. Having viewed the temple in company with the Secretary, I returned to the Caia, who was ſeated on an eminence on a carpet and cuſhions, with the ſtandard by him, that is carried before him when he goes out in this manner. I ſat down by his ſide, and coffee was brought. After this refreſhment, I returned to the boat.

On the 24th we proceeded forwards, and the next day approached two villages, Sheik Faddle on the eaſt, and Benimſar on the weſt. Theſe villages had a diſpute about an iſland ſituated between them, and applying to a great Bey to decide the difference, he not being willing to diſoblige either of them, bid them fight it out. This happening to be the day of battle, we heard the firing of guns, and after that a noiſe and ſhouting, as if for a victory. Soon we perceived people throwing themſelves into the water from many parts of the iſland, and ſwimming to the eaſt, while others followed, firing at them or pelting them with ſtones. We plainly ſaw that we were now in the midſt of a battle, and that it was too late to retire; we therefore prepared our arms to defend ourſelves, in caſe we ſhould be attacked. Obſerving that the cheif fire was from the eaſtern ſide, the battle being on the weſt, where they were engaged, we were determined to go on the eaſt, under the cover of their fire. Great numbers we obſerved ſwimming over to the eaſt with

their clothes and pikes in their hands; and one of them laying hold on our boat, to reſt himſelf, we were afraid the people on the weſt ſide would fire on us, for protecting their enemies; for the weſtern people had gained the victory, and moſt of them having retired from the iſland, diſplayed their ſtandard on the other ſide. The women on the eaſt now came to the bank of the river to look for their huſbands, clapping their hands, and beating their breaſts. Mean while the village of Sheik Faddle on the eaſt, manned a boat, put it out into the river, and firing at the other ſide, the fire was returned. We were in great danger in paſſing by this boat. But we were no ſooner below the village, than we judged we were ſafe; however, going out to ſee what paſſed, I perceived a ball, which was doubtleſs fired at us, fall into the water, only three or four yards from the boat. Thus I ſaw this engagement, which perhaps was not much inferior to ſome of the little battles of the Greeks, deſcribed by Thucidydes with ſuch pomp and elegance.

On the 26th I went aſhore at Beneſuief, and afterwards paſſed by Bouche, which I ſuppoſe to be Ptolemais. To this place people uſually come, in order to go to the monaſteries of St. Anthony and St. Paul, in the deſarts near the Red ſea; the former being the founder of the monaſtic, and the latter of the hermits life. They were cotemporaries, and ſome ſay lived in the time of the Emperor Philip, and others in that of Decius. The convent of St. Anthony is a large encloſure, the entrance of which is by a window, as at mount Sinai; there are a great number of palm, olive, and other trees within the encloſure, and the monks have every thing within themſelves, and particularly a tower for a ſtore-houſe, defended by a bridge, as a ſecurity, in caſe the Arabs ſhould break in upon them. The convent has alſo three ſprings of water that run into it, but the water is a little ſaltiſh. In the convent of St. Paul there are twenty-five monks in all, who are not permitted either to ſmoke or to eat meat in that

building; but the monks do not think they break their rule, if they do it without the convent, which is what they commonly practiſe. Their uſual diet is olives, cheeſe brought from Faiume, and ſalt fiſh, with which they are ſupplied from the Red ſea; but they are ſaid to eat only once a day, except on Saturdays and Sundays. It is probable, that in theſe convents are the only bells uſed in all Egypt.

On my leaving Bouche, we ſtill proceeded down the river, and on the 27th of February reached old Cairo; having ſpent exactly three months in going above the cataract, and down again.

The river Nile, on which I ſpent ſo much time in ſearch of other curioſities, may itſelf be conſidered as one of the greateſt curioſities in Egypt. The north winds beginning to blow about the latter end of May, drive the clouds formed by the vapours of the Mediterranean ſouthward as far as the mountains of Ethiopia, which ſtopping their courſe, they condenſe, and fall in violent rains. The ſame wind alſo drives in the water from the ſea, and keeps back that in the river in ſuch a manner as to raiſe the waters above. The Egyptians, and eſpecially the Coptis, are fond of an opinion that the Nile begins to riſe every year on the ſame day; and indeed it generally begins on the 18th or 19th of June. By accounts of its riſe for three years, I find it roſe the firſt ſix days from two to five inches every day; for the twelve next days, from five to ten inches, and thus continues riſing till towards the time it arrives at the height of ſixteen pikes, or cubits, when the canal of Cairo is cut: after this it continues riſing ſix weeks longer; but then the riſe is only from three to five inches a day; for ſpreading over the land, and entering the canals, though more water may deſcend than before, yet its riſe is not ſo great; for after that canal is opened, the others are alſo opened at fixed times, and thoſe that water the lower grounds, the laſt. Theſe canals are carried along the higheſt parts of the country, that the water may from them be conveyed to

all the lower parts. It is remarkable, that all other rivers, being ſupplied from rivulets, the ground is loweſt near the banks; but as no water falls into the Nile in its paſſage through this country, and as it is neceſſary that this river ſhould overflow the land, it appears that the country of Egypt is lower at a diſtance from the Nile, than it is near it; and in moſt parts it appears to have a gradual deſcent from the Nile to the foot of the hills, that may be ſaid to begin at thoſe ſandy parts, a mile or two diſtant from them, which being gentle aſcents, they are never overflowed.

The plentiful riſing of the Nile is the bleſſing of Egypt. When it begins to riſe, the plague begins to ſtop; and the benefit of the inundation is in proportion to the height to which the water riſes. Eighteen pikes or cubits is eſteemed but an indifferent Nile, twenty is middling, and twenty-two is a good Nile, beyond which it ſeldom riſes.

[The authors who have given deſcriptions of Egypt, contented with ſaying that the fertility of the country is ſolely derived from the annual inundation of the Nile, have, by their ſilence, given occaſion to think, that Egypt is a paradiſe on earth, where they have no need of ploughing the ground, or ſowing it, all being produced, as it were, ſpontaneouſly after draining of the waters; but they are greatly miſtaken; and I dare aſſert from what I have ſeen, that there is ſcarce a country where the land has greater need of culture than in Egypt.]

Where the land lies higher than the inundation riſes, the people are forced by neceſſity to have various methods of raiſing the water. At Roſetta and Damiata, where the Nile is not much below the ſurface of the earth, this is done by making a hole, and fixing in it a wheel made with boxes round its circumference, which receive the water, and, as the wheel goes round, the boxes empty at the top into a trough made for that purpoſe. Where the water is too deep to be raiſed in this manner, they put a cord round the wheel, which

reaches down to the water; to it they tie earthen jars, which fills with water, as it goes round, and empty themſelves at the top in the ſame manner, being turned by oxen. Where the banks are high, the moſt common way is to make a baſon in the ſide of them, and fixing a pole in the ground forked at the top, they place another pole by an axle to the top of it; to one end of this laſt pole they tie a heavy ſtone, and at the other end, a cord and a leathern bucket. Two men draw down the bucket into the water, and the weight brings it up, the men directing it, and turning the water into the baſon; from this baſon it frequently runs into another, whence it is raiſed with the ſame labour; thus, in the upper part of Egypt, I have ſeen five, one higher than the other.

There are no ſhell fiſh in the Nile, except a kind of muſcle in the canal near Faiume, nor perhaps any ſort of fiſh that are in the rivers of Europe, except ells and mullets, which laſt, with ſome others, at certain ſeaſons come from the ſea. Of thoſe that are moſt eſteemed, are the ray, which reſembles a carp, but is ſaid to be ſometimes 200 pounds weight; the moſt delicate fiſh is the keſher, which is only caught towards Upper Egypt; it has a long narrow ſnout, and ſo ſmall a mouth, that one would imagine it can only live by ſucking the juice out of the weeds, or the ground. In upper Egypt is a ſmall fiſh called gurgur, about a foot long; its head is armed with a ſtrong bone; the fin on the back, and thoſe on each ſide under the gills are likewiſe armed with bone; the inhabitants believe that this fiſh kills the crocodile. It is probable what Pliny erroneouſly calls the dolphin, which he ſays, has a ſharp point on the back, with which getting under the crocodile's belly, it wounds him. The hippopotamus, is ſaid to have been ſeen about Damiata; but it ſeems to be a native of Ethiopia in the upper parts of the Nile, and ſeldom comes down into Egypt.

It is generally obſerved, that the crocodile has no

tongue; but he has a fleſhy ſubſtance reſembling one, fixed all along to the lower jaw, which may ſerve to turn his meat. He has two long teeth at the end of his lower jaw, anſwering to which are two holes above to receive them. The upper jaw is only moveable. Theſe animals are very quick-ſighted; for on my making a circuit to come behind them, I always obſerved they began to move gently into the water, as ſoon as I came in ſight of them: There being a kind of channel in the head behind each eye, by which the view of objects are conveyed to them from behind. They make a hole about two feet deep in the ſand, above the water, in which they lay their eggs and cover them over, often going to the place, and taking care of their young, which, when hatched, immediately run into the water. They lay about fifty eggs, nearly of the ſize of thoſe of a gooſe, which are twenty-five or thirty days in hatching. The people ſearch for the eggs with an iron pike, in order to deſtroy them; but I could get no account in Upper Egypt of the ichneumon's deſtroying them, or of his entering by the mouth of the crocodile into his bowels, and killing him. When the crocodile is on land, he is always ſeen on the low banks of ſandy iſlands near the water, with his head towards it, and if he is diſturbed, he walks ſlowly in, and diſappears, by degrees. The people ſay, they cannot take a man ſwimming in the water; but if a man or beaſt ſtands by the river, they at once jump out of the water, and ſeize him with their fore-paws: but if the diſtance be too great, they make a ſpring, and beat down their prey with their tails. The moſt common way of killing them is, I believe by ſhooting them in their bellies, where their ſkin is ſoft, and not like their backs, armed with ſcales. The natives ſay, that they make ſome animal cry at a diſtance, and when a crocodile comes out, they thruſt a ſpear, to which a rope is tied, into his body; then letting him retire into the water to ſpend himſelf, they afterwards drag him out, run a pole into his mouth, and leaping upon his back, tie his jaws together.

Egypt, extending on both the banks of the Nile, is but of a ſmall breadth, though it is 560 miles in length, without reckoning the windings of the river. The climate is very hot in ſummer, from the ſandy ſoil, and its ſituation between two ranges of mountains; and even in winter the ſun ſhines with great heat in the middle of the day, though the nights and mornings are very cold. The ſharpeſt time is about the beginning of February. Near the ſea are ſometimes great rains from November to March; but about Cairo, they have ſeldom any rain but in December, January, and February, and thoſe but ſmall ſhowers for a quarter or half an hour. In Upper Egypt they have ſometimes a little rain; but I was informed that it had been known to rain but twice very hard for about an hour in eight years: though it rained much towards Akmim when I was in thoſe parts. The weſt and the north-weſt winds are thoſe that bring the rain. The ſouth-eaſt wind is ſometimes ſo exceſſive hot as to reſemble the air of an oven; and people are forced to retire from it into their vaults, where the beſt defence againſt it is to ſhut themſelves cloſe up. The wind generally begins about the middle of March, and continues till May. The north, anciently called the Eteſian wind, begins to blow in May, refreſhes the air, and renders the heats of ſummer ſupportable, bringing with it health and happineſs.

Egypt naturally produces few vegetables, the heat and inundations deſtroying moſt of the tender plants; but where the Nile has overflowed, and the land is plowed and ſown, it yields a great increaſe. Egypt, which was formerly the granary of the Roman Empire, ſtill produces conſiderable quantities of corn, as wheat, rice, barley, beans, and other kinds of pulſe; with which the neighbouring countries are ſupplied; beſides ſugar-canes, of which ſome ſugar is made; and likewiſe figs, dates, melons, cucumbers, and other vegetables, which the people eat much in the hot weather, as a cooling food. Upper Egypt ſupplies moſt part of

Europe with ſenna, and in the ſandy grounds coloquintida grows wild. But as Egypt has no graſs, they ſupply its place by ſowing the land with clover, without plowing.

Egypt ſeems to have few or no trees that have not been tranſmitted from other countries. Thoſe in the gardens are doubtleſs exotics, as the caſſia, oranges, lemons, apricots, pomegranates, a delicate fruit called the moſeh, and the cous or cream-trees; the cotton-tree alſo flouriſhes here. The following trees are moſt common in Egypt: the ſount, which bears a key or pod, uſed inſtead of bark, in tanning of leather; the tamariſk; Pharaoh's fig, which is the ſycamore of the ancients; the palm or date-tree, and another ſpecies of the palm, called the dome-tree.

There are no great variety of four-footed beaſts in Egypt. The cows are very large and red, with ſhort horns; the natives make uſe of their oxen to turn the wheels with which they draw water, and to plow the land. They have alſo large buffaloes, which are ſo impatient of heat, that they will ſtand in the water, with only their noſes out to breathe; and when they have not this convenience, will lie all day like ſwine, wallowing in mud and water. As to the beaſts of burthen, it has been often obſerved how ſurpriſingly the camel is fitted for travelling in hot countries, where they will go eight days without water. Of this I have been a witneſs. They can live on ſuch little ſhrubs as theſe deſarts produce, without graſs, and are ſatisfied with very little corn, which travellers commonly carry ground into meal, and tempering it with water, cram them with large balls. They travel about two miles or two miles and a half in an hour, and I have rode on them ſixteen hours without ſtopping. A ſmaller ſort, called hayjin, pace and gallop very ſwiftly, and it is ſaid they will carry a perſon a hundred miles in a day. The fleſhy foot of the camel is admirably fitted for travelling on the hot ſands, which would deſtroy the hoof. The Arabs do not kill the camel for food; but

the Turks eat the fleſh of the yong ones as a moſt delicate diſh: but will not permit it to be eaten by Chriſtians, probably that the breed may not be deſtroyed.

The horſes, eſpecially thoſe of Upper Egypt, are very fine, but their necks are too ſhort. They walk well, never trot, and gallop with great ſpeed, turn ſhort, ſtop in a moment, and are extremely tractable: but are only fit to walk in travelling, and cannot perform long journies. In the heat of ſummer, when there is no graſs, they are fed with chopped ſtraw. When they go in proceſſion, their trappings are exceeding fine, and ornamented with ſilver, or ſilver gilt. In Cairo, all but the great ride on aſſes; theſe are a fine large breed, and there are ſaid to be 40,000 of them in that city.

Antelopes are common about Alexandria, and in other places; they have longer horns, and are more beautiful than in other countries. The foxes and hares are of a light colour; but the latter are not very common: the tyger, and the dubber, or hyæna, are very rare: however, there are ſome near Alexandria.

Among the winged tribe, the oſtrich deſerves the preference. It is called in Arabic Ter Gimel, or the camel bird; becauſe in its head, neck, and walk, it reſembles a camel. This bird is common on the mountains ſouth-weſt of Alexandria: its fat is ſold by the Arabs, and uſed as an ointment for all cold tumours, the palſy and the rheumatiſm. There is here a kind of large domeſtic hawk of a brown colour, with a very fine eye: theſe frequent the tops of houſes, and one may ſee the pigeons and theſe hawks ſtanding cloſe together, but though they are not birds of prey, they eat fleſh where they find it: the natives never kill them, and as well as their anceſtors ſeem to have a veneration both for theſe birds and for cats. They have a large white bird, with black wings, ſhaped like a raven but very ugly, and not at all ſhy: they live much in the ſame manner as the hawk, and are called Pharaoh's hens. The beautiful white bird called by

the Europeans the field hen, reſembles a ſtork; but is not half ſo big, and is ſeen about the fields like tame fowl.

The Ter Chaous, or the Meſſenger Bird, would be eſteemed very beautiful, were it leſs common; it is near as big as a dove, it is ſpeckled, and has on the top of his head a tuft of feathers, which ſpreads when it alights on the ground; but it is a very foul feeder. On the iſlands in the Nile I ſaw great numbers of the Ibis, which is held in great veneration by the ancient Egyptians, becauſe theſe birds, it is ſaid, deliver the country from multitudes of ſerpents, that breed in the ground after the Nile retires. They reſemble the crane, are of a greyiſh colour, with the wings and tail black. There is alſo a very beautiful bird of the crane kind, called the Belſery. In Egypt are likewiſe a great number of wild-geeſe of ſeveral kinds, wild-ducks, quails, woodcocks, ſnipes, and pigeons; and among the birds of prey they have eagles and vultures.

Among the reptiles of Egypt, the vipers, which are much eſteemed in phyſic, are yellowiſh, of the colour of the ſand in which they live, and are of two ſpecies; one with a kind of horns ſomewhat reſembling thoſe of ſnails, but of a horny ſubſtance. Here are ſeveral ſorts of yellow lizards. The Worral is ſaid to be affected by muſic; but having procured one alive, I have reaſon to believe that this is not true: this animal, which is of the lizard kind, is four feet long, eight inches broad, and has a forked tongue, which it puts out like a ſerpent, but it has no teeth. It lives on flies and lizards, and is a harmleſs animal. It frequents the grottos and caverns in the mountains on the weſt of the Nile, where it ſleeps in the winter, and is only found during the hotteſt ſeaſons.

The natives of Egypt are now a very indolent people, who delight in ſitting ſtill and in hearing tales; indeed they appear to have been always more fit for a quiet, than an active life; this may be in a great meaſure owing to the heat of the country, by which they are en-

ervated. They are alſo miſchievous and envious, which keeps them from uniting and ſetting up for themſelves. The Mahometan inhabitants are either original natives, who live in the villages, or of the Arab race. The latter are devided into thoſe who are alſo ſettled in the villages, and are generally an honeſt people, and thoſe who live under tents; theſe laſt are called Bedoui, and chiefly ſubſiſt on the cattle they graze, which are principally camels and goats, that feed on ſmall ſhrubs. The Turks, who are thus named to diſtinguiſh them from the natives of the country, and the Arabs, are thoſe ſent by the Grand Signior, and the ſlaves. The governing party is taken from among them and their deſcendants. Theſe are the moſt covetous of money, and moſt deſirous of power: they diſtinguiſh themſelves from the others by what is ſtrictly the Turkiſh dreſs.

Many of the children in the country go naked all the year round, as almoſt all of them do in ſummer. The moſt ſimple dreſs in Egypt probably reſembles the primitive manner of cloathing, and has ſomething like that of the ancient Egyptians, who were clad in linen with a woollen garment over it. They wear a long ſhirt with wide ſleeves, commonly tied about the middle. Over this the common people have a brown woollen ſhirt, and thoſe of ſuperior rank, a long cloth coat, and then a long blue ſhirt: but in the dreſs of ceremony they wear, inſtead of a blue, a white ſhirt, which in Upper Egypt they put on upon feſtival days, and to pay great viſits: in the lower parts they uſe a garment of the ſame form of black woollen, which is ſometimes left open before, and perſons of rank have them of cloth and furred. Moſt of them wear under all a pair of linen drawers; but do not put the ſhirt into them.

It is almoſt a general cuſtom of the native Arabs and Mahometans to wear a white or brown blanket, and in ſummer a blue and white cotton ſheet: this the Chriſtians alſo conſtantly uſe in their country, wrapping

it round their bodies, over the left ſhoulder, and under the right arm, which is left free. I particularly obſerved, that about Faiume, young people, and the poorer ſort, wore no other covering.

The moſt ſimple Turkiſh dreſs is linen drawers, over which the better ſort wear a pair of others of red cloth down to the ancles, to which are ſewed ſtockings of yellow leather, that come no higher than the ſmall of the leg, and on their feet they have yellow ſlippers: the Chriſtians of the country, with the Janizaries, the Arabs and Egyptians wear ſlippers of red leather, while thoſe of the Jews are blue. Within doors, the Turks and Chriſtians in the city, out of frugality, wear a kind of wooden clogs, ſome of which are made very fine. In theſe countries people are very much diſtinguiſhed by the dreſs of their head and their feet: they are fined if they do not follow the cuſtom; and none but foreign Chriſtians are allowed to wear yellow ſlippers. The other Turkiſh garments are a linen or dimity ſhirt without ſleeves; a ſhort veſt with ſleeves, and over that a long garment of the ſame kind: and in ſummer they wear the long garment, and drawers of the fineſt white callico. A girdle or faſh goes round all but the two outer garments, and in this they ſtick a knife in a ſheath. The dreſs for the head is either the turban, which is here a cap, with a long piece of white muſlin wrapped round it, or a red woollen cap that ſits cloſe to the head, which is worn by the ordinary people among the Arabs and Coptis. Green is a colour worn by none but the relations of Mahomet.

The dreſs of the women is not unlike that of the men, only their drawers and moſt of their other garments are of ſilk; all but their outer dreſs are ſhorter than the mens, and their ſleeves hang down very low. They have a white woollen ſkull-cap; their heads are beſides dreſſed with an embroidered handkerchief, and their hair platted round it. They have a large black veil that comes over all, and ſomething of gauze that covers the face; for as it is eſteemed a great indecency

to ſhew the whole face, they generally cover the mouth and one eye, if not the whole. The ordinary women wear a large blue linen or cotton garment, like a ſurplice; and before their faces hang a kind of bib, joined to their head-dreſs, by a tape over the noſe; the ſpace between being only for the eyes: this gives them a very odd appearance. The women among the vulgar, eſpecially the blacks, alſo wears rings in their noſes, ornamented with glaſs beads; they have large ear-rings, three inches in diameter, that come round the ear, and are adorned with ſtones. They alſo wear ſtone rings on their fingers; thoſe of the ordinary people are of lead; but the better ſort have them of gold. Their bracelets are commonly of wire; but ſome are of gold finely jointed: but there are ſome of plain iron or braſs. The vulgar women paint their lips, and the tip of their chin with blue; and thoſe of ſuperior rank paint their nails and feet yellow, and their eye-lids black.

The Egyptians are but an ill-looking people; many of them are fair when young; but the ſun afterwards renders them ſwarthy. They are very dirty and ſlovenly, eſpecially the Coptis; and as table linen is ſeldom or never uſed by the Egyptians, the Arabs, and the Coptis, I have obſerved the latter, after waſhing their hands when they have eaten, wipe them with the great ſleeves of their ſhirts. Both the Turks and Egyptians are very frugal in their manner of living; the latter ſeldom eat meat, and the tables of the great men are of little expence to them, conſidering the number of their attendants, in which they are very extravagant; for it is common for them to have fifty or ſixty ſlaves, and a great number of other ſervants and dependents, the clothing of their ſlaves is however a great expence, as is alſo their keeping many horſes, it being common for them to have from 50 to 200. Theſe are well managed, and do not ſeem to know their own ſtrength: they feed them with clover when it is in ſeaſon, and at other times with chopped ſtraw; but they give them barley

all the year. They walk finely, never trot, but gallop ſwiftly, turning ſuddenly, and ſtopping in a moment when on full ſpeed.

None but people of the middle rank reſort to coffee-houſes; ſome of theſe have muſic at certain hours of the day; and in others, a man tells ſome hiſtory, or a ſort of Arabian tale, with a very good grace. Tradeſmen often ſend to have their proviſions brought to coffee-houſes, and thoſe who have nothing to do paſs whole days in them.

As to the religion of Egypt, the Coptic is that of the native Chriſtians of the country. The Greeks are very numerous at Cairo and Dalmatia; but there are not ſo many in Roſetto, Alexandria, and the other parts of Egypt, except a few merchants in the principal towns. There are but very few Armenians at Cairo, though they have a church in that city.

The Chriſtian religion would be ſtill at a lower ebb, did not the people find it convenient to have Copti ſtewards to their eſtates, who are well acquainted with all affairs, and are very expert at keeping accounts, which they do in a ſort of Coptic characters, underſtood by nobody elſe. Theſe are the protectors of the Chriſtians in every village. The Coptis, however, ſeem to be the moſt irreverent and careleſs in their devotions of all the Eaſterns. They ſpend the night before Sundays and feſtivals in their churches, and paſs their holidays in ſauntering about; ſitting under their walls in winter, and under ſhady trees in ſummer. They ſeem to think that all religion conſiſts in repeating their long ſervices, and in ſtrictly observing their numerous faſts. Both the prieſts and people are extremely ignorant: the former perform the ſervice in the Coptic language by rote, of which they generally underſtand very little; but they have books of their liturgy, with the Arabic interpretation. The Coptis are ſaid to faſt ſeven months in the year. The children are eſpouſed at ſeven or eight years of age, and conſummate at eleven or twelve, and ſome time before that they are circumciſed. They ea-

ſily procure divorces on account of adultery, long ſickneſs, or diſagreement; and at the parties deſire, the patriarch, or a biſhop, give them leave to marry again; but if this is refuſed, they go to the Cadi, who will do it readily. And this is practiſed by the Chriſtians all over Turkey. The holy oil is conſecrated only once in thirty years by the patriarch, when a whole day is ſpent in performing the ceremony. At baptiſm, they plunge the child three times into the water, and the prieſt then gives it the ſacrament, that is the wine, by dipping the end of his finger in it and putting it to the child's mouth. But if the child happens to be ſick before it is baptized, it is brought to the church: (for they cannot baptize out of it) the infant is laid on a cloth near the font, and the prieſt dipping his hands in the water rubs it all over. If the child is too ill to be brought to church, they then only anoint it, which they ſay is good baptiſm. They give abſolution at extreme unction, and alſo anoint all the people preſent, that the evil ſpirit may not enter into them: but their confeſſions are only general. They uſe the liturgies of St. Baſil, St. Gregory, and St. Cyril; but the firſt being the ſhorteſt, is oftenеſt read. They adminiſter the ſacraments in both kinds on Sundays, Wedneſdays, Fridays, on all their numerous holidays, and every day in Lent. They abſtain from blood and things ſtrangled; pray for the dead, and proſtrate themſelves before pictures; but have no images except a crucifix.

The Coptis bear an implacable hatred to the Greeks, and have generally as little regard for the Europeans, which in a great meaſure proceeds from the endeavours of thoſe of the Romiſh church to make converts of them; they rarely diſtinguiſh between thoſe of different religions, but include all under the name of Franks.

As the Jews were in times of Paganiſm, afraid of drinking wine offered to idols, they ſtill have here all they drink made up by their own people, ſealed up, and ſent to them; this cuſtom they obſerve throughout all

the Eaſt. They have twenty-ſix ſynagogues in Cairo, and one in old Cairo. There is a particular ſect among them who live by themſelves, and have a ſeparate ſynagogue. Theſe are the ancient Eſſenes, and have now the name of Charaims; they are diſtinguiſhed by the regard they pay to the five books of Moſes, which they ſtrictly obſerve according to the letter, not receiving any written traditions.

Education in Egypt conſiſts in little more than learning to read and write, which the Coptis generally learn, together with book-keeping; but few of the Arabs and native Mahometans can read, except thoſe bred to the law, or ſome employ. The ſlaves have the beſt education, for they underſtand Arabic and Turkiſh, and often write both: they are alſo well ſkilled in riding, ſhooting, and throwing the dart, which are eſteemed great accompliſhments. The Turks in particular are deeply tinctured with the doctrine of predeſtination, which not only inſpires them with courage, but makes them ſhow great magnanimity when thrown from the height of power into the moſt miſerable condition; indeed they behave better in adverſity than in proſperity; though when in high ſtations they aſſume a becoming gravity, and confer a favour with a very gracious countenance; but they are greedy of money, and nothing is to be done with them without a bribe. They fancy that the greateſt villanies are expiated as ſoon as they have waſhed their hands and feet. This is their preparation for prayer. The outward appearance of religion is in faſhion among them; they pray in the moſt public places, and when on a viſit will call for water to waſh their hands and feet, and then perform their devotions; and yet their words paſs for nothing, either in relations, promiſes, or profeſſion of friendſhip. Opium is not ſo much uſed by them as formerly, inſtead of which they drink ſpirituous liquors very plentifully at their meals. But theſe are chiefly the great men and the ſoldiers; for drinking ſtrong liquors would be reckoned ſcandalous for people in buſineſs. The

Arabs indeed very rarely drink; and the common people pound the leaves of green hemp, make a ball of it, and ſwallow it, to render them chearful. They have a high opinion of the magic art, and think there is much virtue in charms and taliſmans.

The pooreſt Mahometan thinks himſelf ſuperior to any Chriſtian: yet the Arabs and people of the country, behave with civility; they come and ſit about you, and grow troubleſome by being too obſerving, curious, and inquiſitive. The Turk alſo will be very civil, either to get preſents, or to diſcover your deſigns, in which they are very artful. They behave with the greateſt decorum and reſpect to their ſuperiors, and one of great dignity, readily holds the ſtirrup of another who is ſtill greater. The way of ſaluting as they paſs, is ſtretching out his right hand, bringing it to the breaſt, a little inclining the head. The extraordinary ſalute is kiſſing the hand, and putting it to the head; when they viſit a ſuperior they kiſs his hand; but if he is greatly ſuperior, they kiſs the hem of his garment. When they take any thing from a ſuperior, or that is ſent by a ſuperior, they kiſs it, and put it to their foreheads, and when they promiſe to ſerve or protect you, they put their hands up to their turbans, as much as to ſay, Be it on our heads.

The entertainments of the Turks and Arabs have been often mentioned, and I ſhall only add here, that an Arab prince will often dine in the ſtreet before his door, and call to all that paſs, and even to beggars, crying in the uſual manner, in the name of God; upon which they ſit down, and when they have done retire, ſaying, God be praiſed. With ſuch generoſity and hoſpitality they maintain their intereſt; yet the middling people and the Coptis live but meanly.

It has been already obſerved, that the Mahometans have an extraordinary veneration for ideots, whom they ſuppoſe to be actuated by a divine ſpirit, and conſider them as a kind of ſaints; hence they receive all poſſible marks of reſpect, and are received into all houſes,

and at all tables. In Cairo, they have a large moſque, with buildings adjoining to it, and great revenues for their ſupport. As theſe are recommended by their want of reaſon, ſo are the derviſes by their want of money; poverty being eſteemed by a Turk as a great degree of perfection in every one but himſelf.

A

JOURNEY

TO PALMYRA, OR TEDMOR IN THE DESART.

Containing the manner in which theſe travels were undertaken, their ſetting out from Naples, and after touching at the iſlands in the Archipelago arrive at Byroot, from whence they proceed to Palmyra, with a particular deſcription of that city, by the learned Mr. ROBERT WOOD.

TWO gentlemen*, ſays our author, who more than once had been led by curioſity to travel into Italy, were perſuaded that a voyage properly made to the moſt remarkable places in antiquity, on the coaſt of the Mediterranean, might be of advantage to the public, at the ſame time, that it would afford knowledge and entertainment to themſelves. As I had already ſeen moſt of the places they propoſed to viſit, they did me the honour to communicate their deſign to me, and I with pleaſure accepted their invitation to be one of ſuch an agreeable party. The advantageous idea I had formed of theſe gentlemen, whom I had ſeveral times met in France and Italy, flattered me with all the ſucceſs that could be hoped for from ſuch a voyage. Their intimate friendſhip, their love of antiquities and the fine arts, and their being accuſtomed to travelling, were circumſtances eſſential to our project: circum-

* Theſe learned and ingenious gentlemen were Mr. Dawkins and Mr. Bouverie.

ſtances that ſeldom meet in two perſons, who join to a taſte and leiſure for ſuch reſearches, the neceſſary means of making them, and who have ſufficient health and courage to ſupport the fatigue of doing it.

We agreed that we could not do without a fourth perſon who was in Italy, and whoſe abilities were known to us with reſpect to his ſkill in architecture and drawing. We therefore wrote to him, and engaged him to be one of the party.

We choſe Rome for the place of our rendezvous; and there ſpent the winter together, employing the greateſt part of our time in refreſhing our memories by reading ancient hiſtory, and in perfecting ourſelves in the geography of the countries we propoſed to viſit.

The following ſpring we repaired to Naples, where we found a veſſel we had hired at London, furniſhed with every thing we had thought would be of ſervice to us. We had there a choice collection of the Greek poets and hiſtorians, books of antiquities, and accounts of the beſt voyages and travels. There were alſo on board ſuch mathematical inſtruments as we might have occaſion for, and preſents fit for the Turks of diſtinction and others, to whom we might be obliged to addreſs ourſelves in the courſe of our travels.

In this veſſel we ſet ſail, and viſited moſt of the iſlands of the Archipelago, a part of Greece in Europe, the European and Aſiatic coaſts of the Helleſpont, the Propontis, and the Boſphorus as far as the Black ſea. We penetrated into Aſia Minor, Syria, Phœnicia, Paleſtine, and Egypt, and viſited the moſt remarkable places in each.

The different countries through which we paſſed are known to abound in things of various kinds that merit the attention of the curious traveller; however, it was leſs the preſent than the ancient ſtate of theſe countries that attracted our regard, though each of us was able to gratify his peculiar taſte. It is impoſſible to conſider with indifference, the countries where polite literature and the arts had their birth; where the Captains,

the Orators, the Philoſophers, the Poets, and the Artiſts have, ſo bravely and ſo happily, ſuffered their genius to ſoar, and done honour to human nature.

Circumſtances of climate and ſituation, otherwiſe trivial, become intereſting from their connection with the great men who have celebrated them, and with the illuſtrious actions, which hiſtory and poetry repreſent as being there performed. The life of Miltiades or Leonidas can no where be read with ſuch pleaſure as in the plains of Marathon, or at the ſtreights of Thermopylæ: the Iliad has new beauties on the banks of the Scamander; and the Odyſſey has freſh charms in the country where Ulyſſes travelled, and Homer ſung.

No part of a tour through the eaſt is ſo difficult as a journey to Palmyra: for it is neceſſary to go far from the common road, and where the Grand Signior's protection can be of no ſervice. Aleppo and Damaſcus ſeemed to be the places where we might beſt provide for our convenience and ſafety in this enterpriſe; but having endeavoured in vain to make the firſt of theſe cities, we anchored at Byroot on the coaſt of Syria, and croſſed over mount Libanus, in order to go to Damaſcus.

The Baſſa of that city declared that he could not promiſe us, that either his name or his power would be of any ſervice to us at the place to which we were going. From what he ſaid, and from all that we could learn from others, we found that we muſt be obliged to go to Haſſia, a village four days journey to the north of Damaſcus, and the reſidence of an Aga, whoſe juriſdiction extends to Palmyra. This little village is in the great road by which the caravan of Damaſcus paſſes to Aleppo: it is ſituated near Anti-Libanus, at a few hours diſtance from the river Orontes. The Aga received us with the hoſpitality ſo common in this country among people of all ranks; and though extremely ſurpriſed at our curioſity, he gave us, as well as he was able, the neceſſary inſtructions for gratifying it.

We left Haſſia on the 10th of March, 1751, with an eſcort of the beſt Arab horſemen, belonging to the Aga, armed with guns and long pikes; and having croſſed a barren plain which ſcarcely produces vegetables ſufficient to feed the antelopes we ſaw there, we arrived at Sudud. This is a ſmall village inhabited by Maronite Chriſtians: the houſes are built of bricks dried in the ſun; and the inhabitants cultivate as much land around the village as is barely ſufficient for their ſubſiſtence; they alſo make tolerable good wine. We bought ſome manuſcripts of their prieſts, and after dinner continued our journey to the ſouth-eaſt through the ſame ſort of country, and in three hours more arrived at Howareen, where we took up our lodging.

Howareen has the ſame appearance of poverty as Sudud; but we found ſome ruins there, that are a proof of its being once a more conſiderable place. A ſquare tower, with projecting battlements, ſeems to have been built three or four hundred years ago, and two churches in ruins may be about the ſame age: in theſe buildings there are materials that are much more ancient, but employed without judgment. We obſerved in the walls ſome Corinthian capitals, and many Attic baſes of white marble. Theſe fragments of antiquity, and ſome others we found ſcattered about, have belonged to works erected with more expence than taſte. We had obſerved a neighbouring village entirely abandoned by its inhabitants, which frequently happens in this country; for when the produce of the earth is not anſwerable to the cultivation, the inhabitants often quit their habitations to avoid oppreſſion.

The next day we left Howareen, and continuing to travel in the ſame direction, in three hours reached Carieteen, a village a little larger than the laſt, that has alſo ſome fragments of marble which belonged to ancient edifices, as the ſhafts of columns, ſome Corinthian capitals, a Doric baſe, and two imperfect Greek inſcriptions. We thought proper to ſtay here the remainder of the day, as well to wait for the reſt of the eſcort

the Aga had ordered to accompany us, as to prepare our retinue and our cattle, for the fatigue they were to ſuffer during the reſt of our journey: for though we could not perform it in leſs than twenty-four hours; we were obliged to travel ſo long without repoſe, there being no water in that part of the deſart.

We left Carieteen on the 13th at ten in the morning, which was much too late; but our company became more difficult to govern in proportion as they became more numerous. This bad conduct occaſioned our being expoſed to the heat of two days, before our beaſts could obtain either reſt or water; and though it was at the beginning of the ſeaſon, the ſand reflected the heat of the ſun with great violence, while we had neither the ſlighteſt breeze to refreſh us, nor the leaſt ſhade to ſhelter us from its beams.

Our company was then much encreaſed, by its being joined by ſome merchants, ſo that it conſiſted of about 200 perſons, and nearly the ſame number of beaſts of burthen, which formed a groteſque mixture of horſes, camels, mules, and aſſes. Our guide told us, that we were in the moſt dangerous part of our journey, and deſired us to ſubmit entirely to his orders, which were, that the domeſtics ſhould keep with the baggage, immediately behind our guard of Arabs, from which was frequently diſpatched one, two, or more horſemen on the diſcovery, to all the eminences before us, where they ſtayed till we came up with them. Theſe horſemen always quitted the caravan on a full gallop, after the manner of the Tartars and Huſſars. It is hard to ſay whether this precaution aroſe from a real apprehenſion of danger, or whether it did not proceed from an oſtentatious ſhew of vigilance, to make us conceive an high opinion of their activity and uſe.

The road here from Carieteen to Palmyra was north and by eaſt, through a level ſandy plain about ten miles broad, bounded to the right and left by a chain of bar-

ren mountains, that ſeemed to join within two miles of Palmyra. In all this courſe there is neither a tree nor a drop of water: but to take off our attention from the fatigue we endured, our Arab horſemen diverted us from time to time by engaging in mock fights. It is ſurprizing to ſee with what firmneſs they keep their ſaddles, and the dexterity with which they manage their horſes. At night they uſually ſat in a circle, to drink coffee and ſmoke a pipe: this was their greateſt regale. In the mean while one of the company diverted the reſt by ſinging a ſong, or relating a piece of hiſtory, on the ſubject of love or war, or with an extempore tale.

When we had proceeded nine hours from Carieteen, we arrived at a ruined tower, on which we obſerved the croſs of Malta in two or three places. Near this tower are the ruins of a ſuperb building; but a magnificent door-caſe of white marble is the only part that remains ſtanding, and that is not covered with ſand. At midnight we ſtopt two hours to take ſome repoſe, and on the 14th at noon arrived at the end of the plain, where the mountains to the right and left appear to meet. Between theſe mountains is a valley, where are ſtill ſeen the ruins of an aqueduct, that formerly conveyed water to Palmyra.

On each ſide of this valley are many ſquare towers of a conſiderable height; and on approaching them we found that they were the ancient ſepulchres of the inhabitants of Palmyra. Scarce had we paſſed theſe venerable monuments, when the mountains opening on each ſide, we ſuddenly diſcovered the greateſt quantity of ruins, all of white marble, we had ever ſeen, and behind thoſe ruins, towards the Euphrates, a level country extending as far as the eye could reach, without the leaſt animated object. It is almoſt impoſſible to imagine any thing more aſtoniſhing than this view. No proſpect can be conceived more ſtriking and romantic, than ſuch a vaſt multitude of Corinthian columns, with few intervening walls and ſolid buildings.

The Antient **CITY** OF **PALMIRA** *as it now Appears*

Sold by Allardice

But to be more particular*: on the left hand you behold a wall which belonged to the court of the temple of the ſun, and though part is broken down, it is of a conſiderable length. A row of twelve noble windows are ſtill ſtanding together, and farther to the left are two others: between each is a pilaſter of the Corinthian order ſupporting the entablature: through the ſpace that is broken down the view is terminated by diſtant rows of columns, and over the part of the wall, which is ſtill ſtanding, riſe the ruins of the temple itſelf. At the end, where ſtood the portico, is a ſquare ruinous tower built by the Turks. Before theſe buildings are incloſures of corn and olive-trees planted by the Arabs, and ſeparated by mud-walls, while on all ſides lie around them magnificent ruins.

Before the Turkiſh tower is a piece of a very large column ſtanding on its baſe: but the greateſt part, with its capital and entablature, has fallen down. The ſtones that are around it ſhew that there was a grand edifice in this place. The diameter of this column near the baſe is five feet and a half. A little to the right of the tower, though at a great diſtance, are the ruins of a Turkiſh moſque with its minaret: and before it is a grand column, that riſes to a great height, and is of the ſame dimenſions as that which is broken down. A little farther to the right is a noble arch, with a poſtern richly ornamented on each ſide, from which a colonade extends four thouſand feet in length, terminated by a ſuperb mauſoleum. Many of theſe columns are fallen down, and open a view to the other ruins, while in other parts the remains of magnificent ſtructures are ſeen through the intercolumniations. At ſome diſtance nearer before this magnificent colonade ſtands a ſmall temple, adorned with a noble portico; and ſtill farther to the right is another temple, with its

* This deſcription is taken from three large ſheet plates, which, added together, afford a nobler view of theſe magnificent remains of antiquity, as they thus ſuddenly appear, than any words can poſſibly give.

periſtyle, ſeen through the intercolumniation. Still farther to the right is a range of columns that appear to have belonged to a portico. At ſome diſtance nearer ſeem to be the ruins of a Chriſtian church, and ſtill nearer, and farther to the right, are four lofty columns with their ſuperb entablature, the only remains of ſome grand edifice. A little to the right of theſe, though at a greater diſtance, are a number of columns which ſtill ſupport a conſiderable part of their entablature, and are ſo diſpoſed, that they reſemble the periſtyle of a ſmall temple, that has been wholly deſtroyed; and nearer ſtill, and more to the right, is an elegant mauſoleum.

Beſides theſe we ſee a vaſt number of ſcattered columns covering the plain, ſome with, and ſome without their entablatures, while the ground is on all ſides covered with broken columns, capitals, rich entablatures, and ſtones of prodigious magnitude. Towards the right the diſtant proſpect is terminated by a range of hills and mountains, on one of which are the ruins of a Turkiſh fortification, and on another is a caſtle.

Theſe were the amazing ruins which ſuddenly ſtruck our ſight, and appeared at one view in the diſtant proſpect. After having conſidered them for ſome time, we were conducted to a hut belonging to the Arabs, of which there are about thirty in the court of the great temple. The magnificence of that edifice, and the meanneſs of our habitation, formed a contraſt that was quite aſtoniſhing.

The inhabitants, both men and women, are well ſhaped; the complexions of the latter are ſwarthy, but their features good: they were veiled, but they were not ſo ſcrupulous about ſhewing their faces, as the women of the Eaſt generally are. They hang rings of either gold or braſs in their ears and noſes; they colour their lips blue, their eyes and eye-brows black, and the tips of their fingers red. Both ſexes appear to be very healthy, being almoſt ſtrangers to diſeaſes. It

ſeldom rains there, except at the time of the equinoxes, and we enjoyed a ſerene ſky all the while we ſtaid, except one afternoon, when we had a little ſhower, preceded by a whirlwind, which raiſed ſuch a quantity of ſand as entirely darkened the air, and gave us an idea of the terrible ſtorms that are ſometimes fatal to whole caravans. We continued there fifteen days, during which the Arab inhabitants ſupplied us pretty well with mutton and goats-fleſh; but had we ſtaid much longer, they would have been unable to furniſh us with proviſions.

As we found it would be troubleſome to carry a quadrant ſo far by land, this prevented our taking the latitude of the city; but according to Ptolemy it is in 34.° latitude, and is ſix days journey from Aleppo, as many from Damaſcus by the ſafeſt road, and about 20 leagues to the eaſt of the Euphrates. Some geographers place it in Syria, others in Arabia, and others in Phœnicia. The city walls were flanked with ſquare towers, but in many parts they are entirely levelled, and cannot now be diſtinguiſhed from the other ruins; particularly none of them can be perceived to the ſouth-eaſt; however, from what we diſcovered, there is great reaſon to believe they encloſed the great temple; and therefore muſt have been at leaſt three miles in compaſs.

The Arabs ſhewed us by the preſent ruins a tract of land that may be about ten miles in circumference, and is a little raiſed above the level of the deſart, obſerving that this was the extent of the ancient city, and that ruins were diſcovered there by digging. Indeed there ſeems better reaſons in favour of this opinion, than their authority. A circuit of three miles was very little for Palmyra in its proſperity; eſpecially if we conſider that the greateſt part of that ſpace is filled by public edifices, which from their extraordinary magnificence, and the great number of ſupurb ſepulchres, are evident proofs of the grandeur of the city. From thence it may be concluded, that the walls already mentioned

incloſed only that part of the city, which contained the public edifices in its moſt flouriſhing ſtate; and that after it was ruined, its ſituation rendering it the moſt proper place for putting a ſtop to the incurſions of the Saracens, Juſtinian fortified it, as we learn from Procopius, and very probably contracted its bounds. Palmyra was not then, as it formerly had been, a rich and trading city, in which it was neceſſary to have a regard to the intereſt and convenience of individuals; but a frontier town, that only required ſtrength. Beſides, in building the wall to the north-weſt, advantage was taken of two or three ſepulchres, which being of a convenient form, they converted them into towers; and as there is no doubt that the wall was built after the ſepulchres, it may juſtly be concluded that they were erected ſince the abolition of the pagan religion, the Greeks and Romans having too great a veneration for their ſepulchres to apply them to any other uſe; and it was contrary to the moſt expreſs laws of both, to bury the dead within the walls of a city.

It has been obſerved, that on the top of one of the higheſt of theſe mountains is a caſtle. The aſcent of it is extremely difficult and ragged. It is ſurrounded by a deep ditch, cut in the rock; or rather they have taken the ſtones from it as from a quarry. As the draw-bridge is broken, we found a good deal of difficulty in paſſing it. This caſtle is however ſo ill built, that it is evident, it was erected not only after the time of Juſtinian, to whom it is attributed; but is even unworthy of the Mamalukes. This mountain affords an extenſive view to the ſouth, where the deſart reſembles a ſea; and to the weſt we may ſee the top of Libanus, and diſtinctly perceive ſeveral parts of Anti-Libanus.

The barren tract in which the city ſtands, might be made a delightful ſpot, by means of two rivers, that are entirely neglected. The water of both is hot and mixed with ſulphur; but the inhabitants eſteem it wholeſome and agreeable. The moſt conſiderable of

theſe ſtreams riſes to the weſt, at the foot of the mountains, is a fine grotto, almoſt high enough in the middle for a man to ſtand upright in it. The whole bottom is a baſon of clear water, about two feet deep; and the heat being thus concentered, renders it an excellent bath, for which purpoſe it is uſed by the Arabs: from it runs a pretty rapid current, above three feet broad and one foot deep. This water is for ſome ſpace confined within a paved channel formerly made for it; but after a ſhort courſe, it is imbibed by the ſand to the eaſt of the ruins. An inſcription upon an altar near it, dedicated to Jupiter, informs us, that it was called Ephea, and that the care of it was intruſted to perſons elected to that office.

The other ſtream, the ſource of which we could not diſcover, contains near the ſame quantity of water, and after running for ſome time through the ruins, in an ancient ſubterranean aqueduct, joins the firſt, and is loſt with it in the ſands. The Arabs ſpeak of a third ſtream that has been for ſome time loſt among the ruins. Some have been much embarraſſed to account for the loſs of a river mentioned by Ptolemy, and therefore attribute it to an earthquake: however, with reſpect to thoſe of Palmyra, no other change ſeems to have happened, than what is the effect of negligence; but if theſe currents are thought too inconſiderable to deſerve the name of rivers, that honour ſhould for the ſame reaſon be refuſed to the Pactolus, the Meles, and many other rivers of Greece, that have not ſo much water, except immediately after rain.

Beſides theſe was the ſubterranean aqueduct beforementioned, which brought good water to the city, and was ſolidly built, with openings at proper diſtances, to keep it clean. Procopius obſerves, that Juſtinian conveyed water to Palmyra, for the uſe of the garriſon he left there: but we imagine that for this purpoſe he repaired the aqueduct, which appears to have been much more ancient, and built at an im-

menſe expence. Palmyra in its proſperity certainly could not fail to procure ſuch a convenience, and, indeed, in more than one part of this aqueduct, we have obſerved inſcriptions in Palmyrene characters, which are now not legible; but we have found none in any other language.

Three or four miles to the ſouth-eaſt of the ruins in the deſart, is the Valley of Salt, where David probably ſmote the Syrians, 2 Sam. viii. 13, and which ſtill ſupplies Damaſcus and the neighbouring towns with great quantities of that commodity, the earth being impregnated with it to a conſiderable depth. They hollow the ground upwards of a foot deep, and from the rain water, which lodges in theſe cavities, riſes a fine white ſalt, that is gathered after the water is dried up, or exhaled by the ſun.

Theſe noble remains of Palmyra are too ſtriking and magnificent not to excite our curioſity with reſpect to its condition in ancient times. It is natural to enquire, how a ſpot like this, divided from the reſt of the world by an inhoſpitable deſart, came to be choſen for its ſituation; who was its founder, and from what quarter it drew the riches neceſſary to its ſupport? But it is remarkable that hiſtory ſcarcely makes any mention of Balbec and Palmyra, and we have little knowledge of them but what is ſupplied by inſcriptions. Is not even this ſilence of hiſtory inſtructive? Does it not inform us, that there are periods in hiſtory that are entirely concealed from us?

By the natural and ordinary courſe, the memory of cities is preſerved longer than their ruins. It is only from hiſtory that we have any knowledge of Troy, Babylon, and Memphis: there does not at preſent remain a ſingle ſtone of theſe cities, to ſhew where they were ſituated: but here are two examples of conſiderable cities that have ſubſiſted longer than any other known to us; and yet it is rather what we ſee, than what we read, that excites our curioſity concerning them; and the remains of Balbec and Palmyra ſtill ſubſiſt, to re-

late, if we may uſe the expreſſion, their own hiſtory. Can the loſs of books be the cauſe, or did the ancients ſet leſs value on theſe edifices, than we do at preſent? If this laſt be the caſe, their ſilence with reſpect to Balbec will juſtify what they advance about Babylon; and their not mentioning Palmyra be a kind of proof of the magnificence of Greece and Egypt, on which they have beſtowed ſuch encomiums.

All the authorities of the ancients with reſpect to this city, may be reduced to theſe. In the Arabic tranſlation of the ſecond book of Chronicles, chap. viii. Palmyra is mentioned as ſubſiſting before the time of Solomon: but John of Antioch ſays, that it was built by that monarch on the very ſpot where David ſlew the Philiſtine Chief, in honour of that memorable action. But the Arabian hiſtories on this ſubject appear ſo extremely fabulous and extravagant as to be unworthy of notice.

The Old Teſtament informs us*, that Solomon erected a city in the wilderneſs, and called it Tedmor; and we are told by Joſephus, that the Greeks and Romans afterwards gave it the name of Palmyra, but that its firſt name was retained by the Syrians; and this is confirmed by St. Jerom, who ſays that Tedmor and Palmyra are the Syrian and Greek names of the ſame place: even at preſent the Arabs of the country ſtill call it Tedmor. They pretend that theſe ruins were the work of Solomon, and among other things ſhew the ſeraglio of that King, his haram, and the tomb of one of his favourite concubines. "Solomon, the ſon "of David, ſay they, performed theſe wonders, by the "aſſiſtance of ſpirits."

But the ſtructures erected by Solomon were doubtleſs entirely demoliſhed by Nebuchadnezzar, who, we are aſſured by John of Antioch, deſtroyed that city before he beſieged Jeruſalem. It cannot be reaſonably ſuppoſed, that edifices in the elegant ſtyle of thoſe of

* 1 Kings ix. and 2 Chron. viii.

Palmyra, were prior to the eſtabliſhment of the Greeks in Syria; and taking this for granted, we ſhall not be ſurpriſed that Xenophon takes no notice of this city in his retreat of Cyrus the younger, though he is very exact in deſcribing the deſart: nor ſhall we wonder at its not being mentioned in the hiſtory of Alexander the Great; who might have reaped great advantages from the ſituation of that city, when he croſſed this deſart. No mention is made of it even when Pompey reduced Syria to a Roman province; though at that time a taſte for the polite arts began to prevail, and architecture, painting, and ſculpture, were eſteemed not unworthy the attention of a Roman General. One would have imagined that Palmyra would not have eſcaped the avidity and avarice of the Romans; and yet we do not find that their hiſtory makes any mention of that city before the time of Mark Antony, who would have plundered it, had not the inhabitants ſecured themſelves by tranſporting their moſt valuable effects beyond the Euphrates, and defended the paſſage of that river by their archers. At that time the inhabitants of Palmyra were merchants, and ſold to the Romans the merchandizes of India and Arabia. We may conclude that they were a rich and free people; but how long they had enjoyed theſe advantages is uncertain. Their riches and trade were probably of ſome ſtanding; for it appears from inſcriptions, that in leſs than forty years after, their expences and their luxuries were exceſſive.

At length when the affairs of the Romans in the Eaſt were in a deplorable ſituation, Odenathus of Palmyra took ſuch advantage of the ſituation of his country between the two great rival empires of Rome and Perſia, that he rendered himſelf maſter of the balance of power, and declared for the one or the other, according as the face of affairs changed, and his intereſt required. He entered into an alliance with the Emperor Gallienus, collected the poor remains of the Roman army, and by his valour, activity, and remarkable patience in enduring fatigue, vanquiſhed Sapor king of Perſia in ſeveral

engagements, advancing with his victorious troops as far as Cteſiphon, the capital of his empire. On his return from this expedition, with the greateſt applauſe, and with conſiderable treaſures, Gallienus declared him Auguſtus, and his aſſociate in the government of the empire. Odenathus afterwards defeated Baliſta, who aſpired to the empire, and at length drove out the Goths, who had committed the greateſt ravages. This was his laſt exploit, and it is thought that in this expedition he was treacherouſly murdered by his kinſman Mæonius: his ſon Herodes ſoon after ſuffered the ſame fate. Mæonius was then ſaluted emperor, but in a ſhort time after was cut to pieces by his own ſoldiers.

Odenathus left behind him his wife Queen Zenobia, and two ſons he had by her; ſhe boaſted her being deſcended from Ptolemy, and reckoned Cleopatra among her anceſtors. Zenobia had many great and amiable qualities; after the death of Odenathus, ſhe aſſumed the reins of government in the name of her children, and renouncing the alliance of Rome, attacked and entirely defeated Heraclianus, the Roman General. This victory left her in poſſeſſion of Syria and Meſopotamia. She then, by means of Zabdas, one of her generals, conquered Egypt, and afterwards added to her dominions, the greateſt part of Aſia Minor. How ſtrange, how unaccountable are the viciſſitudes of fortune! A ſmall territory in the midſt of a deſart, extends its conqueſts over many rich countries! The powerful kingdoms of the Ptolemies, and the Seleucidæ, form a part of the dominions of a ſingle city, whoſe name is ſought for in vain in their hiſtory; and Zenobia, ſurrounded by the barren ſands of Palmyra, includes Egypt within her dominions to the ſouth, and extends them to the north as far as the Black Sea and the Boſphorus. But the reign of this empire was of very ſhort continuance; the Emperor Aurelian, a few years after recovered the eaſtern provinces, and forced Zenobia to ſhelter herſelf within the walls of Palmyra. He laid ſiege to that city, the queen rejected all nego-

ciations with contempt; but after a brave defence, ſhe reſolved in perſon to ſolicit the aſſiſtance of the Perſians: ſhe ſet out on a dromedary; but was taken priſoner as ſhe was about to croſs the Euphrates, by a party of horſe ſent after her by Aurelian. The inhabitants of Palmyra now ſurrendered to the emperor's mercy; on which he ſpared their lives, and marched to Emiſſa with Zenobia, carrying with him a great part of the riches of the city, and leaving there a garriſon of 600 archers.

At Emiſſa the emperor enquired into Zenobia's motives for reſiſting him with ſuch reſolution, and upon this occaſion ſhe ſtained her glory, by purchaſing a diſhonourable life, at the expence of her friends, whom ſhe meanly betrayed: ſhe mentioned thoſe who had been her adviſers; on which Aurelian had the cruelty and injuſtice to ſacrifice them to his reſentment. while ſhe was reſerved to adorn his triumph. Among thoſe who ſuffered was Longinus, who wrote upon the Sublime, and had dictated a haughty letter his miſtreſs had wrote the Emperor; but the intrepid courage with which he ſubmitted to his fate, ſhews that his bravery was equal to his learning.

The misfortunes of Palmyra were not yet ended: when a free people are from the height of glory, ſuddenly reduced to ſlavery, they generally take ſome deſperate meaſures for their deliverance. The Palmyrenes cut off the Roman garriſon, and Aurelian hearing this news as he was returning to Rome, ſpeedily returned back, and taking the city, deſtroyed it, cauſing almoſt all the inhabitants to be maſſacred, without regard to age or ſex. We are informed of the particulars of this cruelty by the emperor himſelf, who, in the letter he wrote to Baſſus, to order him to repair the temple of the ſun, which had been much damaged by the ſoldiers, appropriates to that uſe 300 pounds weight of gold found in Zenobia's coffers, with 1800 pounds weight of ſilver, which belonged to the people, beſides the crown jewels.

Palmyra having thus loſt her liberty, continued ſubject to a Roman governor; and from the only Latin inſcription now found there, we are informed that Hierocles was for the fifth time preſident of the province, when Diocleſian erected ſome magnificent buildings there. In the year of Chriſt 400, the firſt Illyrian legion was quartered at Palmyra; but Procopius gives us reaſon to think, that the city was ſo little regarded, as to be ſometimes without a Roman garriſon: for he ſays that Juſtinian repaired and ſupplied it with water, after its having been for ſome time almoſt deſerted. This is the laſt time that Palmyra is mentioned in the Roman hiſtory. The civil revolutions of this city afford a proof that Chriſtianity could not be long eſtabliſhed there, ſo that it is not ſurpriſing that eccleſiaſtical hiſtory furniſhes nothing worth the pains of repeating; and there is no means of knowing what has happened to it, ſince the deſtruction of the eaſtern empire by the Mahometans.

Among the ſeveral inſcriptions found there, none are more ancient than the birth of Chriſt, and none ſo late as the deſtruction of the city by Aurelian, except the Latin inſcription which makes mention of Diocleſian. The æra of theſe inſcriptions is that of the Seleucidæ. Some of them are found in the Palmyrene, and others in Greek characters. Two of the mauſoleums, which are almoſt entire, have on their fronts inſcriptions that are very legible; one of them informs us that Jamblicus, the ſon of Mocimus, cauſed that monument to be built, to ſerve as a ſepulchre for him and his family, in the year 314, which anſwers to the third year of the Chriſtian æra; and the other, that Elabelus Manaius cauſed it to be erected in the year 414, the 103d year of the Chriſtian æra. The ornaments of theſe two mauſoleums are much in the ſame taſte; but the laſt is the moſt elegant, and finiſhed with the greateſt care: though both are ſo much in the taſte and the manner of the other public edifices in general, that we

may reaſonably ſuppoſe them not to be the works of very different ages.

Before we had completed our buſineſs at Palmyra, our Arabian eſcort began to grow impatient, and to ſolicit our departure; alleging that our ſafety in returning was much more precarious than in our journey thither, as they had then only accidental dangers to apprehend, while they were now to provide againſt a premeditated ſurpriſe from the king of the Bedouins, or wandering Arabs, who, on his having intelligence of us, might think us a prize worth looking after. We had likewiſe our own reaſons for more than ordinary ſolicitude; for we were much more anxious about preſerving the treaſure we brought from Palmyra, than that which we carried thither. By their advice we concealed both our intended road back, and the time we intended to ſet out, and on the 27th of March left Palmyra; where its few miſerable inhabitants expreſſed the utmoſt aſtoniſhment, at a viſit, the reaſon of which they could not comprehend.

We returned as far as Sudud, by the ſame tireſome road through the deſart, which we have already deſcribed, in our journey to Palmyra. But before we arrived at Carieteen, we diſcovered at a diſtance a party of Arabian horſemen, to which, had they been ſuperior in number, we muſt have fallen an eaſy prey, in the languid ſtate to which both our men and horſes were reduced, after a march of about twenty hours over the burning ſands; but on our near approach they retired with precipitation, abandoning ſome cattle, which were ſeized by our friends, as a matter of courſe, laughing at our remonſtrances againſt their injuſtice.

Being arrived at Sudud, we left our former road on the right hand, and in five hours more, proceeding ſtill through the ſame deſart, reached Cara, where we took leave of the greateſt part of our caravan. The manuſcripts and marbles we had collected, we ſent on camels to our ſhip at Tripoly; the merchants who had joined

us for protection, returned to Damascus with the salt they went to gather at Palmyra; and our Arabian horsemen, who were now no longer of use, having demanded a certificate of their fidelity and vigilance, which they justly deserved, returned to their master, the Aga of Hassia.

We had passed through Cara before in going from Damascus to Hassia; from the last it is about six hours distant, and is under the government of the same Aga. This village is pleasantly situated in the great caravan road from Damascus to Aleppo, and, we were informed, contains near a thousand souls, amongst whom are about twenty Christian families. There is one ruined church to be seen there, and another converted into a mosque: upon the wall of the latter is a line of Greek capitals in a bad character, turned upside down, in which we could read the words Athanasios Episcopos. The common mud formed into the shape of bricks and dried in the sun, of which the houses are built, has at some distance the appearance of white stone. The short duration of such materials is not the only objection to them, for they render the streets dusty when there is wind, and dirty when there is rain: inconveniences that are also felt at Damascus itself, which is mostly built in the same manner.

After suffering almost a month's constant fatigue in the desart, particularly at Palmyra, where every hour was precious, we here indulged ourselves with a day of rest, and by this short interval of security and repose, prepared ourselves for new fatigues.

We then set out, and arrived at Ersale in seven hours, proceeding the greatest part of the way across the barren ridge of hills called Anti-Libanus. This village, which consists of thirty poor houses, was the only one we passed through in our way from Cara to Balbec. We found nothing there worth notice, except a melancholy instance of the unhappy government of these countries: the houses were all open, every thing

carried off, and not a living creature to be ſeen. We were informed that the Governor of Balbec's brother was then in open rebellion, ravaging the country with a party of his deſperate followers; and it ſeems that when we paſſed through Erſale, he was encamped in its neighbourhood, on which the inhabitants choſe to abandon their dwellings, rather than expoſe themſelves to ſuch unmerciful contributions as he had raiſed in other places.

Impatient to leave a place of ſuch danger, we ſet out early the next morning, and in five hours and a half arrived at Balbec. This city, which was formerly under the government of Damaſcus, and ſome years ſince the reſidence of a Baſſa, is at preſent commanded by a perſon of no higher rank than that of Aga, who prefering the more honourable title of Emir, which he had by his birth, to that of this ſtation, was called Emir Haſſein; for the Arabs have hereditary nobility and family connections, contrary to the policy of the Porte, which is deſirous of ſuppreſſing all influence that the Grand Signior cannot give and take away at pleaſure.

This governor annually paid the Grand Signior fifty purſes for the taxes of the diſtrict under his command; he alſo paid fifty purſes yearly for lands, granted as rewards for military ſervice, and farmed by him. Thoſe lands, we were told, were much more profitable to him, than to the perſons whoſe benefit the grant was originally intended, on account of the difficulty and danger of any man's pretending to the ſame farm againſt ſo powerful a competitor. He ought alſo to have paid ſomething to the Baſſa of Damaſcus, for lands he held under him; but he had for ſome time evaded it, being ſkreened by the Kiſlar Aga, or the Black Eunuch, who has the care of the Grand Signior's women, to whom he was ſaid to be under private contribution.

We took our lodgings of a Greek to whom we were recommended, and then waited on the Emir, whom we found in a chioſque in his garden, reclined on a

ſopha near a fountain, and indolently enjoying his pipe. On our preſenting him with our firman from the Grand Signior, and a letter from the Baſſa of Tripoly, we were moſt courteouſly received. A pipe, coffee, ſweetmeats and perfume, were, according to cuſtom, ſucceſſively preſented. He applied the firman reſpectfully to his forehead, then kiſſed it, and declared himſelf the Sultan's ſlaves's ſlave: told us that the land he commanded, and all in it was ours; that we were his welcome gueſt as long as we would ſtay, and under his friendly protection might ſecurely purſue our buſineſs.

In no inſtance do the oriental manners ſhew theſe people in ſo amiable a light, as in their diſcharge of the duties of hoſpitality: the ſeverities of eaſtern deſpotiſm have indeed been always ſoftened by this virtue, which ſo happily flouriſhes moſt, where it is moſt wanted. The great forget the inſolence of power to the ſtranger under their roof, and only preſerve a dignity ſo tempered by humanity, that it ſolely commands that grateful reſpect, which is otherwiſe ſcarce known in a country where inferiors are oftner taught to fear than to love.

Notwithſtanding the Emir's obliging profeſſions, we had been adviſed to diſtruſt him; for he had an infamous character, and we had ſoon reaſon to ſee the juſtice of this friendly caution. Though, according to the cuſtom of the country, we had ſent our preſents, yet new demands were daily made, which we for ſome time thought it adviſeable to ſatisfy; but they were ſo frequently, and at length ſo inſolently repeated, that we were obliged to give a peremptory refuſal.

Avarice is as much an eaſtern vice, as hoſpitality an eaſtern virtue. The moſt ſordid inſtances of the former we found among the great, and thoſe in public employments, while we experienced extraordinary inſtances of generoſity in private life. We would therefore be cautious of charging to the character of a people, what the government ſeems to require. For

amidſt the uninterrupted ſeries of ſhameleſs venality, which regulates the diſcharge of every public duty, from the Prime Vizier downwards, and which, in the true ſpirit of deſpotiſm, ſtops only at the wretch who is too low to make repriſals, every ſubaltern in power muſt ſubmit to that portion of the common proſtitution which belongs to his rank, and which therefore ſeems rather the vice of the office than of the man.

The frequent negociations produced by this quarrel, in which the Emir in vain exerted all his art and villainy, ended in his openly declaring, that we ſhould be attacked and cut to pieces in our way from Balbec; but on his hearing that theſe menaces had not the effect he expected, and that we were preparing to ſet out with about twenty armed ſervants, he civily ſent to deſire that we might interchange preſents and part friends, requeſting that we would allow his people to guard us as far as mount Libanus. To this we agreed. Soon after he was aſſaſſinated by an emiſſary of his rebellious brother, who ſucceeded him in the government.

Thus far we have followed our ingenious author. Of the ruins of Balbec, we have already given a deſcription in Vol. IV. and ſhall only add here, as a ſupplement to all that has been ſaid of the temples of Egypt, Balbec, and Palmyra, ſome curious remarks from the ſame maſterly pen, on the nature of the idolatory which prevailed in the two laſt mentioned cities, as ariſing from the ſituation of the country, the aſpect of the heavens and the earth, and the manner in which the inhabitants have always lived.

It is certain that the ſtructure of the temples of Palmyra and Balbec differs in in ſome particulars from that of all others we have ſeen, and we imagined we could diſcover in many of the deviations from the true object of worſhip, ſomething in the climate, ſoil, or ſituation of each country, which had a conſiderable influence in eſtabliſhing its particular mode of ſuperſtition.

If this obſervation be applied to the country and religion of Syria, and we examine the worſhip of the ſun, moon and ſtars, called in Scripture Baal, Aſtaroth, and the Hoſt of Heaven, we ſhall perhaps not only ſee how that early ſuperſtition, which miſled the inhabitants of a level country, was naturally produced; but we may obſerve ſomething of its origin and progreſs reſulting from a connection between thoſe objects of worſhip conſidered phyſically, and their characters as divinities. Thus the magnificence with which the ſun was worſhiped in Syria and Chaldea, the name of Baal, which in the eaſtern language ſignifies Lord, and the human victims ſacrificed to his honour, ſeem to point out an awful reverence paid rather to his power than his benignity, in a country where the violence of his heat is not only in many reſpects troubleſome to the inhabitants, but deſtructive to vegetation. On the other hand, the deification of the inferior Gods of the firmament ſeems to have taken its riſe from different principles, in which love appears to have been more predominant than fear.

The extenſive plains and unclouded ſky not only point this out; but it appears that the inhabitants way of life, which is as uniform as their ſoil or their climate, has contributed to direct their attention to theſe heavenly bodies. It was always a cuſtom with them to paſs the ſummer nights on the tops of their houſes, which for this purpoſe were made flat, and divided from each other by walls. This way of ſleeping we found extremely agreeable, as we by that means enjoyed the cool air above the reach of gnats and vapours, with no other covering but the canopy of heaven, which in different pleaſing forms unavoidably preſents itſelf, upon every interruption of reſt, when the mind is ſtrongly diſpoſed to contemplation by ſolitude and ſilence.

We could no where diſcover more beauties in the face of the heavenss nor fewer on the earth, than in our travels in the night through the deſarts of Arabia, where it is impoſſible to avoid being ſtruck with the

contraſt, in which a boundleſs dreary waſte, without mountain or valley, tree or water, or the leaſt variety of colours, offers a tedious ſameneſs to the weary traveller, while he is agreeably relieved by beholding that chearful moving picture which meaſures his time, directs his courſe, and lights his way. The warm fancy of the Arab ſoon felt the tranſition from wild admiration to ſuperſtitious reſpect, and the paſſions were engaged before the judgment was conſulted. Hence the Jews frequently caught the bewitching enthuſiaſm; and an ancient pious native of the country ſeems to acknowledge the danger of contemplating ſuch beauties, while he diſowns his having yielded to the temptation: * If I beheld the ſun when he ſhined, or the moon walking in her brightneſs, and my heart hath been ſecretly enticed, or my mouth hath kiſſed my hand, this were an iniquity, &c.

Even Egypt had ſome objects of divine worſhip ſo peculiarly the growth of that country, that they could never be tranſplanted. As ſuperſtition travelled from thence northward, ſhe changed her garb, and from the pictureſque mixture of the hills, vales, groves and water in Greece, aroſe the Orades, Dryades, and Naiades, with all the varieties of that fanciful mythology, which none but ſuch a poet as Homer, in ſuch a country as Greece, could have connected into that form which has ever ſince been adopted by the poets.

* Job xxxi. 26.

A

DESCRIPTION

OF ALEPPO, AND THE ADJACENT PARTS,

BY

ALEXANDER RUSSEL, M. D.

Containing a deſcription of that city, with the manners and cuſtoms of the inhabitants; alſo of the vegetables, beaſts, birds, reptiles, &c. of the adjacent country.

HALEB, or, as it is called by the Engliſh, Aleppo, is, according to the obſervations of an eminent French mathematician, in 36° 12. north latitude, and is ſaid to be in 37° 40. eaſt longitude from the meridian of London. This city, the preſent metropolis of Syria, is ſituated about ſixty miles from the ſea, and with reſpect to its buildings, is inferior to none in the Turkiſh empire.

Aleppo, with its ſuburbs, is built on eight ſmall hills, none of them of a conſiderable height, except one in the middle, on which the caſtle is erected. This is of a conic form, and appears to have been in part raiſed with earth thrown up in forming a broad deep ditch with which it is ſurrounded. The city is encompaſſed by a wall now much decayed, and a broad ditch, in moſt places converted into gardens. It is three miles round; but, including the ſuburbs, the whole is about ſeven miles in circumference.

The houſes are built of ſtone, and like thoſe of Cairo, ſurround a ſquare court. They conſiſt of a ground floor, which is generally arched, and an upper ſtory, with a flat roof, either covered with a terrace of hard plaſter, or with ſtone. Their ceilings are of wood painted and ſometimes gilt, as are alſo the pannels of ſome of their rooms, their window-ſhutters and cupboard-doors, which have a handſome appearance. On the inſide of thoſe of the Turks, are inſcribed over the doors and windows ſentences out of the Koran, or verſes, either of their own compoſing, or of their moſt celebrated poets: while the inſcriptions in the houſes of the Chriſtians are generally borrowed from the ſacred Scriptures.

The court, which is always neatly paved, has moſtly a jet d'eau in the centre; and on one ſide of it, at leaſt, is a ſmall ſpot left unpaved for a kind of garden, which is frequently no more than a yard or two ſquare, but it is encompaſſed with a few flower-pots. Moſt of the houſes belonging to perſons of fortune, have within this court an arched alcove, oppoſite to the fountain, and between them the pavement is generally laid out in moſaic work, with marble of various colours; as is alſo the floor of a large hall, which has a cupola roof, and generally a fountain in the middle. Above ſtairs is a colonade, if not round the whole court, at leaſt fronting the weſt. Beyond this court is another, in which are the womens apartments, built much in the ſame manner as the others; and a few of them have tolerable gardens.

In Aleppo are a conſiderable number of moſques, a few of which are magnificent ſtructures. Each of them has a ſquare area in the front, in the middle of which is a fountain for the appointed ablutions, and behind ſome of the larger moſques is a ſmall garden.

There are alſo many large kanes, or, as they are generally called by travellers, caravanſeras. Each conſiſts of a ſpacious ſquare court, on all ſides of which are erected, on the ground floor, a number of rooms,

that are occaſionally uſed for ſtables, chambers, or warehouſes. Above ſtairs is a colonade on each of the four ſides, to which open ſeveral ſmall rooms, wherein the merchants, as well natives as ſtrangers, tranſact moſt of their buſineſs.

The ſtreets are generally narrow; and as the houſes have no windows that look into them, except a few in the upper rooms, nothing is to be ſeen but dead walls, which give them a diſagreeable appearance: they are well paved, however, and kept remarkably clean.

The bazars, or market-places, are here long, narrow, covered ſtreets, with ſmall ſhops on each ſide, juſt ſufficient to hold the tradeſman, and perhaps one or two more, with all his commodities about him, the buyer being obliged to ſtand without. A particular bazar is allotted for each branch of buſineſs. Both theſe and the ſtreets are locked up an hour and a half after ſun-ſet, and many of them earlier; but though their doors are moſtly caſed with iron, their locks are of wood.

For common buildings the natives make uſe of a white gritty ſtone, that is every where in plenty about the city: it is eaſily cut, but grows hard by being expoſed to the air. But in the gates, pillars, and pavement of their beſt buildings, they employ a yellow marble, capable of a tolerable poliſh. This is alſo the produce of the country, and is often intermixed, by way of ornament, with red, white, and coarſe black marble, brought from other places: but when they are in want of red, they give their own yellow marble that colour, by rubbing it over with oil, and then putting it into a moderately hot oven, in which it continues for ſeveral hours.

Several ſprings, at about five miles diſtance, ſupply the city with good water, by means of an aqueduct, which is ſaid to have been built by the empreſs Helena. This water is ſufficient for the neceſſary purpoſes of drinking and cookery. Almoſt every houſe has al-

ſo a well; but that water being brackiſh, is only employed for waſhing their court-yards, and ſupplying their reſervoirs for their fountains. The river Coic, the ancient Singas, which is only about ſix or eight yards wide, paſſes by the weſtern part of the city, within a few yards of the walls, and barely ſerves to water a narrow ſlip of gardens on its banks, that extend from about five miles north, to about three miles ſouth of the town. Beſides theſe gardens, there are a few more near Bab Allah, a village about two miles to the north-weſt, which are ſupplied by the aqueduct. The riſing grounds above the gardens, to which the water cannot be conveyed, are in ſome places laid out in vineyards, interſperſed with olive, fig, and piſtachio trees, as alſo many ſpots to the eaſtward, where there are no gardens. But inconſiderable as this river and theſe gardens may appear, they contain almoſt the only water, and all the trees that are to be met with for twenty or thirty miles round; for the villages have no trees, and moſt of them are only ſupplied with water the inhabitants ſave in their ciſterns.

The fuel uſed in the houſes of Aleppo is wood and charcoal; but for heating their bagnios they burn the dung of animals, the parings of fruit, the leaves of plants, &c. all which people are employed to gather and dry for that purpoſe. In the city are a number of public bagnios, which are frequented by people of all ſects and conditions, except thoſe of high rank, who generally have them in their own houſes.

The firſt entrance into a public bagnio is a large lofty room, in the midſt of which is a fountain, with a baſon, that ſerves for waſhing the linen that hangs upon lines at a conſiderable height all over the room. In this apartment are broad benches, where they dreſs and undreſs. The air here is not at all influenced by the heat of the bath, except at the door, by which you paſs into a ſmall room that is pretty warm, and from thence into a larger that is very hot. On the ſides of theſe two rooms are placed round ſtone baſons,

about two feet and a half in diameter, with two cocks, one of hot, the other of cold water, ſo that you may temper it according to your pleaſure; and there are copper bowls for you to lave it upon your body. In the corners of the inner room are ſmall retiring places; in one of which is frequently a ciſtern of warm water, about four feet deep, and large enough for bathing the whole body. All theſe rooms are covered with cupolas, and the inner receive their light from ſmall openings in their domes, which are glazed. The outer room receives its light not only from the lanthern of its dome, but alſo from windows. A few of the bagnios are ſolely for the uſe of the men, and others are appropriated to the women: but the generality of them admit of both ſexes, though at different times; the men in the morning, and the women in the afternoon.

On entering the hot room, they firſt apply the dewa, or medicine for taking off the hair from the pubis and arm-pits. This medicine is compoſed of 720 drachms of quick lime, and 40 of orpiment powdered. This they moiſten a little at the time of uſing, and ſuffer it to remain on the ſkin till the hair is quite looſe, when it muſt be immediately waſhed off with great care. Then one of the ſervants of the bagnio begins with chafing, or kneading violently, firſt the tops of the ſhoulders, and by degrees the whole body. When he comes to the hand, he pulls the joints of the fingers, ſo as to make each crack ſeparately: then laying the perſon on his back, with his arms acroſs his breaſt, he raiſes him forcibly by the back part of the neck, ſo as to make the greateſt part of the vertebræ crack. He then chafes the back a little more, and throwing a quantity of warm water over the whole body, rubs him hard for ſome time with a coarſe cloth, which is drawn over the ſervant's hand. He is next rubbed over with a ſoap-lather; which being waſhed clean off, he puts one towel round his middle, another round his head, and pehaps, a third over his ſhoulders; in which manner he goes out to the great room, where he generally

ſmokes a pipe, drinks coffee, and perhaps eats ſome fruit before he dreſſes.

As the women have the additional trouble of combing and waſhing, as well as unplaiting and plaiting their hair, beſides very frequently that of having a number of children to waſh, they generally remain a conſiderable time in the hot room; however, they refreſh themſelves at intervals, by going out into the other rooms, were they ſmoke, converſe, and drink coffee, with ſome of the various parties that are commonly there. Every company of two or three is attended by an old woman, whoſe buſineſs is to rub and waſh them; but their joints are not chafed and cracked, and the cloth with which they are rubbed is finer than that applied to the men: however, they alſo uſe the dewa.

Generally ſpeaking, each company of women have their collation, which they eat in the middle room before dreſſing; and the bagnio being the principal place where they have an opportunity of ſhewing their fine clothes, of ſeeing company, and enjoying a free converſation even with their own ſex, it is not to be wondered that they are very fond of it.

Beſides, the firſt time a woman of the country, whether Chriſtian, Jew, or Turk, goes to the bagnio after bearing a child, ſhe muſt have what is called the ſhdood, that is, ſhe is ſet down in one of the waſhing places of the inner room, where the midwife rubs her over with a compoſition of nutmegs, ginger, pepper, and other ſpices, made into a ſort of electuary with honey. In this manner ſhe ſits for ſome time, the other women, in the mean while, ſinging and warbling with their voices in a particular tone, which in this country is their uſual way of rejoicing. After this the lady is waſhed clean, and the ceremony finiſhed. This, they imagine, ſtrengthens them, and prevents many diſorders that would otherwiſe enſue after delivery. They alſo uſe it after a recovery from a very ſevere fit of illneſs,

In a part of the ſuburbs, on the oppoſite ſide of the river to the weſtward, is a glaſs-houſe, where a coarſe kind of white glaſs is made. In the ſuburbs to the eaſtward, are the ſlaughter-houſes placed in an airy ſituation, with a large open field before them. The tanners have a kane where they work, in the ſouth-weſt part of the town, near the river. Juſt without the walls to the ſouthward, are the lime kilns, and a little farther is a ſmall village where the people make ropes, and ſpin cat-gut, which laſt manufacture is, at ſome ſeaſons, extremely offenſive.

For four or five miles at leaſt round Aleppo, the ground is very ſtony and uneven, with a number of eminences, moſt of which are as high as any part of the city. From the weſt-ſouth-weſt to the north-weſt-by-weſt, this uneven country extends at leaſt twenty miles; but is interſperſed with a number of ſmall fertile plains.

With reſpect to the face of the country of Syria in general, the coaſt is bordered by very high mountains, except near Seleucia, and from mount Pieria, to mount Caſſius, which is 10 or 15 miles, where it is quite level, opening a paſſage for the river Orontes to diſcharge itſelf into the Mediterranean. Theſe mountains are covered with trees, ſhrubs, and a number of plants, which do not, like thoſe in the plains, loſe their verdure during the heat of ſummer. As they abound with ſprings, theſe form ſmall rivulets, and in a few places on the ſide next the ſea unite into rivers, and refreſh the plains between them and the ſea ſhore. Behind them, on the land ſide, are generally extenſive plains, that receive great benefit from the ſtreams that deſcend from the mountains, near which they are covered with myrtle, oleander, and other ſhrubs. The oppoſite boundaries of theſe plains are moſtly low, rocky, barren hills; but behind them are other large plains, which, though they are only watered by the rains that fall in the winter, are exceeding fertile. This intermixture of rocky eminences and plains extends within land about 60 or

70 miles, after which the country, called Arabia Deſerta, is generally level as far as Baſſarah.

The Orontes is the only river in all Syria, which riſing on the land ſide of the above mountains, finds its way to the ſea; the reſt, which indeed are few and inconſiderable, being ſoon abſorbed by the thirſty plains through which they paſs: and even the Orontes, though it is ſupplied by many ſmall rivulets from the lofty mountains behind which it runs, and alſo from the lake of Antioch, ſeems as conſiderable many miles above that city, as where it diſcharges itſelf into the Mediterranean.

The ſeaſons are here generally exceeding regular, and at Aleppo the air is ſo pure and free from damps, that all the inhabitants, of what rank ſoever, ſup and ſleep expoſed to the open air, from the end of May to the beginning of September, in their court-yards, or upon the houſe-tops, without ſuffering the leaſt inconvenience. The natives reckon the ſeverity of the winter to laſt only forty days, beginning from the 12th of December, and ending on the 20th of January; and indeed this computation comes near the truth. However, during this time the air is extremely piercing, particularly to ſtrangers, even though they are but juſt come from a cold climate. Yet during the thirteen years Mr. Ruſſel reſided there, the ice was not above three times of ſufficient ſtrength to bear a man, and that with caution, and only in a ſituation where the ſun beams never reached it. The ſnow, in ten years of this time, never remained on the ground above a day; and even in the depth of winter, when the ſun ſhines out and there is no wind, the weather is warm, and ſometimes almoſt hot. Hence narciſſuſes are in flower during all this ſeaſon, and violets appear at the lateſt before it is quite over.

As February advances, the fields, which were before partly green, by the ſpringing up of the latter grain, become entirely covered with an agreeable verdure; and though the trees in general continue without

till about the beginning of March, yet the almond, when lateſt, being in bloſſom before the middle of February, and quickly ſucceeded by the apricot, peach, &c. the gardens make an agreeable appearance. The ſpring now becomes extremely pleaſant; but is of ſhort duration. For as March brings it on with rapidity, ſo April with equal haſte advances towards ſummer; and the gay livery worn by the fields during theſe two months, and indeed through moſt of the winter, fades before the middle of May; and about the cloſe of that month the whole country aſſumes ſo parched and barren an aſpect, that you would ſcarce think it capable of producing any thing beſides the few hardy plants that ſtill are able to reſiſt the extreme heat. From this time not one refreſhing ſhower falls, and ſcarce a friendly cloud ever appears to ſhelter you from the rays of the ſun, till about the middle of September, when there generally falls a little rain either at Aleppo, or in its neighbourhood, which generally refreſhes the air. From theſe firſt rains till the ſecond, is an interval of between twenty and thirty days, during which the weather is temperate, ſerene, and extremely delightful; when if the rains have been plentiful, though but of a few hours duration, the country ſpeedily aſſumes a new face. After the ſecond rains the weather becomes variable, and winter approaches by ſuch ſlow degrees, that the greateſt part of the trees retain their leaves till the middle of November.

Aleppo is ſeldom troubled with hard gales of wind; the coldeſt in the winter are thoſe that blow between the eaſt and north-weſt, and the nearer they are to the former point, the colder they are during that ſeaſon, and part of the ſpring; but from the beginning of May to the end of September, thoſe very winds reſemble the hot air iſſuing out of the mouth of an oven. The only remedy againſt them is to ſhut all the doors and windows; for though they are not fatal, they are extremely troubleſome, by cauſing in moſt people a painful languor and difficulty of breathing. However, many

ſummers paſs without them, and during our author's ſtay, in no ſummer there were more than four or five days of them; for though the eaſterly and northerly winds reign moſt in the winter, yet providence has wiſely ordered it, that thoſe that are weſterly are moſt frequent in the ſummer; without which, conſidering the intenſe heat of the ſun's rays, with their reflection from a bare rocky tract of ground, and the white ſtone walls of the houſes, the country would be ſcarcely habitable.

The inhabitants of the city and ſuburbs of Aleppo, are computed at about 235,000, of whom 200,000 are Turks, 30,000 are Chriſtians, and the remaining 5000 Jews. But though they are of ſuch different religions, they ſeem to be nearly the ſame people; nor are the Chriſtians much ſuperior to their neighbours in virtue. The greateſt number of them are Greeks, the moſt numerous next to them are the Armenians, next to them the Syrians, and then the Maronites; each of whom have a church in a part of the ſuburbs, where moſt of them reſide. The vulgar language is Arabic; but the Turks of rank uſe the Turkiſh: moſt of the Armenians can ſpeak Armenian; many of the Jews underſtand Hebrew; but few Syrians can ſpeak Syriac; and ſcarce one of the Greeks underſtands a word of either ancient or modern Greek.

The people are generally of a middle ſtature, indifferently well made, and rather lean than fat; but are neither vigorous nor active. Thoſe of the city are of a fair complexion; but the peaſants, and ſuch as are obliged to be much abroad in the ſun, are ſwarthy. Their hair is uſually black, or of a dark cheſnut colour; and it is very rare to ſee any but black eyes among them. Both ſexes when young are tolerably handſome; but as the women arrive early at maturity, they ſoon fade, and in general look old at thirty. The greateſt part of them are married before the age of fourteen and eighteen, and often ſooner; but the tender paſſion of love can have little ſhare in theſe mar-

riages, the young people never ſeeing each other till the ceremony is performed. A ſlender waiſt is ſo far from being admired, that it is conſidered as a deformity; ſo that they do all they can to make themſelves plump and luſty.

While the men are girt round very tight with a ſaſh, the girdles of the women are both ſlight, narrow, and looſely put on; which, with the warmth of the climate, and the frequent uſe of the bagnio, may be one principal reaſon why their labours are much eaſier than thoſe of the women of England; the moſt delicate being ſeldom confined above ten or twelve days, and thoſe in the villages are generally able to go about their employments the next day. Women of all conditions ſuckle their own children, and ſeldom wean them till either the mother is again with child, or the infant is three or four years of age.

If an allowance be made for the ſuperiority which the Mahometans aſſume over all who are of another faith, the people of diſtinction in Aleppo may juſtly be eſteemed courteous and polite. The opinion of this ſuperiority is obſerved to increaſe in proportion to the people's vicinity to Mecca: hence the natives of Aleppo have a greater ſhare of it than thoſe of Smyrna or Conſtantinople; though, even here, it is much declined within theſe few years: and ſeveral Baſſas have conferred public honours on Europeans, that would formerly have cauſed great popular diſcontents. The common people have an affected gravity, with ſome ſhare of diſſimulation; and are ſo apt to be quarrelſome that one can ſeldom paſs a few yards in the ſtreets without being witneſs to ſome noiſy broil; and yet in many years you may never ſee a blow ſtruck, except the perſon who gives it be well aſſured that it will not be returned. But notwithſtanding their being prone to anger on the moſt trifling occaſions, no people in the world can be more calm when their intereſt requires it. However, though this be in general a true repreſenta-

tion, our author obſerves, that gratitude and juſtice require him to add, that there are perſons among them of all religions, whom he found by experience to be poſſeſſed of the utmoſt honour and integrity.

Some of the old men dye their beards, and the old women their hair, of a red colour, with henna, which gives them a very whimſical appearance; and many of the men dye their beards black, to conceal their age. However, few of the women paint, except among the Jews, and the common proſtitutes; but they uſually black their eye-brows, or make artificial ones. It is alſo become a general practice among the women of Aleppo, to black the inſide of their eye-lids with the powder of lead ore. In doing this, they take a cylindrical piece of ſilver, ſteel, or ivory, made very ſmooth, and of the thickneſs of a common probe. This they wet with water, in order that the powder may ſtick to it, and introducing it under the eye-lid, draw it along between that and the eye; by which means the inſide of the eye-lid is blacked, and a narrow black rim is formed all round the edge. This is ſometimes practiſed by the men; but then it is conſidered as foppiſh.

The women have another ſigular method of adorning themſelves, the practice of which is general among thoſe of all ranks and religions. This is dyeing the tips of the fingers and toes, with a few ſpots on the hands and feet, of a dirty yellow with henna, great quantities of which are brought from Egypt for that purpoſe. This looks very diſagreeable to an European. The more polite manner is to have the greateſt part of the hands and feet ſtained in the form of roſes and other figures, and the dye made of a dark green, by afterwards applying ſal armoniac and a little quick lime. But after ſome days this begins to change, and at laſt looks as naſty as the other.

The women in ſome of the villages, and all the Arabs and Chinganas in this country, wear a large ſilver or gold ring through the external cartilage of their

right noſtril, ſome of which our author has ſeen an inch and a half in diameter. It is alſo uſual for theſe people by way of ornament to mark their under lip, and likewiſe their breaſt and arms, with a blue colour, by pricking the part with a needle, and rubbing it with a certain powder, which leaves an indelible mark, like that ſometimes made by gunpowder in the ſame manner, on the arms of ſailors, &c. in England.

Theſe Chinganas are a race of people that are eſteemed the plague of Aleppo. They nearly reſemble the Arabs, and, like ſome tribes of them, live in tents; but are not acknowledged by them. They are extremely poor: a few of them, who are encamped round the ſkirts of the city, hire themſelves for labourers, and other menial offices; but the greateſt number come thither from all parts in the ſpring, to aſſiſt in reaping the corn.

Tobacco is ſmoked to exceſs by all the men, and many of the women of Aleppo. Their pipes are made of the twig of a roſe-buſh, cherry-tree, &c. bored for that purpoſe. Thoſe uſed by perſons of diſtinction are five or ſix feet long, and adorned with ſilver. The bowl is of clay, and often changed; but the pipes themſelves laſt for years.

The people have no notion of the benefit of exerciſe, either for the preſervation of health, or the cure of diſeaſes; and it is with reluctance that they uſe much of it either for buſineſs or pleaſure. The people of condition and their dependents muſt in ſome meaſure be excepted, they being commonly active on horſeback and in ſporting, and very dexterous in throwing the jareed, a kind of javelin or ſmall ſtick, about two feet and a half long. This is done in their mock fights; in which it is ſurpriſing to ſee with what dexterity they manage their horſes, ſo as to avoid running againſt each other, when numbers are galloping ſeemingly in the greateſt diſorder. This exerciſe is, however, ſeldom uſed, and hardly compenſates for the hours they ſpend in indolently lolling on their divans, in which

the generality paſs much the greateſt part of their time.

As they have no coaches, perſons of rank ride on horſeback in the city, with a number of ſervants walking before them, in proportion to their ſtation; which, though not ſo convenient in bad weather, has certainly a more manly, if not a grander look than our coaches. The ladies, even of the greateſt diſtinction, are obliged to walk on foot, both in the city, and when they go to a garden at a moderate diſtance. In longer journeys, the women of rank are carried by mules in a litter, cloſe covered up; and thoſe of an inferior ſtation are on theſe occaſions commonly ſtowed on each ſide of a mule, in a kind of covered cradles.

Moſt of the natives go to bed in good time, and riſe early in the morning, ſleeping in their drawers, and at leaſt in one or two waiſtcoats: ſome in winter have on their furs. They lie on a mattreſs laid on the floor; over which is a ſheet, and in winter a carpet, or ſome other woollen covering, the other ſheet being ſewed to the quilt. When the time for repoſe draws nigh, they ſit on this mattreſs, and ſmoke their pipe, till they find themſelves ſleepy; then lay themſelves down, and leave their women to cover them when they are aſleep. Many of the people of faſhion are lulled to reſt by ſoft muſic, or Arabian tales, which their women are taught to repeat. If they happen to awake in the night, they ſit up, fill their pipe, have a diſh of coffee made, and ſometimes, eſpecially in the long winter nights, eat ſome of their ſweet paſtry, and thus ſit till they drop aſleep again.

The coffee-houſes of Aleppo are frequented by none but the vulgar, who are there entertained by a concert of muſic, a ſtory-teller, an obſcene kind of puppet-ſhow, and ſometimes by jugglers and tumblers. Theſe are their only public entertainments.

Within doors their entertainments are playing at cheſs, draughts, mankala, tabuduk, and the play of the ring. With this laſt the great men often amuſe themſelves in

the winter evenings. It conſiſts in gueſſing under what coffee-cup, out of a number placed on a large ſalver, the ring is hid. Several on each ſide are engaged in this play, and thoſe who win have the privilege of blackening the faces of their antagoniſts, putting fool's caps on their heads, and making them ſtand before them while they ſing an extempore ſong in their own praiſe, and in deriſion of the loſers. However, none but their ſervants or ordinary people are treated in this manner. Among the Turks gaming is only uſed for amuſement; but ſometimes they will go ſo far as to play for a treat.

Dancing is not here eſteemed an accompliſhment, it being only practiſed by thoſe who make a trade of it, whoſe dexterity chiefly conſiſts in the motion of their arms and bodies, and putting themſelves in different attitudes, many of which, particularly of the women, are not the moſt decent. At their feſtivals they have alſo wreſtlers, who reſemble the athletæ of the ancients, in anointing their naked bodies; for they have nothing on but a pair of breeches. They ſtrut and vaunt at their entrance, ſo as to raiſe our expectations; but they make a poor figure in the performance. It muſt alſo be added, that buffoons are the conſtant attendants at all merry makings, without whom the mirth and converſation of the people would ſoon languiſh.

The muſic of the country is of two ſorts; one for the field, and the other for the chamber. The martial muſic conſiſts of trumpets, cymbals, a kind of ſhort hautboy ſhriller than ours, large drums, the upper head of which is beat upon with a heavy drumſtick, and the lower with a ſlender ſtick; and ſmall drums, beat after the manner of our kettle drums.

For their chamber muſic, they have the guitar, the dulcimer, the derviſes flute, the Arab fiddle, a couple of ſmall drums, and the diff, which is principally uſed to beat time to the voice, the moſt diſagreeable of all their muſic; for they bellow moſt hideouſly. The diff is a hoop, over which a piece of parchment is extended,

and ſometimes pieces of braſs are fixed in it to make a jingling: it is beat with the fingers, and is the true tympanum of the ancients. They have alſo a kind of flute like the ancient ſyrinx, but few of them can play upon it; and a ſort of bagpipe, which numbers of idle fellows play upon round the ſkirts of the town, in order to get money from the paſſengers. Though the people here have names for the different meaſures in muſic, they are unacquainted with muſical notes, as well as with the baſs and othet parts of muſic: they play by the ear, and keep time exactly, every inſtrument playing the ſame tune.

The people are in general extremely illiterate; for many Baſſas, farmers of the cuſtoms, and conſiderable merchants can neither read nor write. However of late years, their youth are better taught than formerly, though their education ſeldom extends farther than being juſt able to read a little of the Koran, and to write a common letter. They are entirely ignorant of the uſe of chemiſtry in medicine, and their phyſicians, who pretend to diſcover all diſeaſes by the pulſe, make no ſcruple to quote the authority of Hippocrates, Galen and Ebenſina, in ſupport of the moſt abſurd and ridiculous opinions. Their poets are much more worthy of notice; for a poetical genius ſometimes appears among them, and produces pieces that are juſtly eſteemed.

In the faſt of Radaman they neither eat, drink, nor ſmoke, from the dawn of the day till ſun-ſet; but the ſun is no ſooner down, than they eat a hearty meal; and thoſe who can afford to ſleep in the day, eat and drink the greateſt part of the night, living ſo luxurioufly, that they generally ſpend as much money in that one month, as in any two months in the year; but thoſe who are obliged to be abroad in the day, ſuffer a great deal during this faſt.

Wine and ſpirits are only drank by the licentious and irreligious Turks; but the number of theſe is greater than one would imagine; for theſe liquors being prohi-

bited by their religion, they chiefly drink in ſecret at their gardens, or privately in the night, and when they once begin, generally drink to great exceſs.

They are obliged by their religion to waſh before their prayers, which are five times in the twenty-four hours, and whenever they eaſe nature. As they take up their meat with their fingers, they are alſo under the neceſſity of waſhing after every meal, and the more cleanly likewiſe always waſh before they eat. Beſides, whenever they cohabit with the women, they are obliged to bathe before they can ſay their prayers; ſo that they are almoſt all day dabbling in the water.

Though the Koran expreſsly allows them four women, whether wives or concubines, yet as they are obliged to pay money for their wives, few of any rank have more than two; while the poorer ſort have ſeldom more than one, and hardly ever keep a miſtreſs: thoſe of middling circumſtances have, however, ſometimes three or four miſtreſſes, and I have known thoſe of greater opulence who have kept forty, beſides the women employed in the menial offices of the family; for notwithſtanding the law of Mahomet, the people here believe this to be lawful. It may appear ſtrange that ſuch a number ſhould agree tolerably together: But it muſt be conſidered, that they are accuſtomed from their infancy to a ſervile obedience; that the huſband can divorce his wife at pleaſure without aſſigning any cauſe, and ſell thoſe for ſlaves by whom he has had no children. Beſides, the wife has alſo a check upon the huſband; for his divorcing her is attended with expence, as he muſt not only loſe the money ſhe at firſt coſt him; but there is generally a ſum equal to it, to be paid in caſe he ſhould divorce her.

Marriages are in this country commonly brought about by the ladies, the mothers introducing themſelves into company where they expect to ſee girls who are diſengaged; and when they have found one they think agreeable, they propoſe the match to her mother. Afterwards, if the affair is likely to be determined, ſhe

is demanded in form of her parents by the young man's father, the price is fixed that he is to pay for her, and a licence is procured from the Cady. Each of the young folks then appoint a proxy, who with ſeveral of the male relations go to the Imam, or prieſt, who finding that they are regularly appointed, aſks the one if he is willing to buy the bride for ſuch a ſum? and the other, if he be ſatisfied with it? and being anſwered in the affirmative, he joins their hands, and the money being paid, the bargain is concluded with a prayer out of the Koran.

After this the bridegroom may take her home whenever he thinks proper; and the day being fixed, he ſends a meſſage to her family to let them know it. The ſum with which he purchaſed her is laid out in furniture for one chamber, with clothes, and ornaments for the bride, whoſe father makes ſome addition according to his circumſtances, which are carried with great pomp, to the bridegroom's houſe. He at the ſame time invites his friends and acquaintance, all of whom ſends preſents, whether they think proper to go or not. On the day appointed, the women go from the bridegroom's to the bride's houſe, and bring her home to his, accompaned by her mother, and other female relations, where each ſex make merry in ſeparate apartments till night. The men then dreſs the bridegroom, after which he is introduced into the women's apartment, where he is met by his own female relations, who dance and ſing before him to the ſtairs foot of the bride's chamber, who is brought half way down ſtairs to receive him, veiled with a piece of red gauze, and ſometimes her forehead and cheeks are covered with leaf gold, cut in various forms. He then conducts her up ſtairs, and they are left together.

The Turks at Aleppo being much addicted to jealouſy, they confine their women as much as poſſible, and ſeldom allow them to viſit even their own ſex. The huſband is, however, obliged to ſuffer them to go often to the bagnio; and Mondays and Thurſdays

are a ſort of licenſed days, in which they are permitted to viſit the tombs of their deceaſed relations, and the ſaints; which giving them an opportunity of walking abroad in the fields and gardens, they have contrived that almoſt every Thurſday in the ſpring bears the name of a particular Sheik, whoſe tomb they muſt viſit. When they go abroad, they wear white veils, ſo managed that nothing appears but their eyes, and a ſmall part of their noſe. They are uſually in large companies, and have always either an old woman, or a young lad for a guard.

On the death of a Turk, the women immediately ſet up a ſhriek, which is continued till the body is interred; but this is ſoon diſpatched, for the corpſe is kept no longer than is neceſſary to acquaint the relations who live in the town. They firſt waſh the body, and then ſtop up all the natural paſſages with cotton to prevent any moiſture from oozing out, which would render the body unclean; then wrapping it up in a clean cotton cloth, they lay it in a kind of coffin, nearly reſembling ours; only the lid riſes with a ledge in the middle, and at the head is a wooden battoon about a foot long, on which the man's head-dreſs is placed; but if it be a woman, there is a head-dreſs flat on the top like a trencher, over which is thrown an handkerchief. In the middle of the pall is a ſmall piece of the old covering of the holy houſe of Mecca, the reſt being of no particular cover or ſtuff. Upon the pall lies ſome of the beſt clothes belonging to the deceaſed.

The corpſe being carried out, a number of Sheiks with their tattered banners walk firſt, then come the male friends, and after them the corpſe, carried on a bier upon mens ſhoulders, with the head foremoſt; and as every paſſenger thinks it meritorious to lend ſome little help on thoſe ſolemn occaſions, the bearers are often relieved. The neareſt male relations immediately follow, and the women with dreadful ſhrieks cloſe the proceſſion, while the men all the way ſing prayers

out of the Koran. Thus they proceed to the moſque, where the bier it ſet down in the court-yard, and a ſervice ſaid by the Imam: after which it is carried, in the ſame order as before, to the burying-place, of which there is only one public in the city, all the others being in the fields. The graves, which lie eaſt and weſt, are lined with ſtone. The corpſe is taken out, and put on the right ſide, in a poſture between ſitting and lying, with the head to the weſtward, ſo that the face may be to the ſouth, towards Mecca: a little earth being put behind the body to keep it ſteady, the grave is covered with long ſtones that go acroſs, and prevent the earth they put over them from falling in upon the corpſe. The Imam throws on the firſt handful of earth, ſaying a prayer for the ſoul of the deceaſed, and exhorting ſuch as hear him to be mindful of their end. After him, every one preſent throws on a handful of earth, ſaying, "God be merciful to the deceaſed." The neareſt relations pray at the grave on the third, ſeventh, and fortieth days, as alſo the day twelve-month after the perſon's deceaſe; and every Monday or Thurſday the women ſtrew the grave with leaves and flowers. The men wear no mourning, but the women lay aſide their ornaments, and wear the graveſt coloured clothes.

We ſhall now take a view of the cuſtoms and manners of the Chriſtians, who compoſe ſo conſiderable a part of the city. In keeping their faſts they are generally very rigorous; but if a phyſician declares their life to be in danger, the Greeks, Syrians, and Maronets, will often break their faſt; but the Armenians are generally ſo very ſtrict in this particular, that not even the preſervation of life can prevail on them to interrupt it for a ſingle day.

The Chriſtian women, when they go abroad, are as cloſely veiled as thoſe of the Turks; but they are ſeldom permitted to go any where but to church, to the bagnio, to their phyſicians, or now and then to viſit a relation. A few of them allow their wives two or three times a year to go to the gardens; but others, though

they are not a mile from their houſes, never ſee one in their lives.

They are generally contracted while children by their parents; and there being no material difference in the marriage ceremonies of the different ſects, a deſcription of thoſe of the Maronites may ſerve as a ſpecimen of all the reſt. The bride having been demanded, the bridegroom's relations are invited to an entertainment at the houſe of the bride's father, to fix the wedding day; the parties themſelves not being conſulted. On the afternoon of the day appointed, they again go to the bride's houſe, and after ſupper return to that of the bridegroom, who has not yet appeared; for he is by cuſtom obliged to hide himſelf, and is not to be found, till they have made a ſeemingly ſtrict ſearch for him. This done, and he being brought and dreſſed in his worſt clothes, great noiſe and rejoicings are made. He and the brideman are now led ſeveral times about the court in a noiſy proceſſion, and then conducted into a room, where their wedding clothes are laid out in form: a prieſt then ſays a long prayer over them; and being dreſſed, they are led back into the court, with the ſame ceremony as before. At midnight, or a few hours after, the relations, accompanied by all of both ſexes who have been invited to the wedding, again return in proceſſion to the houſe where the bride is, muſic playing before them, and each holding a candle. On their coming to the door, it is ſhut againſt them; and on their knocking and demanding the bride, they are refuſed admittance. Upon which a mock fight enſues; but the bridegroom's party are always conquerors. The women then lead the bride out of the chamber, covered all over with a veil, and ſhe is carried in proceſſion to the bridegroom's, accompanied only by one or two of her ſiſters, or neareſt female relations. Being ſeated among the women at the upper end of the room, ſhe continues covered with a veil of red gauze, and, like a ſtatue muſt neither ſpeak nor move, except riſing to every perſon who comes into the room, which

is notified to her by one of her women who ſits by her; for ſhe muſt not open her eyes. The remainder of the night is paſſed in noiſy mirth, by each ſex in their ſeparate apartments, there being no want of ſweetmeats, fruit, wine, and arrack; for now few retire to reſt.

At about nine the next morning the biſhop or prieſt comes to perform the ceremony. All the women are veiled: the bride ſtands entirely covered, ſupported by two women, the bridemaid ſtanding by to keep the veil well adjuſted. The bridegroom, dreſſed in a gaudy robe, going in with the biſhop, is placed on the bride's left hand, with his brideman by him; and a ſhort ſervice being performed, the biſhop puts a crown firſt on the bridegroom's head, and then on the heads of the bride, the brideman and bridemaid. Afterwards joining the hands of the bridegroom and bride, he continues the ſervice, and after ſome time puts a ring on the bridegroom's finger, and delivers another to the bridemaid to be put on that of the bride. Near the concluſion of the ſervice, he ties a piece of tape or ribbon round the bridegroom's neck, and in the afternoon a prieſt comes to take it off. The ceremony being concluded, the bridegroom, and all the men, retire again to their own apartment, where they drink coffee, and ſit very gravely while the biſhop ſtays, which is not long; for dinner being immediately ſerved up for him and a few others, he ſoon dines, and takes his leave; on which they inſtantly reſume their noiſy mirth. Great quantities of proviſions are dreſſed, and ſeveral tables covered, both for dinner and ſupper; and there is uſually plenty of wine, arrack, coffee, and tobacco.

At about eleven or twelve at night, the bridegroom is led in proceſſion to the bride's chamber, where preſenting her a glaſs of wine, ſhe drinks to him, and he having returned the compliment, is conducted back with the ſame ceremony. The muſic during the whole time continues playing, buffoons and other of their diverſions are going forwards, and the houſe is uſually full of company, till the next day in the afternoon,

when they all retire, except a few intimate friends, who ſup with the bridegroom, and about midnight leave him heartily fatigued, to retire to the bride's chamber.

All who have been invited to the wedding ſend preſents, and for ſeveral days after the marriage is conſummated, flowers are ſent to the bride by all her female acquaintance. On that day ſeven-night after the celebration of the marriage, the bride's relations come to viſit her, and an entertainment is provided for them. But in this country it is not decent for a bride to ſpeak to any perſon for at leaſt a month, except a few words to her huſband; and this the Armenians are ſo unreaſonable as to extend to a year. The old women generally give them a ſtrict charge about this, particularly not to talk to the huſband too ſoon.

The Europeans, or Franks, reſiding in Aleppo, are chiefly Engliſh and French. Of the former are the conſul, the chaplain, chancellor, phyſician, ten merchants, and the cheaux, an officer of ceremony, the ſame with one among the Turks of that name, who walks before the conſul with a ſtaff tipped with ſilver; he alſo takes care of the letters, and is employed as a meſſenger. The French have a conſul, and the other officers, with druggomen of their own nation, and double the number of merchants and clerks. Under the protection of the French are likewiſe three convents in the city, and a college of Jeſuits. The Dutch have a conſul reſiding here, but no other perſon of that country. There are alſo a few Venetian merchants and Italian Jews. The greateſt part of the European merchants live in kanes, in the principal quarter of the city; in which the ground floor ſerves for their warehouſes, and the upper ſtory is fitted up for their dwellings, by buildings between the pillars of the colonade, forming a long corridore, opening on which are a number of rooms, ſo that they much reſemble cloyſters; and as theſe merchants are unmarried, and their communication with the people of the country is almoſt ſolely on account of trade, their way of life greatly

reſembles the monaſtic. They formerly wore the Turkiſh habit, retaining only the hat and wig by the way of diſtinction; but of late years the far greater part of them continue in their proper dreſs.

The few black cattle near the city are chiefly uſed for the plough, or in drawing water for the gardens. Moſt of thoſe employed for that purpoſe are very large, with remarkable long legs, and great bellies. The other cattle of this ſpecies are ſmall, and all in general have very ſhort horns. As the Turks ſeldom eat beef, what is killed is chiefly for the Europeans, who have it good at all ſeaſons, particularly in ſummer, the natives ſtill allowing the cattle employed to tread out the corn, to eat what they pleaſe.

There are abundance of buffaloes in ſome parts of Syria, but near Aleppo very few, and thoſe chiefly kept for their milk. Mutton is plentiful, fat and good, throughout the whole year; and lamb is to be had in every ſeaſon. They have here two ſorts of ſheep; the one reſembling the larger kinds in Britain, only the tails are ſomewhat longer and thicker: the others are the moſt numerous, and are thoſe often mentioned by travellers on account of their extraordinary tails, which are very broad and large, terminating in a ſmall appendage that turns back upon it, and is of a ſubſtance between fat and marrow, uſually weighing upwards of fifteen pounds; but ſuch as are of the largeſt breed, and have been fattened, have tails that ſometimes weigh fifty pounds. As incredible as this may ſeem, it is ſtrictly true. Thoſe in Aleppo being kept up in yards, are in no danger of injuring their tails; but in ſome other places, where they feed in the fields, the ſhepherds are obliged to fix a piece of thin board to the under part of the tail, to prevent its being torn by the buſhes, thiſtles, and rocks, as it is not covered underneath with thick wool like the upper part; and ſome have ſmall wheels to facilitate the dragging of this board after them: whence they have been ſaid by travellers to have carts to carry their tails.

They have likewiſe two kinds of goats, one reſembling thoſe in Britain, and the other as remarkable for the length of their ears, as the above mentioned ſheep for the largeneſs of their tails. Theſe goats are ſomewhat bigger than ours; but their ears are often a foot long, and of a proportionable breadth. They are chiefly kept for their milk, which is ſweet and well taſted. About the beginning of April great numbers are brought to the city, which are every morning driven through the ſtreets, and their milk ſold as they paſs, till September. The butter and cheeſe are bad, and and made indiſcrimately of the milk of cows, buffaloes, ſheep and goats.

The country abounds with two ſorts of antelopes, of which that of the mountains is the moſt beautiful: its back and neck are of a dark brown, and the antelope of the plain is neither ſo ſwift nor ſo well made; yet both ſorts are ſo extremely fleet, that the greyhounds, though very good, can ſeldom take them, unleſs in ſoft deep ground.

There are alſo plenty of hares; but the natives are not fond of them, except the Arabs, who have a very extraordinary method of dreſſing them. They dig a hole in the earth, which they fill with light bruſhwood, and ſet it on fire: when thoroughly lighted, the hair with the ſkin and entrails, juſt as it was taken, is thrown into it; and after the flame has ceaſed, they cover up the hole with the looſe earth dug out of it, which at firſt had been laid round the edge ſo as to grow hot. Thus it is left till they judge it to be ſufficiently roaſted; and then, throwing a handful of ſalt over it, they eat it without any farther dreſſing.

In the city are kept a few tame rabbits, chiefly for the tables of the Europeans; and a wild hog is ſometimes brought from abroad, which is eſteemed by the Engliſh as a great rarity. The country likewiſe affords a few porcupines, that are not often taſted by the Europeans; and there are land turtle and frogs in great

abundance, which are eaten by thoſe of the Romiſh religion.

Of the beaſts of burden are horſes, aſſes, mules, and three ſeveral ſorts of camels.

Among the rocky hils are hyænas, but they are not ſo large as thoſe found in the mountains. Some writers have reported, that this animal will imitate the human voice, and even learn ſome of the ſhepherds names, ſo as to call them out and devour them. But this is not true; for they are fonder of the flocks than of the ſhepherd, and will not attack men but in their own defence, or through exceſs of hunger: yet they ſtill retain the character of robbing the ſepulchres, whenever they have an opportunity of doing it.

Wolves and foxes are found in the plains, but they are ſmaller than thoſe in Europe; and jackals are in ſuch plenty about the gardens, that every evening they paſs in full cry like a pack of hounds, not only giving diſturbance by their noiſe, but making free with the poultry and other proviſions.

Though mount Taurus affords ſhelter to the ounce, and a few tygers are found in moſt of the high mountains: though the lion rages on the banks of the Euphrates between Bagdad and Baſſorah, and the jerboa in the deſert, and perhaps many other animals in the ſame places; yet our author propoſing only to comprehend the parts round Aleppo, thought it unneceſſary to treat of them here.

Of domeſtic fowls, the markets of Aleppo are furniſhed with the dunghill cock and hen; the Bagdad fowl, which is of a large breed; the rumkin, or cock and hen without rumps; the turkey, gooſe, and duck. Of game, there are in the river, in winter, wild geeſe, plenty of common wild ducks and mallards, ſeveral kinds of widgeon the water-hen, water-rail, coot, ſpoonbill, woodcock, and various ſorts of teal, with which the tables of the Europeans are ſupplied. In autumn the becca-figos and witwall are both in ſeaſon, and the former is eſteemed a great delicacy. There

are here alſo many other ſorts of wild fowl in the other ſeaſons, among which are pigeons, and particularly the carrier, formerly uſed by the Europeans for expeditiouſly conveying the news of a ſhip's arrival at Scandaroon; but this has been diſuſed for many years.

The pigeon thus employed was one that had young at Aleppo. Upon enquiring into the method of training them, Mr. Ruſſel was told, that they were ſent down to Scandaroon in an open cage, and as ſoon as let go they would fly directly to Aleppo; but others ſaid, that the bird was brought to this by letting it return from ſhorter diſtances on the Scandaroon road. All agree, that if the pigeon had been a fortnight at Scandaroon, it was not afterwards to be truſted to fly back, leſt it ſhould have forgot its young, and conſequently not be ſo eager to get home. A ſmall piece of paper, with the ſhip's name, day of arrival, and the moſt material circumſtances, contained in a narrow compaſs, was fixed under the wing, to prevent its being deſtroyed by wet. They alſo bathed the pigeon's feet in vinegar, in order to keep them cool, that it might not ſettle to drink or waſh itſelf, which would have deſtroyed the paper. An Engliſh gentleman, who remembered this practiſed, ſaid that he had known one of them arrive in two hours and a half.

The falcons bred to the taking of hares and antelopes are of two kinds, and both large; but, though caught wild, they train them in a few days to fly at their prey. For antelope hunting, they chuſe ſuch as are fierce; theſe are taught to fix on the cheek of the animal, which retards its motion till the greyhounds come up. But for hunting the hare, they prefer ſuch falcons as are not diſpoſed to fix upon her, but by repeated buffeting on the head, and riſing in the air between each blow, they retard the hare till an ordinary greyhound can ſeize her.

They have here a ſmall hawk of the ſize of a pigeon, but ſo fierce that it will fly at any thing, and will often take the largeſt eagles, of which there are plenty in this country. They were formerly trained to ſeize the eagle under the wing, by which means depriving him of the uſe of it, they would both fall to the ground together: but their preſent method is to ſeize him on the back between the two wings, which has the ſame effect; but bringing him down more ſlowly, gives the falconer time to come in to the hawk's aſſiſtance; in which if he is not very expeditious, the hawk is in either caſe ſpeedily torn to pieces.

Beſides the birds for food and ſport, the country alſo produces the black vulture, a few pelicans, the ſtork, the owl, a kind of jay, whoſe feathers are beautifully variegated with blue, green, and brown; two ſorts of the crane, one a fine bird, which the natives often tame in their houſes, and court-yards; the heron, the flamingo, the cormorant, the black-cap, a ſort of gulls which are in great numbers about the city all the winter, and ſo tame that the women call them from the terraces, throwing up pieces of bread, which they catch in the air; and many others, beſides a variety of ſinging birds.

Of the reptiles and inſects, the country abounds with ſerpents of various kinds, many of them of the moſt venomous nature; but as they all fly from man, and the barrenneſs of the fields in ſummer, the only ſeaſon in which they are abroad, there is but little danger of treading upon them by accident. However, in the houſes are often found large white ſnakes; but our author never knew any one bit by them. The ſcolopendra and ſcorpion, indeed, often ſting the natives in their houſes, which cauſes pain for ſeveral hours, attended with no other bad conſequences. Various kinds of lizards are found over the whole country, and in the gardens are tree-frogs. But toads are ſcarcely ever ſeen at Aleppo, though they are common upon the coaſt.

Locuſts ſometimes appear in ſuch incredible multitudes, as to deſtroy all the verdure wherever they paſs: but there are every ſpring and ſummer ſome of two or three different ſpecies to be met with about Aleppo, none of theſe deſtructive ſwarms happened while our author was in that city. The Arabs eat thoſe inſects when freſh, and alſo ſalt them up as a delicacy.

Of the inſects of uſe there are only the bees, which produce excellent honey, and the ſilk worm. There is, indeed, but little ſilk produced near Aleppo; but that being the market to which it is brought from all parts of Syria, great quantities are annually ſent from thence to Britain.

With reſpect to the vegetables of this country, Turkey wheat, barley, cotton, lentils, beans, cicers, Turkey millet, a green kidney bean, muſk-melons, water-melons, a ſmall cucumber, baſtard ſaffron, hemp, and ſeveral others, they ſow in the fields; but about Aleppo they ſow no oats, their horſes being all fed with barley.

The harveſt commences with the barley about the beginning of May, and both that and the wheat are generally all reaped by the twentieth of that month. As ſoon as it is cut down, or rather plucked up, which is the moſt uſual way, it is carried up to a neighbouring ſpot of hard even ground, where it is ſeparated from the huſk by a machine like a ſledge, which runs upon two or three rollers, drawn by horſes, cows, or aſſes. In theſe rollers are fixed low iron wheels notched like the teeth of a ſaw, and pretty ſharp, at once cutting the ſtraw, and ſeparating the grain. Their granaries are ſubterraneous caverns, the entry to which is by a ſmall hole like a well, often in the highway; and as they are commonly left open when empty, they render it not a little dangerous riding in the night near the villages.

Near the city tobacco is planted only in the gardens; but near the villages, at about ten or fifteen miles diſtance, a large quantity is planted in the fields; and all

the hills from Shogre to Latachia produce ſuch plenty of it, that this vegetable is no inconſiderable branch of trade, particularly with Egypt.

The olives produced about the city are little more than ſufficient to ſerve the inhabitants for pickling. But at Edlib, about thirty miles to the ſouth-weſt, and at the neighbouring villages, their large plantations afford abundance of oil, with which, and the aſhes brought by the Arabs from the deſart, a great quantity of ſoap is annually made both at Aleppo and Edlib.

The vineyards round the city produce pretty good grapes; but the wine made by the Chriſtians and Jews is produced from grapes, and alſo raiſins brought from ſome diſtance. From the raiſins alſo, when mixed with anniſeeds, is drawn a ſtrong ſpirit, to which they give the name of arrack; and of this the Chriſtians and Jews drink pretty freely. The inſpiſſated juice of the grape is brought to the city in ſkins, and ſold in the public markets; it has the appearance of coarſe honey, and is of a ſweet taſte.

Of the fruits of this country, there are only two or three ſorts of apples, and thoſe very bad. They have cherries, apricots, peaches; indifferent good pears, quinces, pomegranates of three ſorts, mulberries, oranges, lemons; figs of four kinds, walnuts, hazelnuts, piſtachio nuts, &c. Theſe trees are all ſtandards planted promiſcuouſly, and little improved by culture.

The country alſo produces ſeveral kinds of foreſt trees, as the plane, the white poplar, the horn-beam, a very few oaks, the aſh, the tamariſk, the turpentine-tree, and many others.

There are here likewiſe a great variety of garden plants and flowers, which render the country extremely pleaſant in ſpring, before the great heats have ſcorched them up, and after the ſucceeding rains have revived their beauties.

THE

TRAVELS

OF THE

AMBASSADORS FROM THE DUKE OF HOLSTEIN

INTO

MUSCOVY, TARTARY, AND PERSIA.

Containing a deſcription of the cities through which they paſſed, of the manners, cuſtoms, and religious ceremonies of the inhabitants of thoſe Empires, and a particular account of the curious events that took place during their journey.

FREDERIC Duke of Holſtein, after the building of the city of Frederickſtadt, reſolved to ſettle the ſilk trade there; and as ſilk was then brought by land from Perſia by the way of Moſcovy, he, in the year 1633, appointed Philip Cruſius, his Privy Councellor, and Otto Brugman, a merchant of Hamburg, his Ambaſſadors to the Czar and to the Sophi. As their firſt voyage to Ruſſia is but little intereſting or inſtructive, we ſhall here omit it, and to proceed to the ſecond, in which they ſet ſail from Hamburgh, with a numerous retinue, on the 21ſt of October 1635; but meeting with ſeveral ſtorms, and at laſt finding it impoſſible to ſave the ſhip, the Ambaſſadors, with ſome of their retinue, were on the 8th of November, carried aſhore to the iſland of Hogland. However, all the men, the greateſt part of the goods, and ſeven horſes were ſaved; their chief loſs being a clock valued at 1000l. ſterling,

which was broken to pieces by the horſes ſtruggling to get looſe.

They now ſheltered themſelves in ſome miſerable cottages inhabited by Livonians, where they dried their clothes; but their proviſions being either loſt or ſpoiled by the ſea-water, they were under the greateſt apprehenſions of being reduced to feed on the bark of trees, as had been the caſe of ſome who had been forced to winter in that iſland. They, however ſupplied their preſent neceſſities with what little biſcuit they had ſaved, which being ſoaked in ſalt water they boiled in freſh, and putting in ſome fennel and cummin ſeed they made it into pottage; and ſometimes they had the happineſs of catching a few fiſh.

The iſle of Hogland, which is ſo named from its height, may be ſeen at a great diſtance at ſea. It is about three leagues in length, and one in breadth, and is covered with rocks, fir-trees and thorns.

On the 17th the Ambaſſadors prevailed on two fiſhing-boats to tranſport them to the continent, with five attendants in each: but it being twelve leagues over, they had ſcarce ſailed five, when the wind turning againſt them, they with much difficulty perſuaded the fiſhermen not to return back, but to land them on an iſland, which they reached before night, where they were obliged to ſup upon a piece of Milan cheeſe: however, the next day, after ſuffering ſeveral ſquals of wind, they landed in the province of Eſtonia. Four days after, two barks being forced in Hogland by ſtreſs of weather, thoſe who had been left there took this opportunity of being carried with the remaining baggage and horſes to the continent, where they ſafely arrived on the 24th, and after having ſtaid ſome days to refreſh themſelves, proceeded from thence to Revel, which they reached on the ſecond of December.

Revel is a port town of Livonia, and the capital of Eſtonia, or Eaſt Land. It is ſituated in 24° eaſt longitude, and in 59° north latitude, upon the ſouth entrance of the Gulph of Finland. It is a large city, and

as it has one of the moſt commodious harbours in the Baltic, was for above 300 years a member of the Hanſeatic League. The caſtle is built upon a rock, and is ſurrounded by precipices on all ſides, except towards the city. The inhabitants profeſs the Lutheran religion, and their eccleſiaſtical affairs are managed by a Conſiſtory and Superintendant. Their political conſtitution is democratical; the magiſtrate being obliged in affairs of moment to take the advice of the chief men of all the corporations.

Livonia is bounded by the Gulph of Finland on the north; by Ingria and Great Novogorod on the eaſt; by Lithuania and Courland on the ſouth; and by the Baltic on the weſt. It is about 160 miles long, and 120 broad; and is uſually divided into Eſtonia, and Lettenland or Leſticia. Its chief towns are Revel, Narva, and Riga, which have all good harbours. Livonia abounds in all ſorts of grain, and more particularly in wheat, the grounds having been much improved and fitted for tillage by ſetting the great foreſts on fire, the aſhes of which have enrichened the ſoil. They have alſo abundance of cattle and fowl, which are much cheaper here than in Germany; a hare being ſold for four-pence, and a heath-cock for ſix-pence.

The inhabitants of Livonia were involved in the darkneſs of Paganiſm till the twelfth century, and moſt of them are ſtill ſo addicted to their pagan ſuperſtitions, as ſcarce to deſerve the name of Chriſtians. The ordinary women of Eſtonia wear their petticoats without plaits, and on their backs have little braſs chains, with counters of the ſame metal hanging at the ends. Thoſe who have the ambition to appear in a high rank, have a necklace of plates of ſilver, of the ſize of crown or half-crown pieces, but no thicker than the back of a knife; and upon the breaſt hangs one as large as a trencher. Both men and women are clothed either in courſe woollen ſtuff or linen, and their ſhoes are either of the bark of trees, or of raw leather. Maids wear

nothing on their heads, but let their hair hang careleſsly like men.

The ceremonies after marriage are peculiar to themſelves; for if a country fellow marries one of another town or village, he goes thither on horſeback, ſets her behind him, and makes her claſp him round with her right arm, holding in his hand a ſtick cleft at the end with a piece of braſs money in it, which he gives to him who opens a wicket, through which he is to paſs. Before him rides a perſon playing on a bagpipe, and two of his friends with naked ſwords, who ſtrike with them twice againſt the door of the houſe where the marriage is to be conſummated. As ſoon as the bridegroom is ſeated, one of the ſwords is ſtuck in a beam over his head, to prevent the effect of charms, for which purpoſe the bride alſo ſcatters many little pieces of red cloth on the road, eſpecially at the croſs ways, and upon the graves of ſuch children as have died without baptiſm, who are commonly buried on the high-way. The bride ſits at table with a veil over her face; and before the gueſts have been long ſeated, they both riſe and go to bed, but return about two hours after, and ſit down with the reſt. The feaſt is concluded with dancing and drinking, till they fall down upon the floor.

To this account of Livonia by the Secretary of the embaſſy, let it be added, that dreadful were the calamities ſuffered by this fertile country in the beginning of the preſent century; for while the Ruſſians and Swedes were contending for its dominion, the Czar Peter the Great, fearing that he ſhould be unable to keep the poſſeſſion of that part he had taken from the Swedes, ſuffered the Calmucks and other Tartars in his army, to commit unparalleled barbarities; and afterwards, when he had conquered the whole country, obſerving that the natives were fonder of their old maſters than of the Ruſſians, he cruelly compelled the inhabitants to abandon the place of their nativity, driving multitudes of them in chains to the confines of the

Caſpian ſea. The Czarina Catharine, who was born in Livonia, afterwards prevailed on him to recal them; but moſt of them periſhed before the publication of the edict: and other Ruſſian nations being introduced here, it remains in the poſſeſſion of Elizabeth the preſent Czarina.

But to proceed: A page who had been ſent to Gottorp for new credentials, and one of the interpreters who had been diſpatched to Moſcow with an account of the ſhipwreck of the ambaſſadors, being returned, they ſent their baggage in thirty-one ſledges, and a few days after followed them. On the fifth of March they arrived at Narva, a large city and port of Livonia, ſituated in the diſtrict of Allentaken, upon the river Narva, which riſes out of the lake Piepus, and two leagues below the town falls into the Gulph of Finland. About half a league above this town is a cataract, the waters of which break with ſuch violence upon the rocks, that a kind of dewy cloud riſing up high into the air, affords, in a ſun-ſhiny day, the appearance of a rainbow. This river divides Livonia from Ruſſia. There is a ſtrong caſtle on the ſame ſide of the river as the town, and on the other ſide is the caſtle of Juanogorod, built by the Muſcovites on a ſteep rock, which forms a kind of peninſula. Betwixt Revel and Narva are abundance of bears and wolves, which are very dangerous in winter, when the ground is covered with ſnow.

They left Narva on the 7th of March; and having received news on the 9th, while they were at Orlin, that the Ruſſian Priſtaff waited for them on the frontiers, they immediately ſet out to meet him, and having travelled about a league, found him in a wood, attended by twenty-four Strelitzers and ninety ſledges. The Priſtaff no ſooner perceived the Ambaſſadors alighting, but he came out of his ſledge, clothed in a veſt of flowered velvet, with a gold chain acroſs his breaſt, his upper garment being lined with ſables. They

advanced ſlowly to meet each other, till coming up together, the Ambaſſadors pulled off their hats, when the Priſtaff cried, Ambaſſadors be uncovered; and being told that he ſaw they were ſo, he began to read his paper. "Knez Peter Alexiowitz Repuin, Waywode "of Novogorod, has ſent me an order from the Great "Lord Czar, and Grand Duke, &c. to receive the "Ambaſſadors Philip Cruſius and Otto Brugman, and "to accommodate you with horſes, carriages, provi- "ſions, and all other neceſſaries for the continuation of "your journey to Novogorod, and thence to Moſ- "cow."

The ambaſſadors returned him thanks, and he having given them the precedency, accompanied them to Novogorod, which is forty German leagus from Narva. They arrive there on the 11th, when the Priſtaff took the precedency of the ambaſſadors, for which he had received expreſs orders from the Waywode of Novogorod.

This city is ſituated in a ſpacious plain, upon the river Wolcoff, which riſing from the lake of Ilmen, half a league above the city, and croſſing the lake of Ladoga, is augmented by the river Niova, and diſcharges itſelf into the gulph of Finland. It abounds in all ſorts of fiſh, but eſpecially in bream. The city was formerly governed by its own prince, who was independent of the Czar of Muſcovy. Here the Hanſe towns had their office; for the river being navigable from its ſource, and the country round about abounding in honey, flax, hemp, wheat, wax, and Ruſſia leather, which is better dreſſed here than in any other part of Muſcovy, this became the chief trading city of all the north; it being anciently a proverb, Who can oppoſe God and the great city of Novogorod? Indeed from the number of its ſteeples, and the ruins of the walls, it ſufficiently appears, that it was of much larger extent than at preſent, and with great propriety obtained the name of Novogorod Veliki, or Novogorod the great.

The caſtle, which is on the other ſide of the river, is the reſidence of the governor, and is joined to the city by a bridge. Oppoſite to the caſtle is the monaſtery of St. Anthony, who, the Muſcovites pretend, came from Rome down the Tiber, and then ſailing over the ſeas upon a mill-ſtone, came up the river to Novogorod. They alſo ſay, that meeting with ſome fiſhermen in this river, he agreed with them for the firſt draught they ſhould take; which proving a cheſt of prieſt's veſtments, books, and money, he beſtowed the laſt in building a chapel, where he lies interred; and many miracles are ſaid to be wrought there by his body. The pilgrims have been ſo liberal in their gifts to this chapel, that a great monaſtery has been erected near it. In the chapel they ſhew a mill-ſtone, ſaid to be that upon which St. Anthony performed his voyage.

While they were at Novogorod, the governor and others made them ſeveral preſents of refreſhments, in return for which the ambaſſadors preſented the governor with a coach. Having ſtaid in this city five days, they proceeded forward on the 16th of March, and on the 23d reached Twer, when the ſnow beginning to melt, they left their ſledges, and travelled ſix leagues upon the Volga to Gorodna; and then the ice beginning to give way, they continued their journey by land, till they arrived at Nicola Darebna, within two leagues of Moſcow, where they received the Czar's orders for their entry, which was made the next day in the following order.

In the front marched twenty-four Coſſacks, who had hitherto been their guard; then the ſteward to the ambaſſadors; next followed their officers and gentlemen, three abreaſt; then three trumpeters, with ſilver trumpets; then ſix carabineers, followed by the ambaſſadors in two ſledges, with ſix partizans on both ſides. The ſledges were followed by the pages; then came the reſt of the train on horſeback, and afterwards the baggage.

Being come within half a league of the city, they were met by ſeveral companies of Muſcovites, Tartars,

and Germans, who having taken a view of them, returned to the city; and ſoon after ſeveral troops of Muſcovite horſe advancing, encompaſſed them on all ſides, and proceeded with them towards Moſcow. At the diſtance of about an Engliſh mile from the gates they were met by two Priſtaffs followed by the czar's maſter of the horſe, with twenty white led horſes, and a great number of attendants. They were no ſooner come within twenty paces of the ambaſſadors, but they let them know that they muſt alight and come to them, and would not leave their ſledges, nor uncover themſelves, till the ambaſſadors had done both; for if the Priſtaffs had neglected theſe punctilios, they would not only have been turned out of their places, but have been ſeverely whipt or cudgelled. The Priſtaffs then complimented the ambaſſadors in the name of the czar, and letting them know that he had granted them the favour of making their entry upon his own horſes, the czar's maſter of the horſe preſented two very fine white horſes for the ambaſſadors, and twelve more for the principal perſons of their train. Upon which they were conducted through a double file of Strelitzers to a ſtone houſe near the caſtle, and having entered their lodgings, a variety of meats and drinks were immediately brought them from the czar's kitchen and cellar. Afterwards their daily allowance was fixed, and the doors of their houſe guarded by a corporal and nine Strelitzers, till they had their firſt audience.

On the 3d of April they were conducted to their firſt public audience through a body of Strelitzers, who had made a lane from their houſe to the caſtle. After this audience, which only conſiſted in compliments of thanks to the czar, they returned to their lodgings, and it being Lent, one of the czar's carvers followed them with forty diſhes of fried and boiled fiſh, and twelve ſorts of liquor for their drinking: in return, the ambaſſadors made the carver a preſent of a piece of gilt plate, and gave two crowns to each of the perſons who carried the fiſh and liquor.

On the 9th of April they had a conference with the czar's commiſſioners, and the 10th, being Palm Sunday, they having expreſſed their deſire of ſeeing the annual proceſſion, in which the Muſcovites repreſent the entrance of our Saviour into Jeruſalem, horſes were ſent to carry them and their retinue to a place near the caſtle-gate, where two ſmall theatres were erected for that purpoſe; one for them, and the other for the Perſian ambaſſador; who ſat behind them.

After the ſervice was performed in our Lady's church, the Czar and Patriarch came from thence out of the caſtle in the following order. Firſt appeared a boarded chariot, which was very large, but low, drawing after it a tree, on which hung many apples, figs, and grapes, and within it four little boys with ſurplices ſinging Hoſanna. Then came a conſiderable number of Prieſts in their ſurplices and copes, with banners, croſſes, and pictures faſtened to long poles; ſome of them ſinging, and others caſting incenſe among the people. They were followed by the Czar's Factors, and theſe by the Diakin, Clerk, Secretaries, Knez, and Boyars, with branches of palm in their hands; after whom came the Czar himſelf, with a crown on his head, and moſt magnificently dreſſed; ſupported by his two principal counſellors of ſtate, and leading by the bridle the patriarch's horſe, which was covered with cloth, and dreſſed up like an aſs. The patriarch had a white round ſattin cap adorned with pearls, and about it a very rich coronet; and in his right hand he carried a croſs richly ſet with diamonds, with which he gave his benediction to the ſpectators. He was ſurrounded by ſome Metropolitans and biſhops, and followed by a great number of prieſts with books and cenſers in their hands. Fifty boys were ſeen to leave their red caſſocks on the ground, while others ſpread pieces of cloth of an ell ſquare, along the way where the proceſſion paſſed.

The czar being come oppoſite the theatre where the two ambaſſadors were placed, ſtopped and ſent his interpreter to enquire after their health, and ſtaid till

till their anſwer was brought him. The proceſſion then proceeded to the church, and having continued there about half an hour, returned back to the caſtle. The patriarch is obliged to preſent the czar with a purſe of 400 crowns, for the honour he does him on this occaſion, on leading the horſe on which he rides. This ceremony is obſerved on the ſame day throughout all Muſcovy, the governors of the provinces and the Metropolitans ſupplying the places of the czar and patriarch.

On the 17th of April the ambaſſadors ſaw them celebrate Eaſter day with great rejoicings, which chiefly conſiſt in feaſting and debauchery, the public houſes being filled in the day, and the ſtreets at night, with drunken people, as well eccleſiaſtics as laics of both ſexes. On this day many ſell painted eggs, which for fourteen days after the Muſcovites ſend as preſents to their friends, and if during this time they happen to meet, they kiſs with this ſalutation, Chriſtes wos chreſt, that is, Chriſt is riſen: to which the others anſwer, Woſt in wos chreſt, Truly he is riſen: when he that kiſſes firſt, preſents an egg to the other, which, as well as the kiſs, no body, of what ſex, age, or quality ſoever, dares to refuſe. The czar himſelf preſents ſuch eggs to his principal lords; and on Eaſter day, before he goes to church, he viſits the priſons, and orders an egg and ſome ſheep-ſkin fur to be given to each of the priſoners, telling them that this is a day of rejoicing, ſince Chriſt who died for their ſins is now riſen again.

The two ambaſſadors had afterwards ſeveral conferences with the czar's commiſſioners. After which he went into the country, and on the 15th returned with the czarina, attended by a great retinue of lords and ladies, among whom 36 maids of honour rode aſtride on horſeback cloathed in red with white hats on their heads. ſcarves of the ſame colour about their necks, and their faces very indelicately painted.

On the 20th of June the ambaſſadors received notice by the priſtaff, that they were at liberty to continue their journey into Perſia whenever they pleaſed, and

at their return they ſhould have the honour of kiſſing his majeſty's hand, and of receiving an anſwer to their credentials. Accordingly they made all neceſſary preparations for their departure; provided themſelves with boats to carry them to Niſa, and with the czar's permiſſion, took three lieutenants, four ſerjeants, and twenty-three common ſoldiers, who were Scots and Germans, and belonged to his guards, into their ſervice, to protect them againſt the Tartars upon the Volga: they alſo hired ſome Muſcovites for their ordinary ſervants.

Muſcovy receives its name from the river Moſca or Moſcowa, which ariſing in the province of Twer divides the ſuburb called Strelitza Slavoda from the city of Moſcow, and after joining the river Occa near Columna, falls into the Volga. It is ſituated in the very heart of Muſcovy, and contains about 40,000 houſes, all of which, except thoſe belonging to the great lords and rich merchants, are built of wood, and commonly covered with the bark of trees, upon which turf is ſometimes laid. This manner of building renders them very ſubject to take fire, ſo that there ſcarce paſſes a month but ſome entire ſtreets are reduced to aſhes; but to remedy this inconvenience, they may buy new houſes ready made at an eaſy rate.

The ſtreets of Moſcow are very broad: but the leaſt rain renders them ſo extremely dirty, that they would be ſcarce paſſable, were it not for large beams laid together, which form a kind of bridges.

In order to give a more perfect view of this city, it is proper to obſerve, that it is divided into four diſtinct quarters, the firſt of which is called Cataygorod, from its lying in the middle of the reſt, and being divided from them by a brick wall. The river Moſca runs on the ſouth ſide of this quarter, as the river Neglina, which flows into the other behind the caſtle, does on the north. The great Duke's palace, which belongs to the caſtle, reſembles a conſiderable city, and takes up one half of this quarter. It is fortified with three

ſeveral walls, and a good ditch well provided with cannon. All the ſteeples within the caſtle are covered with gilt copper, among which there are two that ſtand juſt within the middle, one remarkable for its height, and the other for its great bell, which weighs 36,300 pounds, and is never tolled but upon extraordinary occaſions, when twenty-four men are always employed to pull the rope below in the court, and ſeveral others above, who labour in thruſting it forward. The royal palace that of the Patriarch, and ſome others belonging to the chief Boyers, ſtand at the farther end of the caſtle. There is alſo a noble edifice built with ſtone after the Gothic manner, for the young Prince. The Czar, however, continues in his wooden palace on account of its being eſteemed more healthy. The exchequer, the magazine of powder, and the ſtore-houſe for proviſions, are within the caſtle. There are here alſo two monaſteries for men, and one for women, beſides a great number of Churches and chapels built of ſtone, among which thoſe of the Bleſſed Trinity, of St. Mary, St. Nicholas and St. Michael, exceed all the reſt; and in the laſt are contained the tombs of the great Dukes, or Czars.

On the ſouth ſide of the caſtle gate without the walls is another church dedicated to the Bleſſed Trinity, and by ſome called Jeruſalem, built by order of the Czar John Baſilowitz, who had the cruelty to cauſe the eyes of the architect to be put out, to prevent his undertaking any thing like it for the future.

The chief market of the city is before the caſtle, where there appears a great concourſe of people of all ranks, and many ſhops both there, and in all the ſtreets leading to it. It is obſervable, that every trade has its peculiar ſtation, there being not the leaſt intermixture of thoſe who ſell different commodities.

The ſecond quarter, which ſurrounds the former in the manner of a half moon, is called the City Royal, and is encompaſſed by a wall. Here is the arſenal and the place for caſting the Czar's great guns: ſome of the

their houſes in this quarter: here alſo are the Czar's ſtables, and the reſt is filled up with country traders, corn-chandlers, meal-ſhops, bakers, butchers, and abundance of houſes where beer, mead, and ſtrong waters are ſold.

The third quarter, which ſurrounds the laſt mentioned from the eaſt to the weſt, has the river Jaguſa running through it; and here, among other things, is the chief market for wooden houſes, which are no ſooner purchaſed than they are taken in pieces and removed to the places where they are wanted.

The fourth quarter, which lies to the ſouth, on the oppoſite ſide of the river Moſca, is fortified with wooden ramparts and baſtions, and is appointed for the habitations of the Strelitzers, or the Czar's guard; and here many of the poorer ſort of the people live.

The air about Muſcow is very healthy, ſo that the people ſcarce know what the plague or other epidemical diſeaſes are; but the cold is ſo exceſſive, that many feel its effects, by the loſs of their noſes, hands, or feet; and our author was an eye witneſs that ſpittle would freeze in falling to the ground: but notwithſtanding this, he obſerved that the ſpring is not much more backward than in Germany; for the ſnow which covers the ground is very inſtrumental in promoting vegetatation. The ice and ſnow render the ways ſo ſmooth, that the people find no inconvenience in travelling in their ſledges, which being well lined with coarſe cloth, and thoſe within them cloathed with good furs, they are rather inclined to ſweat than to feel the cold, even in the midſt of winter. Their horſes are alſo very fit for this exerciſe; for though they are low, they are ſwift and hardy, and will travel eight ten, or even twelve leagues without halting, ſo that a perſon may be conducted in this manner 50 leagues by a country fellow for three or four crowns.

The heat of ſummer is however as troubleſome as the cold in winter; particularly from the vaſt multi-

tudes of flies and gnats, which are very incommodious, eſpecially to travellers. There are a great number of fens ſcattered over Moſcovy, but the land in general is extremely fertile; for except about Moſcow, where it is gravelly, the country produces more wheat and paſture than the inhabitants are able to conſume. It is obſervable, that though the diſtrict of Allentaken in Livonia, and the ancient territories of Muſcovy, are only divided by the river Narva, the difference of the ſoil is plainly perceivable, immediately upon paſſing that river. Moſcovy, Carelia, and the nothern parts of Livonia, they do not ſow till about three weeks before midſummer: but the ſun remaining ſo long above the horizon, the corn ſoon puts forth and ripens, and the harveſt is over in Auguſt. The Livonians are however forced to dry theirs after it is brought in, with ovens placed in their barns, which is attended with many inconveniencies, while the Moſcovites carry theirs in dry and ready to be thraſhed.

The country about Moſcow affords ſeveral ſorts of fruit, as apples, cherries, plumbs and gooſeberries; but theſe not being brought to perfection by a juſt degree of heat, will not keep ſo well as in more ſouthern countries. The land about Moſcow alſo produces great quantities of melons, goards, aſparagus, pulſe, potherbs, cucumbers, onions, garlick, and roots.

Our author was informed, that about the city of Samara, between the Don and Vulga, grows a kind of goards which have ſome reſemblance to a lamb, and is faſtened to the ground with a ſtalk that repreſents the navel-ſtring. It is pretended that it changes its place in growing, as far as the ſtalk will reach, and wherever it turns the graſs withers; which the Moſcovites ſay is occaſioned by its feeding. They alſo maintain, that when it ripens, the ſtalk decays, and the outward rind is covered with a kind of hair: ſome of theſe ſkins were ſhewn the ambaſſadors, covered with a ſoft curling wool, not unlike that of a lamb newly

yearned, on which account they call this fruit Boranez, or a lamb.

Honey and wax are a principal produce of Muſcovy, the woods abounding with them to ſuch a degree, that beſides the vaſt quantities conſumed by the Muſcovites in mead and wax candles, they annually export above 20,000 quintals of wax, each quintal being 100 weight.

The extenſive foreſts of this country furniſh vaſt numbers of heath-cocks, pheaſants, partridges, wild geeſe and ducks: ſwans and herons are not much valued here: and as for quails, fieldfares, thruſhes, larks, and other ſmall birds, they do not think them worth taking. Storks are not found either in Muſcovy or Livonia; but they have many ſorts of birds of prey, as falcons, taſſels, &c, which in the more northern provinces are white. There are here many elks and wild boars: their hares are generally grey, but in ſome provinces they turn white in winter, as they do in Livonia; though in Courland, which is divided from it only by the river Dwina, the hares never change their colour.

They have ſuch plenty of tigers, lynxes, bears, wolves, ſables, and martens, that their ſkins make up the moſt conſiderable part of the trade of the country.

The Muſcovites are for the moſt part very corpulent and well ſet; great beards, with muſtachios hanging over their lips are held in much veneration*. They have wide and ſhort ſhirts, without any gathering in the neck, but are lined with a triangular piece from the ſhoulders down to the reins, commonly ſewed with crimſon ſilk, and ſome have fringes of the ſame colour in the ſeams and under the arm-pits. The collar is about an inch broad, which, as well as in other parts that are expoſed to view, the richer ſort embroider with ſilk or gold, and faſten the collar with two large pearls,

* Peter the Great obliged them to cut off their beards, ſo that they now generally wear only whiſkers.

or with gold or ſilver buttons. Their breeches are very large, and over theſe they wear a waiſtcoat which reaches down to the knees, the ſleeves of which are ſo long that they fold them into many plaits: the collar of this waiſtcoat, being about half a quarter of an ell high, covers part of the head behind, and is commonly lined with pluſh or ſattin. Over this they wear a cloſe-bodied coat, which reaches down below the mid-leg; both theſe are generally made of callico, taffety, damaſk, or ſattin, according to the quality of thoſe who wear them. Theſe coats have a kind of broad cape which falls down upon their ſhoulders, upon which the richer ſort have gold and ſilver buttons with loops. Whenever they go abroad they wear over this dreſs a kind of robe, which reaches down to their heels, of a violet or dark green cloth; but the Knez and Boyars have them of damaſk, ſattin, and other rich ſilks. Inſtead of hats, the Muſcovites wear caps, which perſons of quality upon public occaſions have of ſables, or the fur of black foxes, half an ell high; but thoſe they uſe in common are velvet lined with furs, with narrow brims, trimmed with gold and ſilver loops, or embroidered and adorned with pearls: the common people are contented with a cap made of ſtuff, which they wear in ſummer, and in the winter they wear cloth ones lined with ſheep-ſkins, with the wool on. Their boots are made of Ruſſia leather, and are ſhort, with peaked toes *.

Children of both ſexes, under ten years of age, have their hair cut, except two locks over their temples, their ſex being diſcovered only by the girls wearing in their ears braſs or ſilver rings. The married women put their hair up under their caps, but the maids wear it in two treſſes, which hang down behind with a crimſon ribbon tied to the end. The habit of the Muſcovite women principally differs in the largeneſs of their

* Peter the Great cauſed ſeveral alterations to be made in the clothes of his ſubjects, ſo that they now dreſs more like the reſt of the Europeans.

coats, which are wider than thoſe of the men. The ladies have them trimmed with rich gold, ſilver or ſilk lace, or with gold or ſilver loops. Their ſleeves are ſo made, that they may be either put on, or ſuffered to hang by. They wear no waiſtcoat, nor the high collar the men are ſo proud of. Their ſmock-ſleeves are four or five ells long, folded upon their arms. Their caps are generally of damaſk, or plain or flowered ſattin, and ſometimes embroidered with gold or ſilver, and lined with the fur of caſtors, the hair of which covers a great part of their foreheads; but the maids have their caps commonly lined with fox ſkins.

As for the peaſants of Muſcovy, they wear ſcarce any thing but coarſe canvas, and ſhoes formed of the bark of trees, wrought like our baſket-work, which they make themſelves, every peaſant being his own ſhoemaker.

The Muſcovites, as well thoſe in an higher as in a lower rank, are very ſparing in their houſekeeping. Their ordinary houſhold goods ſeldom exceed three or four pots, and as many wooden or earthen diſhes. Some few of the richer ſort have pewter; but ſcarce any ſilver, except ſome drinking cups, and thoſe ſo ill kept that they look like lead. They ſometimes hang their rooms with mats. Some perſons of quality lie upon feather-beds, the reſt upon quilts, and the common people upon chaff or ſtraw, for want of which they make uſe of their clothes, which in the ſummer they lay upon a bench or table, and in the winter upon their ſtoves, which are flat on the top; the whole family being ſqueezed together in the ſame room; and in the country, the hogs and poultry are alſo admitted.

They are ſtrangers to the delicacies of the more ſouthern nations; their common food is coarſe meat, turnips, coleworts, and cucumbers, both freſh and pickled; and their chief dainty is fiſh, which, from its being ill ſalted, ſmells very ſtrong. They are ſufficiently ſtocked with cows and ſheep, and their foreſts furniſh them with very fat ſwine; but as the greateſt

part of the year is taken up with faſts, they are ſo accuſtomed to fiſh and pulſe, that they neglect fleſh, and like their fiſh, herbs, and pulſe, much better. After hard drinking, the Muſcovites mix roaſted veal with pickled cucumbers, pepper and vinegar, and eat it the next morning for their breakfaſt.

Their ordinary drink is a kind of ſmall mead; beſides which they generally take a dram of brandy both before and after their meals; but perſons in ſuperior circumſtances, have ſeveral ſorts of wine, and ſtrong March beer, which they keep in ſnow all the ſummer in the following manner. They firſt make a bed of ice and ſnow mixed together, upon which they place their barrels; upon theſe they lay another bed of ice and ſnow, and another row of barrels, which they cover with ſtraw and planks, that ſerve inſtead of a vault, their cellars being uncovered.

They generally prefer a ſtrong kind of metheglin to wine. This liquor they prepare with cherries, ſtrawberries, mulberries, or raſberries, the laſt of which is moſt pleaſant. They put the raſberries in water for two or three nights, till it has extracted all their taſte and colour: into this infuſion they put ſome of the fineſt honey, to each pound of which they add three or four pints of water, according as they would have it ſtronger or weaker, and to make it work, put into it a toaſt dipped in the dregs of beer, which they take out as ſoon as it begins to ferment, for fear of giving the liquor an ill taſte. If they would keep it working a good while, they ſet it in a warm place; and if they would have it only for preſent uſe, they put it into a cool room. To add to the flavour, they ſometimes put in a little bag filled with cinnamon, grains of paradiſe, and a few cloves.

Drunkenneſs is ſo common a vice in Muſcovy, that ſcarce any body is exempt from it, for the brandy they take at their meals commonly introduces a debauch. Nay, the vulgar are ſo much addicted to this vice, that our author frequently ſaw them come out of their tippling

houſes quite naked and without the leaſt ſhame, covering the parts which in other countries people are taught to conceal, with only a handful of herbs. The women are no leſs addicted to this vice than the men, nothing being more common among them than to follow their huſbands to the tippling-houſe, where they will be ſure to make the cup go merrily round, and when their huſbands are fallen aſleep upon the floor, they even ſeat themſelves upon them, and continue drinking till they tumble down among them.

The Muſcovites are extremely quarrelſome and abuſive; but though they vent their paſſion with ſuch noiſe, that a ſtranger would imagine it impoſſible for them to part without bloodſhed, yet they ſeldom draw blood, unleſs it be with a ſwitch or a blow with their fiſts; they generally ſatisfy their revenge with a kick or two on the belly. Indeed, if a quarrel happens between perſons of diſtinction, they decide it on horſeback, but not with ſword and piſtol; the greateſt ſtretch of their reſentment ariſing no higher than to fight it out with a good whip.

The baſe diſpoſition of the Muſcovites, the meanneſs of their education, and that ſtate of ſlavery in which all from the higheſt to the loweſt are born, have ſuch an effect upon them, that nothing but the cudgel and whip can bring them to reaſon; and from this ſlaviſh chaſtiſement even the greateſt Boyars are not exempted, who make no ſcruple of confeſſing that they are the czar's ſlaves. As they have an utter averſion to the manners and cuſtoms of all foreigners, they are inſenſible of the liberty which other nations enjoy; and the profound reverence they pay to their ſuperiors after they have received a good cudgelling, is an infallible demonſtration of the ſlaviſhneſs of their diſpoſitions.

As the lords are abſolute ſlaves to the czar, ſo they keep a great number of ſlaves of their own, both in their country houſes and farms, and in their ſervice in the city, who in the night frequently commit great diſorders in the ſtreets of Moſcow, and alſo make the

roads about that city very unſafe for travellers, whom they rob and murder without remorſe. Theſe ſlaves are ſold by their maſters in the ſame manner as we do our horſes and cows. Nay, a father may diſpoſe of his ſon for his own advantage; which, however, they ſeldom do, unleſs it be to ſatisfy their creditors.

The greateſt pride of perſons of quality in Muſcovy conſiſts in their retinues, which, however, put them to no great expence; for though they ſometimes keep fifty or ſixty ſlaves, have a good number of horſes, and alſo plenty of proviſions, beer, mead, and other liquors at their tables, yet they are furniſhed with every thing from their farms, which are cultivated by ſlaves, who ſtand them in very little ready money. Beſides, moſt of the entertainments of the Boyars and governors of places are only made for thoſe who ſtand in need of their favour, and are obliged in return to make very conſiderable preſents. When, at theſe entertainments they intend to ſhew a more than ordinary reſpect to their friends, they permit them to ſee and ſalute their wives. Our author having dined with count Leo Alexander de Slakow, that nobleman introduced him into another room, where his lady was richly dreſſed in her wedding clothes, and attended by a gentlewoman with a bottle in her hand: the lady bid her fill a ſilver cup, and taking it from her, put it to her lips, and deſired him to drink it off, which he having done three times, the count deſired him to kiſs her, which he did, after which he preſented him with a handkerchief, embroidered round the edges with gold, ſilver, and ſilk, and adorned with a deep fringe.

There is ſcarce a Moſcovite, of what quality ſoever, but has his afternoon's ſleep, for which reaſon the ſhops are always ſhut up after dinner.

They are alſo extremely fond of bathing, though their public baths are but very indifferently fitted up. Our author went incognito into one of them, that was only parted from that belonging to the other ſex by a few deal boards, which not being well joined, he could

eaſily ſee all that paſſed; and beſides, there was only one door for the men and women to go in and out of the water. Some of both ſexes, who are moſt modeſt, hide their nakedneſs with a handful of leaves ſoaked in water: but the reſt appear naked without the leaſt concern; nay, ſome of the women came in this manner to ſpeak with their huſbands in the men's bath. It is ſurpriſing to ſee them come out of ſuch an intenſe degree of heat, and ſuddenly run into the cold water, or have it poured upon them, or in the winter roll in the ſnow, and then return again into the ſtoves, which is alſo practiſed by the Finlanders who live in Livonia. This can only be aſcribed to cuſtom, which rendering it habitual, makes them not ſo ſenſible of the oppoſite qualities of heat and cold as other people; for our author obſerved at Narva, that the Muſcovite boys of eight, nine, or ten years of age, ſtand for half an hour together bare-footed upon the ice, without ever complaining of the cold.

Their religious ceremonies ought next to be conſidered. And here it is proper to be obſerved, that the Moſcovites have the Bible printed in the Sclavonian tongue, which much reſembles the German. They pay a particular regard to the books of the Evangeliſts, and never touch them without marks of reſpect and veneration. But though they make the Holy Scriptures the rule of their faith, they alſo adhere to the ſeven firſt general councils, and the Greek Fathers, eſpecially to the works of Baſil the Great, Gregory Nazianzen, John Chryſoſtom, and Ephraim the Syrian; but the latter councils they conſider as infected with hereſy. Among the doctors of their own church, they ſet an extraordinary value on the writings of one Nicholas, Sudatwitz, whoſe memory is celebrated twice a year. They alſo receive the Apoſtles, the Nicene, and Athanaſian creeds. When any point of religion is to be proved, they firſt have recourſe to the Scripture, next to the Seven Councils, and laſtly to the above-

mentioned Fathers; but diſputes are determined only by the Patriarch of Moſcovy. Their prieſts read the New Teſtament and the Pſalms of David in their churches; but the reſt of the Old Teſtament they think contains many things not fit to be known by the vulgar. They never pretend to explain texts of Scripture, and conſequently allow of no preaching; it being their opinion that public orations in the pulpit, being full of ſubtleties, create only miſunderſtandings and miſinterpretations.

With reſpect to baptiſm, as they acknowledge themſelves conceived and born in ſin, they baptize their children immediately after they are born: if they are weak, this is done at home, but if well in the church, the child being received at the church door by the prieſt, who ſigning his forehead with the ſign of the croſs, ſays, The Lord preſerve thy coming in and going out; and then faſtens nine wax candles given him by the godfathers ready lighted round the font.

Having incenſed the godfathers and conſecrated the water, each of them takes a wax candle, and they all walk three times round the font, which always ſtands in the midſt of the church, the clerk carrying the picture of St. John before them, and the prieſt reading out of a book. The prieſt then aſks the godfathers the name of the child, which having given him in writing, he puts it upon a picture which he holds upon the child's breaſt, while he mutters certain prayers, and then aſks whether the child believes in God the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghoſt; and the godfathers having anſwered in the affirmative, they immediately turn their backs to the font, to ſhew their averſion to the three next queſtions, Whether the child forſakes the devil, his angels, and his works? The godfathers anſwer Yes to each queſtion, and as often ſpit upon the ground, and then turn again to the font, where the prieſt aſks, Whether they promiſe the child ſhall be brought up in the true Greek religion; and laying his hands upon him ſays, Get out of this child, thou unclean ſpirit, and make room for the Holy Ghoſt.

He then blows upon the child three times to drive away the devil, by whom they ſuppoſe children are poſſeſſed before baptiſm. After this he cuts off a little of the child's hair, which he puts into a book; and having aſked the godfathers whether they deſire the child ſhould be baptized, he takes him naked into his arms, and, dipping him three times into the water, makes uſe of the uſual words: I baptize thee in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghoſt. He then puts a corn of ſalt into the child's mouth, and making the ſign of the croſs on his forehead, hands, breaſt, and back, with conſecrated oil, puts him on a clean ſhirt, ſaying, Thou art as clean from thy original ſin as this ſhirt: and hangs a ſmall croſs of gold, ſilver, or lead, according to every one's ability, about his neck, with a ſtrict charge to wear it all his life-time: in which they are ſo exact, that if no ſuch croſs is found about a deceaſed perſon, they will not allow him chriſtian burial. He alſo aſſigns a peculiar ſaint, whom the child is hereafter to reverence as his patron; and having kiſſed the child and his godfathers, he exhorts them to mutual love. If more children are to be baptized at the ſame time, the font is emptied, becauſe they imagine the water to be defiled by the original ſin of the preceding child.

Their proſelytes who are of age are baptized in a river, and three times plunged over head like the children, on mentioning the Father, Son, and Holy Ghoſt. Thoſe who are inclined to change their religion for that of the Moſcovites, are inſtructed for ſix weeks in ſome convent, and at their baptiſm are to abjure their former religion, to deteſt it as heretical, and, as a ſign of their abhorrence, to ſpit on the ground as often as it is named. After their baptiſm the czar makes them a preſent of a rich Muſcovian habit, and allows them a penſion according to their quality, which induces many to embrace that religion.

The marriage ceremonies are performed in the following manner. As the young couple are not permit-

ted to ſee, much leſs to diſcourſe with each other, thoſe who have marriageable children, eſpecially daughters, pitch upon a perſon they like, and then addreſs themſelves to his parents; by whom, if the match is approved of, and the young woman is handſome, leave is perhaps given for ſome female relation to ſee her; but this is not always granted. However, all things being agreed upon between the parents, if they are of quality, a woman called the Suacha is appointed by the bridegroom's friends, and another by thoſe of the bride, to take joint care of the nuptials, who provide every thing fit for the chamber, where the new-married couple is to lie. The bed is made of forty ſheaves of rye laid in good order, encompaſſed with ſeveral barrels of wheat, barley, and oats. When all things are ready, the bridegroom goes late in the evening from his houſe, accompanied by his kindred; the prieſt, who is to marry him, leading the van on horſeback. They are received at the bride's door by her kindred, invited to come in, and to ſit down at table; where only three diſhes of meat are ſerved up, and even theſe are not to be touched by any body preſent. At the upper end of the table a place is left for the bridegroom, which is taken up by a young lad appointed for that purpoſe, while the bridegroom is talking with the bride's friends: but at length he having prevailed on the youth by ſome preſents to reſign his place to him, takes his ſeat, and the bride richly dreſſed is brought in with a veil over her face, and placed next the bridegroom, two lads at the ſame time holding a piece of taffety between them, to prevent them ſeeing each other. The Suacha then comes in, and paints her, ties up her hair in two knots, puts a coronet on her head, and all the ornaments of a married woman. The coronet is of leaf gold, or ſilver gilt, and lined with ſilk; having on both ſides near the ears, five or ſix rows of pearls, hanging down in ſtrings on her breaſt. The upper garment, which has ſleeves an ell and a half wide, is embroidered at the edges with gold and ſilver, eſpecially about the neck

where it is ſtiff with embroidery for the breadth of three inches. They ſometimes beſtow a thouſand crowns upon this robe. The bridegroom is then painted by this Suacha, whilſt the women who are preſent ſtand ſinging upon the benches. Then two young men well dreſſed bring into the room a large cheeſe laid upon a bier, with ſome loaves, ſeveral marten-ſkins hanging down from the bier; and the ſame being done on the bride's ſide, a large ſilver baſon is ſet on the table filled with ſmall pieces of ſattin, little pieces of ſilver, hops, barley, and oats, mixed together; which, as ſoon as the bride's face is covered again, are thrown by handfuls by the bride's Suacha among the company, who gather them up from the ground, and having received the prieſt's benediction, go to church, where the young couple ſtand upon a piece of taffety, and have a canopy of the ſame ſilk over their heads. Here having made offerings of fried meats, fiſh, and paſtry, the prieſt gives them his benediction, and taking the man by his right hand, and the woman by her left, he aſks them three times, whether they are both willing to be married, and to love one another as they ought to do. To which having anſwered Yes, the whole company join hands, and the prieſt ſings the 128th Pſalm, thoſe preſent ſinging every other verſe, and dancing all the time. The pſalm being ended, he puts a garland of rue upon the heads of the young couple, and, if one of them be a widow or a widower, about their ſhoulders, ſaying, Increaſe and multiply. Whom God hath joined together, let no man ſeparate. While the prieſt pronounces theſe words, each of the people invited to the wedding lights a wax candle, and one of them gives a glaſs of wine to the prieſt, which he drinks; and the married couple having pledged the ſame three times each, the bridegroom throws down the glaſs, and he and the bride treading it under their feet ſay, May they thus fall under our feet, and be trodden to pieces, who ſhall endeavour to ſow diviſion or diſcontent between us. The women then caſt ſome flax or hemp ſeed at

the young couple, wiſhing them much proſperity; while ſome pull the bride by the robe, as if they would take her away from the bridegroom, to whom ſhe ſticks ſo cloſe, that they ſeem unable to remove her.

The marriage ceremony being ended, the bride returns in a ſledge by the light of ſix torches or wax candles, and the bridegroom on horſeback. The men immediately ſit down at the table, which is covered with proviſions, while the women conduct the bride into her chamber, undreſs her, and having put her to bed, come to the bridegroom, and force him to riſe from the table; on which he is conducted to the bride's chamber by ſix or eight young men, each with a torch in his hand, which they ſtick in the barrels of wheat and barley that ſtand round the bed. The bride no ſooner ſees the bridegroom enter the bed chamber than ſhe ſlips on a morning gown lined with fur, riſes, meets, and ſalutes him with a low inclination of the head, which is the firſt time of his ſeeing her face. They then ſit down to a table, where, among other proviſions, they have a roaſted fowl, which the bridegroom pulls aſunder, and caſting away over his ſhoulder that part he lights on firſt, they eat the reſt, and then go to bed, while the gueſts employ themſelves in ſeveral charms to promote the happineſs of the new married couple. An old ſervant of the houſe, who attends at the door, comes after a while, and aſks whether the buſineſs be done; and the bridegroom anſwering Yes, the word is given for the trumpets and timbrels to ſtrike up, and theſe ſound till the new married couple are conducted to the ſtoves, where they bathe themſelves apart. After they have been well waſhed in the bath with water, mead, and wine, the bride ſends the bridegroom a ſhirt richly embroidered, eſpecially at the neck, and a rich habit. The two next days they ſpend in mirth and feſtivity.

Perſons of an inferior condition are ſatisfied with fewer ceremonies; for the night before the wedding, the bridegroom ſends ſome clothes, a comb, and a

looking-glaſs; and the next day the prieſt is brought in by two lads, carrying lighted wax candles. As ſoon as he enters the houſe, he gives his benediction firſt to the lads, and then to the gueſts. The young couple being ſet down at the table, the lads holding a piece of taffety between them, the Suacha dreſſes the bride's head, which being done, a looking-glaſs is brought, and the young couple joining their cheeks, look and ſmile one upon the other, while the two Suachas caſt hops upon them, after which they go to church, where they are married with the ceremonies already mentioned.

The wedding day may be ſaid to be the laſt day of pleaſure enjoyed by the Muſcovite women. Their chief employment is embroidering, ſewing, or making little purſes, and other inſignificant toys; and they never ſtir abroad, except upon extraordinary occaſions. Within doors their clothes are very mean; but when they appear in public they are richly dreſſed, and generally paint their faces, necks, and arms. The wives of perſons of quality ride in chariots, attended by a great number of ſlaves. But as thoſe of the ordinary ranks are debarred the viſits and converſation enjoyed by the European women, and ſeldom meddle with houſhold affairs, the only diverſion left them is to paſs away the time with their maids. They lay a plank acroſs a block, and one getting on each end, they toſs one another up and down. Sometimes they ſwing themſelves in ropes, and in country villages they have a ſwinging engine in which four perſons may divert themſelves at a time.

As the Muſcovites eſteem marriage a very ſacred thing, polygamy is forbidden under pain of death, the czar himſelf being allowed no more than one wife at a time; though if ſhe proves barren, or brings forth no ſons, he may ſend her into a monaſtery, and marry another. Second marriages they conſider as allowable, but not very commendable; a third marriage is not to be undertaken but upon very weighty conſiderations, and a fourth is puniſhed with death. Divorces, however, are very frequent among them, though they can-

not be obtained without the biſhop's conſent. Their prieſts are not only allowed, but obliged to marry, and they muſt marry none but widows who have a good reputation. They are, however, forbidden to marry a ſecond time, unleſs they will quit their order.

Perſons of quality adorn the pictures of their ſaints with pearls and precious ſtones; they place wax candles before them, and look ſtedfaſtly upon them while at prayers. Whenever a Muſcovite comes into a houſe, he looks for the ſaint before he utters a word, and if he does not ſee him, aſks, Where is the God? and when he has found him, he makes his reverence, and having ſaid, Lord have mercy upon us, goes to the company; but though in outward ſhow, the Muſcovites ſeem to have great devotion, not one in ten can recite the Lord's prayer, which they ſay was inſtituted for the uſe of perſons of quality, and not for mechanics, and that it is enough for them to repeat the Goſpodi, or The Lord have mercy upon us. They pray for the dead; not that they believe a purgatory, but that it is a means of making their ſouls wait with more tranquillity for the day of judgment.

As they imagine that children are regenerated by baptiſm, they think they have a right to the Lord's ſupper, which is adminiſtered in the following manner. The prieſt going to the altar, attended by the clerk, ſays the office according to St. Baſil's Liturgy, and then mixing warm water with the wine, ſteeps bits of bread in the chalice, and then conſecrates them together. The prieſt takes the bread out with a ſpoon, and gives it to the communicants, little babes having only half the quantity of grown people, till they are ſeven years of age. They alſo give the euchariſt to dying perſons after the extreme unction; but when the ſick perſon has taken it, he is neither to have food or any other remedies, unleſs there are apparent ſigns of his recovery. The bread uſed on this occaſion is leavened, and muſt be made by a prieſt's widow. Nobody is admitted to the holy communion without having prepared

himſelf by the confeſſion of his ſins, and faſting eight days before, during which they ought to live upon nothing but bread and ſmall beer.

Beſides their ordinary faſt days, they keep four great faſts in the year; the firſt of which is forty days before Eaſter; the ſecond begins eight days after Whitſuntide, and ends with the feaſt of St. Peter and St. Paul; the third, which is kept in honour of the Virgin Mary, begins on the firſt of Auguſt, and laſts till the feaſt of the Aſſumption of the Virgin Mary; and the fourth begins on the 12th of November, and continues till Chriſtmas.

They have alſo a kind of carnival, which laſts eight days, and is called by them the Butter Week, becauſe after theſe days are expired, they are forbid to eat either butter, eggs, cheeſe, or milk; but during the time of this carnival, they commit almoſt incredible exceſſes in drinking, which draws them into all manner of crimes. This renders it not ſafe for any body to paſs the ſtreets, murders being then ſo frequent, that many dead bodies are expoſe to public view, that their friends may take care of their interment.

Their burials, like their other public actions, are performed with great ceremony; for the ſoul of the ſick perſon is no ſooner departed, than the widow ſends for their kindred and friends, who ſtanding round the corpſe break out into lamentations, aſking the deceaſed, Why he would die? Whether he wanted any thing? Whether his wife was not young and handſome enough? Whether ſhe had been inconſtant? and other queſtions of the like kind. They then waſh the body, and having put a clean ſhirt or ſhroud about him, with a new pair of thin Ruſſia leather ſhoes on his feet, lay him with his arms acroſs his breaſt, in a coffin made of the trunk of a tree, and in the mean while ſends a preſent to the prieſt, to pray for his ſoul. The coffin is covered with a piece of cloth, or the coat of the deceaſed. The richer ſort, if the ſeaſon will permit, keep the

body eight or ten days, during which the prieſt comes every day to purify it with incenſe, and by ſprinkling it with holy water.

At length the prieſt proceeds with the picture of the patron ſaint of the deceaſed, followed by four virgins, who are neareſt related to the latter, and make very mournful lamentations, but begin and leave off exactly at a time. Then comes the dead body carried by ſix men upon their ſhoulders; but if the deceaſed is a monk or nun, this office is performed by thoſe of his own profeſſion. The corpſe is ſurrounded by ſeveral prieſts, who incenſe it, to keep off the evil ſpirits, all the while ſinging pſalms; then follow the kindred and friends with wax candles, but without any order. On their coming to the grave, the coffin is uncovered, over which the prieſt, holding the picture of the patron ſaint, ſays ſeveral prayers, in which he often repeats, Lord, look upon this ſoul in righteouſneſs. Meanwhile, the widow continuing her lamentations, aſks the queſtions already mentioned. The relations and friends then take their leave, either kiſſing the deceaſed or the coffin. The prieſt then takes a piece of paper, which is a kind of ticket for his entrance into paradiſe, and which being ſigned by the patriarch or metropolitan of the place, and the confeſſor, is ſold for more or leſs, according to the abilities of thoſe who purchaſe it. This ticket is of ſo extraordinary a nature, that the reader will not be diſpleaſed at our inſerting it at length.

" We whoſe names are hereunto ſubſcribed, the pa-
" triarch or metropolitan, and prieſt of the city of N.
" do make known and certify, by theſe preſents, that
" the bearer of theſe our letters, hath always lived
" among us like a good Chriſtian, profeſſing the Greek
" religion; and though he hath committed ſome few
" ſins, yet he hath confeſſed the ſame, and thereupon
" he hath received abſolution, and taken the commu-
" nion, for the remiſſion of his ſins: that he hath ho-
" noured God and his ſaints: that he hath ſaid his
" prayers; and that he hath faſted on the hours and

" days appointed by the church; and that he hath car-
" ried himſelf well towards me, who am his confeſſor,
" that I have no reaſon to complain of him, or to deny
" him the abſolution of his ſins.

" In witneſs whereof, we have given him this
" preſent teſtimonial, to the end, that upon
" ſight thereof, St. Peter may open unto him
" the gate of eternal bliſs."

The coffin is then ſhut, and put into the grave, the face being turned to the eaſt, while thoſe who return to the houſe of mourning, drown their ſorrow in good liquor.

Their whole time of mourning laſts forty days, during which three feaſts are made for the kindred of the deceaſed, on the third, ninth, and twentieth days after the burial, during which the prieſt ſays certain prayers over the grave morning and evening, which for that purpoſe is covered with a ſmall hut of mats.

Before we mention the different orders of their prieſts, it may be proper to obſerve, that the Muſcovites have the higheſt veneration for their ſovereign: that they look upon his pleaſure as the will of God, and that their lives and every thing they have is at his diſpoſal. The chief perſons in the empire never approach his perſon, but with the ſame veneration with which they adore the Almighty; and if he gives them the leaſt mark of diſpleaſure, they are ready to offer their lives for the expiation of their fault.

They pay great veneration to the clergy, the principal of which is the patriarch, who is always obliged to reſide at Moſcow. He is nominated by the metropolitans and biſhops, with the czar's approbation: he is the chief perſon in the empire next to his ſovereign, and determines all eccleſiaſtical affairs: he wears a long black robe, and has a croſs always carried before him. He has alſo four metropolitans, and under them are ſeven biſhops. Next to theſe are the prieſts called by them popes, who are again ſubdivided into protopopes or archprieſts, and common popes, of which there are

vaſt numbers in Moſcow; no other qualifications being neceſſary for their admiſſion into this order, but reading, writing, and ſinging. The chief badge of prieſthood is a kind of cap put on their heads at their conſecration, which they are obliged to wear as long as they continue prieſts, and it is no ſmall crime for a layman to touch it. However, as moſt of the Muſcovite clergy are great drunkards, and conſtant frequenters of tippling houſes, they frequently fall into quarrels, when if a perſon has occaſion to beat a clergyman, he muſt firſt civilly ſecure his bonnet, and then he may drub him handſomely, and afterwards put it on again. The other badges of the prieſthood, are a ſtick which they carry in their hands, and their wearing a wide long robe, which is black, green, blue, or red, according to their choice. We have already obſerved, that they are obliged to marry once, and no oftner. This cuſtom they found upon the apoſtle's words, A biſhop ſhall be the huſband of one wife, where they interpret the word biſhop to ſignify prieſt. As they paſs along the ſtreets, the common people aſk their bleſſing, which they give them with the ſign of the croſs.

Their churches are built round and vaulted, to bear ſome reſemblance to the heavens, and each of them has five ſteeples, one of them being larger and higher than the reſt; the other four are built round it. They have neither pews, benches, nor chairs, becauſe they perform their devotions either kneeling or proſtrate upon the ground. They allow neither organs, nor any other muſical inſtruments, nor have any images, though they allow of paying their devotions to pictures. There are about two hundred of theſe churches in Moſcow. They alſo look upon their church-yards as very ſacred places, and therefore will not allow of any impurities being thrown there, or ſuffer a dog to paſs over them. They are great admirers of bells, and think them an eſſential part of divine ſervice.

When the Muſcovites are at their devotions, they often ſtrike their foreheads againſt the ground, and croſs

themſelves in the following manner: they firſt make the ſign of the croſs with their fingers on the forehead, which they ſay is to intimate the aſcenſion of Chriſt; next on the heart, to intimate that the heart is the receptacle of the word of God: then they make a croſs on the right, and next on the left ſhoulder, to ſhew that at the day of judgment thoſe to be bleſt with eternal life ſhall be placed to the right, and the damned to the left. Not many years ago, the patriarch ordered that the laymen ſhould croſs themſelves with only two fingers, though before that time, they had always done it with three, in remembrance of the Holy Trinity; but meeting with great oppoſition in this point, he prevailed on the czar to ſend to the archpatriarch of Conſtantinople, and to two other patriarchs of the eaſtern churches, who approving his order, it was enacted into a law, notwithſtanding which, ſeveral Muſcovites would ſooner loſe their heads than comply with it, and to this day they make uſe of three fingers, when they can do it in private.

The ambaſſadors went from Moſcow by land as far as the monaſtery of Simana, where taking leave of their friends, they embarked in the river Moſca or Moſkva, and proceeded to Kolumna, which lies on the right ſide of the river, is of a conſiderable bigneſs, and is ſurrounded with ſtone walls. Three werſts above the city, the Moſca falls into the Occa, which is much broader and more pleaſant than the former river; its current paſſes from the ſouth, through a very fertile, and well peopled country, and its banks are covered on both ſides with oaks, which in theſe parts are a kind of rarity. Here embarking again, they paſſed by a pretty large iſland, and ſeveral handſome villages on the right ſide of the river, and on the 4th of July came to the city of Preſia. The next day they paſſed by the town of Rheſan, and on the evening of the 7th arrived at Caſſinogorod, the capital of the Tartars of Caſſinow, which lies on the right ſide of the river Occa. They here met with the firſt Mahometans. The young prince

of the country lived at that time in an old caſtle not far from the city; his name was Rez Ketzi, and he had a few years before put himſelf under the Czar's protection. They ſent him a preſent of tobacco and brandy, in return for which he ſent them two ſheep, a barrel of mead, another of beer, and a third of brandy, beſides ſome cream and freſh butter, which the prince's mother had taken the pains to make, excuſing his not having invited the ambaſſadors on ſhore, for fear of raiſing the jealouſy of the neighbouring Muſcovite governors.

On the 9th they paſſed by Morumna on the left ſide of the river, where they diſcovered a troop of Crim Tartars, who fired at them from the woods, but the retinue of the ambaſſadors returned their fire, on which they did not think fit to approach.

They then paſſed by ſeveral villages and monaſteries, and on the eleventh at night reached the city of Niſe or Niſenovogorod, where they found the ſhip Frederic, which had been built by the ambaſſadors orders, and was now quite finiſhed; it was a large three maſt ſhip, ſo flat bottomed that it drew no more than ſeven feet water. It had many cloſets and convenient apartments, and was provided with ſome braſs and iron guns, and twelve ſeats for the rowers. They had alſo a large ſhallop to carry their anchors, cables, and other neceſſaries, and to diſcover any banks or ſands. The city of Niſe is about 100 German leagues from Moſcow by land, and 150 by water. It is ſurrounded with ſtone walls and towers; but the ſuburbs, which are half a league in circumference, are much larger than the city. It is inhabited by Muſcovites, Tartars, and the Dutch, who have a Proteſtant church here conſiſting of 100 perſons. They here bought a pullet for a penny; a quarter of a hundred of eggs for the ſame price, and ſheep for twelve, fifteen, and eighteen pence each.

The ambaſſadors ſent Mr. Mandeſlo and our author, with their Priſtaff, and the Muſcovite interpreter, to

thank the Weywode or Governor, for the many civilities he had ſhewn to the duke of Hoilſtein's ſubjects while they were building the ſhip, which took them up near a year, and to offer him a preſent worth about 25l. ſterling: the reception he gave them ſhewed him to be a perſon much above the ordinary rank of the Ruſſians. He ſent two of his gentlemen to receive them at the gates of his palace, from whence being conducted through a gallery, they were at the entrance of the palace complimented by two others richly dreſſed, who introduced them to the Weywode, who was in his chamber dreſſed in brocade, and attended by a conſiderable number of perſons of diſtinction. The room was hung with very rich tapeſtry, and had a large cuboard filled with plate. After he had returned their compliment, and received their preſent, he invited them to a collation, during which he diſcourſed with them in a manner much ſuperior to the generality of the Muſcovites, and among the reſt aſked whether they were not afraid of meeting with the Coſſacks, who were ſturdy fellows, and as brave as lions, ſhewing them at the ſame time a picture of Samſon's engagement with one of thoſe creatures. To which they anſwered, that they hoped to deal with the Coſſacks as Sampſon did with the lion; to this he replied, that doubtleſs the reputation their nation had obtained in the czar's ſervice, would render them ſo terrible to the Coſſacks as to prevent their making any attempt againſt them.

The river Volga is at the confluence of the two rivers 4600 geometrical feet broad, and as its waters are conſiderably increaſed in the months of May and June, by the thawing of thoſe rivers that fall into it, the people who go from Moſcow to Aſtrachan to take the opportunity of this time to get over the ſands and ſhallows ſo frequent in this river. Therefore having provided themſelves with neceſſaries for this voyage, they left Niſe on the 30th of July: but had ſcarce proceeded two werſts, before they ſtruck upon the ſands

near the monaſtery of Petſora, and the next day touched upon another ſand-bank, when the winds becoming contrary they were forced to come to an anchor.

On the firſt of Auguſt the ambaſſadors gave orders for placing the guards while they were upon the Volga. All that belonged to their retinue, whether ſervants or ſoldiers that were able to bear arms, were divided into three companies under the command of the two ambaſſadors and the ſteward of the embaſſy. Mr. Cruſius, the firſt ambaſſador, had the maſter of the horſe for his lieutenant, and Mr. Brugman the other ambaſſador, had the ſecretary of the embaſſy. They were to be upon their guard alternately, in order to place the centinels in the forecaſtle, the ſtern, and at the mainmaſt.

The wind continuing contrary, they had again recourſe to their oars, but had not proceeded 500 paces before they ſtruck upon the ſands, and the next day, when they had ſcarce advanced a quarter of a league, were entangled among the ſand-banks, where ſeeing the wreck of a ſhip, that had been loſt there not long before, and being nine hours in getting off, this, with the thoughts of the length of the voyage, it being 558 leagues to the Caſpian ſea, and the ignorance of their pilot made them almoſt deſpair of accompliſhing it. Their hopes, however, were revived the next day, by meeting a very large veſſel laden with ſalt-fiſh, which had 209 men on board, to aſſiſt in towing her up againſt the ſtream; this is performed with incredible pains, they ſcarce advancing two leagues in a day.

On the fifth they came before the village of Pannino, where being ſupplied with ſome pullets, and other freſh proviſions at a very cheap rate, they paſſed between two iſlands, and at night came within ſight of Baſiligorod, but caſt anchor for fear of the ſands, which they paſſed the next day with great difficulty, and did not come up to the city till the afternoon, when they ſaluted it with their great guns, as they did all the other cities upon the river.

The city of Baſiligorod is ſituated at the foot of a mountain on the right ſide of the river Volga, at the conflux of that river, and the little river Sura, which was formerly the common boundary between the territories of the Muſcovites and the Tartars of Caſan, called Ceremiſſes. This city is without walls, and the houſes are of wood; for the Muſcovites extending their territories farther on that ſide, have occaſioned its being neglected.

The country inhabited by the Ceremiſſian Tartars extends on both ſides the river Volga beyond Caſan. They live only in huts, and feed upon the milk afforded by their paſtures, and on the wild fowl and honey they take in the woods: but they are very barbarous, treacherous, cruel, and much addicted to robbery. Thoſe who live in the mountainous country on the right ſide of the Volga, are called Nagorni, or mountaineers, and thoſe on the other ſide are termed Lugoivi, or Lugowizene, from their plentiful meadows, which ſupply both them and the Nagorni with great quantities of hay. They are ſaid to be partly Mahometans, and partly heathens; but thoſe about Caſan are Pagans. They are entirely unacquainted with baptiſm or circumciſion. In order to give a name to a child, they appoint a certain day, ſix months after it is born, and then give it the name of the perſon they firſt meet. They acknowledge the exiſtence of an immortal Being the author of all good, who therefore ought to be reverenced; but have no idea of a future ſtate, either of rewards or puniſhments; yet believe there are evil ſpirits that afflict people in this life, and therefore ought to be appeaſed by ſacrifices. To theſe evil ſpirits they pay their devotions at a certain place among the fens, about four leagues from Caſan, where they never appear empty handed, leſt this neglect ſhould be puniſhed by ſome lingering diſeaſe. One of the principal reſidences they aſſign to theſe evil ſpirits is the torrent of Shockſhem, two leagues from Nunda, which

having a ſwift current between two mountains, is never frozen, and has imprinted ſuch an idea of an hidden myſtery in theſe poor wretches, that though they ſee the Muſcovites paſs it every day, they think they cannot approach it without manifeſt danger of their lives. When they offer their ſacrifices to God, they kill an ox, horſe, or ſheep, and hanging the ſkin upon a pole laid acroſs the boughs of two trees, roaſt the fleſh by by a fire kindled underneath; then taking a ſlice of the meat, and a cup of mead, they throw them both into the flames, offering their prayers to God for their preſervation and increaſe of their cattle, or ſome other of the conveniencies of life. They alſo pay adoration to the ſun and moon, and have a peculiar veneration for whatever they dream of, whether it be a horſe, cow, fire, or water: and ſay, that animated things are more worthy of worſhip than the painted gods of the Muſcovites. They perform moſt of their religious ceremonies near the torrent; and at the death of a friend feaſt upon his beſt horſe.

Theſe people make no uſe of prieſts or books, and their language has nothing in common with the other Tartars. Some of them, however, underſtand the Muſcovite tongue. They not only ſuffer, but encourage polygamy, nothing being here more common than for a man to marry two or three ſiſters at a time. Their women are only wrapped in a piece of coarſe white cloth, and ſhow ſcarce any part of their perſons but their faces. Thoſe who are betrothed, have, however, a peculiar head-dreſs, pointed like a horn, to the end of which is faſtened a ſilk taſſel, on which hangs a ſmall bell. The men have breeches under their upper garment, which reſembles a great coat. They all ſhave their heads; but the unmarried men wear a long treſs of hair, which they ſometimes ſuffer to hang down their backs, and at others tie it in a knot.

Theſe people were ſo much affrighted at the ſight of our travellers, that very few of them dared to venture to the ſide of the river to ſee them paſs by; yet at night

when they reached the river Welluka, one of thoſe Tartars came on board to ſell a ſturgeon, for which they paid him the value of fifteen pence.

On the 7th of Auguſt, they arrived before the city of Kuſmademianſki, forty werſts from Baſiligorod, and ſituated at the foot of a mountain. Here they obſerved whole foreſts of very large elms, out of the bark of which the inhabitants make ſledges, and out of the bodies of the trees, cut in the manner of a cylinder, and hollowed out, form barrels and other utenſils. Then proceeding three werſts farther, near the iſle of Krius, they were ſupplied by the peaſants with freſh proviſions, and forced by a tempeſt to ſtay all night.

On the 8th, they continued their voyage with a fair wind, to the iſle of Turich, where they had the misfortune, when under ſail, of being forced upon a ſand-bank, and of being four hours before they could get off. In the meanwhile, they ſaw abundance of Tartars at ſome diſtance coming from hay-making: however, by night they got within ſight of Sabakzar, which ſtands in a moſt agreeable ſituation; but its buildings, like thoſe of the other cities, are all wood. Near the iſle of Makrits they ſaw a boat, which being ſent to get intelligence who they were, took a compaſs round the ſhip, they being informed of their quality, above three hundred perſons appeared on the ſhore to ſee them paſs by.

On the 11th, being forced on ſhore by the current, Mr. Mandeſlo and our author had the curioſity, while the men were endeavouring to get off the veſſel, to land, in order to take a view of the country, for which they had like to have paid very dear: for a fair gale ſpringing up, the ſhip was ſoon out of ſight: but after being obliged to travel a great way along the banks, they at laſt eſpied a boat ſent to carry them to the ſhip, which they reached at night, when they found her at anchor.

On the 13th of Auguſt they came before the city of Suiatſki, ſituated on the left hand, on the aſcent of a hill. It has a caſtle, and ſome churches of ſtone; but

its other fortifications, and all the private buildings are of wood. At night they arrived before the city of Caſan, which is ſituated in a large plain upon the river Caſanke, and has given its name both to the city and province. The city, which is about ſeven werſts from the Volga, is very conſiderable, both for its ſize, its ſituation, and its ſtrength. The caſtle, and its fortifications, are of ſtone, and are well provided with artillery, and a good garriſon of Muſcovites, the Tartars being forbid to enter it upon pain of death. The commander in chief of the place being brother to the governor of Niſe, was preſented by the ambaſſadors with a very fine ruby. Mr. Mandeſlo and our author went on ſhore to take a view of the place, and to purchaſe ſome proviſions; but they could get none that were good, except ſome fruit, and particularly melons, that were as big as pomkins. At their leaving the city, they were informed by ſome Tartars, that their ſhip was gone, which obliged them to hire a waggon, by the help of which, they proceeded along the ſhore, till meeting with the Priſtaff's boat, they were carried on board, the ſhip lying at anchor two leagues below Caſan. The country hereabouts is fertile, but almoſt deſolate, from its being ſo much infeſted by the Coſſacks.

They afterwards proceeded by ſeveral villages; and were frequently expoſed to danger from the ſand banks. On the 18th they were met by the governor of Torki, a place upon the Caſpian ſea, who was returning from his government, attended by eight boats with muſqueteers. At firſt, not knowing to whom theſe boats belonged, the ambaſſadors made them keep at a diſtance: but coming nearer, they told them that 3000 Coſſacks waited upon the river, by the Caſpian ſea for their coming, and had ſent out 70 horſe, to diſcover them at a diſtance; but they were ſo little terrified by theſe ſtories, that they continued their courſe without ſtopping. The next night a falſe alarm was given by order of the ambaſſadors, to make trial of their people in caſe of a ſudden attack, which ſucceed-

ed to their ſatisfaction. The next day they came to an iſland called Staritzo, fifteen werſts in length, behind which they found a great quantity of ſtones ſhaped like lemons or oranges, which being broken in the middle, repreſented a ſtar of ſeveral colours, and ſome that appeared like gold and ſilver. They then came in ſight of a place pleaſantly ſituated, the ruins of which ſhewed it to have been a Tartarian city, called Uneroſkora, where was yet to be ſeen the monument of a ſaint, to which the inhabitants of thoſe parts pay extraordinary devotion.

On the 2d, ſome fiſhermen of this place ſold them fifty-five large breams for the value of fifty pence. They have here a peculiar way of fiſhing: they take a long cord, to one end of which they faſten a pretty large ſtone, that falls to the bottom, and to the other ſeveral pieces of wood, which ſwim upon the water: all along the cord are faſtened many leſſer ones, each with a hook and a fiſh for a bait at the end. In this manner they take very fine fiſh of eight, ten, or twelve feet long.

When the Muſcovites paſs along the rivers in their boats, they faſten a hook to one end of a cord, and to the other end of it a ſmooth board of a hand's breadth, tinned over, which they drag along after the ſhip or boat, and the ſtream cauſing the tinned board to turn frequently to the ſun, makes it appear like the ſcales of fiſh, by which means they allure after them, and take as many fiſh, even of the larger ſort, as they have occaſion for, ſo that the Muſcovites make ſcarce any other proviſion for theſe voyages but a keg of biſcuits; for the multiplicity of their faſt days accuſtom them ſo much to fiſh, that while they are on board they ſet little value on fleſh. The ambaſſadors here cauſed a boat, which had brought their proviſions from Niſe, and was now empty, to be ſet on fire, for fear of its falling into the hands of the Coſſacks.

On the 21ſt, they ſaw on the right hand the ruins of two places, in a delightful ſituation, ſaid to have been

deſtroyed by Tamerlane; and on the 22d paſſed with much difficulty over three great ſand-banks, near which may be ſeen on the right hand Mount Arbeuchim, which received its name from a large city, the ruins of which are ſtill viſible. Here they diſcovered, between two little hills, a ſtone 28 feet ſquare, with the following inſcription:

If thou raiſe me, thou ſhalt be rewarded.

They were told that fifty paſſengers, being forced on ſhore there ſome years before, had the curioſity to lift up the ſtone, and found on the other ſide nothing but the following ſentence:

In vain doſt thou look for what thou haſt not put here.

At a ſmall diſtance from the river is a ſpacious fertile country, rich in paſture grounds, but deſtitute of inhabitants there being nothing to be ſeen but the ruins of cities and great towns deſtroyed by Tamerlane.

On the 24th they were driven twice on ſhore by contrary winds, and the two following days found great difficulty in getting over the ſand-banks. This, with the bad diet, to which moſt of the people were unaccuſtomed, and the frowardneſs of one of the ambaſſadors, rendered the hardſhips they laboured under almoſt inſupportable.

On the 25th they diſcovered to the right a mountain from whence the Muſcovites obtain abundance of ſalt, which being prepared in huts built for that purpoſe, and dried in the ſun, is tranſported from thence to Moſcow. At ſome diſtance they at length perceived Mount Diwiſagora, or the Maid's Mountain, which towards the river ſide is divided into many ſteep hills: and theſe being of various colours afford a very agreeable proſpect. Upon each of theſe hills is a row of pine-trees, growing with ſuch regularity, that, were not theſe hills inacceſſible, they might be rather conſidered as planted there by art than by nature. At the foot of this mountain ariſes another, which extends eight leagues along the river; the valley between them

produces a vaſt number of apple-trees fit for making cyder.

Having the ſame evening received advice by letter from Moſcow and Niſe, that four Coſſacks were got into their retinue in the quality of mariners, they became alarmed, eſpecially on their perceiving after ſunſet two great fires at the entrance of the wood on the right hand; but having diſpatched five or ſix muſqueteers aſhore, they were diſcovered to be Strelitzers who had guarded a Perſian caravan: and the following night they were put into another fright by two fiſhermen, who paſſing by the ſhip in a boat were ſtopped by the centinels; but finding that they differed in their relations, and ſuſpecting them to be Coſſacks, they ſent them the next morning to the governor of Samara.

They now paſſed by Mount Saccobei, which reaches 15 werſts along the river, as far as Samara; it being one continued rock, bare on the top, but on the ſides covered with trees. While they were detained here by contrary winds, two large red ſnakes, that came from the ſhore, got up by the cables into the ſhip; but they were no ſooner perceived by the Muſcovites than they begged they might not be killed, and that ſome food might be given them, alledging that they were ſent by St. Nicholas as the forerunners of a fair wind.

Early on the 28th they came near the city of Samara, which lies two werſts from the left ſide of the river, and 350 from Caſan: It is almoſt ſquare; and all the buildings, except ſome churches and two or three monaſteries, are of wood. Before night they arrived at the Mountain of the Coſſacks, which obtained its name from the frequent robberies here committed by them, this being their place of aſſembly, from whence they diſcovered what ſhips came that way; but ſince four or five hundred of them were killed by the garriſon of Samara, they have not infeſted this mountain in ſuch numbers.

On the 31ſt they met with two large barges manned with 400 mariners, each laden with proviſions, parti-

cularly caviar, and afterwards four more coming from Aſtrachan with ſalt and ſalt fiſh, who told them they had met with 200 Coſſacks near that city, who had ſuffered them to paſs by unmoleſted.

On the 1ſt of September they paſſed in ſight of Saratof, a city ſituated in a large plain upon a branch of the Volga, and only inhabited by Muſcovite ſoldiers, who keep garriſon here to bridle the Calmuc Tartars, a people who inhabit a vaſt tract of ground from hence to the Caſpian ſea and the river Jaika, and are ſo powerful as ſometimes to make open war with the czar. The next day they paſſed by the mountain of Achmats Kigori, which affords a fine proſpect at a diſtance, from its top being covered with verdure, the aſcent chequered with mould of different colours, and its being ſkirted by a bank as even as if formed by art. They then paſſed by the Golden mountain, ſo called from the Tartars having near it ſurpriſed a fleet of Muſcovite veſſels, ſaid to be ſo richly laden, that they divided the gold and ſilver by the buſhel. They were ſcarce out of ſight of this mountain, when they diſcovered another called the Chalk Mountain, which extending 40 werſts along the river, riſes by an eaſy aſcent to the top; and at the foot near the river are many trees planted chequer-wiſe.

They next came to the Mountain of Pillars, ſo called from rocks of ſeveral colours appearing above the reſt. Here meeting with a large barge, they were told by the pilot that he had paſſed in ſight of 70 Coſſacks, who had ſuffered the veſſel to paſs by, but had in the night ſtole the lighter, for which he had paid 500 crowns to have it again. The ſame evening the ambaſſadors ſaw ten Coſſacks croſs the river, upon which Mr. Brugman one of the ambaſſadors ordered eight muſqueteers to find them out, and bring them on board; but the Coſſacks having time to get into an adjacent wood, and it being very late before the muſqueteers returned, this cauſed ſome diſpute between the ambaſſador and the ſteward of the embaſſy, the latter

alledging that it was extremely dangerous to expoſe the men in the dark, and in an unknown place, where they muſt infallibly periſh for want of timely relief: however, he had no other anſwer than ill language.

On the 3d of September they came to the mountain of Kamaſchinka, and a river of the ſame name, that ariſes out of the torrent of Iloba, which falls into the Don. The Coſſacks, by croſſing this river in ſmall boats, make excurſions as far as the Volga, which renders travelling very dangerous. But they had no ſooner paſſed this place, than finding themſelves within ſight of the caravan of Perſia and Tartary, they made all the haſte they could to get up with it, and ſaluted it with four pieces of cannon and a volley of ſmall arms, under the ſound of their trumpets, which was returned by the diſcharge of ſome muſquets. The chief perſons belonging to this caravan, were a Tartarian prince, named Muſſal, the Perſian Cuptzi, a Muſcovite envoy ſent into Perſia, an ambaſſador of Crim Tartary, and two or three Perſian merchants.

They immediately after ſaw a Muſcovite officer, with ſome Strelitzers coming towards them in a boat, who having ſaluted them with a volley of ſmall arms, the officer alone came on board to compliment them in the name of the Tartarian prince, and his example was ſoon after followed by the Perſian Cuptzi, upon which the ambaſſadors ſent two gentlemen of their retinue, with their Muſcovite interpreter, to the prince and the ſecretary of the embaſſy, with the Perſian interpreter, to the Cuptzi, to return the compliment. The ſecretary happening to go to the larboard ſide of the ſhip, he was told by the Cuptzi ſervants, that their maſter's wife being lodged on that ſide, they deſired him to come to the other, which being done accordingly, the ſecretary and his attendants were received by ſeveral well dreſſed perſons, who lifted them up by the arms into the ſhip, and conducted them to the Cuptzi's chamber, where they found him ſitting croſs-leged af-

ter the Perſian cuſtom upon a couch, covered with the beſt Perſian tapeſtry, and reſting his back againſt a crimſon cuſhion; he put his hands to his breaſt with a low inclination of his head, the higheſt mark of reſpect uſed in Perſia, and having intreated them to ſit down, which they could not do in that poſture, without ſome trouble, he anſwered their compliment in a very obliging manner, telling them that how deſirous ſoever he was of ſeeing his own country and houſe, he had conceived a much greater ſatisfaction at the ſight of their ſhip; adding, he hoped, that as ſoon as they entered Perſia, they would be ſenſible of the difference there was between the barbarity of the Muſcovites, and the politeneſs of the Perſians; and that after his return he would employ all his intereſt to be made their Mehemander or conductor, that he might lay them under all the obligations in his power.

Before they left the ſhip, the Cuptzi treated them with a collation ſerved up in plate vermillion gilt, conſiſting of ſeveral ſorts of fruits and piſtachios, dried and pickled.

On the 4th of September, ſeveral men whom the Tartarian prince had ſent to excuſe his not coming to viſit the ambaſſadors came on board. Theſe were Circaſſian Tartars, and he who appeared to be the chief was pretty tall, of an olive colour, with long greaſy black hair, and his beard of the ſame colour. Over his garment he wore a black ſheep-ſkin, with the woolly ſide outwards, with a cap cloſe to his head, and had a very frightful countenance. The reſt had black or brown coarſe cloth coats. They were ſent back loaded with brandy.

On the 5th of September, they came to the firſt branch, by which the Volga diſcharges itſelf into the Caſpian ſea, and the next day came to Zariza, where they overtook the caravan which had got before them, and taking the advantage of a fair wind continued their courſe. The city of Zariza being 350 werſts diſtant from Saratof, is ſituated at the bottom of a high hill o

the right ſide of the river, and is fortified with five baſtions, and as many wooden towers. It has no other inhabitants but the garriſon, which is kept here to bridle the Coſſacks and Tartars, and to ſerve for convoys up and down the river. All the country between Zariza and Aſtrachan being barren, the laſt is ſupplied with wheat from Caſan in ſuch plenty, that it is bought cheaper than at Moſcow. At a ſmall diſtance below Zariza, they paſſed by the iſland of Zerpinſke, where the Coſſacks had a little before ſurpriſed and raviſhed the wives and daughters of the ſoldiers belonging to the garriſon of Zariza, who keep their cattle there. This iſland is twelve werſts in length.

On the 7th of September, the weather being very tempeſtuous, they advanced but ſlowly, on which the ambaſſador Brugman took this opportunity to ſummon all the ſervants of the embaſſy before him, and to charge them with want of duty and reſpect, requiring the muſicians, guards, and footmen, to take an oath of fidelity to his perſon: to which they anſwered, that he had no reaſon to ſuſpect their fidelity, and that they were ready to ſacrifice their lives in his ſervice; deſiring, however, that they might be treated with leſs rigour than he had hitherto uſed, which he promiſed; his promiſe was, however, but indifferently performed.

In the evening, a fiſherman brought them a fiſh five feet in length, with a long and broad ſnout like the bill of a wild drake; the body was full of white and black ſpots like the ſkin of a tyger, except upon the belly, which was quite white. This fiſh had a more luſcious taſte than a ſalmon. They alſo bought of him ſome white fiſh, which are about eight feet long and four broad, and are not unlike a ſturgeon, but have a wider mouth, and whiter fleſh. They now came to a ſecond branch of the Volga, from whence as far as Aſtrachan, the country on both ſides of the river abounds in liquorice, the ſtalks of which are of the thickneſs of a man's arm, and near four feet high.

On the 9th of September, a violent wind carried them within ſight of the little city of Tzornogar, ſituated 200 werſts from Zariza, which had been then only built about nine years. The former city of the ſame name being ſituated on the ſhore about half a league from thence, where it was inconvenient landing, was removed to the place where it now ſtands on a high ſhore on the right ſide of the river. Its fortifications conſiſt of eight wooden towers, and a rampart formed of thick planks. It has a garriſon of four or five hundred Strelitzers, kept there to ſecure the adjacent country from the incurſions of the Coſſacks and Calmuc Tartars, on which account a watch-houſe is erected a each of the four corners of the city upon high poles from whence they may, without the leaſt interruption command the view of a ſpacious plain.

They afterwards paſſed by ſeveral other branches o the Volga, and on the 15th of September made th iſland of Dolgoi, in which Aſtrachan is ſeated; and a this city lies in that part of the Volga which di vides Europe from Aſia, and they were now enterin another part of the globe, they ſaluted it from the midſ of the river, with a general diſcharge of their grea guns and ſmall ſhot, to the great ſurpriſe of the inha bitants, who were not much accuſtomed to the thun dering noiſe of cannon.

The climate was here as hot as the weather is in Ger many in the midſt of ſummer, eſpecially when the win blew to the eaſtward from the Volga; but the ſe breezes which blew from the ſouth moderated the heat as they afterwards found, in the hotteſt months. Th winter laſts here no longer than two months, but is ſ exceeding cold, that the river is frozen, and ſledge are uſed upon it.

The iſle of Dolgoi is ſandy and barren, and pro duces nothing for the ſubſiſtence of human life, excep what is raiſed by the induſtry of the inhabitants in the gardens, and ſome well cultivated grounds. The con tinent on the right hand is no leſs barren; but on th

left towards the river Jaika are very good paſtures. The only thing produced by the deſarts is ſalt, for there are certain ſalt-pits where the ſalt ſwims upon the ſurface of the water of the thickneſs of a finger, and is not unlike our rock cryſtal, and of this there are ſuch prodigious quantities, that for the value of a halfpenny a perſon may take up forty pounds weight: one cruſt being no ſooner taken off than another riſes.

The river between Aſtrachan and the Caſpian ſea, which is twelve leagues in extent, ſo abounds in fiſh, that they bought twelve large carp for two-pence, and two hundred young ſturgeons for half a crown. There are here infinite numbers of lobſters, on account of their being never eaten by the Muſcovites and Tartars. The great multitudes of iſlands hereabouts alſo afford an incredible number of wild fowl, eſpecially wild geeſe and wild ducks, which the Tartars take with hawks and falcons, in the breeding of which they are very expert. They are alſo fond of hunting the wild boar, the fleſh of which they ſell to the Muſcovites, their religion not permitting them to eat it.

That part of Tartary which is incloſed between the rivers Volga and Jaika, as far as the Caſpian ſea, is called Nagaia, and of this country Aſtrachan is the capital. The fruits it produces are not inferior either in flavour or beauty to thoſe of Perſia, eſpecially their nuts, apples, quinces, peaches, and melons, of which laſt there is an admirable ſort of a delicious taſte, ſaid to have been firſt brought from the Indies; the rind is of a lively green, the pulp of a pale carnation, and the ſeed black: two or three of theſe are ſold for a halfpenny. Grapes were but lately introduced, by the means of ſome Perſian merchants, who brought the firſt ſtalks to Aſtrachan, which were planted by an old monk in a garden belonging to the convent in the ſuburbs, and the czar having taſted ſome of theſe grapes, ordered him in 1613, to increaſe his ſtock with all poſſible diligence, which he did ſo effectually, that at this time there was ſcarce a houſe in the town without its

vineyards, which turn to ſuch advantage to the owners, that the maſter of the houſe where the ambaſſadors lodged, aſſured them, that the preceding year, the vines about his houſe had yielded him no leſs than one hundred crowns, and that ſome years before, they planted a vineyard which produced no leſs than ſixty pipes of excellent wine in one year.

The city of Aſtrachan is ſurrounded with a ſtone wall, and ſtrengthened by other fortifications. The whole compaſs of the city is 8000 geometrical feet, and the ſide which looks to the river is 2216 feet broad, affording a fine proſpect from its many turrets and ſteeples built of ſtone, which make a handſome appearance at a diſtance. The houſes, however, are generally of wood, and but indifferently built. To keep the neighbouring Tartars in awe, the above fortifications are ſaid to contain five hundred large braſs guns, beſides many mortars, and it has a garriſon of Strelitzers conſiſting of nine regiments of 500 men each.

As this city is in a manner the common frontier between two conſiderable parts of the earth, not only the Crim, Precopenſe, Calmuc and Nagaian Tartars, but alſo the Perſians, Armenians, and even the Indians themſelves carry on a conſiderable trade there, which makes the cuſtoms of the place, though very low, amount to 25,000 crowns per annum.

The natives of Nagaia are neither allowed to dwell within the city, nor to build any other; but are forced to be ſatisfied with living in an incloſure formed with paliſadoes without the city walls, or to live in ſtraggling huts about the fields. Their huts, which are made of bulruſhes or canes, are round, and about twelve feet in diameter, and in the middle of the top, have a hole which anſwers the purpoſe of a chimney, through which paſſes a ſtick, with a piece of coarſe cloth at the end, to facilitate the going out of the ſmoke, and this ſtick they draw in as ſoon as the turf or cow dung, which are their ordinary fuel, is reduced to a live coal. During the cold ſeaſon, they cover theſe huts with coarſe cloth,

and ſpend their time within doors with their wives and children, ſcarce ever ſtirring abroad. In the ſummer ſeaſon, they move from place to place, and ſettle where they meet with the beſt paſture for feeding of their cattle, which failing in one place, they put their wives and children, with their huts and utenſils, upon camels, oxen, and horſes, and then go to another. However, at the approach of winter, they all retire about Aſtrachan, where they lodge in troops, at ſuch a diſtance from each other, as to be in a condition to join their aſſiſtance againſt the Calmuc Tartars, and the Tartars near the river Jaika, for which reaſon the Muſcovites furniſh them with arms in the winter, which they are obliged to return as ſoon as the rivers and roads are unthawed; for they are not allowed to have any arms, either offenſive or defenſive in the ſummer. Theſe, as well as the Dagheſtan Tartars, are free from all taxes; but are obliged to ſerve the czar in his wars. They have princes, commanders, and judges of their own; but to ſecure their allegiance to the czar, ſome of the princes are left as hoſtages in the caſtle of Aſtrachan.

The Nagaian, as well as the Crim Tartars, are in general low of ſtature, inclining to fat, of an olive complexion, with large faces, and little eyes. The men have alſo but ſmall beards, and are ſeldom without wrinkles; they ſhave their heads, and wear a garment which is a kind of caſſock, of a coarſe grey cloth, over which they commonly wear a kind of mantle, made of black ſheep-ſkins, with the woolly ſide outwards, and a cap of the ſame ſtuff. Their women, who are not diſagreeable, are commonly clothed in white linen, wearing on their heads a ſort of cap, round which hang many copees, or Muſcovite pence. It is cuſtomary with them to devote their children to God, or to ſome Imam or ſaint. Their girls they diſtinguiſh from others by a ring with a ruby, turquoiſe, or coral, hanging at their noſtrils. The boys wear a ring in their right ear.

They are for the moſt part Mahometans of the Turkiſh ſect; but ſome profeſs the Muſcovite religion. They live upon their cattle, and what they obtain by hunting and fiſhing. Their cattle are very large, and their ſheep, like thoſe of Perſia, have great fat tails, which weigh twenty or thirty pounds; they are flat noſed, and have hanging ears like our ſpaniels; their horſes are but ſmall and ill ſhaped, though they are ſtrong and hardy. They have ſome camels, and thoſe have generally two bunches on their backs. They uſe fiſh dried in the ſun inſtead of bread, and ſometimes make cakes of meal, rice, and millet, which they fry in oil or honey. They eat camels or horſe fleſh; and their drink is water or milk, but mare's milk is moſt eſteemed.

They had no ſooner caſt anchor before the city, than the Perſian Cuptzi ſent them a preſent of fruit, in return for which, the ambaſſadors made him a preſent of ſeveral ſorts of diſtilled waters, and ſome ſweetmeats. The next day, ſeveral of the Perſian merchants came on board, and as it is not uſual for any in their country to come empty handed before perſons of diſtinction, every one of them brought a preſent of fruit, and our German travellers being greatly pleaſed with their frank and civil behaviour, after their being ſo long troubled with the barbarity of the Ruſſians, made them ſo welcome, that ſome of them fell drunk upon the deck, and one of them was forced to ſtay on board all night.

On the 17th the Perſian Cuptzi ſent on board a preſent of very fine rice, and a veſſel filled with garlic preſerved after the Perſian manner. Some of his domeſtics who brought the preſent, and were mariners, were ſurprized at the bigneſs of the ſhip, and they all agreed, that it would not be fit for the Caſpian ſea, unleſs the maſts were taken down. The ambaſſadors did not wonder at their being of this opinion, as the Perſian ſhips are made like our European bathing-tubs, and ſcarce take two or three feet water, for

which reaſon they ſeldom venture farther than a good piſtol ſhot into the Caſpian ſea. The Perſians being gone, the ambaſſadors ſent a large drinking cup, vermillion gilt, to the chief governor, deſiring his advice in relation to their intended voyage, and it was ſoon after reſolved to continue it by ſea.

On the 19th of September, they ſent the ſhallop to fetch the Tartarian prince, who brought another Tartar prince along with him, and a retinue of 40 perſons. He was of about 28 years of age, and had an agreeable countenance; he was of a merry diſpoſition, and was richly dreſſed after the Muſcovite faſhion. He was received with the ſound of trumpets, and a diſcharge of three great guns, and having ſtaid about two hours in the ambaſſadors cabin, and taken a view of the ſhip, was conducted back in the ſame manner, after his refuſing to taſte the collation prepared for him.

The Perſian Cuptzi having at the ambaſſadors invitation promiſed to pay them a viſit on board their veſſel, came accordingly two days after, in company with a rich Perſian merchant and a Priſtaff. He was received in the ſame manner as the Tartar prince, and treated with a very fine collation and muſic, after which the Perſians made their hautboys and timbrels play ſeveral tunes.

On the 22d in the morning the governor ſent the ambaſſadors a preſent of 20 flitches of bacon, 12 large fiſhes dried in the ſmoke, a barrel of caviar, a ton of beer, and another of mead; and the ambaſſadors the ſame day deſiring leave to come on ſhore, and to have ſome horſes to viſit the Tartar prince, the governor very obligingly ſent them to the river ſide the next day, from whence the ambaſſadors being conducted to an apartment prepared for them on purpoſe without the city, they walked to the prince's lodgings, where he received them in the court, and conducted them into an apartment richly hung, where they found Alexis, a Muſcovite envoy, and an ambaſſador from

the Crim Tartars. A fine collation of fruit was prepared for them, and they had great plenty of wine, beer, mead and brandy, the governors trumpet ſounding all the while. When the health of the Czar and the duke of Holſtein were drank, the prince preſented the cup ſtanding, even to the pages. In the mean time Alexis, the Muſcovite envoy, entertained the ambaſſadors with the great qualities, and extraordinary rank of this Tartarian prince, obſerving that his ſiſter was to be married to the king of Perſia.

A few days after the Cuptzi invited the ambaſſadors to an entertainment. They were conducted with their attendants to a houſe he had borrowed of the governor, oppoſite to which he had hired another, where a ſcaffold was erected covered with tapeſtry, on which his hautboys and timbrels played for the time of the ambaſſadors coming till their departure. The Cuptzi met them in the court, from whence he conducted them through two rooms hung with rich Turkiſh and Perſian tapeſtry, and into a third hung with gold and ſilver brocade. In all the rooms the tables and ſeats were, for the convenience of the ambaſſadors, placed after the European manner. The tables were covered with ſattin or taffety, and loaded with a variety of fruits and preſerves, as grapes, peaches, apricots, melons, almonds, piſtachios, and ſeveral Indian fruits preſerved with ſugar and honey. Soon after the Perſian and Poliſh ambaſſadors, who were travelling to the court of Muſcovy, came in, having over their own habits rich robes preſented them by the king of Perſia, and each a gold croſs hanging upon the breaſt. As they were well verſed in the Latin, Spaniſh, Italian, and French languages, their company was extremely agreeable. The entertainment, according to the cuſtom of Perſia, began with fruits and preſerves, in two hours time the meat was brought up in large ſilver diſhes filled with rice of ſeveral colours, and upon that various ſorts

of meat boiled and roaſted, as beef, mutton, tame fowl, wild-ducks, fiſh, &c. which were very well dreſſed.

As the Perſians make no uſe of knives at table, their cooks always cut their meat, ready for eating, in ſmall pieces. Each table has a carver, who takes the meat out of the great diſhes in which it is brought up, and fills ſome leſſer ones with three or four ſorts of meat. So that each diſh might ſerve two or three people. The drink was beer, mead, and brandy, of which little was drank till the latter end of the feaſt, when the cups began to go merrily round; and the whole was concluded with a large porcelain veſſel filled with a hot blackiſh liquor called Kahawa. In ſhort, they were entertained with as much civility as if they had been in any part of Europe.

On the 27th the ambaſſadors, with ſome of their retinue, took a walk round the city, towards the quarters of the Tartars, in order to view their habitations. They obſerved by the way that the people did not thraſh their corn; but tread it out by oxen and horſes; and that every hut had its hawk or falcon.

On the 30th of September the governor of the city ſent the ambaſſadors a preſent of gingerbread, and the juice of gooſeberries made into a paſte, or rolls. It was of a ſharp and pleaſant taſte, and is frequently uſed by the Muſcovites in their ſauces. The next day the ſecretary of the embaſſy, with two other gentlemen, were ordered to attend the governor on buſineſs. He gave them a favourable reception, and made them ſit down by him; but before he would give them an anſwer, complained of the ill conduct of the ambaſſador Brugman, who had uſed very reviling language to the priſtaff, without the leaſt regard to his quality in being the ſervant of the czar, to whom he ought to have complained, or to thoſe who repreſented his perſon at Aſtrachan. But added very obligingly, that though it was his duty to make theſe remonſtrances, he would not impute it to the whole retinue: but would give them their diſpatches, which he accordingly did.

Having taken in a ſupply of biſcuit, beer, 20 fat oxen, and ſome barrels of ſalt-fiſh, they hired ſome Tartars, who promiſed to go before them in boats, to conduct them over the ſhoals at the mouth of the Volga: they left Aſtrachan on the 10th of October, but were ſoon after driven to the ſhore, where they were viſited by a prince of Tartary, who had a graceful perſon, and preſented them with a ſheep, and a barrel of milk. They obſerved that the earth hereabouts produced ſimples of an extraordinary ſize.

On the 13th, they were forced to come to an anchor near a little round mountain, fifteen werſts from Aſtrachan, and from the great number of ſnakes they ſaw there, they called it the ſnaky mountain. It was covered with caper-trees, and the herb Semper Vivum, or houſe-leek of ſeveral kinds: the adjacent plain afforded the moſt delightful proſpect in the world. They afterwards paſſed by many iſlands covered with buſhes, canes and oziers; they ſaw a great many dog-fiſh, and a kind of cormorants larger than ſwans, with their bills above a foot and a half long, two fingers broad, and forked at the end. Under their bills they have a bag of ſkin, which they can contract or extend to ſuch a bigneſs, that it will contain three gallons of liquor, and this they uſe as a reſervatory for the fiſh they take, till they can ſwallow them. The ambaſſador Cruſius afterwards ſhot one of them upon the Caſpian ſea, which was two ells and an half between the extremities of the wings, and ſeven feet from the head to the feet.

On the 15th they reached the mouth of the Volga which is full of ſmall iſlands, that abound with canes and reeds. The paſſages between theſe iſlands being ſhallow water, they were reduced to great danger, and were ſeven days in advancing four leagues. At length finding the Muſcovite pilot very ignorant, and the map of the Caſpian ſea they had brought along with them entirely falſe, they addreſſed the colonel of the ſtrelitzers, deſiring him to furniſh them with an able pilot. He came on board, and being well treated, promiſed

to ſend ſuch a pilot as they might confide in; but no ſooner returned to his own ſhip than he ſet ſail, without fulfilling his promiſe. They therefore applied to the maſter of the Perſian ſhip, who, notwithſtanding his being owner of all the goods in the veſſel, freely came on board, and ſteered them into ten feet water.

On the 30th of October, they as ſoon as it was light, diſcovered the country of Circaſſia, which extending from the ſouth-weſt to the north-eaſt formed a ſpacious bay, reſembling a creſcent; and on the firſt of November they caſt anchor before the city of Terki. The Coſſacks, it ſeems, had deſigned to attack them the night before; but miſſing them in the dark, happened to light upon the ſmall fleet which carried the Tartarian prince and the ſtrelitzers, who defended themſelves with their fire arms, when the Coſſacks, finding themſelves miſtaken, retired; letting them know that their buſineſs was with the Germans. A rumour of this attempt having been ſpread early in the morning through the city of Terki, the noiſe of the ambaſſadors great guns increaſed their fear, and occaſioned a general alarm, which was, however, ſoon appeaſed, when the prince and his fleet ſoon after came into the road, and after a ſalute with their fire-arms, invited the ambaſſadors to honour him with a viſit at his mother's.

Terki, the capital city of the Circaſſian Tartars, is ſeated about half a league from the ſea-ſhore, upon the ſmall river Timenſki, a branch of the great river Baſtro. It ſtands in a ſpacious plain, and is ſixty leagues diſtant from Aſtrachan by ſea, and ſeventy by land. As it is the laſt frontier place belonging to the czar, it has a garriſon of 200,000 men, 500 of whom are appointed for the guard of the Tartarian prince. The city is two thouſand feet in length, and eight hundred in breadth. All the buildings, even the towers and ramparts, are of wood, though the late great duke has cauſed ſome fortifications to be erected of earth after the modern way, which are well provided with cannon. The natives are only allowed to live in unfortified places and

villages: though the adminiſtration of the government, and particularly of the courts of juſtice, is inveſted in the Tartarian lords, who being bound by an oath to the czar, tranſact every thing of moment in the preſence of the Waywode of the place.

The next day, the Cuptzi and the Perſian merchants ſent the ambaſſadors a preſent of moſt excellent fruit, and at the ſame time let them know, that if they choſe to travel by land, they might take the conveniency of a large convoy of two hundred camels, and a great number of mules, that were conducting a Muſcovite ambaſſador to the frontiers of Dagheſtan; and to convince them of the ſincerity of their intentions, offered to bear them company in this journey. This propoſal being approved by the ambaſſadors, they had no ſooner obtained leave from the governor, than they diſpatched their Perſian interpreter to the frontiers of Dagheſtan, ſix leagues from Terki; but upon his arrival, he found the camels and mules already returned into Perſia, the governor having found means to delay his going till he had notice that it would be ineffectual.

On the 5th of November, Mr. Mandeſto, the chaplain, and Mr. Olearius*, the ſecretary of the embaſſy, accompanied by the Tartarian and Perſian interpreters, were ſent to the governor with a preſent of a large vermilion gilt cup, and to each of his ſecretaries a preſent of a rich ruby; they were alſo ordered to compliment the mother of the Tartar prince, upon her ſon's happy return. The governor entertained them with great civility and magnificence, and Muſſal, the Tartarian prince, received them in perſon at the entrance of his court, with all imaginable demonſtrations of friendſhip. He conducted them into a large and lofty hall, the walls of which were of earth, but ſo contrived, that at equal diſtances they might ſee a number of niches vaulted, and adorned either with rich beds, with ſilk or cotton counterpanes, or filled with pieces of Perſian tapeſtry,

* The author.

coverlets wrought with gold and ſilk, and large cheſts, covered with the ſame rich ſtuffs. Under the ceiling hung two rows of wooden and earthen diſhes, and on the pillars which ſupported the edifice were hung ſcymeters, quivers and arrows of the beſt kind. The prince's mother ſat in a chair. She was about forty-five years of age, tall, majeſtic, and of a good countenance. She was wrapped up in a black night-gown lined with ſables; behind on her neck hung an ox's bladder full blown, wound about with a rich ſcarf, embroidered with gold and ſilk, and about her neck ſhe had another ſcarf, both ends of which hung down upon her ſhoulders. A woman, who attended her, had alſo an ox's bladder, which they afterwards underſtood to be the badge of widowhood. On her right hand ſtood her three ſons, the two youngeſt of whom could not be diſtinguiſhed by their dreſs from the moſt inconſiderable perſon of the country. Behind theſe youths were ſeveral ſervants, whoſe faces being torn by their nails, ſtill bore the marks of mourning for the death of her eldeſt ſon, who had been lately executed at Moſcow; and on her left hand ſtood ſeveral aged Tartars, who were officers of the court.

After the princes had returned the compliment made by the ambaſſadors, a collation of fruit was brought in upon a little table. The gentlemen urged the princes to ſit down with them; but they excuſed themſelves, by alleging the cuſtom of the country, which did not allow of their ſitting in the preſence of their mother. After the collation, the princeſs, and the reſt of thoſe who were preſent, took particular notice of the gentlemens clothes; and then the princeſs herſelf, and each of the three princes, preſented them with a large cup of a ſpirituous liquor, extracted out of millet, and as ſtrong as brandy: the princes alſo did the ſame to the ſervants. Meanwhile they ſuddenly ſaw a door open behind the princeſs, at the entrance of which appeared ſeveral women, and among the reſt the princeſs' daughter, who was betrothed to the Sophi of Perſia. She was

about ſixteen years of age, very handſome, and of a clear complexion, to which the blackneſs of her hair added no ſmall luſtre. Theſe ladies were ſo curious to ſee the clothes of theſe German gentlemen, that they puſhed one another backwards from the door, which at the firſt wink from the princeſs was ſhut; but they ſoon opened it again to take a full view of them, and calling one of the ſervants, ſeemed much delighted with his dreſs, and even made him draw his ſword, in order to view the blade; but a Perſian eunuch, who had been ſent to carry the young princeſs into Perſia, happening to come, the door was immediately ſhut, and the gentlemen took their leave of the princeſs, and her ſons, in order to take a view of the city. The houſes there are low and mean, being made of boughs of trees, plaſtered over with earth or clay. The men are generally ſtrong limbed, of a tawny complexion; but not ſo broad-faced as the Nagaian Tartars. Their hair is black and long; but they ſhave from the forehead to the neck about the breadth of an inch, leaving juſt at the crown a lock which falls down behind. Their clothes are like thoſe of the other Tartars who inhabit theſe parts, only their cloaks, which are either of ſheepſkins, or very coarſe cloth, are ſomewhat larger: they are faſtened at the neck with a ſtring, and as they are too ſcanty to cover the whole body, they turn them ſo as to ſhield them from the wind and rain. The women are handſome and well-ſhaped, having a clear complexion, and an agreeable bloom in their cheeks. They never cover their faces, and their black hair hangs down in two treſſes on both ſides. They wear black caps upon their heads, which they cover with a fine piece of callico or linen cloth tied under the chin. All the women they met were clothed only in a kind of ſmocks or frocks, which were green, yellow, or blue, and the boſom cut ſo deep before, that theſe gentlemen could eaſily ſee below the navel. They appeared very familiar, ſtopped the gentlemen to examine their dreſs, and though ſome of the retinue, under the pre-

tence of handling their necklaces, which were of amber, copper, or tin, ſlipped their hands into their boſoms, they did not ſeem in the leaſt offended. They have, notwithſtanding, the reputation of being very virtuous, and one of the officers belonging to the retinue, afterwards becoming familiarly acquainted with one of the women, who was very handſome, made trial of her chaſtity, but found it impregnable.

As to the religion of theſe people, though they uſe ſome Mahometan ceremonies, and in particular circumciſion, they have neither the koran, prieſts, nor moſques, and may properly be termed Pagans.

Having received advice that the convoy of camels and mules were returned into Perſia, the ambaſſadors reſolved to continue their voyage by ſea, upon which the Tartarian princeſs ſent them a preſent of two ſheep, fifty pullets, and ſeveral other proviſions; they had alſo a preſent of beer, mead, and a ſheep ſent them by the high chancellor of Muſcovy. In the afternoon of the ſame day, prince Muſſal came on board to bid them farewell, bringing along with him Tartarian Myrze, a brother to the prince of Tarku in Dagheſtan. His habit, which was like that of the reſt of the Tartars, was only a coarſe cloth cloke over his old clothes; his countenance ſufficiently diſcovered his natural fierceneſs, and his behaviour was in all reſpects anſwerable to it. He refuſed to ariſe like the reſt of the company, when the czar's health was drank, and being admoniſhed by prince Muſſal, to conſider what country he was in, anſwered, that he knew not whether he had not as much right to it as the grand duke, reproaching Muſſal, that with all his fine clothes, he was no more than a ſlave, while he, in his rags, was a ſovereign prince, and acknowledged no ſuperior but God, and then abſolutely refuſing to drink the czar's health, went away. His ſervants, however, found means to take a ſilver ſpoon and a knife with them.

In the meanwhile, the governor ſent the ambaſſadors

a preſent of one hundred pieces of hung beef, four tons of beer, one of mead, a caſk of wine, and another of vinegar, with ſome cakes of gingerbread, and ſome common bread.

On the 10th of November they ſet ſail, directing their courſe towards Derbent, and about noon diſcovering a bark which hovered about at a diſtance, the ambaſſador Brugman ordered a great gun to be fired, which made her bring to. She proved a veſſel laden with fruit, the maſter of which happened to be brother to the Perſian pilot, and finding him among a ſtrange ſort of people, broke out in dreadful lamentations, thinking him and his brother paſt all redemption, nor could he be perſuaded of the contrary, till his brother gave him a circumſtantial account of the reaſons of theſe ſtrangers being there, when he took the courage to enter the ſhip with a preſent of apples, pears, quinces, and nuts, and ſold a conſiderable number of very large apples at the rate of four-pence a hundred.

They ſoon after came to an iſland called by the Perſians Tzenzeni. It is three leagues in length, and is extremely barren and ſandy. Here they caſt anchor, and ſtaid twenty-four hours; but continuing their voyage, on the eleventh met with a violent tempeſt, when furling their ſails, the ſhip drove before the wind. They had two boats, beſides the ſhallop, which were ſoon ſwallowed up by the waves, and the ſhallop followed not long after. The ſhip, which was only of fir, receiving many ſhocks on the ſand banks, opened on all ſides, and they were forced to be without intermiſſion at the pump. While they were in this diſtreſs, they diſcovered the mountain of Derwent about ten leagues off, and the violence of the tempeſt being ſomewhat abated, they hoiſted their ſails in order to run the ſhip a-ground; but the wind blowing from the north-weſt, they were forced beyond the city of Derbent, where no harbour was to be found, the rocks extending ſix leagues into the ſea. They however, in the afternoon of the 13th, came to an anchor before

the village of Niaſabath, and the next morning, when the tempeſt was ſomewhat abated, they, after firing their great and ſmall guns, as ſignals of diſtreſs, without receiving any hopes of relief, began to make a kind of flat bottomed boat, of deal boards; but at this inſtant two boats were ſeaſonably ſent by the magiſtrate of the village to their aſſiſtance. They brought a preſent of apples, and the perſons having complimented the ambaſſadors in the name of the magiſtrate, exhorted them to convey their valuable effects into the boats, and to go along with them, before the tempeſt aroſe again, as they feared it would.

The ambaſſadors took their advice, and went into their boats with part of their retinue, and ſome of the ſoldiers and officers, leaving their ſteward, the ſecretary of the embaſſy, and other of their own officers in the ſhip, intending to ſend the boats back to fetch them, after they themſelves were landed. The magiſtrate waited on horſeback at the ſea ſide for their coming; but ſcarce had the ambaſſadors ſet foot on the Perſian ſhore, when the tempeſt increaſed with ſuch violence, that it was abſolutely impoſſible to ſend back the boats, ſo that the unhappy perſons on board found themſelves in the utmoſt danger of being wrecked. They had the misfortune to find that they dragged their anchor, and that they were forced a quarter of a league from the place where the ambaſſadors left the ſhip, upon which they caſt out two other anchors, but both theſe and the rudder were loſt by eleven at night. All the hopes they had left were now in their biggeſt anchor, which ſtill held: but the ſhip drawing water on all ſides, and the pumb being become uſeleſs, the ſeamen, who were tired out with labour and watching, earneſtly intreated the ſecretary to conſent to their cutting the rope, which he for ſome time refuſed; but ſoon after the main and mizen maſts being carried over board, he conſented, and the ſhip was run a-ground near the place where the ambaſſadors and the reſt of their friends impatiently expected them.

The country where they were caſt aſhore was at this time covered with an agreeable verdure, and thus continued till the middle of December, the ſoil being extremely fertile, and producing great quantities of rice, wheat, and barley. They indeed make but little hay, which is only uſed for the convenience of travellers, as the cattle are kept abroad all the year round. This province, which is named Schirwan, produces a great number of vines, which are planted all along the hedges, and faſtened to the trees. It has alſo vaſt quantities of wild fowl, eſpecially pheaſants; there are hares in abundance, with two kinds of foxes, one like thoſe of Europe, but the other have wool inſtead of hair, with white bellies, black ears, and tails that are not ſo large as thoſe of our foxes, theſe laſt run in herds in the night time about the villages, and make a doleful noiſe. The inhabitants uſe buffaloes inſtead of horſes, and make them draw in the ſame manner; they feed them with fenugreek, which they ſow, and cut green, herb and ſeed together, and thus give it them to eat. Their cows milk produce a cream of two fingers thick, of which they make great plenty of excellent butter; but they make all their cheeſe of ſheep's milk.

The village of Niaſabath conſiſts only of fifteen or ſixteen poor houſes ſcattered up and down. They are built of clay, and are exactly ſquare, with flat roofs covered with turf, ſo that a man may conveniently walk upon them. But notwithſtanding the mean appearance of theſe houſes on the outſide, ſome of them were handſome enough within, and the floors covered with tapeſtry; but the village being too ſmall to contain all the people belonging to the retinue, they pitched their tents near the ambaſſador's lodgings: they were here obliged to be contented with eating mouldy ſcraps of bread found in the ſhip, and with drinking the muddy water of an adjacent torrent.

On the 19th of November the governor of Derbent ſent two perſons well dreſſed to compliment the ambaſſadors upon their arrival in Perſia, and to make

them a preſent of two horſes, two oxen, twelve ſheep, twenty pullets, three pitchers of wine, one pitcher of water, two panniers of apples, and three ſacks of wheat flour; but the governor's letter mentioning only one horſe, and the ambaſſador Brugman finding his not ſo good as the other abſolutely refuſed to accept of it, though the perſons who brought them ſolemlny proteſted that this miſtake was occaſioned by the governor's ſuppoſing there had been but one ambaſſador; but that they being informed by the way that there were two, they had brought the beſt horſe they could get, from the opinion that the governor would approve of it; yet notwithſtanding all their excuſes, Mr. Brugman perſiſted in his reſolution, and, contrary to the cuſtoms both of Perſia and Muſcovy, ſent theſe perſons back without any preſents, which was ſo highly reſented by the governor, that he ever after did the ambaſſadors all the ill offices in his power.

On the 22d of November the ambaſſadors ſent one of their retinue with a Perſian interpreter to Scamachie to give him notice of their arrival to the Khan or governor-general of the province of Schirwan, and to deſire him to furniſh them with every thing neceſſary for continuing their journey; but the governor having before received intelligence of their arrival, had immediately diſpatched a Mehemander, or conductor, who in Perſia ſupplies the office of the Muſcovite Priſtaffs; but the gentlemen who were ſent were not ſo fortunate as to meet him. The Mehemander arrived on the 29th of November richly dreſſed, and extremely well mounted, his horſe's harneſs being embroidered with gold and turquoiſes. He made the ambaſſadors a very handſome and obliging compliment, and offered them his utmoſt aſſiſtance while they continued under his conduct, which was to be as far as Scamachie; upon which they treated him and his retinue with ſome fruit and brandy, entertained him with their muſic, and diſcharged ſome of their great guns, with which he was ſo pleaſed, that he no ſooner returned to his

lodgings than he ſent them a preſent of five ſheep, three pitchers of wine, and ſome pomegranates.

The meſſengers returned with advice, that meeting with the khan at ſome diſtance from the city, he had given them a very kind reception, aſſuring them, that he had already diſpatched a Mehemander to conduct and provide for the ambaſſadors, adding, that he had been informed, that their retinue conſiſted of three hundred perſons; but that if they had twice the number they ſhould be very welcome, and that he longed to ſee them. He then enquired concerning the quality and temper of the ambaſſadors, and their manner of life.

The firſt effects they felt from the governor of Derbent's diſpleaſure, was his denying them a ſufficient number of cattle for the proſecution of their journey, which obliged them to ſend back their Mehemander to Scamachie, to procure ſome from thence, and this forced them to ſtay near a month at the village of Niaſabath.

On the 9th of December, the Tartar prince of Tarku, whom they had ſeen near Terki, came to pay them a viſit, in company with his brother, and a retinue of twenty perſons, and the next day he ſent them a preſent of an ox, ſome ſheep, and two large panniers of apples; in return for which, the ambaſſadors preſented him with ſome ells of cloth and ſattin, a veſſel of brandy, a roll of tobacco, and a barrel of gunpowder of eighty pounds weight, which he moſt earneſtly deſired. What gave the ambaſſadors the higheſt ſatisfaction at this time was the return of their Mehemander, who brought them the agreeable news, that within fifteen days they ſhould be provided with cattle and carriages ſufficient for their journey. Accordingly, a few days after, ſome camels and horſes arrived, the reſt being delayed by the falling of the ſnow, which rendered the roads ſlippery; the camels, whoſe hoofs are not ſo flat as thoſe of other beaſts, cannot travel in the ſnow without much hazard, and this obliged the ambaſſadors to ſtay ten days longer, during which Mr.

Brugman, notwithſtanding the remonſtrances of the Perſians, very imprudently cauſed ſome pieces of timber that were brought by the Sophi's orders to the ſea-ſide for the building of ſhips, to be cut in pieces to make carriages for the artillery.

On the 21ſt of December, two Mehemanders, one from Scamachie, and the other from Derbent, brought forty camels, thirty waggons drawn by buffaloes, and eighty horſes, when the baggage being loaded and ſent before with part of the retinue, there were but ſixty horſes left for ninety-four perſons; ſome of the ſervants and guards were therefore obliged to travel on foot. They proceeded to the ſouthward, along the coaſt of the Caſpian ſea.

The firſt place at which they lodged was a village called Mordore, four leagues from Niaſabath. The houſes, which are round, like thoſe of the Tartars, were built of oziers and canes. They ſpent the night very ill for want of fuel, this village lying in the midſt of fens. The many ſprings about this place ſend forth their waters with ſuch violence that they never freeze, and the brooks which flow from them are full of ſwans, whoſe down is gathered for the Sophi's beds. The inhabitants, who are called Padars, uſe a peculiar dialect, which partakes both of the Perſian and Turkiſh tongues. They are Mahometans, and partly of the Turkiſh ſect, accompanied with ſome odd ſuperſtitions: thus they never cut their meat after it is dreſſed, 'till it is almoſt cold, and if any one happens to breathe or blow upon it, they caſt it away as impure.

On the ſecond day after they left Niaſabath, the Mehemander brought them twenty horſes more, when leaving part of their uſeleſs baggage behind, the whole retinue mounted on horſeback, and travelled to a very handſome village called Tachouſi, and having proceeded three leagues farther came to the mountain of Barmach, where they lodged that night in a caravanſera. Theſe edifices are built in the deſarts of Perſia, within a day's journey of each other, for the accom-

modation of travellers. This was an ancient ſquare ſtructure of free-ſtone, about forty paces each way, and here they ſtaid all the following day.

On the 26th of December they left Barmach, the ſun then caſting a greater heat than it does with us in May. The baggage took the way through the plain towards Bakuje; but the ambaſſadors with the reſt of the company on horſeback, proceeded through the mountains, and ſtaid that night at the village of Chanega, where they met with moſt excellent fruit and honey, but the water was muddy and ſtinking.

On the 27th, they travelled to the village of Pyrmaraas, famous for the ſepulchre of two Perſian ſaints, one of whom is named Seid-Ibrahim. This ſepulchre is ſurrounded with walls, and has two courts like a caſtle; but though the ambaſſadors were very deſirous of taking a view of it, they were only permitted to enter the firſt court, in which were many ſquare ſtones ſet up on the end, they being the tomb-ſtones of private perſons. Our author, however, having an extraordinary curioſity to obtain a ſight of this tomb, got into the firſt court, from thence, under the pretence of taking ſome inſcriptions in his book, he got into the ſecond, where he found many other inſcriptions, in the copying of which he beſtowed about half an hour; when, perceiving that the Perſians took no farther notice of him, he ventured to draw a wooden pin, with which the door that leads into the edifice was faſtened, and immediately entering it, found many arched apartments. In the firſt was a tomb, encloſed with an iron grate juſt oppoſite to the door; it was about two feet high, and had as many ſteps to get up to it. On the left hand he obſerved a door, that led him into a large and very lightſome gallery, the walls of which were extremely white, and the floor covered with rich tapeſtry. In another apartment on the right hand, which was vaulted, he ſaw eight high tombs; and through this paſſed into another vault, where was the ſepulchre Seid-Ibrahim, whoſe tomb, which was two feet above

the ground, was covered with a carpet of yellow damask. At the head and feet, and also on each side, were several wax candles in brass candlesticks, and many lamps hung down from the roof of the vault. Thus our author satisfied his curiosity, without receiving any prejudice from the superstition of the people.

About two musquet shot to the east of the same village, is a sumptuous sepulchre in a rock, belonging to a Persian saint named Tiribabba, said to be the master of Seid-Ibrahim. Both these places are famed for the many pilgrimages made thither by the Persians. Here several chambers, niches and holes are formed within the rock, in which the pilgrims take up their lodgings, and perform their devotions; but some of these are so high, that they cannot get up to them without ladders of twelve or fifteen feet in length. Our author and two others made shift, however, to get up to the top of the rock, where they found four spacious rooms, and several niches cut within the rock to serve for beds; but what most surprised them, was their finding upon the very top a vault, which, as well as the places about it, seemed as if the rock was made up of sand and muscle-shells.

The inhabitants of the village of Pyrmaraas abstain from drinking all sorts of wine, for fear of defiling those holy places, and it is observable, that near the sepulchre of Seid-Ibrahim, is a large cistern of fifty-two feet in length, and twenty feet in breadth, inclosed by a wall of free-stone, where the inhabitants keep their snow and ice.

On the 29th, the khan sent to inform the ambassadors, that they might make their entrance into Scamachie that day; but just as they were ready to take horse, a messenger arrived to intreat them to stay at Pyrmaraas till the next; and to shew that this was not done with any sinister design, he brought a present of wine, pomegranates, apples, pears, quinces and chesnuts, and for each of the ambassadors a very fine horse

with all its furniture. This delay, it was afterwards found, proceeded from the khan's aſtrologers, who had told him, that it was no fortunate day for receiving of ſtrangers.

The next morning, however, they mounted on horſeback, in order to make their entrance into the city, which was at the diſtance of three leagues. When they had proceeded about a league, they were met by a meſſenger, who bid them welcome, and told them that the khan would come in perſon to receive them without the city, and afterwards march in the front of the cavalcade. Within a league of the city they met with thirty gentlemen, who having taken a view of them returned, and ſoon after they met with one hundred more, who opened on both ſides, and let them paſs through them. About two muſket ſhot farther, they met with another troop of horſe, among whom were twelve perſons who had their turbans pointed at the top, to ſhew that they were of the poſterity of the prophet Hali. Theſe, ſaluting the ambaſſadors with a low inclination of the head, bade them welcome, and having kept them company for half a league, there appeared to the right a body of five hundred horſemen, and being told that the khan and his calenter, or lieutenant, were among them in perſon, and that the open fields were more proper for the ceremonies uſed at the reception of ambaſſadors than the high road which was dirty, they proceeded directly towards the khan, who waited upon an eminence for their coming, and advanced towards them, as ſoon as he perceived them turn that way. He had on his right hand a guard of ſix men armed, with gilt bows and arrows, and as many on his left with muſquets, and was attended by a numerous retinue of gentlemen on horſeback, all dreſſed in brocade, with mantles and caps embroidered with gold and ſilver. Being come near the ambaſſadors, he, contrary to the cuſtoms of Perſia, took one and then the other by the hand, and ordering wine to be poured into a ſilver veſſel, drank to the ambaſſadors, who pledged him twice. The

calenter and the Muſcovite envoy already mentioned, who was now with the khan, alſo bid them welcome, by giving them their hands.

As they marched along, the German and Perſian muſic led the way, conſiſting of trumpets, hautboys, timbrels, cornets, tabors, and a braſs inſtrument called kerrenai, which was eight feet long, and two feet in diameter at the end. They had not proceeded far before the khan ordered a halt, and drank again to the ambaſſadors, and while they were pledging him a jeſter diverted the company by ſinging, playing with caſtagnets, and throwing himſelf into a thouſand ridiculous poſtures. Within a quarter of a league of the city, they were met by a body of 2000 Armenian foot divided into five regiments, diſtinguiſhed by their colours, and muſic, which conſiſted of pipes and two braſs baſons ſtruck againſt each other. Here another halt was made for the ambaſſadors to drink, and at the city gate they were received by another band of muſic.

The khan, having invited the ambaſſadors to ſupper, would have them croſs the court on horſeback to the very entrance of his apartments; but the reſt of his retinue alighted at the outer gate. As the floors of all the apartments were covered with rich carpets, the Perſians took off their ſhoes before they went in, but the ambaſſadors and their retinue were conducted in their boots, through three handſome rooms, into a ſumptuous and ſpacious hall, the walls of which were hung with paintings of naked figures. Round a fountain, which was in the middle of the hall, ſtood ſeveral ſilver flaggons, and bottles of wine to cool, and ſeveral tables were furniſhed with all ſorts of conſerves. Oppoſite to the fountain, the ambaſſadors were complimented with ſeats made after the European faſhion; the khan cauſing one of them to ſit at his right hand, and the other at his left. Upon the ground ſat the calenter, the khan's aſtrologer, phyſician, and other perſons of diſtinction. The gentlemen and others of the retinue were placed on the floor on the other ſide

of the hall, while the muſicians ſtood directly oppoſite to the khan, and continued playing as long as the entertainment laſted; and near the door ſtood ſeveral luſty young men dreſſed in brocade, with their bows and arrows in a ſhooting poſture. Every one preſent ſtood with his back to the wall, and his face toward the khan's and the company; a cuſtom conſtantly obſerved in all aſſemblies in Perſia.

Many ſmall tables, filled with fruit and conſerves, were firſt brought in, and two pages were employed in filling wine round to all the company. After ſome time theſe were removed, and the like tables covered with fine painted callico, placed in their ſtead, to ſerve the meat upon. About an hour after, the meat being taken away, ſome other conſerves were ſerved up, and theſe tables being ſoon removed, great pieces of linen, which were to anſwer the purpoſe of table-cloths, were ſpread upon the floor on the tapeſtry. At ſupper the carver came in with a great wooden diſh full of pieces of a thin baked paſte, three feet in length, and as many in breadth, one of which he gave to each of the company inſtead of a napkin. The meat was then brought in large pewter diſhes, which being ſet in the middle of the hall, the carver kneeling down, cut it into pieces, and divided it into little diſhes, one of which was ſerved to every perſon in the company, each of whom had a pot ſtanding by him, to ſpit in, and to hold bones, parings, and cores of fruit.

As the governor's palace was ſeated upon the aſcent of a hill, they had the view of a vaſt number of lamps, which in obedience to the khan's orders were put up in all the houſes of the city; and the khan, being deſirous of letting the ambaſſadors ſee his dexterity in ſhooting, ſhewed them a lamp, which he ſtruck out twice ſucceſſively with a muſquet ſhot. In ſhort, he at length conducted the ambaſſadors into a room that had fire in it, where he again entertained them with conſerves, wine and brandy, of which laſt a Perſian of quality took ſo much, that he was the nex day found dead in

his bed. The company parted about midnight, and the ambaſſadors, with their retinue, were lodged among the Armenians.

On the 6th of January the ambaſſadors, at the khan's invitation, went to ſee the ceremonies uſed by the Armenians at the conſecration of the holy water, or the baptiſm of the croſs. This feaſt is alſo celebrated by the Muſcovites, and ſome other Chriſtians. It was performed without the city, maſs being firſt ſaid with much the ſame ceremonies as are uſed by the Roman Catholics in Europe; after which a ſermon was preached by their biſhop, at the Armenian chapel, at which the ambaſſadors were preſent.

The Armenians having by the khan's order, brought fifteen horſes for the gentlemen of the retinue, they rode to the river ſide, half a league from the city, while the people flocking thither from all parts, went in proceſſion with pictures, croſſes, and banners, under a guard of a ſtrong party of ſoldiers, to protect them againſt the inſults of the Mahometans. The khan had cauſed a tent very richly furniſhed, to be pitched oppoſite the palace, where the ceremony was to be performed; and a collation was ordered to be got ready. On his left hand was the Muſcovite envoy, with many other gentlemen; and on his right hand, the ambaſſadors and the chief of their retinue, who being ſeated, the khan ordered the Armenians to begin their ceremonies, which they accordingly did, by reading at the river ſide, while four men leaped in naked, and ſwam about for ſome time to open the waters which were a little frozen. A ſpaniel happening to leap in after them, greatly delighted the Perſians, who, conſidering a dog as an unclean creature, were glad to ſee theſe ceremonies thus defiled. After the biſhop had continued reading for an hour, and the aſſembly had given over ſinging, and playing on timbrels, he poured a little conſecrated oil in the water; and after having dipped into it a croſs ſet with precious ſtones, gave it his benediction, by holding the Crozier over it. This was no

ſooner done, than the Armenians ran to the river ſide, ſome of them plunging into it, others drinking, and others ſprinkling their faces, while ſome of the khan's domeſtics ridiculed them, by daſhing the water among the prieſts and women, till he commanded them to forbear; though he at the ſame time permitted his jeſter, and ſome others, to caper about in mockery of the poor Armenians, who danced about their biſhop. The khan's phyſician, who was an Arabian, had the impudence to aſk the ambaſſadors, whether they believed Jeſus Chriſt to be the Son of God; to which he was anſwered, that they believed him to be the true God; but that it was very uncivil to ſcoff at their religion, about which they ſhould not diſpute with him. The ceremony was concluded with a good collation, at which the khan drank ſo plentifully, that finding himſelf unable to bear more, he mounted his horſe, and left the company without the leaſt ceremony, and all the reſt of the Perſians followed his example. It is indeed cuſtomary with the Perſians to go when they have enough, without making the leaſt excuſe; and this freedom is always obſerved, both by their gueſts and thoſe who invite them.

During their abode at Scamachie, which was three months, all which time they waited for orders from court, the governor and calenter did every thing in their power to divert them with hunting, and frequent viſits and preſents. On the 10th of January, the calenter, having invited the ambaſſadors and all their retinue to a great feaſt, conducted them through all the apartments of his palace, which, both in its buildings and furniture, much exceeded that of the khan. The hall where they dined was arched, and adorned with a kind of ſtucco work, wrought into leaves and branches, and from this room there was a proſpect over all the gardens; but what appeared moſt agreeable to our author, was a fountain, which, iſſuing out of the gallery on one ſide of the hall, caſt its water very high, and falling into a lower baſon, was from thence conveyed

to another fountain in the middle of the garden. The khan, with ſeveral of his courtiers, and the marſhal of the Sophi's court, who had lately arrived from Iſpahan, were alſo preſent at the feaſt, which laſted till night, when the ambaſſadors were conducted back to their lodgings with lighted torches.

On the 18th of January, the ſteward, ſecretary, and comptroller, were ſent with the ambaſſadors' preſent to the khan; theſe conſiſting of ten ells of ſcarlet, and five ells of blue ſattin, a barrel of brandy, a cheſt containing two dozen of bottles of different ſorts of ſpirits, and ſome knives with amber hafts.

On the 5th of February, our author by accident went into a great houſe near the bazar, which from its ſtructure, and the nobleneſs of its galleries, reſembled a college. This edifice he found to be one of thoſe public ſchools called Mandreſa, of which there are many in Perſia. While he was taking a view of the buildings, he ſaw ſome walking, and others ſitting with books in their hands; one of the maderis who read public lectures, coming up, and obſerving upon our author's cane the following words engraved in Arabic, In the name of the merciful God who ſheweth mercy, (a ſentence which the Perſians generally put at the beginning of their writings) he deſired to have it, promiſing to give him a better the next day; but our author refuſing to give it him, he cut out the word Alla or God, and putting it into a clean piece of paper, told him that the name of God ought not to be put upon a walking ſtick.

The next day, intending to return to the ſame college, our author cauſed a very handſome celeſtial globe to be brought along with him; but by miſtake, he happened to go into another, where he was very civilly received by the profeſſors, regents, and ſtudents, who much admired the globe, and were ſurpriſed to find that aſtronomy and the mathematics in general, flouriſhed better in Europe than in Perſia, where they were ſtill ignorant of the uſe of the globe, and only made uſe of

an aſtrolabe, for the inſtruction of their ſtudents; they could, however, name all the ſigns of the Zodiac, and let him know, that they were acquainted with the names of many of the ſtars.

At another time he had the curioſity to go into a Metzid or ſchool, near his quarters, where they inſtruct their children. The young ſcholars ſat all around cloſe to the wall, the mollah, or ſchool-maſter, with ſome other aged perſons, ſitting in the midſt of the hall, whither they alſo invited him as ſoon as they ſaw him enter. The mollah permitted him to turn over the koran he had in his hand, which done, he took it back and kiſſed it, and then offered to him to kiſs, which he declining, and kiſſing another inſtead of it, which he held in his hand, the maſter told him with a ſmile, he had done very well. Our author ſaw here, among the reſt, an aſtrologer of near ſixty-five years of age, who was reading Euclid to his diſciples. Our author knew the book by the figures, and having made ſome demonſtrations as well as he could expreſs himſelf, the old man was ſo pleaſed with him, that he pulled out his braſs aſtrolabe, and aſked him, whether he had ever ſeen ſuch an inſtrument, or knew the uſe of it. Our author no ſooner anſwered in the affirmative, and that he had one at his lodgings, but he was ſo urgent with him to ſee it, that he went home to fetch it, and alſo brought the globe along with him. They were much ſurpriſed at the inſtruments, and much more when he underſtood that he had made the aſtrolabe himſelf; and being deſirous of ſeeing how he could divide the degrees with ſuch exactneſs, as they had no inſtruments fit for that purpoſe, he ſhewed them how this might eaſily be performed; at which the old man was ſo well ſatisfied, that he ever after gave him all poſſible demonſtrations of his friendſhip, frequently viſited him, and gave him the longitude and latitude of the chief cities of Aſia, which he afterwards compared with his own obſervations, and found very exact.

The 7th of February, being the 21ſt day of their principal feaſt at Lent, the Perſians celebrated their feſtival, in memory of their great patron Hali, which was performed in a houſe built for that purpoſe without the city. Oppoſite a gallery, in which were the khan, the calenter, and other principal courtiers, was placed an open chair, eight feet high, under a kind of linen canopy, for the chatib or prelate, who was dreſſed in blue, the mourning colour of the Perſians. He read for two hours in a book of the life and memorable actions of Hali, ſinging out his words in a loud and doleful, yet intelligible voice, except when he came to ſome extraordinary paſſage, or moral ſentence, when he only pronounced the firſt word, the reſt being ſung by the prieſts, who ſurrounded him in great numbers; and at the end of every ſuch paſſage, one of them cried out, God's curſe on him who killed Hali. When the whole aſſembly anſwered, Rather more than leſs. On his coming to a paſſage, where Hali tells his children that he ſhould not live long, and propheſies by whom he is to be killed, the Perſians begin to weep.

When the chatib had ended, the khan ſent him a ſilk garment, and then the proceſſion began, in which three camels carried three coffins, covered with black cloth, which repreſent thoſe of Hali and his two ſons. Theſe were followed by two cheſts covered with blue cloth, full of the religious treatiſes written by Hali; next appeared two very fine horſes, carrying upon their ſaddles, bows, arrows, turbans, and flags. Then came a man carrying on the top of a long pole, a kind of tower, to which were faſtened four ſcymeters, ſo covered with ribbons, that they could ſcarce be diſtinguiſhed. In the rear came many men with little boxes on their heads, in which the koran lay open. The boxes were covered with feathers and flowers, and the men came dancing and leaping in cadence, to a doleful tune played on hautboys, timbrels, flagelets, and tabors; while on the other ſide, many boys danced and ſung together,

clapping one another upon the ſhoulders, and repeating the name of Hali, and thoſe of his two ſons, Haſſan and Hoſſein. This feſtival is celebrated on the ſame day all over Perſia. The day after the feaſt, the khan made a magnificent entertainment for the whole court, at which the ambaſſadors were preſent.

On the 27th, the meſſenger ſent to Iſpahan, returned with orders for the departure of the ambaſſadors, at which they were greatly rejoiced, and reſolved to amuſe themſelves with hunting before they left Scamachie. As the khan was prevented from going with them by ſome extraordinary buſineſs, he ſent them his huntſman, with his hounds and hawks, and among the reſt a leopard, ſo well taught, that he would ſtart and take a hare, as well as a greyhound, and was as much at command as a ſetting dog.

On the 1ſt of March, the Perſians celebrated another feſtival called Chummehater, in memory of the day when Hali took poſſeſſion of the eſtate of Mahomet. Upon this occaſion the khan treated the ambaſſadors under a tent near the river ſide, and they had the diverſion of ſeveral ſorts of dancing; in particular, a youth played extremely well upon two little cymbals, dancing to them with great addreſs; and an Arabian Moor leaped and danced between the porcelain diſhes in which the meat was brought up, with ſuch ſkill as not to touch one of them. The khan being alſo diſpoſed to ſhew his ſkill at the bow, cauſed one of the rings with which the Perſians bend their bows, and which they commonly wear upon their thumbs, to be faſtened to a horſe hair, and held by a boy at about ſix paces diſtance, when he cut it twice one after another with his arrow; and an apple being thrown up into the air, he ſhot it with a firelock.

On the 20th of March, the khan came in company with the calenter to take leave of the ambaſſadors, as he was going a journey, and did not expect to return before their departure; but his phyſician, who pretended to ſome ſkill in aſtrology, having obſerved, that

the ſky told him it was no lucky hour to enter into the ambaſſadors lodgings, they fell to drinking plentifully in the court. When the khan, taking particular notice of a very handſome lad who was one of the ambaſſador Cruſius's pages, aſked the phyſician, whether he was not a very fine boy, and ſaid, that he wiſhed he was his ſon; upon which the phyſician began to conſult the heavens again, though it was neither night nor a clear ſky, and told the khan, that if by viewing the boy again, he could imprint a ſtrong idea of him in his imagination, and would immediately go and pay a viſit to one of his women, he might infallibly get ſuch another boy, which he and his company believing, he viewed the boy once more, and then getting on horſeback, immediately departed.

On the 24th, the khan of Scamachie ſent away the uſual new-year's-gift for the Sophi, which conſiſted of ſome very fine horſes richly harneſſed, ſome camels laden with Ruſſia leather, ſeveral rich ſtuffs, thirty bags filled with ſwans down, and a great number of handſome boys and girls. The khan at the ſame time going his journey, left the management of the ambaſſadors affairs to the calenter, who immediately after ſent to their quarters the ſum of ſixty tumains, amounting to one thouſand crowns, as a reimburſement for the expences they had been at during their ſtay at Scamachie: but this not amounting to half the ſum, the ambaſſador Brugman ſent him word, that he knew not whether the ſum was ſent from the Sophi or khan; but that it ſhould be carried ſealed up as it was to Iſpahan, and that he could not forbear complaining of the injury done them in detaining them ſo long, contrary to the orders of the court, deſiring, that ſpeedy care might be taken for their departure. To this, the calenter replied, that the ſum had been ſent by his majeſty's orders, and that he was much concerned at the delay of their journey, which was occaſioned by the largeneſs of their retinue, and the quantity of their baggage.

Scamachie, the capital city of the province of Schirwan, is ſituated in a valley incloſed between two mountains, and lies in 40°. 50′. north latitude. It is divided into the north and ſouth city. The walls of the laſt were pulled down by Shah Abbas; but the former which is ſomewhat larger than the other, and contains about 900 houſes, has its walls ſtill ſtanding; though they are ſo low, and ſurrounded by ſo poor a ditch, that a perſon may paſs into the city at any time. The whole city has five gates; but the ſtreets are very narrow, and the houſes, which are moſtly built with earth, are very low. The inhabitants are chiefly Armenians and Georgians, who uſing different languages, here make uſe of the Turkiſh which is common to both, not only in the province of Schirwan, but all over Perſia. Their chief trade conſiſts in ſilk, either raw or wove, and callicoes. Moſt of the ſhops are in the ſouth city, where is the great bazar into which many ſtreets enter, all of them covered for the coveniency of the ſhop-keepers. Near the above bazar, are alſo two large ſtore-houſes divided into many galleries and chambers, one for the convenience of the Muſcovite merchants, who there ſell Ruſſia leather, furs, copper, tin, and other commodities: the other is for the Circaſſian Tartars, who bring ſcarcely any thing elſe but horſes, women, young lads, and handſome maids, which they ſteal on the frontiers of Muſcovy. The Jews have alſo a part of this ſtorehouſe aſſigned them for their merchandizes, which conſiſt of the beſt woollen tapeſtry, ſilk ſtuffs, callico, gold and ſilver brocades, bows, arrows, and ſcymeters. The city has alſo three hamans or public baths, the uſe of which is as general in Perſia as in Muſcovy.

Near the city are the ruins of an old ſtrong caſtle, upon a high and ſteep mountain, near which is a valley watered by a very pleaſant brook, and adorned in the ſpring with an incredible quantity of tulips. Between this fort and the city, are alſo to be ſeen, upon a mountain that exceed the laſt mentioned in height, two

chapels; in the largeſt of which is a very high ſepulchre, hung about with many pieces of cloth and other rags of different colours, and alſo ſeveral rods of iron pointed at the end like arrows; in the other are two tombs adorned much after the ſame manner. They belonged to ſome of their ſaints, and near them the inhabitants frequently perform their devotions. From this laſt chapel there is an eaſy deſcent into a large vault, where is a ſepulchre of one of their king's daughters, named Amalek Kanna, who having an averſion to marriage, being betrothed by her father to a certain Tartarian prince, laid violent hands on herſelf. In the hot ſeaſon the inhabitants of the city retire to this and the other mountain, the traders and ſhop-keepers of Scamachie ſtaying there only in the night, while the khan and other perſons of quality, dwell there in tents during the three hotteſt months of the year.

On the 27th of March, 60 waggons and 120 ſaddle-horſes being brought to the ambaſſadors for the proſecution of their journey, they ſent away their baggage immediately, and followed it the next morning, when the ambaſſador Brugman, being much diſſatisfied with the treatment he had received at Scamachie, ordered them to depart two hours before day, when proceeding on foot without the leaſt noiſe, they took horſe without the gate. Having travelled about a league and a half, they came to the ſepulchre of another Perſian ſaint, and being overtaken by a violent ſtorm of lightning, thunder, wind, rain and ſnow, they had the misfortune of being obliged to endure the tempeſt, and to ſpend the night under the bare heavens for want of their tents; and the next day the ambaſſador Brugman, finding that ſome of the cannon had been left behind at Scamache for want of camels, exclaimed in very abuſive terms againſt the khan and calenter, in the preſence of the mehemander, and had it not been for the want of proviſions and lodgings, would have obliged the whole company to ſtay there 'till they were brought up. But it being reſolved to proceed forwards, they advanced two leagues to a caravanſera, and after travelling two

leagues more came to the top of the mountain of Scamachie, on which they paſſed through a fine fertile plain, which both in the ſpring and winter, is as cold as moſt parts of Europe. But no ſooner were they come to the deſcent, than they ſaw before them another plain that extended above ten leagues, and was covered with a beautiful verdure; and ſoon after, they diſcovered at a diſtance, the confluence of the two celebrated rivers Araxes and Cyrus. After an eaſy deſcent, they took up their lodgings in ſome Tartarian huts, which the ſhepherds had ſet up near their flocks.

On the 30th of March they proceeded four leagues through the plain at the village of Kaſilu, and by the way met with a company of Tartars, who had packed up their huts, houſehold goods, and other moveables, with their wives and children, in waggons, or upon horſes, cows and aſſes. They had ever after fair weather and a ſerene ſky, except when they travelled over the mountains, where it appeared a little overcaſt in the morning, but theſe clouds were ſoon after diſpelled by the beams of the ſun.

On the 31ſt, they proceeded, two leagues to the village of Tzawat upon the right ſide of the river Kur, where the houſes were all built of reeds and canes, and covered with earth. The meadow grounds along this river are full of liquorice, the ſtalks of which are ſometimes thicker than a man's arm, and the juice is incomparably ſweeter than that of Europe.

The river Kur, anciently called Cyrus, is a common boundary between the two provinces of Shirwan and Mokan, which are joined by a bridge of boats near Tzawat. They had no ſooner paſſed over the bridge, but another mehemander ſent by the governor of Ardebil, brought them 40 freſh camels and 300 horſes, becauſe they could not ſo conveniently make uſe of waggons in paſſing over the mountains, and alſo furniſhed them with plenty of proviſions. That night they took up their quarters in huts ſet up for that purpoſe at the entrance of a very extenſive heath.

The next day they travelled four Perſian leagues over the heath, and lodged that night in huts as before. In paſſing along they ſaw a kind of deer feeding in herds, which reſembled harts, but were red; and their horns being without brow-antlers, were ſmooth and turned backwards like thoſe of the wild goat. Being the next day forced to leave the heath, which was the neareſt way, for want of water, they travelled to the torrent of Balbaru, where they found a bundance of tortoiſes that had laid their eggs in the ſand. Some of the peoplple, having the curioſity to croſs the current to ſee the manner in which the inhabitants lived on the other ſide, found many of the children entirely naked, and the reſt covered only with callico ſmocks. They received theſe gentlemen very civilly, and treated them with milk, imagining they were ſent for by the Sophi to ſerve in his wars againſt the turks; they therefore wiſhed them all imaginable ſucceſs, and that they might drive their enemies before them as far as Stambol or Conſtantinople.

On the 10th of April, being Eaſter Monday, they made their entry into Ardebil. Firſt a troop of horſemen ſaluted them, and then returned to the city. The calenter of Ardebil, a perſon in years, afterwards met them near the village of Kelhoran, which from its many ſteeples and towers built of ſtone of ſeveral colours, they took for the city Ardebil. The calenter, having ſaluted the ambaſſadors, rode by their ſide. They afterwards paſſed a ſpacious plain, through a conſiderable body of horſe and foot which opened to make way for them. Soon after they were met by the governor of Ardebil, at the head of 1000 horſe, and after the firſt compliments were paſt on both ſides, he rode between the ambaſſadors. In the van marched two lads covered with ſheep-ſkins of ſeveral colours, each of them carrying an orange on the top of a pole, and ſinging certain verſes in praiſe of Mahomet, Hali and Shah Sefi. Theſe were followed by others, who in a moſt ſurprizing manner imitated the ſinging of nightin-

gales and other birds: the timbrels and hautboys played; ſome of the people danced; others ſung, and others expreſſed their joy at ſeeing the ambaſſadors, by flinging up their caps. Near the city, the guards were placed in two files, clothed in coats of mail, with feathers in their caps, and bows and arrows in their hands. As they approached the city gates, the crowd of people was ſo great, that it was neceſſary to force a way through them with bulls pizzles; and within the city, the houſe tops, windows, ſteeples, and trees, were crowded with ſuch as came from all parts to be ſpectators, of their entrance.

The ambaſſadors, and the gentlemen of their retinue, were conducted by the khan himſelf through a ſpacious garden into a noble ſummer-houſe, and treated with a moſt ſplendid collation in a very ſtately gallery, while the reſt were entertained below in a tent erected for that purpoſe. During the collation they had the beſt muſic Perſia could afford, and a dance performed by archers, who held bows and arrows in their hands. After the collation, the ambaſſadors were conducted to very ſpacious lodgings in one of the beſt parts of the city, which formerly belonged to Sara Chutza, the lord high chancellor of Perſia.

The next day was brought to the ambaſſadors the thabenick, which are certain diſhes of meat for three meals, ſent to all perſons of quality that come to Ardebil, purſuant to an ancient inſtitution. Thirty-two large diſhes or rather baſons, were full of rice of all colours, upon which the boiled and roaſted meat were laid with ſome omelets and paſtry, according to the Perſian faſhion. The following day, a very plentiful allowance was ſettled for their kitchen, when the khan paid them a viſit, made them the kindeſt offers of his ſervice, of which he afterwards gave them real demonſtrations. The ſame day he ſent an expreſs to the court to notify their arrival at Ardebil; but this expreſs did not return till two months after.

On the 25th of April, which is the Great Bairam or feſtival called Kurban, in remembrance of the ſacri-

fice Abraham was going to make of his ſon, they kill a ſheep or lamb before break of day, each at his own door, which they cut to pieces, and give them all to the poor, not even ſaving the ſkin. This is done in imitation of Abraham, who they ſay, reſerved nothing of the ram he ſacrificed inſtead of Iſaac.

On the 27th in the evening, the khan informed the ambaſſadors of the news he had received of the meeting of the Janizaries at Conſtantinople, and their killing the Grand Signior. This occaſioned great rejoicings among the Perſians, who made fire-works, and diverted themſelves with muſic. The ambaſſadors followed their example, cauſing the trumpets to be ſounded, and the drums to beat, and diſcharged all their great guns ſix times ſucceſſively, at which the khan was ſo pleaſed, that he ſent them two flaggons full of Schiras wine, and a large glaſs veſſel full of candied ſugar.

On the 14th of May, the ambaſſadors were viſited by Saru Taggi, the chancellor of Perſia's ſon, who with ſome other perſons of quality, came for that purpoſe from Iſpahan, and were entertained with a very fine collation, and the diſcharge of their great guns.

On the 14th of May, the Perſians celebrated the feaſt called Aſhur or Ten, from its laſting ten days. It is kept in memory of the death of Hoſſein the youngeſt ſon of Hali, and is peculiar to the Perſians. They ſay, he was killed in the war againſt the kaliph Jeſid, and after receiving ſeventy-two wounds with arrows, was run through the body with a ſword. It laſts ten days, from his being ſo long purſued by his enemies before they could overtake him. During which the Perſians ſhow all the ſigns of affliction. They appear in mourning, ſuffer their beards to grow, though at other times they ſhave every day, and drink only water. Nothing was now to be ſeen throughout the city of Ardebil, but an aukward kind of devotion; the boys running in troops about the ſtreets with banners, on the extremities of which were wound ſnakes of paſte-

board, and when they came to the doors of the moſques, they cried Ja Hoſſein, Ja Hoſſein, O Hoſſein, O Hoſſein. After ſun-ſet, eſpecially on the three laſt days, they met in tents without the city, with lanterns, torches, and oranges on the top of their poles, crying Ja Hoſſein for an hour together. They then returned in proceſſion with banners and torches through the principal ſtreets of the city, and in the morning of the tenth day, a ſolemn oration was made in honour of Hoſſein, in the court of Shah Sefi, where a banner was planted, ſaid to be made by the daughter of Fatima, the daughter of Mahomet; and the Perſians poſitively affirm, that this banner ſhakes as often as the name of Hoſſein is mentioned in the oration.

The ambaſſadors being invited by the khan to ſee the concluſion of this feaſt, they went to his palace, when he, meeting them at the outer gate, aſſigned them a place in the court, where ſeats were erected for them and their retinue, covered with rich tapeſtry; and upon a cloth before them ſpread on the ground, were ſet ſeveral veſſels of porcelain, filled with ſugared and perfumed waters, and ſeveral braſs candleſticks four feet high, in which were large wax candles. There were alſo lamps filled with rags dipped in ſuet and naphtha. Round the walls of the court were one thouſand lamps, which caſt ſo great a light, that the whole palace ſeemed in a flame, and this was ſtill increaſed by the light of many paper lanterns faſtened to cords drawn acroſs the court. The principal perſons of the five wards, into which the city of Ardebil is divided, appeared each in order, and preſented the khan with a ſerenade, in which were ſung verſes compoſed by ſome of their poets, (of whom there are great numbers in Perſia) in praiſe of Hali and Hoſſein; in return for which he preſented them with ſome ſweet waters, and before they retired, they wiſhed the ambaſſadors ſucceſs in their intended negociation. Meanwhile ſeven naked boys, who had rubbed their bodies with ſuet and naphtha, and ſome with vermilion, to repreſent the

blood of Hoſſein, danced with little ſtones in their hands, which they ſtruck againſt each other, and ſmote their breaſts with them, to expreſs their ſorrow for the death of Hoſſein; after which the khan entertained the ambaſſadors with ſome excellent fire-works.

The next day before ſun-riſing, the Perſians appeared again in proceſſion, to repreſent the interment of Hoſſein, carrying many banners, and leading ſome fine horſes, and camels covered with blue cloth, in which were quilted abundance of arrows, as if they had been ſhot into it, to repreſent thoſe ſhot at Hoſſein. Upon ſome of theſe horſes were mounted boys with empty coffins before them, covered with a little hay or ſtraw. Theſe repreſented Hoſſein's children. Others of the horſes carried turbans, ſcymeters, bows, and quivers of arrows. Immediately after the ſun roſe, there appeared in the lower court a great number of men and boys, when the firſt letting themſelves blood in their arms, ſuch a quantity was ſpilt, that the court ſeemed as if ſeveral oxen had been ſlaughtered there. Meanwhile the boys ſlaſhed themſelves above the elbow, and ſtriking their wounds with their hands, made the blood ſpirt all over their bodies. In this manner they ran through all the ſtreets, in commemoration of the effuſion of Hoſſein's blood; fully perſuaded, that they by this means expiated their ſins, and that if they died during this feaſt, they would certainly be ſaved. They have the ſame opinion of the feaſt of Hali, and of their Lent.

The city of Ardebil, called Ardvil by the Turks, is ſituated in the province of Adirbeitzan, the Media Major of the ancients, and is one of the moſt celebrated cities of the Perſian empire. It is ſeated in the midſt of a ſpacious plain, ſurrounded on all ſides with mountains like an amphitheatre. Theſe mountains occaſion the weather to change continually, from the extremity of heat to that of cold, which renders this city very ſubject to epidemical diſeaſes, eſpecially in Auguſt, when they begin to be ſenſible of the inconveniencies of

autumn; and it is obſervable, that every day about noon, when the heat is moſt exceſſive, there ariſes a whirlwind that raiſes a great duſt, but does not laſt above an hour; however, for the reſt of the day, and during the night, the weather is generally calm. From this ſituation, the ground about the city produces neither vines, melons, citrons, oranges, nor pomegranates, though they have here apples, pears, and peaches in great plenty. But the air is more temperate at the foot of the mountains. The above plain is ſo fertile, that it maintains above ſixty villages round the city, and affords paſture for large flocks, which belong to the Turkiſh and Arabian ſhepherds.

Though Ardebil is much larger than Scamachie, it is without walls; but as each houſe in the city has its garden planted with fruit trees, it affords a pleaſant proſpect at a diſtance. At the village of Scamaſbu riſes a ſmall river, which ſoon after dividing into two branches, one paſſes through the city, and the other encompaſſes it, and afterwards reuniting their ſtreams, they fall into the river Karaſa. But this river is apt to overflow in the ſpring, when the ſnow begins to melt ſo faſt upon the adjacent mountains, that if the inhabitants did not take care to divert the current, by making trenches in the plain, the whole city would be drowned.

Ardebil has five capital ſtreets, planted with elms and other trees, which afford a very agreeable ſhade. The market-place is three hundred paces long, and one hundred and fifty broad, having ſhops on all ſide, and each trade its peculiar quarter. Near the market is a moſque, where lies interred Iman Sade, one of the children of their twelve ſaints, which for a certain time ſerves as a ſanctuary for criminals, whence they retire to the ſepulchre of Sefi, their great ſanctuary, which ſtands very near it. On the ſide of the market-place is a handſome arched ſquare building, appointed for the ſale of the moſt precious commodities, as gold and ſilver brocades, rich ſilks, and precious ſtones. This edifice has three gates, each of which leads into a ſtree

well furniſhed with ſhops, and covered over head. In theſe ſtreets are alſo ſeveral caravanſeras, or ſtorehouſes for the Turks, Tartars, Indians, and other foreign merchants. Among the reſt, our author ſaw there two Chineſe, who ſold porcelain and japanned works. This city is alſo well furniſhed with public baths, and has many metzids or moſques, the chief of which, called Metzid Adine, is built upon a hill in the middle of the city; it has a very handſome ſteeple, and at its entrance is a fountain, the water of which a late chancellor of Perſia cauſed to be conveyed thither by pipes, from a mountain at a league diſtance.

On Whitſun-Monday, the khan ſent to let the ambaſſadors know, that if they were deſirous of ſeeing Shah Sefi's ſepulchre, he would go with them thither; but that they muſt abſtain from wine all that day, and that their ſupper ſhould be provided out of Shah Sefi's kitchen. The ambaſſadors gladly agreed to this propoſal, and going thither with all their retinue, were conducted into a ſpacious court paved with broad ſtones, and furniſhed on both ſides with ſhops vaulted over. The gate which leads into this court is very large, and had above it a great ſilver chain, at which hung another perpendicularly in the middle. From hence the khan conducted them to another gate, which had a chain of the ſame kind, and here they were obliged to deliver their arms; it being a capital crime for a Perſian who paſſes it, to have even a knife about him. The threſhold of this as well as all the following gates, were round, and of white marble, and as the Perſians are uſed to kiſs it, they were deſired not to touch it with their feet, but to ſtep over it with their right foot foremoſt. The court they now entered was as long, though not ſo broad as the firſt, but it was paved in the ſame manner, and provided with vaulted ſhops on both ſides. At the upper end to the right hand, was a large vault, hung with tapeſtry, and paved at the entrance with green and blue ſtones. In the middle ſtood two large braſs candleſticks, with lights in them, and

along the walls ſat ſeveral prieſts, cloathed in white, ſinging with a loud voice, and with a moſt regular motion, waving all together from one ſide to the other. They were thence conducted through a third gate, with a ſilver chain over it, into a court that was leſs than the former, and paved with ſmall ſquare ſtones of ſeveral colours. The gate by which they entered into the place of the ſepulchre, was built like a great tower, adorned with ſilver plates and rings of the ſame metal. The pavement at the entrance, which opened into a large edifice, was covered with tapeſtry, and they were deſired to pull off their ſhoes, which the ambaſſadors having with much reluctance complied with, they paſſed into a very large gallery, covered with carpets, and hung with tapeſtry; and then paſſing through another gate, covered with plates of gold, entered into a magnificent vault four fathoms ſquare, enlightened by a great number of gold and ſilver lamps, ſome of which were three feet in diameter. On the ſides ſat twelve prieſts with parchment books laid before them upon deſks, containing in Arabic characters, ſome chapters of the Koran, which they ſung, with the ſame waving motion from ſide to ſide, as the others already mentioned. This vault was divided from another only by ſilver rails, and an aſcent of three ſilver ſteps, The khan and the ambaſſadors, interpreter having kiſſed theſe ſteps, conducted the ambaſſadors into it, who only took with them four of their retinue. This vault was much richer than any of the reſt: at one end of it was a place raiſed about a foot from the ground, and fenced in with rails of maſſy gold, behind which was the ſepulchre of Shah Sefi, made not of gold, as ſome have endeavoured to perſuade the world, but of white marble covered with crimſon velvet, and raiſed three feet above the ground; it was nine feet in length, and four in breadth; and from the roof hung ſeveral gold and ſilver lamps, and on both ſides were two very large candleſticks of of maſſy gold, with wax-candles.

The ambaſſadors were very deſirous of having the golden rail unlocked; but were told that no laic, nor even the Sophi himſelf, was permitted to enter it. On the left hand of the ſame apartment they diſcovered a vault, in which were the tomb of Shah Iſmael's, that of Shah Sefi's wife, and thoſe of ſome other of the queens of Perſia; but they were not allowed to look into them: they, however, diſcovered through the meeting of the curtains, which were drawn at the entrance, that there was nothing remarkable to be ſeen. As they went along they were followed by a grave old man, who purified all the places through which they paſſed with incenſe.

They were then conducted through a gallery, arched over and adorned with gildings; but without any pillars, though it was as ſpacious as a large church. This was a Perſian library conſiſting of manuſcrips, ſome of which were wrote upon parchment, and others upon paper, moſt of them in Arabic, and the reſt in the Turkiſh and Perſian tongues, all of them excellently painted, richly bound, and covered with plates of gold and ſilver, particularly the hiſtorians, whoſe works were embelliſhed with ſeveral repreſentations in colours; but they were ſhufflled together in drawers, without any order. In ſeveral niches on the ſides, ſtood above 400 porcelain veſſels, ſome of which were big enough to hold ten gallons.

They were then conducted to the kitchen, the doors of which were alſo covered with ſilver plates, and here every thing was diſpoſed in the moſt admirable order; for the water was conveyed by many pipes to every part of it, and each cook had his peculiar office aſſigned him. Here 1000 perſons are provided for every day, including them belonging to the houſe; and three times a day the poor have pottage, rice, and meat diſtributed among them. While theſe diſtributions are made, they found two timbrels, ſaid to have been brought by Sedreain from Medina, with the banner of Fatima.

From the kitchen they paſſed through a very handſome garden, in which were the ſepulchres of Sultan Aider, Shah Tamas, and ſeveral other kings of Perſia, without any other covering but a ſmooth ſtone. This edifice has been augmented by many of the kings of Perſia, ſo that it now repreſents a very noble and large caſtle, and there daily reſort to it a prodigious concourſe of people, who come thither for the ſake of converſation. The vaſt revenues annexed to it by ſeveral of the Perſian kings have ſo increaſed its wealth, that it is ſuppoſed, in caſe of neceſſity, to be able to maintain a good army. Here alſo many charities are beſtowed, and the pilgrims are furniſhed with certain certificates, which, upon many occaſions, ſerve as protections.

In the ſame village is another tomb, built in the midſt of a handſome garden, in memory of Seid Tzeibrail, the father of Shah Sefi, who was only a peaſant. It is round, and raiſed ten ſteps high: it is adorned with glaſs of ſeveral colours, and ſurrounded with iron grates. In the middle of its roof, which is of azure gilt, is a large tower of blue and green ſtones; the floor is covered with very rich tapeſtry, and round the walls are ſmall vaults, in which children are educated and fitted for the ſervice of the ſepulchre. The tomb itſelf is about ſix feet high, made of joiner's work. It is covered with green velvet, and over it hang two golden, and as many ſilver lamps, that are lighted every night. Oppoſite to to it is a ſmall chapel, which contains the tombs of Shah Sefi's family.

Though a meſſenger arrived from the Sophi of Perſia to conduct them to Iſpahan, yet eight days elapſed before they ſet out on their journey; becauſe the ambaſſador Brugman was reſolved to take the cannon along with him. At laſt, having made their former mehemander a preſent of four pair of ſables, and ſeveral ells of cloth and ſattins, they took leave of the khan who made the ambaſſadors a preſent of a very fine horſe, a ſaddle and bridle for each, with two pieces o

ſattin, and one of gold and ſilver brocade, in return for thoſe he had received from the ambaſſadors, which conſiſted of a clock, two pictures, a quantity of roſa ſolis, and three pair of the fineſt ſables. On the 11th of June, their baggage being ſent away upon one hundred and ſixty horſes, and twelve camels, they followed it the next day, and having proceeded a league from the city, were met by the khan of Ardebil, in company with the ſultan of Tabris, who conducted them into ſome of the huts of the Tartarian ſhepherds; and after a collation of cold meats, fruits and conſerves, took their laſt leave of the ambaſſadors; the Perſians never conducting thoſe out of their houſes, whom they have entertained in them.

All that day they travelled over craggy mountains, 'till they reached the village of Buſum, four leagues from Ardebil; they there overtook their baggage and artillery, but were forced to leave ſix of their largeſt pieces behind them, their carriages being broken in paſſing the mountains.

The next day they paſſed through valleys, in which were many villages and fertile meadows flocked with cattle.

On the 17th, they came to the village of Hatzimir, ſituated among inacceſſible rocks, and the next day paſſing between two very ſteep hills, they came about midnight to a village called Kamahl. A large unfurniſhed houſe had been taken for the ambaſſadors at the entrance of the village; but finding it deſtitute of conveniencies, they refuſed to lodge there, and having placed two of their guards at each of the avenues which lead to the village, to give notice to the reſt of the retinue, took up their lodgings, while thoſe, who were already arrived, prepared to follow their example. The country people, however, ſurpriſed at their unexpected appearance, were unable ſo ſuddenly to remove their wives and children, and denied them entrance; but the retinue, half dead with cold and fatigue, entered the

houſes by force, and took up their quarters in ſeveral houſes ſcattered up and down on three hills. They were, however, hardly in bed, when the trumpet ſounding to horſe, obliged them to riſe, and haſte to the ambaſſadors' lodging, where they were informed, that twenty Perſian horſemen, had ſet upon and diſarmed the guard at the avenues. A lieutenant with twenty muſqueteers, were now ordered out to clear the highways, and all the retinue were lodged as near the ambaſſadors as poſſible. Notwithſtanding this, they ſtaid there the next day, when they cauſed tents to be pitched; and on the 20th, ſetting out early in the morning, arrived at the city of Senkan, which is without walls, and ſituated in a barren and ſandy ſoil.

On the 21ſt of January, they continued their journey by the light of the moon over a large plain ſix leagues in length, at the farther end of which is the city of Sulthania, where they arrived by ſun-riſing but the coldneſs of the night threw fifteen perſons of their retinue into a fever. This city, which has an high mountain on its ſide, has ſome very magnificent ſtructures, and a great number of ſteeples. There ſtill ſubſiſt ſuch remains of its former grandeur, as ſhew that it was once one of the nobleſt cities in Perſia. It was built by Sultan Mahomet Chodabende, and there are ſtill to be ſeen the noble ruins of the royal palace or rather caſtle, the walls of which are built of free ſtone, ſtrengthened with many quadrangular towers but what exceeds all the reſt is the moſque, which contains the ſepulchre of that prince, and has three gates that are much higher than thoſe of St. Mark's church at Venice, and are of the fineſt poliſhed ſteel. The Perſians confidently affirm, that the largeſt of theſe three gates, which faces the market-place cannot be opened by twenty of the ſtrongeſt men, unleſs they pronounce Beaſk Ali Buckſcha; that is, Be opened for Ali's ſake, and that on pronouncing theſe words it may be opened by a child. The roof of this moſque, which grows narrow by degrees towards the top, is formed

of white and blue ſtones, on which are figures and characters well executed. Chodabende's tomb, which is at the end of the moſque, is parted from the reſt by braſs rails, and ſurrounded with a grate of poliſhed Indian ſteel of moſt curious workmanſhip. Within the braſs rails, our author obſerved ſeveral books about half an ell ſquare, written in Arabic characters of the length of a man's finger, with black and gold lines alternately; he even procured ſome leaves of them, which contain a paraphraſe upon the koran, called The Candle of the Heart, and theſe are to be ſeen in the duke of Holſtein's library. The tower belonging to the moſque was built in the form of an octagon, encompaſſed with a gallery which had eight leſſer towers. At the entrance of the moſque was a ſquare fountain ſupplied with water out of one of the neighbouring mountains.

Having ſtaid three days at Sulthania, they continued their journey, their ſick being placed in a kind of cheſt, carried upon camels; and proceeding forward the two following days, they came within ſight of the city of Caſhwin or Caſhan. The daruga, or judge, who commanded there in chief, met them without the city gates, accompanied by five or ſix hundred perſons, horſe and foot; they alſo received the ſame honour from an Indian prince, who came attended by ſome of his own countrymen on horſeback, and a conſiderable number of pages and footmen, who followed the chariot in which he and another perſon ſat, drawn by two white oxen with very ſhort necks, and a bunch between their ſhoulders. The charioteer ſat upon the chariot, the wheels of which reſted and turned upon an iron bar, crooked in the middle. Theſe oxen he managed as dexterouſly as we do our horſes, the pole being faſtened to their horns by a cord that was alſo drawn through their noſtrils. Among the reſt there appeared in the field fifteen young ladies very magnificently dreſſed, and mounted on very fine horſes; they were adorned with very valuable pearl necklaces, pendants and other jewels, and as, contrary to the Perſian cuſtom, they

appeared barefaced, it was ſoon found that they were ſome of the moſt eminent courtezans of the city. They entertained the ambaſſadors with hautboys and a kind of bag-pipes, and accompanied them to their lodgings, though they were quite at the other end of the city.

Caſwin, called Arſatia by the ancients, is one of the principal cities of the province of Erak, the ancient Parthia. It is ſituated in a ſandy plain, is about a German league in cirumference, and contains 100,000 inhabitants; but is without fortifications or a garriſon; and it is very remarkable, that the people here ſpeak a dialect as different from the Perſian tongue, as the Dutch is from the German. Their houſes are of brick, without any ornaments on the outſide, but are well furniſhed within. The water is conveyed through pipes from a mountain at a conſiderable diſtance; but the ſtreets are very duſty from there not being paved. They have vaults wherein they have ſnow and ice to cool their liquors, and to which they retire to ſhelter themſelves from the heat of the ſummer.

This city was the ſeat of the Perſian kings, 'till Shah Tamas, or as ſome ſay, Shah Iſmael, transferred it from thence to Tauris; he was alſo the founder of a royal palace, which he built near the market-place, with a very handſome garden behind it. Oppoſite to the palace is alſo a moſt delightful garden half a league in compaſs, adorned with a great number of fruit-trees and ſpacious walks of cypreſs. The horſe-market has on the ſouth ſide ſeveral magnificent ſtructures: both this and the other market are full of ſhops and ſtore-houſes, where vaſt quantities of merchandiſe, and among the reſt rubies, granates, and turquoiſes, are ſold very cheap. In the former of theſe markets, after the ſhops are ſhut, a great number of proſtitutes ſit in a row with their faces covered with veils, the bawds ſtanding behind them with an unlighted candle, which ſhe lights as ſoon as any perſon appears to cheapen her ware, and if, after they have looked upon ſeveral, a bargain is

made, they follow her to a place proper for their purpoſe. This city has alſo about fifty moſques, ſeveral caravanſeras for the accommodation of foreign merchants, and many public baths.

On the 2d of July, the chief judge of the city gave the ambaſſadors an entertainment of vaulting and wreſtling under tents pitched for that purpoſe in the market place, and theſe exerciſes, which were performed with ſurpriſing activity, were followed by a battle between two rams, and the fighting of two birds not much larger than common parrots, who fought with extraordinary animoſity; and the ſhow was concluded, with their bringing in eight very large wolves, which, being faſtened with ropes, were ſeveral times let out among the common people, who ſtood in a circle, but were drawn back without their doing any harm.

On the 13th of June, they left Caſwin in the night, and on the 14th travelled through a plain three leagues in extent to the village of Membre, the houſes of which appeared at a diſtance like ovens, from their being vaulted at the top. They from thence continued their journey by night, and early on the 15th came to the village of Araſeng, where they refreſhed themſelves with pomegranates and almonds.

On the morning of the 19th, they came before the city of Kom, where they were received by the daruga or chief magiſtrate at the head of fifty gentlemen on horſeback, under the ſound of timbrels, hautboys, and fifes, while ſeveral tumblers, who made uſe of ſtilts, ſhewed feats of activity. The city of Kom, called by Ptolemy, Guriana, is ſituated near mount Elwend, and the ruins of its walls ſhew it to have been formerly of a much larger extent than it is at preſent. A ſmall river which riſes from two ſprings out of the ſame mountain, that unite their ſtreams near the city, paſſes through a part of it, and it is of a conſiderable advantage to the trade of the inhabitants, though it frequently occaſions great damage; for three years before it had overflowed its banks, by the ſudden melting of the

ſnow, and the current carried away about one thouſand houſes. The gardens, of which there are a great number, produce a variety of excellent fruits, and among the reſt a kind of melons of the bigneſs of an orange, of an admirable ſcent, and extremely luſcious. There are alſo cucumbers two feet long, of the thickneſs of a man's arm, which the Perſians pickle with vinegar. The grounds about the city produce all ſorts of grain and cotton; but the chief trade of the city conſiſts in ſword blades, which are accounted the beſt in all Perſia, and in earthen ware, which is greatly eſteemed.

They left Kom on the 21ſt of June, after ſun ſet, and the next day ſtaid at a large village called Kaſmabath, where they obſerved all the houſes of a whole ſtreet built in the manner of one continued arch or vault.

After travelling the two followng nights, they came early to Katſchan, where they halted till the daruga could get ready to receive them, which he did without the city, at the head of a company of 50 gentlemen on horſeback, with ſeveral fine led horſes covered with lions ſkins, and at their entrance into the city, they ſaw two black Indian oxen of vaſt bulk with bells about their necks, and plumes of feathers on their heads and cruppers.

The city of Katſchan lies in 33 degrees 51 minutes north latitude, and is ſituated in a large fertile plain. This city may be placed among thoſe of the firſt rank in Perſia, it being not only very populous, but famous for the concourſe of foreign merchants, eſpecially of the Indians, who have a peculiar quarter aſſigned them. The walls and baſtions are of a kind of potter's clay. Their private houſes are generally well built, and their public ſtructures, as their ſtorehouſes, and caravanſeras excel what is to be ſeen in moſt other cities in Perſia. The adjacent fields are ſo fruitful in grain, wine, and fruit, that even thoſe who are the pooreſt do not want ſome delicacies: their greateſt want is freſh water;

for they have none but what is muddy and ill tafted, though they are forced to dig for it very deep. The ſophi's garden, which is near the city, has a ſummer palace in in the midſt of it, that is ſaid to have a thouſand doors and windows, comprehending thoſe that lead into the galleries and balconies, and here his majeſty reſides, when he comes to Katſchan.

The country about Katſchan abounds more in venemous creatures, than any other part of Perſia; which has given birth to the Perſian curſe, May the Scorpion of Katſchan pinch thee by the hand. Theſe creatures are very black, of the length of a man's finger, and not unlike a crab-fiſh; but are ſomewhat ſhorter and walk faſter, with their tails always ſticking up. Their bite ſeldom proves mortal. The remedy uſed againſt it is only a piece of copper money placed upon the wound, which being taken off in 24 hours time, they then apply a plaſter of honey and vinegar.

They have alſo a ſpider whoſe body is ſpotted, and about two inches round. This inſect feeds on an herb like our wormwood, except its having ſomewhat larger leaves, and a ſtronger ſcent. It does not emit its poiſon by ſtinging or biting; but by letting it fall like a drop of water. It occaſions an inſupportable pain in the part where it faſtens, and ſoon after the patient falls into a profound ſleep, from which he is ſcarcely to be awakened without applying one of the ſame ſpiders cruſhed upon the wound. But if any of theſe are not to be found, they lay the patient upon his back, and pouring as much milk down his throat as they poſſibly can, place him upon a bier faſtened with cords to a beam; then turning the bier till the cords are twiſted, they ſuddenly whirl it back, which occaſions a violent agitation that forces the ſtomach to diſcharge itſelf of the milk, which appears of a greeniſh colour, as does alſo a matter which with exceſſive pain iſſues from the penis. But thoſe who are cured in this manner commonly feel ſome remains of the pain as long at they live, at the return of the ſame ſeaſon of

the year. But though this animal is ſo fatal, ſheep are greedy after it, and feed on it without danger.

They left Katſchan on the 26th of July at night, and proceeding ſix leagues, pitched their tents in a garden near a pleaſant rivulet.

Having continued their travels for ſeveral days without meeting with any thing extraordinary, they, on the third of Auguſt were met at about a quarter of a league from Iſpahan, by one of the chief officers of the court, at the head of 300 horſemen, and ſoon after by two conſiderable Armenian lords, who accompanied the ambaſſadors to their lodgings, while the ſtreets and even the tops of the houſes were crowded with people, though the duſt raiſed by their horſes was ſo thick that it was impoſſible to diſcern them at a diſtance. They were lodged in the quarter aſſigned to the chief Armenians, and were no ſooner alighted than proviſions were brought them from the ſophi's kitchen. The table-cloth laid on the floor in the ambaſſador's room were of fine ſilk, upon which were ſet thirty ſilver diſhes, full of liquid and dry preſerves, and many kinds of fruit, as melons, citrons, quinces, pears, and ſome others not commonly known in Europe. Then the cloth being taken away, and another put in its room, the ſecond courſe was brought in, conſiſting of fifty ſilver diſhes with rice of all colours, boiled and roaſted mutton, tame fowl, fiſh, eggs, pies, and ſallads.

But ſcarce had they begun to indulge the joy they had conceived on their arrival at the Perſian court, than it was interrupted by a quarrel which aroſe between a ſervant belonging to their mehemander, and a domeſtic of an Indian ambaſſador ſent thither by the Great Mogul, who with a retinue of three hundred perſons lodged at a ſmall diſtance from them. One of his domeſtics ſtanding by while the Germans were unloading their baggage, the mehemander's ſervant, whoſe name was Weilichan, told him in jeſt, that it would ſhew more good nature, for him to come and help them, than to ſtand thus unemployed. To this returning an inſo-

lent anſwer, the Perſian ſtruck him with his cane, when the Indian, incenſed at the affront, ran to ſome of his comrades, who were lying under the ſhade of a tree, and told them his tale, on which inſtantly riſing and throwing ſtones. Wellichan was wounded in the head; but the ambaſſadors' domeſtics and ſoldiers, ſoon charging the Indians, killed one of them, and purſued the reſt to their quarters. At this the Indians were ſo greatly exaſperated, that a few days after, when the Germans were removing ſome of their baggage, in order to ſend it to another lodging they had provided in the city, ſome of the Indians ſet upon a footman belonging to their ſteward, killed him, cut off his head, and tied his body to a horſe's tail. This no ſooner came to the knowledge of the ambaſſadors, than they ordered their domeſtics, who lay ſcattered up and down in the ſuburbs, to repair to their lodgings; but before they could obey this order, the Indians poſſeſſed themſelves of all the avenues leading thither, ſo that the men were forced to fight their way through them, in which attempt ſeveral were mortally wounded, though they all at laſt got to the ambaſſadors houſe, which being at the corner of a narrow ſtreet, they there galled the Indians with their firelocks. The Indians, however, retreating behind a wall, made holes in it, through which they diſcharged their arrows; theſe did execution among the ambaſſadors ſervants and ſoldiers, who unwarily expoſed themſelves. One of the German gunners was thus killed while he was levelling a piece of cannon againſt them; upon which, one Murray, a Scotch ſerjeant, being eager to revenge his death, ſnatched up a firelock, and fired upon the Indians with ſuch ſucceſs, that he ſlew five or ſix of them, till an arrow being ſhot into his breaſt, he plucked it out, and having killed another with his firelock, fell down dead upon the ſpot. The number of the Indians increaſing, it was thought proper to retreat into the outward court; but the Indians breaking into an adjacent houſe, ſo ſe-

verely galled them from thence, that they were forced to get on the top of the ambaſſadors' houſe, where they did great execution among the Indians, their leader being killed by Mr. Mandeſlo with a piſtol ſhot; but as this rather increaſed than abated their fury, the ambaſſadors began to grow doubtful of the event, and therefore ordered ſome adjoining walls belonging to the Armenians to be broke down, in order to ſecure their retreat. But they no ſooner began to retire, than the Indians cloſely purſued them; and though the Armenians, who were ſpectators of the combat, wiſhed them well, they did not dare to ſtir in their behalf. But juſt at this inſtant they were happily relieved; for the Sophi having received notice of the tumult, immediately ſent an officer with one hundred choſen men to their relief, who being joined by ſome of the inhabitants, were no ſooner diſcovered by the Indians, than they diſperſed, and the Sophi being informed of the true occaſion, would have had the Indian ambaſſador's hands cut off, had he not been diverted from this deſign by the chancellor. However, he was a few days after ordered to depart the kingdom. In this engagement, which laſted four hours, the duke of Holſtein's ambaſſadors loſt five men, and had ten wounded, while the Indians had twenty-four killed.

The day after the tumult, they reſolved to change their lodgings, when the Sophi of Perſia not only forbad all the Indians, and even the merchants themſelves, who amounted to 12,000, to appear that day in the ſtreets upon pain of death, but alſo ordered ſome of his guards to attend them, and allow them to fortify the weakeſt part of their quarters.

Their daily allowance, during their ſtay at Iſpahan, was by the Sophi's order, one hundred and ſixty ſheep, one hundred fowls of all ſorts, two hundred eggs, and one hundred batmans of wine, with as much fruit and ſpice as they were able to conſume; but great part of it being diſpoſed of by the ambaſſador Brugman for other uſes, and ſometimes upon his women, the people

had often not above one meal a day, and on ſome days the cloth was not laid at all for the ſervants.

The 16th of Auguſt being appointed for their audience, the ambaſſadors were invited to dine with the Sophi, and forty very fine horſes, with rich ſaddles and harneſſes, adorned with large plates of gold, being brought for the uſe of the ambaſſadors, and the gentlemen of the retinue, they proceeded in the following order: firſt, three on horſeback, two in complete armour, richly adorned with gold flowers, the other only with breaſt, back, and head-pieces; theſe were followed by forty perſons, each with a caſe of fine piſtols in embroidered holſters. Next came four men, carrying two very rich ſcymeters in rich caſes, with the ſheaths of yellow amber, garniſhed with gold. After theſe appeared two men with ſtaves with fine amber heads; amber being eſteemed by the Perſians more than gold. Then came four men, each with a large candleſtick of amber, and two others carrying a cabinet of white and yellow amber, followed by four perſons carrying a cabinet of ebony, inlaid with ſilver, in which were gold boxes, containing ſeveral drugs, eſſences, and other chemical preparations, ſet on the outſide with fine ſtones. Next followed three ſerjeants with halberts, at the head of fifteen muſqueteers. Then the ſteward at the head of the gentlemen, who marched three abreaſt. Next came three trumpeters with ſilver trumpets, followed by the guards, four abreaſt, immediately before the ambaſſadors, who had on both ſides of them eight halberdiers, and were followed by two interpreters. Then came eight pages on horſeback, in rich liveries, followed by the reſt of the retinue three abreaſt. But as the Perſians obſerve no regularity in their proceſſions, the ambaſſadors and their retinue were obliged to march forward as well as they could, accompanied by a great number of Perſian gentlemen on horſeback, through the market-place to the gates of the Sophi's palace, where they were received by the maſter of the ceremonies, and conducted into the hall

of juſtice, where they were deſired to reſt themſelves, till the Sophi ſhould be informed of their coming.

After a ſtay of half an hour, word was brought by ſeveral perſons of diſtinction, that the Sophi expected them; upon which they were introduced through a large court, incloſed on both ſides with a double wall, one of which being much lower than the other, was at about ſix paces diſtance, built cloſe to a row of tzinnar trees, and was on both ſides well lined with guards, diſtinguiſhed by plumes of different colours; at the end of this court was the hall appointed for their audience, which was the place where the Sophi keeps his court of juſtice in perſon; for this ceremony is performed in Perſia in any place, where the Sophi is called, either by buſineſs or diverſions. Under the trees near this hall, were about fifty young horſes in their embroidered houſings, and ſome with rich ſaddles and harneſſes; moſt of them were of a cream colour; they were brought thither to be backed, and were watered out of pails of vermillion gilt. This hall had a partition in the nature of an alcove, with a red calico curtain before it, which when drawn up by a ſilk ſtring, reſted upon the capitals of ſome wooden pillars, finely carved with branch-work, and gilt, as were alſo the walls, on which were hung ſome European pictures. In the middle of the hall was a fountain, in the baſon of which were flowers, oranges, apples, and other fruits, ſwimming upon the water; and round its ſides a great number of flaggons, and other veſſels of gold and ſilver. The whole floor of the hall was covered with a carpet, the ground work of which was alſo of gold and ſilver.

The Sophi, who was about 27 years of age, ſat upon a ſattin cuſhion, laid on a carpet behind the fountain, with his back to the wall. He had a very graceful aſpect, and like moſt of the Perſians, had a Roman noſe. His habit, which was of brocade, was not diſtinguiſhed from that of the reſt, only he had a plume of heron feathers on his head, faſtened with a very fine bracelet of diamonds. Over the upper garment hung

two sable skins down from his neck, which were also worn by some Persian lords; the scymeter he wore by his side was set with precious stones, and behind him lay his bow and arrows. On his right hand 20 pages attended, who were the sons of his khans, among whom were some eunuchs: one of the handsomest of them was employed in fanning the Sophi. At the head of these pages stood the meheter or groom of the chamber, who was their governor. Before the Sophi, stood Elschick Agasi Baschi, or lord chamberlain, with a staff covered with gold, on the top of which was a knob of the same metal. On his left side sat the Ethomad Dowlet, or chancellor, and next to him the khans and other lords. At the entrance of the hall, on the left hand, were placed an Arabian ambassador, and the Muscovite envoy, and below them the king's musicians.

The ambassadors were met at the door of the hall by several persons of great distinction, who took them under the arms, and held them so fast, that they had not the use of them. This ceremony, which is looked upon as a peculiar honour, was probably first introduced by the Persians and Turks, to secure their sovereigns from any attempts from the ambassadors of foreign princes. As they approached the Sophi they made a low bow, which he returned with a smiling countenance, and a small inclination of his head. They were then desired to sit down upon low seats placed for them near the lords: fifteen of their retinue were placed a little more to the left upon the ground, while the pages, and the rest of the train, were entertained in a court below, with thirteen women dancers richly dressed, the handsomest courtezans of Ispahan, who, besides their annual tribute, are obliged to attend the court whenever they are called for.

The ambassadors having rested a short time, the lord chamberlain asked them in the Sophi's name by whom they were sent, and the occasion of their embassy; when rising, they approached the Sophi to de-

liver their credentials, with a ſhort compliment, according to the cuſtom of the Perſians, who being no admirers of ſet ſpeeches, would have all who approach their ſovereign, ſhew their reverence by the fewneſs of their words. The chancellor receiving the credentials, deſired the ambaſſadors to return to their ſeats, and the ſecretary of ſtate let them know that the Shah intended to have their credentials tranſlated, and as ſoon as that was done, would give them a ſecond audience. The preſents were then brought in, and carried cloſe by the Sophi into an adjacent room. Thoſe from the ambaſſador Mr. Cruſius, were an arquebuſs, ſtock'd with ebony, which cocked itſelf: a veſſel of rock cryſtal, edged with gold, and adorned with turquoiſes and rubies: a cabinet of amber, and a ſmal ſtriking clock. Thoſe of Mr. Brugman, were a braſs gilt candleſtick with 30 branches, having a ſtriking watch within the body: a pair of very fine piſtols gilt with very rich holſters: a watch in a rich caſe: a bracelet of diamonds and rubies, and a writing, by which the two pieces of cannon left at Ardebil were preſented to the Sophi.

Soon after, a callico cloth being ſpread over the floor, was covered with gold baſons filled with fruit and preſerves, and 300 gold flaggons were diſpoſed over the hall, by way of ornament. All this plate was ſmooth, except the flaggons, and the cup out of which the Sophi himſelf drank, which were ſet with rubies and turquoiſes. They had alſo plenty of the beſt Schiraz wine, and were entertained by a juggler, who performed ſlight of hand with aſtoniſhing dexterity. About an hour after, the cloth being removed and another of gold brocade laid in its place, the meat was brought in by ten men, in large golden veſſels, and the carver having placed himſelf on the floor in the midſt of them ſerved the meat into leſſer diſhes, with rice of all colours, upon which he put mutton roaſted and boiled tame and wild fowl, &c. and ſometimes five or ſix ſorts in a diſh; the Sophi being ſerved firſt, then the

ambaſſadors, the lords, and all who were preſent. During this entertainment, a profound ſilence was obſerved. After the dinner had laſted about an hour and a half, the cloth was taken away, and water being brought to waſh their hands the lord chamberlain returned thanks with a loud voice in the following manner: Make us thankful for this repaſt. Proſper the Sophi's undertakings, and give to his ſoldiers and ſervants true courage. This we pray thee O God. To which the reſt anſwered, Alla, Alla, and without ſpeaking a word more, left the room; when the ambaſſadors mehemander telling them they might withdraw as ſoon as they pleaſed, they paid their reverence to the Sophi, and retired.

On the 24th the ambaſſadors had their firſt private audience, and on the 28th, they were invited by the Auguſtin friars to the feſtival of St. Auguſtin their patron, which was to be celebrated the next day: and as Chriſtians of the moſt different opinions live among the Mahometans like brethren, the Muſcovite envoy, an Armenian biſhop, and ſeveral Engliſh merchants were alſo to be preſent. There were no more than ſix monks, all of whom were Spaniards, in the whole monaſtery, which was a neat edifice, that had a church with two ſteeples, and a handſome garden belonging to it. The ambaſſadors being received by the outer gate of the convent, were conducted by the friars into the church, where maſs was immediately begun, and their muſicians, with the aſſiſtance of one of the monks, who played upon the organ, formed a good concert. Maſs being over, they were conducted into the garden, near a fountain which ſtood under a large tree, whoſe branches being full of leaves, and twiſted within one another, afforded a very agreeable ſhade. About noon they were carried into the hall, where they were entertained with fruit in porcelain diſhes, and every one had his diſh of meat ſet before him, according to the Perſian faſhion, after which they ſpent the remaining part of the day under the ſame tree.

On the firſt of September the governor of Armenia, accompanied by two of his brothers, paid the ambaſſadors a viſit, in order to contract an intimate acquaintance with them; and in return for the civilities they received, they on the 18th invited the ambaſſadors with their whole retinue, who went on horſeback, and were received by Seferas Beg, governor of Armenia, at the Armenian church in the ſuburbs, where the patriarch of the place, was ſaying the ſervice in a cope of cloth of ſilver, with gold flowers, ſet with pearls, having on his head a mitre, adorned in the ſame manner. The walls of the church were hung with ſeveral pictures, and the floor covered with rich carpets. The ſervice being over, they went to the governor's palace, where being conducted through a large gallery into a garden, and from thence into an open hall, they were entertained after the Perſian manner, with fruits and preſerves, and a moſt delicious liquor, not unlike roſa ſolis, but incomparably more rich. When the cloth of ſilver and gold brocade, upon which this was ſerved, was removed, and another of callico was laid in its place, the meat was ſerved up in ſilver diſhes, and among the reſt ſome pork, and ſeveral other meats abhorred by the Perſians.

They had not ſat long at table, before they were conducted through a noble apartment into another hall that had a very agreeable proſpect into the garden. The floor was covered with rich carpets, on which were laid cuſhions of flowered ſattin, the ground work of which was gold and ſilver. Round a white marble baſon that belonged to a fountain in the centre of the hall ſtood a number of flaggons, and bottles filled with wine but what they thought moſt worthy of obſervation, were pictures on the walls repreſenting the dreſſes of women of moſt nations in the world. While they were eating the delicious fruits and preſerves that were brought in they were diverted with muſic and dancing; in the firſt of which Elias Beg, ſecond brother to the governor excelled the reſt; for he not only gave them ſevera

tunes on the Perſian lute, but accompanied this muſic with ſtriking two little ſticks againſt ſeveral porcelain cups filled with water, and made them keep time with the lute. Mean while Seferas Beg did not forget to make the whole company drink the Sophi's health, in cryſtal glaſſes full of wine.

Night approaching, the ambaſſadors took leave of the governor, who under the pretence of conducting them to the gate, brought them unexpectedly into the gallery on the other ſide of the garden, where they found a freſh entertainment of meat, fiſh, pies, fruit, and preſerves; and the hall, as well as the garden was illuminated with a vaſt number of lamps and torches. But as they had been eating almoſt all day, they ſat down only out of complaiſance, conſidering this collation rather as an effect of their hoſt's generoſity and magnificence, than as done with an intention to add to their former entertainment, which was in all reſpects one of the moſt agreeable they had ever met with, and even exceeded that of the Sophi's.

On the 19th of September, the ambaſſadors had a ſecond private audience of the Sophi, which did not laſt above an hour, after which they dined at court, as is uſual upon ſuch occaſions; when, by the Sophi's deſire, their muſic, which conſiſted of a baſs-viol, a tenor, and a violin, played before him for half an hour, on which he let them know that he did not diſlike the muſic, but he thought his own as good.

On the 25th of September, the ambaſſadors and their whole retinue were moſt magnificently entertained by the Engliſh in the bazar near the market-place, a large ſtructure that has a very fine garden. They were firſt treated with fruit and preſerves ſet upon the floor, according to the Perſian faſhion; from whence they were led into a ſpacious hall, where they found a table well furniſhed with a variety of proviſions dreſſed after the Engliſh way, and did not forget to drink the healths of moſt of the kings and princes of Europe.

Dinner being over, they were conducted into another hall, that had a fine proſpect into the garden, where they not only found another collation of fruit and preſerves; but had the diverſion of ſix Indian dancing-women, ſome of whom brought their huſbands along with them, who ſometimes joined in the dance. Their complexion was of an olive colour: but they had good features, a ſoft ſkin, and were well ſhaped. About their necks they wore necklaces of pearls and gold, and in their ears gold and ſilver pendants, ſet with precious ſtones; ſome had alſo bracelets of pearls, others of ſilver, and they had all rings on their fingers, and one upon the thumb, which inſtead of a ſeal had a piece of ſteel of the bigneſs of a crown piece, ſo finely poliſhed that it ſerved inſtead of a looking glaſs. They were all clothed in a kind of ſtuff ſo very thin, that any part of their bodies might be ſeen through it, except thoſe which were covered with drawers. Some had caps, others tiffany dreſſes on their heads, and ſome wore ſilk ſcarves with gold and ſilver flowers, which coming round their ſhoulders, hung down on both ſides, to the ground. Some were barefooted, and others wore ſhoes of a very odd make. They had all juſt above the inſtep, a ſtring with bells, by which they ſhewed the exactneſs of their motions, while they at the ſame time played with their caſtagnets with the utmoſt dexterity. Their muſic conſiſted of tabors, pipes, and Indian timbrels; which laſt are about two feet long, in the ſhape of a barrel, and hanging about their necks, they play upon them with their fingers. The motion of theſe Indian women, eſpecially with their hands and feet, were moſt ſurprizing; and in the mean time they, with the moſt graceful and careleſs air, addreſſed themſelves to ſome of the ſpectators.

On the firſt of October the ambaſſadors entertained the Muſcovite envoy, and three Armenian lords, the principal Engliſh and French merchants, the Spaniſh Auſtin friars, and ſome Indian carmelites, with 40 diſhes in three courſes, after the German faſhion. The

governor of Armenia was ſo pleaſed with ſome of the German paſtes, that he ſpoke of them to the Sophi, who ſeeming deſirous to ſee them, their cook was ordered to make ſome, which being preſented to his majeſty, he received them very obligingly, and preſented them to the ladies at court, who were extremely delighted with them. The feaſt was concluded with the diverſion of running at the ring, at which Mr. Mandeſlo got the firſt, and the ambaſſador Brugman got the ſecond prize.

The next day, the prior of the Auſtin friars coming to repreſent to our author, the ſecretary of the embaſſy, the debaucheries of ſome of the ambaſſadors' retinue, and eſpecially of the ambaſſador Brugman, he went to that ambaſſador, in order to complain of the debauched lives of ſome of his people, and to deſire that ſome reformation might be introduced among them; but he no ſooner entered the room, than he found Mr. Brugman with an Armenian woman; and that ambaſſador, imagining that he came with a deſign to ſurpriſe him, was ſo incenſed, that he ſwore he would be revenged. The ſecretary, who well knew his temper, immediately retired to the convent of the Auguſtins, with a deſign of leaving the embaſſy, and of returning by way of Babylon and Aleppo to Germany; but the ambaſſador Brugman being informed of his reſolution, ſent to let him know, that he would have him murdered by the way, and the Secretary being ſenſible that this might be eaſily effected, thought it his ſafeſt way to endeavour after a reconciliation, which was at laſt produced by the mediation of the prior of the Auguſtins.

Some days after, as the author was going to the ſuburbs of Tzalfa, he ſaw an Armenian marching in proceſſion to the church in order to be married. In the front was the muſic, after which went a boy about twelve years of age, with a wax candle in his hand, followed by the bridegroom on horſeback, who had two men riding on each ſide of him, and was followed by

four men richly dreſſed; after whom were carried two diſhes of meat, two pitchers of wine, and two diſhes of apples, all which were ſet before the bridegroom, and his attendants, as ſoon as they came into the church; but the bridegroom did not touch them, and after the reſt had eat a little, what was left was ſaved for the prieſt, except the wine, which was all drank; our author being obliged by the bridegroom, who obſerved him, to take a ſhare. By this time the bride, with a young maid on her right hand, and on her left a married woman, with their faces covered with a veil of thin lawn, entered the church; and the prieſt conducting the young couple to the altar, bleſſed them, and held a wooden croſs over them, while they joined hands, and the bride laid her hand on the bridegroom's breaſt. After mutual promiſes of fidelity, the prieſt gave them the comumnion, by giving to each a piece of the conſecrated hoſt ſteeped in wine. The bread of the euchariſt among the Armenians is not leavened, as in the Muſcovite, and other Greek churches; but is an unleavened paſte of the ſize and thickneſs of a crown piece. During the communion, they ſung and played on a kind of large cymbals; it being the conſtant practice of the Armenians, never to communicate without muſic. After the communion roſe-water was caſt upon the new married couple, and all preſent, and a ſcarf being tied about the bride's right hand, the bridegroom took hold of it, and drew her after him to the church door, from whence they all went on horſeback to the place where the wedding feaſt was prepared, which always laſts three days, during which the new married couple are not permitted to cohabit together.

Our author afterwards paſſing along heard a noiſe in another Armenian church, made by ſtriking a ſtick upon a board, which is uſed inſtead of bells, they not being permitted in Perſia; when going in he found it to be a chriſtening; but ſaw nobody in the church beſides the prieſt, the clerk, an aged woman, who brought the child, and a young man, who was to be godfather.

The prieſt, after ſome prayers, put ſeveral queſtions to the godfather, after which the latter carried the child to the old woman to unſwathe it; which done, they went into the ſacriſty, and going up to the font, which was placed within the wall like a trough, and was half an ell long and a quarter broad; the prieſt conſecrated the water, put into it ſome conſecrated oil, and then putting the child naked into the font, baptized him in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghoſt, by thrice pouring water upon his head, and afterwards all over his body, making the ſign of the croſs in the forehead, with conſecrated oil. The Armenians do not commonly chriſten their infants till they are eight days old, unleſs they are in danger of dying: it being their opinion, that infants who die before baptiſm cannot be ſaved; for which reaſon they do not allow them to be buried in the church-yard, nor can any in more advanced life be interred there, who have not communicated at leaſt once a year.

On the 3d of October, happened an affair which was attended with melancholy conſequences: John Rudolph Stadler, a native of Zurich in Swiſſerland, was a very ingenious clock-maker in the ſervice of the Sophi; he was about thirty-eight years of age, and had married an Armenian woman, the ſiſter of the ambaſſador Brugman's favourite miſtreſs; and, by that ambaſſador's interceſſion, had, with great difficulty, obtained leave to return into his own country. In the meanwhile, a thief breaking into his houſe, the clock-maker caught him, and after ſeverely beating him, turned him out of doors, which he had no ſooner done, than repenting that he had uſed him no worſe, he ran after him, and ſhot him dead with a piſtol. The relations of the deceaſed immediately complained to the mufti, of the murder committed by an infidel upon one of the faithful, who thereupon cauſed the clock-maker to be ſeized the next morning as he was going to court, and put into the palank, a wooden inſtrument which covers the neck and arms. The ambaſſadors

left no ſtone unturned to procure his releaſe; but the authority and zeal of the mufti prevailing, he was condemned to die, unleſs he would deſerve the king's pardon, by turning Mahometan. Many of the Perſian lords, who eſteemed him for his art, endeavoured to perſuade him to ſave his life, by the hopes of great advantages; but this proving ineffectual, he was twice carried to the market place, to try whether the terror of death would not induce him to alter his ſentiments, but in vain, he poſitively declaring that nothing ſhould make him violate his religion. The Auguſtine and Carmelite friars alſo ſtrove to perſuade him to die in the Romiſh faith, which he alſo refuſed, proteſting that he would die in the reformed religion, which he accordingly did; for being delivered up to the relations of the deceaſed, the firſt who ſtruck at him with his ſcymeter miſſed, the ſecond ſtruck into the palank, but the third ſevered his head from the body, which lay all day expoſed at the place of execution, till in the evening, at the interceſſion of Mr. Brugman, it was brought to the ambaſſadors quarters, in order to be interred the next day. But the Sophi happening to invite the ambaſſadors to a hunting match, the interment could not be performed till the 22d, when the governor of Armenia, the Muſcovite envoy, and ſeveral other chriſtians were preſent at the funeral.

The hunting match beginning on the 17th, horſes and camels were brought early in the morning to the ambaſſadors quarters by their mehemander, who conducted them to a ſpacious plain, where the Sophi ſoon after appeared, attended by 300 perſons of quality mounted on very fine horſes, and at his firſt ſeeing the ambaſſadors, he ſaluted them with great condeſcention. He was that day dreſſed in a ſilver brocade veſt; his turban was adorned with herons feathers, and he was followed by four led horſes which had rich ſaddles, harneſſes and clothes embroidered with gold and precious ſtones, and cloſe to him was an aſtrologer, who was continually making his obſervations. The morning

was ſpent in fowling, and about noon they were entertained by the Sophi with a dinner under tents fixed in an Armenian village, which being over they were quartered by their mehemander in another village at a ſmall diſtance where they were viſited by ſome of the Perſian lords, who partook of the excellent fruits preſented to the ambaſſadors by the Armenian chriſtians. But the Sophi, being informed that the mehemander had lodged them in another village, immediately ordered them to take up their lodging in a houſe next adjoining to that where he himſelf was, which was inſtantly put in execution, and their ſupper was brought them in gold diſhes out of the Sophi's kitchen.

Very early the next morning, the ambaſſadors went with the Sophi to hunt cranes, when a long ſecret way being made under ground, a conſiderable quantity of wheat was ſcattered in a field at the end of it, and this bringing a vaſt nnmber of cranes, near 800 of them were taken. The Sophi put ſome of the feathers in his turban, and preſenting two to each of the ambaſſadors, they put them in their hats. They afterwards dined in the ſame place as the day before; and towards night the Sophi, attended only by the ambaſſadors and ſix other perſons, went to hunt the duck and wild gooſe, and alighting at 200 paces from the place intended for the ſport, entered a large hut made of earth, near which the nets were ſpread upon the ſide of a ſmall brook; but no birds appearing, they ſpent their time in drinking ſeveral bottles with the Sophi, and then returned to their quarters, to which their ſupper was again ſent them.

On the 19th, abundance of kawks and three leopards bred to hunting were brought; but having for ſome time beat the buſhes to no purpoſe, they went to one of the royal parks, which was two leagues in circumference, and ſurrounded by a high wall. This park was divided into three partitions; in the firſt of which were kept harts, goats, deer, hares and foxes; in the ſecond, a kind of deer called ahues; and in the

third wild asses. The leopards being by the Sophi's command, let in among the ahues, they soon dispatched each of them one. The next diversion was among the wild asses, at one of which the ambassador Brugman, by the Sophi's desire, discharged his pistol, but missing his aim, his majesty, though riding full speed, shot him with an arrow in the breast, and wounded several others, never missing, though in full gallop. He cut another ass with his scymeter across the back, and with one blow cleft it to the belly, and also with a single blow almost cut off the head of another; which done, one of the khans wiped the scymeter clean, and put it into the scabbard. They then went into a small inclosure in the midst of the park, where his majesty having commanded one of the two huntsmen to attend him with fowling pieces, to shoot at an ass; the more ancient of the two, considering it as a disgrace that the other should fetch it down before him, shot at it; but missing his aim, was laughed at by the company, at which he was so exasperated, that he drew his scymeter upon the other, and cut off his thumb. The Sophi, being immediately informed of this affair, ordered that the offender should loose his head; but at the intercession of some who were present, he consented to his losing only his ears. The executioner, however, forgetting part of his duty, cut off only one half of the ear, which the grand huntsman perceiving, alighted, and taking his knife, cut off the remaining part, to the great astonishment of the ambassadors, who were amazed at seeing a nobleman of his quality interfere in the office of an executioner.

A small amphitheatre being erected in this inclosure, the Sophi entertained them with a collation of fruits and preserves, and soon after 32 wild asses were forced in, at which his majesty discharged some shot with his fowling pieces, and wounded others with his arrows, after which, the ambassadors and the Persian lords being permitted to follow his example, the sides of these beasts were soon full of arrows; which afforded a

cruel kind of ſport to the ſpectators, eſpecially on their running ſo cloſe to each other as to force the arrows deeper into their ſides, which filling them with rage againſt their companions, they ran at each other with great fierceneſs. At laſt, however, theſe, and 30 more which were afterwards let in, were knocked down, in order to be ſent to the Sophi's kitchen at Iſpahan; the fleſh of wild aſſes being in high eſteem among the Perſians.

By this time dinner was brought to the ſame place, when Brugman took the opportunity of preſenting the Sophi with the duke of Holſtein's picture in a box ſet with diamonds, and alſo with a ſteel mirror, poliſhed on both ſides, and embelliſhed with ſeveral figures by that famous artiſt, John Dreſden. Theſe preſents he made upon his own account.

Dinner being over, the ambaſſadors retired to ſome neighbouring houſes to take their afternoon's nap; but they had ſcarcely got thither, when the Sophi ſent them ten ahues and a fine ſtag, the horns of which had twelve brow antlers, and word was at the ſame time brought them, that his majeſty was again on horſeback. They therefore followed his example, and riding in ſearch of him, found him employed in hawking. But he no ſooner got ſight of them, than he left that ſport, and with nine perſons of his retinue, and ſix of theirs, retired to a large walk, at the end of which was a decoy for wild ducks; but inſtead of employing themſelves in that diverſion, they ſoon fell to drinking, and they all became ſo merry, that the ducks were frightened from coming near them. Mr. Mandeſlo had the honour of filling the ſophi a glaſs of wine, and afterwards of kiſſing his knee; his majeſty at the ſame time preſented him with an apple, which was looked upon as a particular mark of kindneſs, and he was afterwards conſidered by the court as a perſon much in his majeſty's favour. Mean while Haly Beg, the deputy ſteward of the houſhold, who had filled the ſophi's glaſſes, got ſo drunk that he made ſuch a hideous noiſe at the other end of

the walk, that his majeſty ſent a perſon to bid him withdraw, and this not ſucceeding, he ordered another to drag him from thence, and to ſet him on horſeback. But when they were going to execute his majeſty's commands, Haly Beg became ſo outrageous, as to abuſe and ſtrike thoſe who endeavoured to force him away, which the ſophi perceiving, went thither to perſuade him; but finding himſelf not much better treated than the reſt, laid his hand upon his ſcymeter, and though he was one of his greateſt favourites, threatened to cut off his head, which put the ſteward into ſuch a fright, that he immediately became ſober, and conſidering that there was no jeſting with his majeſty when once provoked, he mounted his horſe as nimbly as if he had not taſted a drop of wine, which ſet the ſophi a laughing,, and he returned in a very merry humour to the ambaſſadors, but withdrew ſoon after, and they returned to their lodgings.

On the 20th the Sophi did not go a hunting, but the ambaſſadors dined with him in his ſummer-houſe which was pleaſantly ſituated in the midſt of a garden near the water ſide; in the afternoon they took a turn and in their way caught a white heron.

On the 21ſt, being ſent for early in the morning to go with the Sophi to catch pigeons, they were conducted to the top of a very high tower, within which were 1000 neſts; and the whole company being placed on the outſide, and the ambaſſadors trumpets commanded to ſound, the pigeons, which flew through the holes in vaſt numbers, were moſt of them killed by the ſophi and the reſt of the company. This put an end to their diverſion for that time; but in their way towards the city, the ſophi took them into one of his gardens called Tzarbach, remarkable for its beauty, where being entertained with another magnificent treat, they returned to their lodgings.

Within a few days after, proclamation was made by the cryer of the city, that the ſophi, being to go abroad that way with the ladies of the court, nobody ſhould

preſume to appear that day in the ſtreets. Whenever the ſophi's wives or concubines make an excurſion, they are carried upon camels in a kind of covered cheſts, notwithſtanding which, no perſon is allowed to appear in the ſtreets, or within a muſquet ſhot of the field where they take their diverſion under pain of death, becauſe theſe ladies appear in the field on horſeback, with hawks in their hands, and alſo make uſe of bows and arrows, for which reaſon none but the ſophi and the eunuchs muſt appear among them; even the lords who attend the ſophi always leave the town half an hour before the ladies, and while they are diverting themſelves, are obliged to ſpend their time in hunting at the diſtance of half a league from them.

On the 19th of November the lord chancellor made a magnificent entertainment for the ambaſſadors in a moſt ſumptuous hall, at the entrance of which was a very handſome fountain, and oppoſite the door ſeveral pictures of women in different dreſſes copied after ſome European originals, below which the walls were on all ſides covered with looking glaſſes of various ſizes. All their meat was ſerved in plate, beſides which they had the king's muſic, and the diverſion of the dancing women, who, not behaving with the ſame reſervedneſs as before the ſophi, ſhewed ſeveral inſtances of dexterity. Among the reſt one of them placed a porcelain veſſel two feet high in the midſt of the hall, and in turning about, took it up between her legs with ſuch a ſlight that nobody could perceive ſhe had any thing there, and after continuing the dance with the ſame air, returned it with equal dexterity to the place whence ſhe had taken it without making one falſe ſtep.

It muſt be confeſſed, that the Perſians, whenever they entertain their friends, omit nothing which they imagine may contribute to their diverſion; and as they are extremely fond of women, theſe never fail to be introduced at their feaſts. The maſter of the entertainment offers theſe dancing women to his gueſts, and he who has a mind to one of them has nothing more to

do than to riſe and conduct her into a private room, and as ſoon as the buſineſs is over, to return to his place, where nobody takes the leaſt notice of what has been done. But a perſon is allowed to refuſe this favour without giving offence. Ardebil is the only place throughout all Perſia, where theſe dancing women are not tolerated; Shah Abas having baniſhed them from thence on account of the ſanctity of the place.

After dinner, the muſic and dancing women being ordered to withdraw, the ambaſſadors had a private conference with the chancellor in his garden, relating to the negociation, which was afterwards repeated.

On the ſecond of December the ſophi ſent each of the ambaſſadors a preſent of a horſe, with their ſaddles and bridles adorned with large gold plates and buckles; alſo two Perſian garments, with a turban and girdle of gold brocade; 205 pieces of fifteen ſorts of ſilk, &c. and 200 tommans in money, amounting to 1000 piſtoles, to be divided between them towards their expence in their return home. To each of the five principal perſons of the retinue, he gave a ſattin veſt and another of taffety, with gold and ſilver flowers, and to each of the other gentlemen a veſt of tabby flowered with gold.

On the 3d of December the ambaſſadors were invited once more to dine with the Sophi, when, according to the cuſtom of the country, they wore the beſt of thoſe garments preſented by his majeſty, over their other clothes. They were entertained with the ſame ceremonies as before, after which the chamberlain conducted the ambaſſadors to take their leave of the ſophi, who delivered them with his own hand, his anſwer to the duke of Holſtein's letter, promiſing, in return, to ſend him a moſt ſolemn embaſſy. The ambaſſadors then expreſſed their acknowledgments for the honours and noble treatment they had received during their abode in his kingdom.

The following day the Moſcovite envoy obtained his diſmiſſion, in order to return with them into Moſcovy,

and a day or two after, ſeveral of the the Perſian lords ſent their preſents to the ambaſſadors; which conſiſted of fine horſes, mules, and rich ſilks.

Iſpahan, the capital of the province of Erak, and of all Perſia, is ſituated in 32° 30 min. north latitude, and in 50° eaſt longitude in a fine plain, and is almoſt ſurrounded with mountains at a few leagues diſtance. It is of an oval form, and without reckoning the ſuburbs, is twelve miles in circumference. It has alſo twelve gates, nine of which are only open, and is computed to have 18,000 houſes, and 500,000 inhabitants. The fortifications are moſtly of earth, and very inconſiderable, and though the baſtions are of brick, they are ſo miſerably flanked, that they are but a ſlender defence; beſides, the ditch is ſo ruined, that a man may at any time paſs over it dry ſhod. It is, however, the chief trading place of all Perſia, and is frequented by all the Aſiatic nations, and in particular by the Indians, whoſe commodities are extremely valuable; for, not to mention the muſk and ambergris, they ſell great quantities of pearls and diamonds. Beſides theſe, there are conſiderable numbers of Tartars of different nations, Turks, Jews, Armenians, Georgians, Engliſh, Dutch, and French.

The Perſians are at a greater expence in their gardens than in their houſes, though the former are very different from thoſe in moſt parts of Europe; for as nature overſpreads their fields with tulips, and a vaſt variety of the fineſt flowers, ſo theſe are not placed in their gardens; but they apply themſelves with all their care to the cultivation of the moſt excellent fruit-trees, that nature aſſiſted by art can produce in ſo happy a climate. They are alſo very curious in their walks which are ſet on both ſides with tzinnar trees, a kind of poplar, unknown in Europe. This tree grows up to the height of a pine, the leaves are broad, reſembling thoſe of the vine, and it bears a fruit that has ſome reſemblance to the cheſnut, though it has no kernel. The wood is a dark brown, and ſo finely veined, that

when rubbed, it appears more beautiful than any thing made out of the root of the fineſt walnut-trees, and of this wood the Perſians commonly make their door and window ſhutters. Fountains are the chief ornaments of their gardens: theſe have large receptacles from whence the water is conveyed by channels from one baſon to another. The Sophi's garden, called Tzarbach, near the city, is one of the fineſt in the world, it being an exact ſquare, half a league every way. It is divided by the river Senderuth into a croſs, which forms four different gardens; at the ſouth end is a mount planted with ſeveral walks, on both ſides of which are ſteep precipices, made by cutting the rock into ſeveral channels, through which the river falls from the top into baſons made for that purpoſe. Theſe caſcades are about three feet broad, and ſo ſteep that the water is forced with great violence into the baſon. Every walk has alſo its peculiar baſon of white marble, where the water ſpouts forth in various figures. Theſe ſtreams all meet in a large baſon in the midſt of the garden, where a column of water is thrown up forty feet high. At the four corners of the baſon are four large pavilions, the apartments of which are adorned with carved work gilt. There are walks from each of theſe pavilions to the other, planted with tzinnar trees. There are here likewiſe innumerable fruit-trees of all ſorts, which Shah Abas cauſed to be brought thither even from Turkey and India. Among the reſt our author ſaw a kind of grapes, as big as a man's thumb, without any ſtones, the pulp of which was firm, and of a moſt delicious taſte. Ten maſter gardeners are appointed to look after this garden, each of whom has ten other gardeners under him; and they are permitted to let any body come into the garden for four kaſbekies, or two-pence a piece, and to eat what fruit they pleaſe, but they muſt carry none away.

Moſt of the Perſian lords, and rich merchants, have a kind of ſummer-houſe or galleries in their gardens, incloſed by a row of pillars, on the four corners of

which are as many rooms, where they take the benefit of the air and breezes, by chuſing that where they blow. Theſe ſummer-houſes both in building and furniture, frequently exceed their ordinary dwelling-houſes. Indeed, though perſons of quality have very magnificent furniture, the houſes in which they uſually reſide, make but an indifferent appearance, they being built only of earth or bricks baked in the ſun. Theſe ſtructures are generally ſquare, and commonly four ſtories high, including the ground room; but inſtead of glaſs, they in winter cover their windows, which are made with lattices, with oiled paper.

The meidan, or great market-place, is very large, it being ſeven hundred feet long, and two hundred and fifty broad. The houſes round it are all of brick, of an equal height, and the ſhops vaulted. The ſide towards the royal palace contains the goldſmiths, lapidaries and druggiſts, oppoſite to which are the woollen-drapers, mercers, and thoſe who ſell calicoes, with the taverns, and other eating and drinking-houſes. Round the market-place are planted trees, not unlike box, though they grow ſomewhat higher; they are always green, and being ſo cut that the ſhops appear between them, add greatly to the beauty of the place; but one of the chief ornaments, as well as conveniencies of the market-place, is a rivulet carried at the foot of theſe trees through a channel of free-ſtone, raiſed two feet from the ground, and which is diſcharged into two large baſons, and from thence conveyed by pipes to other parts of the city. At the end of a great vaulted gallery are two balconies oppoſite each other, and covered over head, where the city muſic plays every night at ſun-ſet, or whenever the Sophi paſſes through the market-place; a cuſtom obſerved in all the cities in Perſia that are the reſidence of a khan.

Before the royal palace are ſeveral pieces of cannon without carriages, and over the outer gate is a large ſquare ſtructure, which has windows on all ſides. The chief apartments belonging to the palace are, a hall

where the Sophi treats the principal perſons of the court on the new-year's-day; and the great hall of juſtice, where appeals are brought before the Sophi, who preſides there in perſon, and there frequently gives audience to foreign ambaſſadors; but this hall, with the ſpacious court before it, has been already deſcribed. Theſe, and ſeveral other halls, have many chambers, cloſets, galleries, and apartments belonging to them, fit for the entertainment of ſo great a court, and the Sophi's wives and numerous concubines, who all live in the ſame palace; and what is more extraordinary, there is not any conſiderable apartment but has its peculiar garden. There alſo belongs to the palace, as we have already obſerved, a place of refuge for all unfortunate perſons, whether criminals or debtors.

On the outſide of the royal palace is the citadel, which is fortified with a rampart and ſeveral baſtions of earth. It is commanded by a governor, who has a ſtrong garriſon under him, for the defence of the place, and the Sophi's treaſury, armory, and ſtores of ammunition, though it has no other artillery but field-pieces.

On the ſouth ſide of the great market is a fine moſque, which has a large court before it, in which is a very handſome fountain. This moſque is a vaſt ſtructure; the walls are of white poliſhed marble, the pieces of which are ſo artfully cemented, that it is impoſſible to ſee where they are joined. The city alſo contains many other moſques remarkable for their magnificence.

Oppoſite to the great moſque ſtand the tippling houſes among which the taverns are eſteemed moſt infamous. Near theſe are the places where they drink tea, which are in great repute; and here perſons in good circumſtances ſpend their time in playing at cheſs. The coffee-houſes, which are ſeparate from theſe, are frequented by thoſe who love tobacco and coffee: theſe are alſo the places where the poets and hiſtorians are conſtantly to be met with, who commonly ſit on a high

chair in the middle of the room, where they entertain the company with their ſatyrical ſtories.

In the centre of the great market-place ſtands a high pole, on the top of which they ſometimes put a melon, an apple, or a trencher, with money upon it, at which they ſhoot on horſeback, in full gallop; the Sophi himſelf, and ſometimes the lords of the court, aſſiſt at this ſport, when great ſums are laid; the money that falls from the trencher belongs to the Sophi's footmen, and he that obtains the prize is obliged to give an entertainment to the whole company, and even to his majeſty himſelf, if he has ſhot among them. They have another game like cricket, at which they likewiſe play on horſeback, ſtriking the ball when riding in full career. They likewiſe frequently exerciſe themſelves at throwing the javelin. As the Perſians are extremely curious in their horſes, they have frequent races run from one pillar to another in the market-place, and when his majeſty is diſpoſed to be a ſpectator, he places himſelf in a kind of wooden hut, which being ſet on four wheels may be removed at pleaſure.

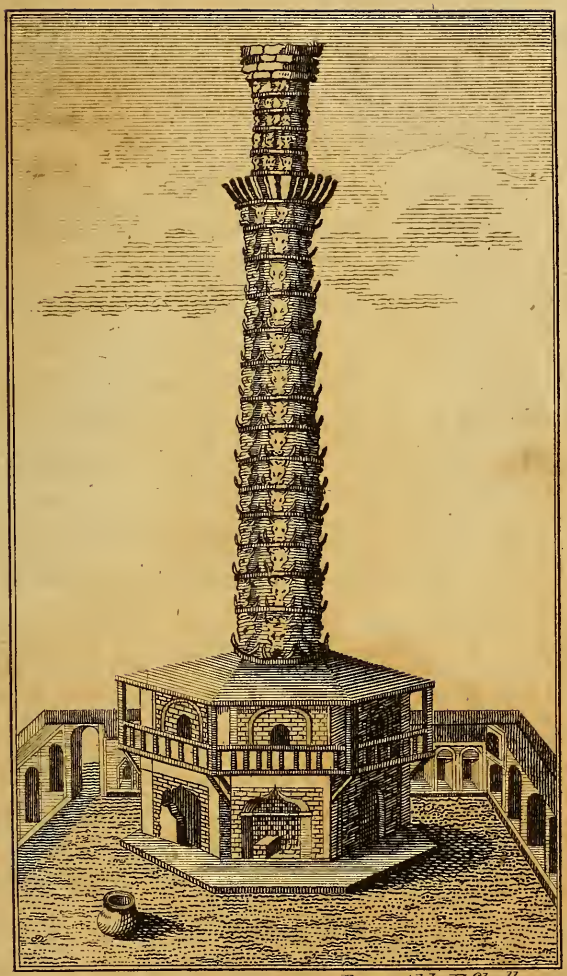
On turning out of the meidan, or great market-place, to the right, you come to the bazar, or ſecond market-place, in the midſt of which is an open cloyſter, which contains the principal ſhops where the richeſt ſtuffs and commodities of the kingdom are ſold. This market-place is divided into ſeveral ſtreets, which are covered over head, and contain a great number of ſhops, well ſtored with all ſorts of commodities, ſold at reaſonable rates, every thing being cheap at Iſpahan, except fuel and meat, the courtry round about it being deſtitute of foreſts and meadows. For the conveniency of trade, there are alſo built at Iſpahan, many caravanſeras, and ſquare ſtorehouſes, ſurrounded with high walls; they are commonly three ſtories high, and, beſides the vaults below, have all manner of conveniences, as halls, chambers and galleries.

Among the reſt of the public ſtructures, the two convents belonging to the Spaniſh and Italian friars ought not to be omitted; one is the convent of the Auguſtine friars, already deſcribed; and the other, that of the carmelites, who when our author was there, amounted to no more than ten in number, though the edifice might vie with any in Europe belonging to that order. Three French capuchins were alſo at this time laying the foundation of a convent, in a place they had purchaſed for that purpoſe.

Between this and the convent of the Carmelites, are the king's ſtables, where the moſt remarkable thing is a high tower, built entirely of earth, and the horns of ahues and ſtags; the origin of which is ſaid to be Shah Tamas killing in one hunting-match 2000 of thoſe animals, in memory of which he cauſed this tower to to be erected, and their horns to be employed in the building.

The city of Iſpahan is ſurrounded on all ſides with large ſuburbs, the chief of which is inhabited by Armenian chriſtians, moſt of whom are merchants. This quarter contains twelve churches and about 3000 houſes, which are not inferior to the beſt in the city. Another of the ſuburbs is inhabited by Georgian chriſtians, moſt of whom are rich merchants as well as Armenians; and on the weſt end of the city are the ſuburbs inhabited by the Gebers, ſaid to be the deſcendants of the ancient Perſians.

The ambaſſadors left Iſpahan on the 21ſt of December in the evening, and after being treated with a collation, at the diſtance of a league from the city, proceeded that night three leagues to the village of Reſchman; where they ſtaid all the following day, when the Auguſtine friars at Iſpahan, ſome French merchants, and Mr. Mandeſlo, who had obtained permiſſion from the duke of Holſtein to travel into the Indies, took their leave of them, and the latter informed them, that the Sophi's ambaſſador to Holſtein was to follow them in



Engravid by F. Shallus.

The Tower of **HORNS** *at Ispahan.*

a few days, and to carry with him preſents for the duke to the value of 25,000 crowns.

They proceeded on their journey without any accident till the 6th of January, 1638; but had ſcarce left the city of Kom, when the ambaſſador Brugman having a fall from his horſe, put his right arm out of joint, which obliged them to ſtay all the next day at Seba: but they continued their journey on the 8th. They now found the ground covered half a foot deep with ſnow, which continued till they reached the mountains of Ghilan.

The next day they proceeded two leagues by the ſide of a foreſt of olive trees, at the extremity of which, they found themſelves at a place famous in antiquity, under the name of Fauces Hyrcaniæ; but in the times of Alexander the Great, and among the modern Perſians, known by that of Pylas. It is a very narrow paſs into the province of Ghilan, where two rapid rivers joining, fall with a moſt dreadful noiſe from the rocks. The river formed by this confluence, is called Iſparuth; but before this junction, the largeſt was named Kiſiloſein, which running under a ſtone bridge, paſſes into the province of Ghilan, and by two ſeveral channels diſcharges itſelf into the Caſpian ſea. This bridge has ſix large arches, each of which contains a good room and kitchen, beſides other conveniences; ſo that theſe arches are ſufficient to lodge a whole caravan.

No ſooner had they paſſed the bridge than the road dividing in two, one leads through a fine champaign country to Ardebil, and the other extends ſtraight through the province of Ghilan, over the moſt dreadful precipices, it being cut out of the rock, and ſo ſteep and narrow, that it ſcarce affords a paſſage for one loaded horſe or camel; nay, in ſome places they have been forced to make up the defects of the rock with maſon's work. The clifts reach on the left hand up to the very clouds, while on the other ſide nothing is to be ſeen but the moſt dreadful precipices, rendered

more terrible by the noiſe of the river, which runs with great violence at the bottom. The Perſians, as well as the ambaſſadors retinue, were ſo aſtoniſhed at the ſight, that they were glad to lead their horſes, and even that but looſely, for fear that if they ſhould ſlip, they would draw their maſters after them. The horſes, however, proceeded very carefully, and with ſeeming fear; but the camels made ſurer ſteps, putting their feet into places cut in the rock for that purpoſe.

At the top of the mountain they found a cuſtom-houſe, the receiver of which made them a preſent of ſome fruits. They were now not a little aſtoniſhed at diſcovering, that though they had ſcarcely got out of the ſnow on the other ſide, the valleys were here full of bloſſoms, and they were more convinced of the ſurprizing difference, when they found the deſcent of the ſame mountain, the aſcent to which had appeared ſo dreadful and attended with ſuch trouble and fatigue, change into the moſt delightful proſpect, and attended with all imaginable eaſe; the roads paſſing through groves of olives, cypreſs, box, citron and orange-trees; with theſe, that ſide of the mountain was entirely covered, and of the laſt they found ſuch plenty, that they flung oranges at one another for diverſion: but what even appeared ſtill more ſurprizing was, that the air which had ſufficiently pinched them the ſame morning, was before night very hot. They took up their quarters at the village of Pyle-Rubar, upon the banks of the river Iſparuth, at the foot of the mountain. The houſes were indeed very ſmall, but the inconveniences they ſuffered in their lodgings were in ſome meaſure recompenced by the vaſt number of gardens, vineyards, and fruit-trees, planted all around them.

On the 11th they continued their journey five leagues to Keſilgats, croſſing four great rivers. The city is ſmall; it is about half a league from the ſea, and ſituated upon a ſmall river in a fine plain. From hence they had a full view of the mountains of Ghilan, to the weſt-north-weſt, ſinking by degrees into little hills

towards the country of Mokan. At the foot of the mountains were ſeveral handſome villages, and a great number of trees planted in a ſtrait line along a very large tract of paſture ground.

On the 12th, they purſued their journey through a champaign country, and took up their quarters at night in the village of Eilieſdu, ſeated at the foot of a very fertile hill. The village being inhabited only by ſoldiers, maintained out of the king's demeſnes in thoſe parts, the houſes were very mean, they being made of laths plaſtered with clay.

The ambaſſador Brugman's groom would have gone into the firſt houſe he came to, with one of the led horſes, when the kiſilibach, or ſoldier to whom it belonged, told him that his houſe was free from quartering, and that beſides he had no convenience for horſes, and having a ſtick in his hand, gave the horſe a ſlight blow on the head. Brugman, who ſaw the diſpute, inſtantly diſmounted, and in a rage ruſhed into the houſe, when the ſoldier not knowing him, ſtood upon the defenſive, and gave him ſuch a blow on the arm, that he cried out for help. His domeſtics immediately ran to his aſſiſtance, and the poor fellow was ſo terribly beat in his own houſe, that he at laſt with great difficulty crawled out of it. Notwithſtanding this, the ambaſſador complained to the mehemander, who anſwered that he had no power over the kiſilibachs, whoſe ſuperior officer was not there, and that he who had injured him had received ſuch a chaſtiſement, that he doubted whether he would recover; however, he might take what farther ſatisfaction he thought fit. Preſuming on this permiſſion, Brugman immediately ſent to plunder the kiſilibach's houſe, and ordered his horſe and arms to be brought away. The next day he got together all his retinue, and cauſed it to be publiſhed by ſound of drum, that he ſhould depart immediately, and that all who would ſtay might do it at their peril.

Not one of the company, not even his colleague, knew his deſign; but it was ſoon diſcovered, when be-

ing mounted, he ſtopped at the ambaſſador Cruſius's lodgings, and there deſired the mehemander to bring forth the man who had ſtruck him the day before; but he objected, that he was ſo dangerouſly wounded, that he was unable to riſe. Yet Brugman ordered him to be brought in a coverlet, and notwithſtanding the intreaties of the other Perſians in his behalf, commanded an Armenian, who was interpreter for the Turkiſh language, to beat him with a cudgel. The poor man was ſoon killed, and then Brugman, turning to the mehemander and the other Perſians, told them, that if Shah Sefi did not revenge the affront he had received, he would ſoon return with ſufficient force to obtain ſatisfaction. The other ſoldiers ſhewed, that they wanted neither the will nor the courage to cut them all to pieces, and only ſeemed reſtrained by the preſence of the mehemander, who ſtaid behind to pacify them, and afterwards prevailed on Brugman to return the horſe, arms, and furniture, to the wife and children of the deceaſed.

They proceeded the three following days over the heath of Mokan. On the 15th at night, they came within a mile of the river Aras, anciently called Araxes, and on the 20th reached the city of Scamachie, when by the khan's ſpecial order, they were lodged with the ſame Armenians who had been their landlords at the time of their firſt paſſage through that city. On the 22d of February, the khan and calenter came in perſon to invite the ambaſſadors and their retinue to ſupper. The entertainment was very magnificent; but what was moſt obliging, was the offers of the khan's friendſhip and ſervice; and during a ſtay of five weeks he took all imaginable opportunities of rendering their abode in that city agreeable.

On the firſt of March, the Muſcovite envoy celebrated the birth day of the czar, his maſter, by a great and ſplendid entertainment, as the khan did the 3d, 6th, and 10th, on account of the new year, when the ambaſſadors were ſplendidly entertained at his own palace.

On the 14th of March, Areb Khan received the garment, according to the cuſtom of Perſia, as a mark of the continuance of the Sophi's favour: for after the governors have ſent their preſents to the Sophi, he ſends them a meſſenger to inform them, of his favour, or diſpleaſure; who, being come near the city where the governor reſides, gives him notice of his arrival, when the khan, not being ſure that he is ever likely to return, takes leave of the whole city, and accompanied by all his friends, goes a league to meet the envoy; who no ſooner ſees him coming, but he makes a halt, and the governor, after having laid aſide his ſword, turban, and upper garment, alights, and in a ſubmiſſive poſture approaches the envoy, who delivers him out of a box covered with rich tapeſtry, a letter of grace and a rich garment, or elſe demands his head, which is cut off immediately, and put into the box. Areb Khan having, however, received ſome private aſſurance of his ſovereign's favour, and being willing that the ambaſſadors ſhould be preſent at this ſolemnity, deſired their company, to which they conſented. He appeared on horſeback without arms, with ſeveral fine led horſes before him, and a guard of fifteen carabineers, beſides a retinue of above four hundred gentlemen, and certain perſons carrying on the tops of long poles, the heads of ſome Turks, and the Turkiſh colours Areb had taken. Being come in this order to the Sophi's garden without the city, and ſeeing the meſſenger ſtanding at the entrance with a box in his hand, the khan on being come within twelve paces of him, laid aſide his garment and turban, with a chearful countenance; but was a little ſtartled when he heard the envoy ſay nothing, till at laſt breaking ſilence, he cried, Shah Sefi ſends thee a garment and a letter of favour, thou art certainly beloved by the Sophi. To which the khan briſkly replied, I wiſh the Sophi's wealth to increaſe for ever, and that every day of his life may be multiplied to a thouſand. I am one of his majeſty's old ſervants. Then taking the garment which

was of ſea-green ſattin, a rocket of cloth of gold, a girdle, and a turban, the meſſenger aſſiſted him in putting them on, and was preſented with ſome tomans. The ceremony concluded with the caſi's or judge's prayer, which ended, the khan's ſteward cried out aloud, We pray for the Sophi's proſperity, the happy ſucceſs of his arms, and the khan's health; to which the people anſwered, Alla, Alla, Alla. The khan then returned to the city, with the trumpets and timbrels ſounding, and the Turks heads and colours carried before him, and on his arrival, invited the ambaſſadors to dinner; but having that day drank very freely, he was forced to retire before it was over, and the whole company withdrew ſoon after.

The 22d being Holy Thurſday, they ſaw the Armenians perform the ceremony of waſhing the feet, which was done at church, when the prieſt waſhed the right foot of the men, and the left of the women, and afterwards made upon them the ſign of the croſs, with conſecrated butter. This done, he was ſet in a chair, and raiſed up by twelve men, who kept him in the air with ſeveral acclamations, till he had invited them to dinner.

On the 30th, leaving Scamachie, they marched to Pyramaras, and the next day travelled ſix leagues over the mountains without ſeeing a ſingle village, till they took up their quarters at night. On the firſt of April, they advanced over hills and through ſome vallies, that produce great quantities of millet; and the next day leaving the hills, got into the plain country, and came within a mile of the ſea. As they paſſed along, they ſaw within the compaſs of five hundred paces, no leſs than thirty ſprings of naphtha, a kind of medicinal oil, or rather a petroleum. Some of theſe were white and others black, but there are more of the laſt than the firſt. The pits were about fifteen or ſixteen feet deep.

On the 3d they travelled only two leagues, over three little rivers to Schabran, where the neighbouring mountains are inhabited by a people called Padars,

who live upon rapine, and make their excurſions in ſmall troops for 20 leagues round, in order to rob travellers. The mehemander being informed that they had been at Schabran to inquire after the ambaſſadors ſtrength, adviſed the retinue to be upon their guard, to keep cloſe together and in ſight of the baggage. Having the next day paſſed four leagues through a pleaſant hilly country, they came up with a caravan of Muſcovites and Circaſſian merchants, who looking upon them as a ſure defence againſt theſe robbers, ſeemed extremely glad of their company. Soon after one of the gang appeared at a diſtance, in order to take a view of them; but twelve Perſians being ſent by the mehemander to apprehend him, he eſcaped in the wood, leaving behind him a good ox which he had ſtolen, and which was preſented to the ambaſſadors. In the afternoon they paſſed through the fens within two leagues of Niaſabeth. On the 5th they travelled eight leagues through one continued foreſt, and two days after reached the city of Derbent, where they were met only by a number of Kiſilibachs, the governor not chuſing to leave the caſtle.

The city of Derbent, which is ſituated in 51° eaſt longitude, and in 41° 15′ north latitude, is a league in length and 450 paces broad, and may properly be called the gate of Perſia on that ſide, becauſe it reaches exactly from the foot of the mountains to the ſea ſhore, where the waves ſometimes beat over the walls. The modern Perſians aſſert, that its caſtle and wall on the ſouth ſide were built by Alexander the Great. Theſe are near five feet thick, of a great height, and appear at a diſtance as if built with freeſtone, though they are only formed of muſcle ſhells, and pieces of freeſtone beaten to powder, and moulded like brick; but time has cemented this ſubſtance to ſuch a degree of hardneſs that no marble is comparable to it. The caſtle, which is the ordinary reſidence of the governor, is built upon the top of a mountain, and furniſhed with a gar-

riſon of 500 men who keep conſtant guard. The moſt populous quarter of the city is at the foot of the mountain; but the lower town, which was formerly inhabited by the Greeks, is moſtly converted into gardens.

The inhabitants of Derbent are all Mahometans, except a few Jews, who are ſaid to be of the tribe of Benjamin. It is a place of no trade, and both the ſoldiers and inhabitants being an inſolent uncivilized people, the mehemander deſired the ambaſſadors to be upon their guard. Therefore to remove all opportunities of quarrelling, ſtrict orders were given to the retinue not to give the leaſt offence to any of the ſoldiers or inhabitants, and to be careful not to intermeddle in their quarrels: and though the khan of Tarku, who had paid the ambaſſadors a viſit in their firſt paſſage that way, offered to conduct them ſafely through the Tartars of Dagheſtan, yet the ambaſſadors, conſidering that himſelf was a Dagheſtan Tartar, ſent him word, that they would not give him any trouble, and immediately ordered all the arms to be examined, when they were found to conſiſt of 52 muſquets and fuzees, 19 caſes of piſtols, two braſs guns, and four murdering pieces.

At length they got every thing in readineſs for their departure, and as their was no probability of their obtaining bread for ſome time, every man had four days allowance delivered to him; but on the 13th, juſt as they were ready to ſet forward, they were informed that the governor had cauſed the city gates to be ſhut, and he being aſked by the mehemander his reaſon for ſo doing, anſwered, that having received intelligence that one Oſmyn a Tartar prince near Derbent, intended to attack them in their way, he being anſwerable for their ſafety to the Sophi, could not ſuffer them to depart without a convoy, which not being ready, he deſired they would defer their departure till the next day. This they were ſenſible was no more than an excuſe, and though they were not deſirous of this convoy, they

thanked him for his care, only desiring leave to go out of the city, where they would wait for the convoy, which being readily granted, they pitched their tents at about a mile's distance, near a fine vineyard upon the bank of a small river, that is the common boundary between the Persian dominions and those of the Dagheſtan Tartars.

They ſtaid the next morning till the ſun had riſen three hours, for the convoy promiſed them by the governor; but none appearing, they proceeded on their journey. Their three lieutenants, with the ſoldiers under their command, marched in the van: after them came a field piece, and the four murdering pieces; then the baggage, and the ambaſſador Cruſius; and theſe were followed by another field-piece, by the ambaſſador Brugman and the reſt of the retinue. In this order they entered the country of Dagheſtan.

The Dagheſtan Tartars dwell among the mountains and in the plains at their foot, which in ſome places are 20 or 30 leagues diſtant from the Caſpian ſea, and theſe plains extend along the coaſt to the north as far as Terki, comprehending a tract of 40 leagues. The complexion of theſe Tartars is a dark yellow inclining to black. They have very diſagreeable faces, but have ſtrong limbs, and their black hair falls round their ſhoulders. Their garments are a grey or black cloſe coat, of coarſe cloth, over which they wear a cloak of the ſame ſtuff, and ſometimes of ſheep-ſkin. They have ſquare caps patched together with cloth of ſeveral colours, and their ſhoes are of ſheep-ſkins or horſe's hide, and are made of one piece ſewed together at the inſtep or at the ſides: and they are armed with ſcymeters, bows, arrows, and javelins. They live chiefly upon their cattle, and the management of which entirely depends upon the women, the men's profeſſion being to rob and ſteal: they even attack all they meet, without being afraid either of the Perſians or Moſcovites, on account of their retreating places among the mountains; ſo that the caravans, if not ſtrong enough to encounter

them, muſt proceed by ſea. They are not governed by one ſingle perſon, but each city with its territories has its peculiar lord; who is not abſolute, but ſhares the government with the other lords. He is called the Schemkal, and upon his death the murſas or lords of the country meet, and being ſat down in a circle, the prieſt of the place throws a golden apple into it, and he who is firſt touched by it, is the Schemkal.

Having travelled five leagues through ſeveral villages and fertile fields, they fortified themſelves with their baggage, and placed ſentinels to prevent being ſurpriſed. The next day they travelled ſix leagues through a hilly country; entered the lordſhip of Boinac, and fixed their quarters near a village of the ſame name, on the aſcent of a hill, which being inacceſſible to the ſea ſide, they took care to guard their quarters with their baggage, placed in the form of a creſcent. The lord of this country is not very powerful, but extremely wealthy in cattle. Here the ambaſſador Brugman being vexed at the inhabitants ſtanding to ſtare at them, would have had ſome firelocks without ball diſcharged to make them keep off, and was highly incenſed at the men who had the prudence not to execute his command. Theſe barbarians, who did not want courage, were highly offended at the marks he ſhewed of diſlike, and told the people in plain terms, that they, and not the ambaſſadors were maſters of the country; that they were in no great fear either of the ſophi of Perſia, or the czar of Muſcovy, and that they could eaſily make theſe ſtrangers repent their haughtineſs. They even refuſed to allow them to fetch water, without paying for it, but finding that the well was within reach of the cannon, they did not think fit to diſpute that point any longer with them. The Schemkal alſo ſent them word the ſame night, that they ſhould not ſtir thence till he had viſited their baggage; but the ambaſſadors anſwering, that they were not merchants but ambaſſadors, and as ſuch would maintain their prerogative, they heard no more of him.

On the 16th they ſet out early in the morning, and ſaw ſeveral ſmall troops of Tartars, ſometimes before and ſometimes behind them; but after a journey of ſeven leagues, they pitched their tents near the city of Tarku within a league of the ſea. The khan being ſick, he ſent his brother and three other perſons of diſtinction to compliment them on their arrival; in return for which they ſent him their phyſician, who ſucceeded ſo well in the cure, that the khan returned him his thanks for this favour.

Tarku, the metropolis of all Dagheſtan, is incloſed within the mountains by ſteep rocks, which are ſo covered with ſhells of the ſize of a walnut, that they ſeem at a diſtance to conſiſt of nothing elſe; and though the rock is as hard as flint, yet it affords very good paſture on its top, and many fine ſprings that furniſh the city with freſh water. Tarku is without walls, and contains about 1000 houſes built after the Perſian manner, but not ſo well. The men are here very ſavage and barbarous, but their married women and maids are pretty well civilized, and do not live under the ſame reſtraint as thoſe of Perſia.

Though the khan, whoſe name was Surchou, had almoſt complimented them into a good opinion of his ſincerity, they were ſoon convinced that they were never in greater danger. They would fain have perſuaded their mehemander to have proceeded with them to Terki; but he excuſed himſelf, by alledging, that he had expreſs orders to conduct them only to Tarku, and while they were in treaty with the camel drivers to carry their baggage thither, he, without their knowledge, returned back in the night, and took them with him. The ſurpriſe of this ſudden departure was not a little encreaſed by what they were told by two Moſcovite women, who had married Tartars, and who informed them that thoſe of Oſmyn Boinack, had ſent word to Surchou Khan, that the ambaſſadors had paſſed their country, and that inſtead of paying the duties for their merchandize and baggage, they had the inſo-

lence to threaten them, and therefore they were reſolved to be revenged, by killing all the old men, and making the reſt ſlaves. Upon hearing this news, and obſerving that not the leaſt care was taken for their departure, and alſo, that meſſengers were conſtantly paſſing between theſe Tartarian chiefs; the ambaſſadors ſummoned a council, conſiſting of all the principal perſons of the retinue, to conſult what was beſt to be done in this extremity. At this juncture ſome could not forbear reflecting on the ambaſſador Brugman's conduct, in exaſperating the people; but as this afforded them no relief, it was reſolved, as there was no hopes of eſcape, to ſell their lives as dear as poſſible, rather than fall into the hands of theſe barbarians. Indeed, they afterwards found that theſe chiefs were actually concerting meaſures to attack them, which they would have done, had not the Schemkal, thinking they had vaſt treaſure along with them, flattered himſelf with the hopes of getting the whole booty himſelf; for this purpoſe he ſent to let them know, that he would have them take their way over the bridge of boats above the city, where he reſided, and that if they choſe any other way, he muſt look upon them as enemies. The meſſenger had no ſooner concluded, but he was going away without expecting an anſwer, when the Muſcovite envoy boldly ſeizing him by the arm, cried, "Friend, Tell the Schemkal, it is not his buſineſs to "direct the way we are to take, which we ſhall chuſe "at our own pleaſure. Perhaps it may not be difficult "for him to cut off a handful of men; but let him "know, that the czar, my maſter, whoſe honour lies "at ſtake, will take a moſt dreadful revenge."

This bold anſwer made the Tartars change their reſolutions; even four of their princes now paid the ambaſſadors a viſit, in their tent, and ſtaid dinner with them, and theſe were followed by prince Oſmyn's brother, and the daruga of Tarku, who frankly told them, that they ought not to rely upon the khan's promiſes, till they had made him their friend by giving him a pre-

ſent. They accordingly ſent him a pair of gold bracelets, a piſtol, a fuſee, a barrel of powder, two pieces of Perſian ſattin, and ſome ſpices, which put him in ſo good a humour, that he not only promiſed the ambaſſadors to let them have for their money, whatever they wanted; but invited them and four of their retinue to dinner, and entertained them with eight diſhes of mutton, curds, whitings and rice. Their drink was water in glaſſes, and afterwards brandy in ſilver cups. After dinner, the khan by his own deſire, was entertained three hours with their muſic, after which meat was brought in again, and one of the carvers having minced it, ſerved it up by handfuls while they were obliged to ſhew no ſigns of diſguſt. They were alſo invited to ſeveral other entertainments.

On the 23d of April, the waggons for their baggage being got ready and loaded, Surchou Khan ſent to let them know, that he had received intelligence that the Schemkal Sultan Mahmud lay in ambuſh to intercept their paſſage, and that therefore he could not permit them to depart. The ſame evening twenty Tartarian horſemen well armed, pitched their tents near them, and being aſked what brought them thither, replied, they had been ſent by prince Oſmyn to the Schemkal, to inform him, that the ambaſſadors being friends to the Sophi of Perſia and the Czar of Muſcovy, he had let them paſs unmoleſted, without paying any duties, and deſired him to do ſo too, which the Schemkal had promiſed. Theſe Tartars departed early the next morning, and ſoon after, two meſſengers came from the Schemkal, to know the reaſon why the ambaſſadors did not proceed on their journey, and to promiſe them all imaginable aſſiſtance, provided they took the way he had directed. Theſe were no ſooner gone, than Surchou Khan came in perſon, to pay the ambaſſadors a viſit, and let them know, that every thing was ready for their journey; but that knowing the Schemkal better than they did, he would adviſe them to ſtay eight days longer, in which time he hoped to ſee the Perſian am-

baſſador there, and he would then provide a ſufficient convoy. Theſe inſinuations threw them into a greater perplexity than ever, not knowing whom they had to truſt. In this extremity, they had recourſe to the governor of Terki, whom they deſired to ſend them a convoy of Streliters; but this he abſolutely refuſed. In the mean while, ſome Armenian merchants, who had ſtaid in hopes of going in their company, ſuddenly retired into the city, upon a rumour that two hundred Tartars intended to attack the ambaſſadors. To add to their affliction, the continual rains had penetrated through their tents and cloaks, and prevented their making any fires: and they durſt not venture themſelves into the Tartarian huts, for fear of being ſeized and made ſlaves. Theſe, and other circumſtances, rendered their condition extremely deplorable, not knowing what reſolution they had to take. At length, they ſent a meſſenger to the Schemkal to deſire a paſſage, who returned the next day with four Tartars, and brought them word, that the Schemkal was much ſurpriſed at the character Surchou Khan had unjuſtly given of him: that he offered them all his intereſt and ſervice to forward them in their journey, and as a proof of his ſincerity, would ſend them three of the principal men in his dominions, as hoſtages for their paſſing ſafely through his territories. Upon theſe aſſurances they left Tarku on the 12th of May, and travelled two leagues through a plain, but barren country, to a rivulet that part the territories of the prince of Tarku, and Schemkal Sultan Mahmud, where they were forced to be contented with bread muddy water for their ſupper.

On the 24th, they proceeded to the river Koiſu, which is deep and rapid; near it the town of Andre is ſituated upon the ſide of a hill, and is the ordinary reſidence of the Schemkal. Over the river they and all their baggage, carried in ſeventy waggons, were conveyed by the Tartars in boats, two of which were joined together, and a hurdle laid over them, the ex-

pence of the whole being forty crowns. Soon after, the Schemkal with his brother, and a train of fifty perſons on horſeback, came to pay them a viſit: he was about thirty-ſix years of age, very robuſt, and of an agreeable countenance. He had a garment of green ſattin, over which he wore a cloak of coarſe cloth. His arms, as well as thoſe of his company, were a ſcymeter, bow and arrows. He brought along with him ſome ſheep and lambs, and a large cauldron full of ſturgeon, boiled in ſalt and water, with freſh butter and ſorrel for ſauce; a diſh, which in their preſent circumſtances, ſeemed more agreeable than all the delicacies of Perſia. They entertained him with their muſic, the diſcharge of their artillery, and with drinking brandy for two hours, when being got half drunk, he retired, but returned ſoon after, and the ambaſſadors preſented him with a pair of gold bracelets, a ſilver cup, a ſcarlet cloak lined with fur, a caſe of piſtols, a ſword, a barrel of powder, ſome Perſian ſilk ſtuffs, and ſome goats-ſkin dreſſed into leather. He was ſo pleaſed with the cloak, that he put it on upon the ſpot, and preſented his own to the ambaſſador Brugman, who had the complaiſance to flatter him by ſaying, that at ſo great a diſtance, they had but an imperfect idea of theſe parts, and therefore had not provided themſelves with preſents ſuitable to his greatneſs; but that having now eſtabliſhed a free commerce with Perſia, they would make ample amends for it the next time they came that way, when they would bring full inſtructions to enter into a perpetual league with him, which he did not doubt would turn to their mutual advantage. This flattery had ſuch an effect, that the Schemkal got horſes and carriages for them, at a very reaſonable rate, and even conducted them with fifty horſe, through a thick wood, and afterwards took his leave in a very obliging manner.

On the 13th, they entered Circaſſia, which though moſtly inhabited by Pagans and Mahometan Tartars,

yet it was no ſmall ſatisfaction to the ambaſſadors and their retinue, to find themſelves in a country under the juriſdiction of a Chriſtian prince. However, proviſions, and particularly meat, were here ſo ſcarce, that they could hardly obtain it for their money, ſo that they paid above thirty ſhillings for a ſheep. The next day, they pitched their tents in a plain country full of reeds, near a well, the water of which was ſo muddy and ſtinking, that the beaſts would not touch it, and they here found the ground full of holes made by ſerpents. The following day they continued their journey over a barren ſoil, four leagues to the city of Terki, ſeeing in the way many ſerpents of the thickneſs of a man's arm, and ſix feet in length, ſporting in the ſun, and near Terki a peculiar kind of field-mice, called by the Arabians, Jerhuah. They are nearly as big as a ſquirrel, and not unlike it in ſhape, except their being of a darker colour, and having heads like rats; they have long ears, and the fore-feet are ſhorter than thoſe behind, which renders them unfit for running, but they will leap five or ſix feet high from the ground, with their tails laid over their back, which, like thoſe of other mice, are long, and without hair. There are vaſt numbers of them in Arabia and about Babylon, where they are frequently eaten by the inhabitants. If they get into the houſes, it is ſaid, they will carry all the money they meet with into their neſts.

About a mile from Terki, they were met by the brother of prince Muſſal, with a colonel ſent by the Muſcovite waywode, to compliment them on their happy arrival, and while lodgings were preparing for them in the city, they were entertained with a collation of gingerbread, mead, and brandy. The following day, the ambaſſadors were treated with four diſhes out of the waywode's kitchen. They ſent their compliments to the princeſs Bika, prince Muſſal's mother, and a few days after paid her a viſit in perſon, dined with her, and entertained her with their muſic.

On the 21ſt of May, they began to prepare for their departure, and bargained with the waggoners of Terki, at a crown for every waggon and two horſes, to carry them over the deſart, which was ſeventy leagues, to Aſtrachan; and as they were now joined by many Perſian, Turkiſh, Greek, and Muſcovite merchants, they had above two hundred waggons, each of which carried three or four perſons; but their allowance for ſo long a journey was very ſlender; for it only conſiſted of ſome hard biſcuit, a loaf of mouldy brown bread, and half a dried ſtinking ſalmon, for each man in the retinue. They did not even provide drink, becauſe the ambaſſador Brugman would not be at the expence of hiring a waggon to carry it, and though they were not then very ſolicitous about it, they had ſoon ſufficient reaſon to repent of this ill conduct. For in that dreadful deſart they travelled eleven days, without ſeeing ſo much as a city or village, or even a hill, tree, or bird, or any river, but the Kiſilar, and one ſmall brook of freſh water; the whole being a vaſt ſandy plain, which here and there produced a little graſs, and ſome ſtanding pools of ſalt and ſtinking water. They were, therefore, greatly afflicted with heat, thirſt, gnats, waſps, and other inſects. However, at length, they took up their quarters upon the banks of the Volga, oppoſite to Aſtrachan, where many of the people prompted by thirſt, ran up to their knees in the water to drink. Immediately ſome of their friends came from Aſtrachan to bid them welcome, and freſh proviſions being brought them at the ſame time, they ſtaid all the day near the river, to give leiſure to the governor to provide them lodgings.

On the 15th of June, they paſſed the river, and had their quarters appointed them in a large ſtorehouſe without the city, near the river ſide, where they found a great quantity of proviſions ſent thither by the duke of Holſtein's factor at Moſcow; but the ambaſſador Brugman having ordered all the baggage to be ſhut up in one room, ſome of the retinue were ſo exaſperated,

that they forced open the doors, and took away their chefts in ſpite of the ſentinel that ſtood guard.

The ambaſſadors during their reſidence in this city, ſent part of their retinue with ſome horſes to Moſcow by land, and then brought two boats 60 feet long and 15 broad, and hired thirty watermen to row them to Caſan. A few days before their departure, ſome Muſcovite ſtrelitzers brought the ambaſſadors two girls, one of ten, and the other of ſeven years of age, in order to ſell them. The firſt was a daughter of a Tartar of Trecos, and had been made a priſoner by the Coſſacks at the taking of Azoph, and the latter had been ſtolen not far from Aſtrachan, and being very young, they had put her naked in a bag. The ambaſſador Brugman purchaſed them both, one for twenty-five, and the other for ſixteen crowns, and after his return into Holſtein preſented them to the dutcheſs, who had them inſtructed and baptized.

On the 7th of September, the ambaſſadors divided their retinue, and each of them embarking in his own boat upon the Volga, ſailed for Caſan, where they ſtaid five weeks, till the ice was ready to bear. On the 13th, they proceeded on their journey in ſixty ſledges, and on the 2d of January made their public entry into Moſcow, each of the ambaſſadors riding in a rich ſledge lined with crimſon velvet, and adorned with Perſian carpets. The chief of their retinue being mounted on twelve white horſes of the czar's ſtables

On the 18th the ambaſſadors had their firſt private audience, and having a few days after obtained their audience of leave from the czar, proceeded towards Germany, and arrived at Gottorp on the firſt of Auguſt, which put a period to their travels.

THE

TRAVELS

OF

MR. JONAS HANWAY, MERCHANT,

THROUGH

RUSSIA INTO PERSIA;

AND BACK THROUGH

RUSSIA, GERMANY, AND HOLLAND.

Containing a deſcription of thoſe kingdoms and the manners and cuſtoms, &c. of the inhabitants, with an account of the moſt intereſting events that took place on his journey.

MR. Elton, an Engliſh gentleman, bred to the ſea, having agreed with the court of Perſia, about ſettling a trade through Ruſſia into that empire, and afterwards entering into the ſervice of Nadir Shah, for whom he was to build ſhips in the European manner; the Engliſh factors belonging to the Ruſſia company, grew uneaſy at the apprehenſions of the offence that might be taken by the Ruſſian court. About this time Mr. Hanway, a gentleman equally diſtinguiſhed by his piety, humanity, and good ſenſe, being well acquainted with the nature of that trade, accepted of the offer of becoming partner with a factor at Peterſburgh, and being deſirous of ſeeing Perſia, a country ſo famous for great and memorable events, both in ancient and mo-

dern hiſtory, reſolved to endeavour to complete the eſtabliſhment of a trade, which was the object of the ſanguine hopes of the moſt conſiderable of our merchants. This may ſerve as an introduction to his travels, which we ſhall give in as conciſe a manner as poſſible.

In April, 1743, this gentleman embarked in the river Thames on board an Engliſh ſhip bound for Riga, and in May entered the Sound. This ſtreight is about two Engliſh miles broad, and the caſtle of Kronenburg, on the Daniſh ſide, guards the entrance, while Elſinburg, is on the oppoſite ſide on the Swediſh continent. The duty paid to the Danes on entering the Sound, has varied at different periods of time. The caſtle of Kronenburg, which is mounted with large cannon, projects into the water, and is ſo far detached from the town of Elſineur, as to enjoy an open and delightful proſpect, and by its buildings, extent, and verdure within the walls, is rendered an agreeable place. Elſineur is a neat little town about twenty miles from Copenhagen; it is watered by a ſpring in the eaſt part of it, and the ſtreets being in ſome places lined with trees, have an agreeable effect. Here the conſuls of England, France, Holland and Sweden reſide; and the neighbourhood of the Swedes makes the Daniſh garriſon ſtrict in the examination of all who come into the town. From Elſineur he ſailed by Copenhagen, where the royal palace forms a magnificent proſpect from the ſea. He ſoon after deſcribed the coaſt of Courland, which had a ſandy and inhoſpitable appearance; and near the end of May arrived in the bay of Riga. The Baltic, which on his entrance into it, was extremely cold, and in the middle of May is frequently covered with ice, was now remarkably pleaſant, and it is not eaſy to conceive how much the ſcene was changed for the better.

Mr. Hanway, on his landing, was carried as a priſoner to the caſtle of Dwenamund, where he was kept above an hour, in the company of common ſoldiers and

under-ſecretaries; though he had letters of recommendation from the Ruſſian miniſter at the court of London, to the great chancellor of Ruſſia; but they made great difficulties on the want of a paſſport, which it is not uſual to bring from England; but the maſter of the ſhip had no ſooner preſented the ordinary compliment, than they were received by the officer on duty, as the friends of the ſovereign, and from thence went by land about half a day's journey to Riga, where our author arrived on the 20th of May, and then found the weather as hot as ever he had felt it, though he had lived many years in Portugal: for the ſun leaving the horizon only three or four hours, and its reflection continuing a great part of that time, neither the earth nor the air has time to become temperate.

Mr. Hanway was received at Riga with the greateſt kindneſs by the Britiſh factors; but though he produced the moſt indiſputable credentials, he was obliged to wait in that city ſeventeen days as a ſtate-priſoner; for there being then a war between Ruſſia and Sweden, the governor had received orders, that no perſon ſhould proceed from thence without expreſs leave from the court then reſiding at Peterſburgh. This time he ſpent as agreeably as a garriſon and its confines would permit; but was not a little incommoded by the extreme heat of the weather. He was there aſſured by people of undoubted veracity, that after the melting of the ſnow, the earth being impregnated with the nitre it contains, ſometimes brings to maturity, in ſix weeks, the rye that has lain in the ground during the winter; and that wheat has been ſown and reaped within that time.

The city of Riga was built about the year 1190, when this country firſt received the Chriſtian religion. It is the metropolis of Livonia, and is ſituated in 57° north latitude, on the north-eaſt ſide of the Dwena, which runs into the gulph of Riga. It was taken from the Swedes by Peter the Great in 1713; but the magiſtracy preſerve the civil power, and their ancient im-

munities; while the burghers have the ſole right of buying of the Poliſh and Ruſſian merchants; conſequently the Engliſh factors, and other foreigners, can only buy of the burghers. There is a provincial court for the affairs of the province, conſidered as diſtinct from the city, and beſides, the corporation of burghers, which has ſolely the management of the city affairs, the crown has a court under the Ruſſian laws, which takes cognizance of the aſſeſſments for quartering of ſoldiers, and other affairs relating to the government.

The Dwena is generally frozen about the end of November, and open again near the middle of March; ſo that it has the advantage of Peterſburgh, where the Neva is cloſed about ſix weeks longer. When the ice breaks up, it frequently comes down in ſuch large pieces, as to remove points of land, and form banks, that ſometimes remain for ſeveral years. On this account no ſtanding bridge can be built over the river; and there is only one of rafts and boards during the ſummer ſeaſon; ſo that the people walk even with the ſurface of the water.

The chief commodities here are maſts, timber, flax and hemp, great part of which is brought from the Poliſh Ukraine. Near five hundred ſhips have been annually loaded at Riga, of which three hundred were from the United Provinces: but the number of Dutch ſhips at this port have lately decreaſed.

The houſes are built with ſteep roofs, for the better carrying off the water, which is very penetrating on the melting of the ſnow: wherein they have the advantage of the Ruſſians, who have ſtill greater occaſion to provide againſt the like inconvenience. The cellars are uſed as warehouſes for flax and other goods; and the entrance or firſt apartment in moſt houſes is the coach-houſe, through which you muſt paſs to the parlour and dining-room. The houſes are ſeldom above two ſtories high, and the ſtreets are narrow. The language of the people of Riga is German; but the

peaſants in its neighbourhood, and other parts of Livonia, ſpeak High Dutch, a dialect entirely different from the German.

Mr. Hanway having at length procured a paſſport, he provided himſelf with a ſleeping waggon, which is made of leather, reſembling a cradle, and hung upon braces, and in this manner rode poſt to Peterſburgh in this journey he found the horſes bad, but the ſtages were ſhort, and the inns clean.

Having paſſed through ſeveral inconſiderable places, he arrived at Dorpt, which is about two hundred and thirty werſts from Riga, and ſtands in a plain, watered by the river Embeck, which runs into the lake Peipus. The country on the ſide towards Riga, preſents a moſt delightful proſpect; and the trade of the towns conſiſts moſtly in corn and flax. Dorpt reſembles a ſuperb heap of ruins, among which are the remains of a caſtle which Peter the Great took from the Swedes in 1704, and upon this occaſion great part of the town was deſtroyed by fire. From hence the country is cleared of wood, and well inhabited.

Mr. Hanway now travelled along the banks of the lake Peipus, which is one hundred and twenty werſts long and ſixty broad, having a communication with the lake Pſcow or Pleſkow, the borders of which are famous for producing flax. From thence he proceeded through ſeveral places to Narva, the capital of Eſtonia. This city is not large, but ſtands on a riſing ground, and is clean and well fortified. Its trade conſiſts moſtly in flax and timber. Two werſts above the town is a cataract in the river Narva, at which they are obliged to unload the barks. This city is remarkable for the great defeat which the Ruſſians met with in the year 1700, when 100,000 of them fled before a handful of Swedes From this place he travelled one hundred and forty-ſix werſts to Peterſburgh, the whole diſtance between Narva and that city being 549 werſts, or 398 miles.

Our author arrived at Peterſburgh on the 10th of June, and was extremely pleaſed to find a city ſo open, airy, and in many places ſo regularly built with good houſes in the Italian taſte.

Our readers may remember, that Mr. Hanway had formed the deſign of viſiting Perſia, ſhould any convenient opportunity offer. Several intimations of the diſtreſſed condition of that country, indeed made ſome impreſſion on him; but did not abate his curioſity. His partner, and the other factors, were ſoon alarmed at the complaints of the Ruſſian court againſt Mr. Elton; and it being reſolved, that one of them ſhould go into Perſia, Mr. Hanway offered his ſervice, which was accepted. Having at length obtained a paſſport from the court of Ruſſia, he provided a ſleeping waggon, another for his clerk, and a third for his baggage, alſo a Ruſſian menial ſervant, a Tartar boy, and a ſoldier: then receiving ſuch inſtructions as were neceſſary from the factors who were intereſted in this new commerce, he took upon him the charge of a caravan of thirty-ſeven bales of Engliſh cloth, and prepared for his journey.

The caravan of cloth, conſiſting of twenty loads, ſet out on the firſt of September, and on the 10th Mr. Hanway followed it. He had an order for nine poſt horſes, and was to pay a farthing each, for every werſt; but being reſolved to make all poſſible ſpeed, he hired peaſants horſes, which are better, and double the expence. In two days he reached the river Volcoff, when the ferry-man, finding he was a merchant, began to be inſolent; for the Ruſſian boors have a contemptible notion of all traders; the delay and impertinence to which he was expoſed, obliged his ſoldier to exerciſe his cane, which ſoon brought the fellow to reaſon, and made him perform his office. On the 13th, the darkneſs of the night, with the wind and rain, together with the badneſs of the road, and one of the carriages being ſtuck in a bog, obliged our author, and his attendant, to ſleep in their waggons in the open

field, and the next day they reached Baanitz, which is near Novogorod, and is two hundred and thirty werſts from Peterſburgh. The weather was now mild, the road was open and pleaſant, and proviſions ſo cheap, that good beef might be bought for the value of three farthings a pound, mutton and pork in proportion, and bread at about one-ſixth part of its uſual value in England.

On the 15th, they arrived at Valdai, where is a conſiderable monaſtery. The inhabitants are moſtly Poles, brought here as priſoners in former wars; but the diſtinction is now almoſt loſt. The dreſs of the women is neater, and their perſons handſomer than the generality of the Ruſſian peaſants; but their exceſſive laughter, and painting their faces, greatly diminiſh their external charms. The country is hilly, and affords many pleaſant proſpects; and Mr. Hanway obſerves, that Venus ſeems to have made this her particular reſidence, from the many amorous ſongs admired by the Ruſſians, in relation to the ſcenes of delight this place affords; though the moſt refined parts of love are hardly to be found among the preſent inhabitants. The next day our author got to Twere, where he came up with his caravan. Great complaints were made by the carriers of the badneſs of the roads, which increaſed his fears of not reaching Perſia that year; therefore, inſtead of one horſe to each load, he ordered two, and promiſed the carriers a handſome preſent, on condition of their exerting themſelves to the utmoſt of their power.

In Ruſſia, carriages for merchandiſe are nine or ten feet long, and two or three feet broad: they are principally compoſed of two ſtrong poles, ſupported by four ſlight wheels of near an equal ſize, and about the height of the fore wheels of our coaches; many of them have wheels of a ſingle piece of wood, and ſome are not ſhod with iron. Theſe carriages are drawn only by one horſe. The bales are laid on a bed of thick mats, and over them are uſually placed thick mats two

or three times double, and an upper covering of raw cow-hides.

On the 19th, Mr. Hanway arrived at Kiln, a very agreeable place, near a ſmall branch of the river Kliazma, and paſſing through ſeveral ſmall villages, the next day he arrived at Moſcow, the metropolis of the Ruſſian empire.

Among other great works of Peter I. he cauſed a road to be cut from Peterſburgh, that was to extend the whole diſtance of 734 werſts, or 487 Engliſh miles in a direct line; but it is not entirely completed, nor is the part performed exactly executed on the original plan. Vaſt foreſts of firs, birch, and other trees, were cut through, and a paſſage made over moraſſes, till then thought impaſſable. Immenſe quantities of timber were hewn down, ditches were made, and the earth being thrown up and levelled, ſtraight firs with their ſurfaces made plain, were laid cloſe to each other upon it. Theſe are ſupported by a foundation of the ſame kind of timber, compoſed of a row of trees on each ſide ſecured by croſs timbers. This road of timber, is carried according as the land requires it, for about one hundred and fifty werſts, and as Mr. Hanway calculated, contains two million one hundred thouſand trees; beſides, which, there are on the ſides of the road great quantities of timber that have never been uſed.

Moſcow is in the latitude of 55°. 40′. and is built ſomewhat after the eaſtern manner, it having few regular ſtreets, and a great number of houſes with gardens. It is about ſixteen Engliſh miles in circumference, the river Moſkwa runs through it, and making many windings, adds a very ſtriking beauty to the city; but in ſummer it is in many places ſhallow and unnavigable. Several eminences, interſperſed with groves, gardens, and lawns, form the moſt delightful proſpect: but the dreadful fires, that have laid waſte the city, have hardly left houſes ſufficient to accommodate the empreſs's retinue, without diſtreſſing the people. The

imperial palace in the city is remarkable for ſcarce any thing but its having 30 chapels and a very lofty hanging garden; but great part of it appears rather like a priſon than a royal palace. The number of churches and chapels in Muſcow is hardly credible, they are ſaid to be above 1800, but many of them are very mean, and and moſt of the pictures were done when the art of painting was in its infancy.

One of the moſt remarkable things in this city is the great bell, which is of a ſtupendous ſize, and affords a ſurpriſing proof of the folly of thoſe who cauſed it to be made; but the Ruſſians have for time immemorial, been extremely fond of great bells. This is 443,772 pounds weight, and was caſt in the reign of the late empreſs Anne. But the beam on which it hung being burnt, it fell, and a large piece is broke out of it.

Moſcow being in the heart of the empire, is the reſidence of thoſe of the nobility who are not obliged to follow the court, and is particularly inhabited by the chief merchants and manufacturers. It would be amazing, that the dreadful fires that have here ſpread ſuch devaſtation through this city, have not prevented building with wood, did not the cheapneſs of that kind of building, and the poverty of many of the inhabitants, render it in a manner neceſſary. However, by a late decree of the Ruſſian ſenate, wood houſes are limited to a certain quarter of the city, and in all other places they are to be built with brick and ſtone.

The Ruſſians in general preſerve a great ſhare of the ſimplicity of their forefathers: the modern refinements, which in ſome countries have rendered it unpolite for a ſon to call his father by that endearing name, is little known among them; and here in the politeſt correſpondences of a man's chriſtian name, with that of his father's, as John the ſon of Thomas, is eſteemed the moſt reſpectful addreſs.

On the 24th of September, having provided ſuch proviſions as were thought neceſſary, Mr. Hanway left

Moſcow, and paſſed through ſeveral villages near the weſtern banks of the Occa. The country is hilly, but abounds in arable land, and is adorned with a beautiful variety of groves. The next day he arrived at Kolumna, 80 werſts from Moſcow, which makes a better appearance than moſt cities in that part of the world; for it has many ſtone and brick buildings, and a good wall; it has likewiſe ſeveral turrets of a very irregular figure, but being covered with gilded tin they make a good appearance.

After paſſing the Occa, he ſtill found the country very pleaſant. The horſes were now feeding on the rye juſt ſprouting from the earth.

Being advanced on the 26th to Periſtawl Raizanſkoi, he found himſelf in another climate; for the harveſt was not gathered in. The roads are for the moſt part very good: the country has little wood, but is delightfully watered: but the people are extremely poor, as appears by the houſes of the peaſants that are covered with ſtraw, in a manner that ſhews even their ignorance of thatching. Their language and dreſs are different from thoſe of the more northern Ruſſians. Mr. Hanway was ſurpriſed to behold ſo fine a country, at no more than 200 werſts from the metropolis, make ſuch an appearance of indigence; but the lords are ſuch bad œconomiſts, that they defeat their own deſigns, and before the peaſants feel the ſweets of their labour, not only refuſe to aſſiſt them, but in a great meaſure obſtruct their induſtry. He was now in an open fertile country; but the people were ſo indigent, that many of their cottages conſiſted only of one room, about five or ſix yards ſquare, which often contained ſix or eight perſons of both ſexes; but the inhabitants are neither numerous nor very reſerved with regard to the ordinary conſequences of ſuch cohabitations.

Having travelled 300 wreſts from Kolumna, he arrived at Koſlove, a city fortified with a wall of earth, which ſerved to ſecure it from the invaſions of the Tartars.

On the firſt of October, Mr. Hanway entered the Step. The inhabitants who are neareſt to it, often improve their land by burning the graſs which grows to a great length, and where it is not burnt, they procure provender for their cattle during the winter ſeaſon, by ſcraping away the ſnow, and ſuffering them to feed on the half periſhed graſs. Here he overtook a caravan of forty loads of European goods belonging to Armenian merchants. On the 2d, he arrived at Novocho-perſkaja, the proper boundary of Ruſſia on the river Choper, which falls into the Don. This is the Ruſſian frontier towards the Don Coſſacks, and is fortified with palliſades, dry moats, and a rampart, on which ſome ſmall pieces of cannon are mounted: it is almoſt ſurrounded by a grove of oakes. The adjacent country is very delightful, and the roads exceeding good. He now paſſed through ſeveral Coſſack towns, where he found the people clean and well clothed: the women are gay and comely; they adorn their heads with a cap riſing about four inches from their foreheads, with two points in the form of a creſcent, and their ſhifts ar ornamented with red croſſes: the unmarried women wear their hair plaited behind in the Ruſſian manner.

The Coſſacks are a ſpecies of Tartars; the name ſignifies free-booters; but they are here civilized, and being indulged by the Ruſſian government, continue faithful, and are ready when called upon, to attend the Ruſſian army: each man uſually brings with him two horſes, and upon theſe occaſions they are well cloathed, and accoutered at their own expence. They receive pay only in time of war when actually employed, and then only ſix rubles a year, with proviſion and plunder; yet being exempt from taxes they have no provocation to forſake their maſters. They are a gallant and ſober people, and ſome of them are ſaid to poſſeſs 300 cows, and 1000 ſheep. They marry very young, and our author talked with a boy of fifteen, who was engaged to a girl of the ſame age.

On the 9th, in the morning, he arrived under the lines that are thrown up from the Don, the ancient Tanais, to the Volga, for the diſtance of about 50 werſts. The ditch is near ſixteen feet deep; but not made entirely ſquare, and their is a bank of earth near twenty feet high, with ſtrong timber rails towards the top. At certain diſtances are placed centry boxes, from which the guard can communicate an alarm to the chief garriſon at Zaritzen, which terminates the line to the weſtern banks of the Volga. On this ſpot Peter the Great intended to join the Don and the Volga; and the canal was actually begun for that purpoſe. By this means a communication would have been opened with Turky, and the czar might have attacked that empire with ſhips built on the Volga; but this undertaking proved very difficult from the hardneſs of the ſoil.

The Kuban Tartars were once very formidable here; but the river Kuma, which diſcharges itſelf into the Caſpian ſea, now ſerves as a barrier to theſe people, who are kept in awe by the Ruſſians; but they had lately made excurſions, and carried off the inhabitants of whole villages, with all the cattle. They now only make their appearance in ſmall parties, which ſometimes break through the lines, and carry off horſes, that ſerve them for food as well as for ordinary uſes. The ſun was yet warm, and the weather delightful. On the plains near Raritzen are fed dromedaries.

Zaritzen is ſituated in the latitude 47. 30. 688 miles from Moſcow, on a high bank of the Volga, of which it commands a fine proſpect. It is thinly inhabited, and the buildings are mean; but it is defended by a deep ditch, a rampart mounted with cannon, and a garriſon of 6000 men.

In a deep valley on the ſouth ſide is an encampment of Calmuck Tartars, who are in friendſhip with the Ruſſians, while they awe them by their power. They have the ſame turn of viſage with the Chineſe; but are fierce and ſavage. Theſe are a diſperſed tribe of thoſe

Mungalians, whom the Chineſe long ago received as their conquerors. They are armed with bows and arrows, they feed on the fleſh of horſes, camels, dromedaries, and other animals, and eat their entrails even when they die of the foulеſt diſtempers. They throw their dead into open fields to be devoured by the dogs, many of which run wild, and ſome are kept for that purpoſe: if theſe bodies are devoured by any number exceeding ſix, they think honourably of the deceaſed, otherwiſe he is thought a diſgrace to his relations.

They worſhip images, which are generally ſmall bits of wood about a palm in length; and the upper part being rounded, is adorned with a rude reſemblance of human features: theſe figures are dreſſed up in a few rags. Their ſupreme deity is Delli Lama. In proſperous ſeaſons and fine weather, they careſs their ragged gods; but treat them very ill when the contrary happens. The many acts of violence committed by theſe barbarians, induced the Ruſſian goverment to compel them to dwell on the banks of the Volga below Aſtrachan, where they have but little opportunity for robbery and murder, though here they alſo tranſgreſs.

Mr. Hanway now employed himſelf in procuring a proper veſſel to convoy his goods to Aſtrachan, and found one that was juſt arrived with 400 ſacks of flour. He was extremely ſhocked at ſeeing on what ſlight embarkations his friends were obliged to truſt their valuable effects in a navigation of a river full of ſhelves, and trees, which accidentally falling into the water, ſink and become as dangerous as rocks.

Having given the neceſſary inſtructions with regard to carrying the goods, he prepared for his own voyage down the Volga, by buying two boats, each to be navigated by five watermen, and his own attendants, with the addition of ſix ſoldiers for a convoy: for though he had aſſurances of ſafety, prudence ſuggeſted that he could not gain, but might loſe conſiderably by too much confidence. The Volga is frequently infeſted with pirates

who go in gangs of thirty, forty, and ſometimes eighty perſons; they make uſe of row-boats, which carry from twenty to thirty hands, and furniſh themſelves with fire-arms. Their general practice is to board immediately; but where they apprehend a brave reſiſtance, they ſeldom make an attack. Hence, few of the Ruſſian merchants tranſport any cargo of value down this river without a convoy. Theſe robbers appear moſtly in the ſpring, when the banks of the Volga being overflowed, they can the more eaſily eſcape a purſuit. The ſoldiers, who are occaſionally ſent after them, are ordered to take them alive, from the apprehenſion that allowing them to kill, might prove fatal to the innocent, through the ſtrong temptations to plunder, with which the ſoldiers are actuated.

The Armenians generally fight with great bravery and intrepidity in defence of their property; but the Bourlacks who navigate the Volga, are ſo intimidated by theſe robbers, that they no ſooner appear, than they behave like men ſtruck with a panic, and even aſcribe to them an irreſiſtible power, derived from an infernal ſpirit. It was formerly their cuſtom, in theſe caſes, to fall on their faces, as ſoon as required by the robbers, and to ſuffer them to plunder at pleaſure, not daring to look up, leſt it ſhould coſt them their lives. The merchant, or the maſter of the veſſel, being thus at their mercy, is happy if he eſcapes with life; for the robbers have ſeldom any ſentiments of humanity for a man of ſuperior rank; but if he boldly attempts to defend himſelf, in hopes of bringing his people to the charge, he may be ſure, if conquered, of being barbarouſly murdered. Theſe robbers are accuſtomed to obſerve the ſame conduct on the Caſpian ſea, but much leſs of late years than formerly.

The puniſhment of theſe wretches when taken is not leſs dreadful, than the cruelties they commit. A float is built, whereon a gallows is erected, on which is faſtened a number of iron hooks, and on theſe they are hung alive by the ribs. The float is then launched in-

to the ſtream with labels over their heads, ſignifying their crime; and orders are given to all the towns and villages on the border of the river, that none on pain of death, ſhall afford relief to any of theſe wretches; but put off the float if it runs aſhore. Sometimes they are met by their partners in wickedneſs, who, if they have no hopes of their recovery, take them down, otherwiſe they put an end to their miſery by ſhooting them; but if they are catched in theſe illegal acts of mercy, they are themſelves hung up, without the ceremony of a trial. It is ſaid, that one of theſe miſcreants had the good fortune to diſengage himſelf from the hook, and though naked and trembling with pain and loſs of blood, he got aſhore, when the firſt object he ſaw being a poor ſhepherd, he had the cruelty to beat out his brains with a ſtone, and then to take his clothes. Theſe malefactors ſometimes hang thus three, four, and ſometimes five days alive. The pain generally produces a raging fever, wherein they utter the moſt horrid imprecations, and implore the relief of water, or other ſmall liquors.

Before our author began his voyage, he ſent letters to his friends by meſſengers appointed to attend a box of grapes ſent every three days during the ſeaſon, from Aſtrachan to the Empreſs's court, and carried by two horſes, in the manner of a litter. The grapes at beſt muſt be ill worth the expence of being conveyed 1200 Engliſh miles.

On the 14th of October, Mr. Hanway put off from ſhore; the ſtern part of his boat was covered with mats, ſo that he could ſleep protected from the weather, which now began to be very cold. He took ſome of the ſoldiers with him, that if by accidents he ſhould be ſeparated from his goods, he might have ſome aſſiſtſtance.

In the ſpring, the high waters of the Volga not only undermine its banks, but ſweep away large trees, ſo that ſome creeks of the river had hardly any paſſage left. The ſoldiers fed luxurioufly at the fiſheries, for

nothing more than thanks. The weather was calm, and the current moderate; in many places the banks are high, and in others there is a flat ſhore, the breadth being from a mile to a quarter of a mile.

On the 17th, our author ſtopped at Chernoyare. This is the firſt town from Zaritzen, from which it is diſtant two hundred werſts, and is eſteemed half way to Aſtrachan. It is defended by a ditch with ſome cannon, and chevaux de frize. The inhabitants trade with the Kalmucks, Kubans, and other Tartars, in a quarter diſtinct from the town. The next day, though he was obliged to lie by in the night, he advanced ninety werſts, but not without danger of being drowned; for the boat had no keel, nor any running tackle, and the watermen being extremely unſkilful, and not able to let the ſail fly, it was a ſingular providence that they were not overſet. As he proceeded further ſeveral wrecks appeared on the banks of the river. Great flights of geeſe and ſwans were now on the wing, retiring from the approaching ſeverities of this climate, to the warmer regions of Perſia.

On the 19th, he obſerved on the ſhore a houſe made under ground, the walls were wicker-work, and the light came in from the top. Here was provided a bagnio for bathing, which the Ruſſians uſe almoſt as much as the Mahometans. The place was inhabited by ſome Nogay and Circaſſian Tartars, who ply on the river with open boats; and here were alſo ſome ſettlements of the Calmucks. From Zaritzen to Aſtrachan very little wood appeared on the banks of the Volga; in ſome parts of the weſtern ſide the country is hilly, and the ſoil is in ſeveral places rich.

Mr. Hanway being arrived at Aſtrachan, was obliged to wait for captain Woodroofe, in whoſe ſhip he intended to embark for Perſia, and took this opportunity of obtaining a more full information of the city of Aſtrachan, and its neighbourhood.

This city is the metropolis of a kingdom of the ſame name, ſituated in 47°. north latitude, within the

limits of Aſia, in an iſland called Dolgoi, ſixty Engliſh miles from the Caſpian ſea. It was taken from the Tartars, and contains about 70,000 inhabitants, among whom are many Armenians and Tartars of various denominations, with a few Perſians and Indians. The manners and cuſtoms of all theſe different people exhibit an epitome of Aſia. The city is about two miles and a half round, but including the ſuburbs, five miles. It is ſurrounded by an old ruinous brick wall, and defended by a garriſon of ſix regiments of the beſt Ruſſian troops; alſo in the adjacent plain are erected many ſmall batteries. The houſes are of wood, and moſt of them very mean; the higher part commands a proſpect of the Volga, which is here near three miles broad; but the melting of the ſnow which creates floods, and the riſing of the water in autumn, are obſerved to affect the air and cauſe diſeaſes. The city is ſurrounded by gardens, and vineyards, which lie about two miles from it, and produce all the roots, plants, and trees known in England, except potatoes, collyflowers, and artichokes; and their orchards furniſh them with plenty of apples, pears, cherries, and water melons, which in taſte and colour reſemble thoſe in Portugal. Our author met with no fruit which he thought extraordinary, but theſe melons; though the court are ſo fond of the grapes, as to procure them at the expence of the land carriage, as already mentioned. The wine of Aſtrachan is alſo very indifferent; as their ſummers are generally dry, they are obliged to water their gardens: this is done by large wheels, ſome of which are moved by horſes, and others by the wind. Theſe wheels are ſo high as to throw the water to the moſt elevated part of the garden, whence it runs in trenches to the root of every tree and plant; in this manner the gardens and vineyards are generally watered from the middle of May to the middle of September. The chief game in the neighbouring country is partridges and hares; here are alſo water and wild fowl of all ſorts in great abundance, and in ſummer plenty of quails.

Captain Woodroofe, who had been for ſometime at Aſtrachan, aſſured our author, that from the latter end of July to the beginning of October, the country about that city is frequently infeſted with locuſts, which fly in ſuch prodigious numbers that they darken the air, and appear at a diſtance like a heavy cloud. The inhabitants ſay they are generally ſeen, as the cold weather comes on, in their flight from the northward to the ſouthward. Wherever they fall they eat up every thing that is green; all gardens therefore look out for them, and upon their firſt appearance, endeavour to keep them off by making as much ſmoak and as great a noiſe as poſſible; but theſe deſtructive inſects, after flying as long as they are able, ſometimes fall in their gardens, on the tops of houſes, and even in the fires. Their bodies, compared with the ſmallneſs of their wings, are very large, and generally from two inches to two and a half long, and about three quarters of an inch in diameter; their ſhape nearly reſembles the largeſt ſort of green graſhoppers. Mr. Woodroofe obſerves in his journal, that, as he was once ſailing up the Volga to Aſtrachan, he ſaw a prodigious cloud coming from the weſt-north-weſt, which is acroſs the river. The winds at that time blew very freſh, and nearly from the ſame point, when the locuſts falling down, the water was covered with ſuch vaſt ſwarms of them, that in ſome places they greatly obſtructed the motion of the boat, for ten or twevle fathoms together. He alſo ſays, they live for ſome time under water, for as they mounted on each others backs they formed a cluſter of near three feet diameter, which rolled along by the force of the wind, and the rapidity of the current. In this manner they were driven aſhore. Their wings being dried, they got upon the paſture, and very few were drowned. For three days they lay ſo thick upon the plain upwards of three miles round, that it was impoſſible to walk without treading upon them, and when they began to fly, they diſappeared in leſs than half an hour, leaving the plain without a blade of graſs.

The trade of Aſtrachan is very conſiderable, though much diminiſhed by the troubles in Perſia, and the frequent revolt of the Tartars. Their foreign trade conſiſts in red leather, linen, woollen cloth, and European manufactures, the greateſt part of which they export to Perſia for the Armenians; in return the import Perſian manufactures, as ſilk ſaſhes intermixed with gold, for the uſe of the Poles; wrought ſilks, and ſtuffs mixed with cotton; raw ſilk, cotton, a ſmall quantity of drugs, and in particular rhubarb; but this laſt article is engroſſed by the government, and private perſons are forbid to deal in it upon pain of death. The officers of the admiralty and cuſtom-houſe of Aſtrachan have very ſmall ſalaries; which is the caſe in all other parts of Ruſſia; ſo that inſtead of doing their duty, and diſpatching buſineſs, they often ſeek pretences to protract it, in order to obtain the more conſiderable preſents. Upon theſe occaſions French brandy, white wine, hats, ſtockings, and ribbons, are acceptable.

While Mr. Hanway was here, the governor invited him to a feaſt, at which there were near an hundred diſhes; this gave him an opportunity of ſeeing a ſingular ſpecimen of Ruſſian intemperance, for above 20 people drank to exceſs in goblets filled with a kind of cherry-brandy. This feaſt was made for the birth of the governor's grand daughter, on which occaſion each of the gueſts preſented an offering according to his rank. This is a civil way of levying a tax from the merchants, and a cuſtom though not elegant, leſs abſurd, in the opinion of our author, than thoſe of ſome politer countries; for here without diſguiſe or ceremony, you leave one or two ducats, or ſome richer preſent on the bed of the lady, who ſits up with great formality to be ſaluted.

Mr. Hanway was led by his curioſity to ſee the devotions of the Indian Pagans in a little temple they have here. Their prieſts uſe beads, incenſe, proſtrations, and offerings, ſmall bells, with other muſic, and raiſe

their voices in ſinging with the utmoſt vehemence. The object of their adoration was a pagod, ugly and deformed to a degree of horror. The ſervice being over, they preſented Mr. Hanway ſome of the fruits which had been offered to this idol, but he thought proper to refuſe them; though not without ſome melancholy reflections on the abject ſtate to which he ſaw human nature reduced.

The Tartars here have the utmoſt abhorrence of this image worſhip, and will not even carry money that has the impreſſion of man, or any living creature in their temple. Their devotions are performed in ſilent proſtrations, only the prieſt, at certain times, utters an invocation to the Lord of Nature, through the mediation of Mahomet.

For ſeveral miles round the city where the ſoil will admit of cultivation, there are ſettlements of a very civil and induſtrious people of the race of the Crim Tartars, who are tributary to the Ruſſians. In the ſummer they improve their land, the produce of which is a ſeed called manna, oats, muſk, and water-melons; but their wives and children, with their ſheep, horſes, and cattle, they reckon their principal treaſure. When a daughter becomes marriageable, they cover her tent with white linen; tie a painted cloth on the top, with red ſtrings, and place by the ſide of the tent a painted waggon, which is to be her marriage portion. This is a ſignal to thoſe who deſign to marry, and the girl is generally given to him who offers the father the moſt valuable preſent. Theſe people are Mahometans, and contrary to the practice of the Calmucks, are extremely nice in their burying-places: they dig their graves very deep, line them with brick dried in the ſun, white-waſh them on the inſide, and build a cover over them. They then raiſe thick walls of mud round the place, and fix over the top one or more flags, according to the characters of the deceaſed.

On the eighth of November our author left Aſtracan, under convoy of the governor's barge with twelve

grenadiers, and at night ſlept within piſtol-ſhot of a Calmuck ſettlement compoſed of round tents raiſed with canes, in the form of a cone, and covered with a thick felt of camel's hair, which keeps out the weather extremely well. Theſe tents are about twelve feet high, and from ten to fifteen yards in circumference. The inhabitants make a fire in the centre of the tent, and the ſmoke iſſues from the top, at a hole left for that purpoſe. The people are miſerably poor, and ſubſiſt on fiſh, which they take in the Volga, drying in ſummer the proviſions they prepare for the winter. They prefer living on the banks where the flags and ruſhes grow to a great height, thinking that they defend them from the ſeverity of the winter's cold. There are ſeldom more than ſeven or eight tents in a place, which contain thirty or forty perſons, who live in diſtinct families, and a chief whom they chuſe from among themſelves. There are other Calmucks, who travel to the ſouth on the approach of winter, and return northward in the heat of ſummer.

As Mr. Hanway advanced within thirty werſts in the mouth of the Volga, he deſcried a great number of ſmall iſlands; the whole ſcene appearing wild and inhoſpitable. Being happily arrived at Terki, he embarked in the Britiſh ſhip the Empreſs of Ruſſia, and was rejoiced at finding himſelf in a veſſel of good oak, probably the only complete ſhip which had till that time appeared on the Caſpian ſea. It gave him no leſs pleaſure to ſee the Engliſh flag hoiſted, and to receive thoſe common marks of eſteem, which maſters of ſhips pay to their merchants, when they have any guns.

As we are going to take leave of the Volga, a river ſo often mentioned, we ſhall here give a more particular deſcription of it. It was anciently called the Rha, and is juſtly eſteemed for its extent and depth, one of the nobleſt rivers in the world. It derives its ſource from the lake Fernoff, in the province of Kerkoff, running, according to general computation, near 4,500

werſts, or 3,000 Engliſh miles, before it empties itſelf into the Caſpian ſea. Into this river fall the Twerſa which comes from Twere, the Moſcwa from Moſcow, the Occa from Columna, the Kama, which divides the Nogay and Kuban Tartary, the Samar and Samora, and many others. It is of the utmoſt utility to the vaſt empire of Ruſſia, both with regard to commerce, and as it has been a means of reducing the different tribes of Tartars who frequent its borders. The immenſe quantities of water that flow into it from other rivers, and from the mountains when the ſnow melts in the ſpring, are the cauſe of its ſwelling at different times and places. It uſually begins to riſe in March, and increaſes in April and May, continuing above its uſual mark 'till the end of June; and then it decreaſes very faſt. It is often raiſed in September by autumnal rains; but this riſe is neither ſo conſtant nor ſo conſiderable. As there are many different climates in the courſe of the river, the ice breaks up at different times. The banks are altered almoſt every year by the force of the current, and by the ſands blown into the river from the adjacent countries. The danger ariſing from theſe ſhifting banks are not very great, but they create delays. The uſual courſe of the ſtream can hardly be reckoned above a mile an hour. The navigation is difficult for veſſels that draw above five feet water, except in times of flood, when the largeſt flat-bottomed veſſels find ſufficient water. Our author has ſeen one afloat in the month of October, ſaid to have ſix hundred tons of ſalt and fiſh on board. And in ſome ſeaſons they have barks of greater burden. The trade carried on in this river is great and extenſive; but from no place more conſiderable than from Yariſlaw and Caſan.

Beſides the great abundance of fiſh taken in the Volga, and ſent either ſalted or frozen to diſtant parts of the Ruſſian empire, a commerce is carried on in caviare, which is the roe of ſturgeon and the fiſh called beluga, and is thus prepared: they take away

the ſtringy part, then mix it with ſalt well cleaned and made into brine, and when drained from the oily parts and preſſed, it becomes of ſuch a conſiſtence as to keep two or three years. In the winter, it is ſent to all parts of the empire, and is much eſteemed by the natives as well as foreigners. A large quantity is made for exportation, which is conſumed by the Chriſtians of Italy and the Levant. The Armenians have the greateſt ſkill in preparing it, and uſually make about 6000 poods, or 100 tons, every year: and in 1749, they brought 20,000 poods to market.

On the 22d of September, Mr. Hanway ſet ſail, and on the 3d of December, arrived in Langarood bay; where being informed, that Mr. Elton was removed from Reſhd to Langarood, to attend the maritime affairs in which he had engaged, he ſent to let that gentleman know of his arrival, upon which he came on board, and conducted our author on ſhore, where he gave him a polite reception. Mr. Hanway delivered to him a pair of piſtols of exquiſite workmanſhip, mounted in gold, and ſome other curious things which Mr. Elton had wrote for, at the deſire of Ali Kouli Khan, the Shah's nephew, with whom he was ſolicitous of cultivating a good correſpondence.

Mr. Elton's habitation at Langarood, was about eight Engliſh miles from the ſhore, in the midſt of a wood ſurrounded with marſhes, where the roads were hardly paſſable. It was ſituated at the foot of a lofty mountain open only to the ſea, this intercepted the paſſage of the air, and rendered the place very unwholeſome; for as Ghilan is generally eſteemed the ſink of Perſia, ſo Langarood is conſidered as the ſink of Ghilan. Mr. Hanway ſpent ſeven days with this gentleman, during which they talked over the affairs of the Caſpian trade. Mr. Elton was indeed ſeriouſly employed in building ſhips for the Shah, and proved that he was capable of ſurmounting the greateſt difficulties. Mr. Hanway expreſſed his fears of the conſequence of his engage-

ment with Nadir, and pointed out many capital inconveniencies he apprehended would follow from it.

One great inducement to open the Caſpian trade, was, the hopes of eſtabliſhing a new branch of commerce from Aſtrabad to Meſched, from whence Mr. Elton thought it practicable to extend it to the northern cities of the Mogul's empire. It now fell to Mr. Hanway's lot to attempt the execution of this deſign. He had brought with him to the value of 5000 l. in woollen goods, for which he found there was no market in Ghilan, and therefore his preſence there would be of little uſe. But though Mr. Elton had already ſecured the Shah's expreſs decree, by which it was ordered, that ſafe conduct ſhould be given to him in all parts of his dominions; he was ſo alarmed by the vicinity of the Turkuman Tartars to Aſtrabad, that he did not chuſe to venture, till by enquiring, he found that in caſe of danger, he might there have what guard of ſoldiers he pleaſed.

On the 10th of December, our author having taken leave of Mr. Elton, went down to the creek. The ſhip was at anchor out of ſight of land, and the wind blew very freſh; he had a crazy boat rowed by Perſians, who are for the moſt part equally timorous and unſkilful, ſo that it was with reluctance he ventured to ſea; but he ſoon got ſight of the ſhip, and happily reached her.

He directed his courſe for Aſtrabad, and was four days in ſight of the great mountain Demoan, which is ſaid to be thirty leagues within land, and yet at the diſtance of four or five leagues from the ſhore, it might be diſtinguiſhed very plainly, riſing in the form of a pyramid.

On the 18th of December, he entered Aſtrabad bay, into which runs the river Korgun, after waſhing the bank of the deſart of Turkumania. The ſea has here, as well as in other parts of the Caſpian, made great inroads, ſo that in many places trees lie on the ſhore, and render it as difficult of acceſs, as its appear-

ance is wild and inhoſpitable. The ſhip having caſt anchor, Mr. Hanway diſpatched an Armenian ſervant to know if he might land his goods with ſafety, but he ſoon returned without obtaining any information. Many fires were inſtantly ſeen in different places, and upon the mountains, to alarm the inhabitants for fear of a ſurpriſe, for this was taken for a pirate ſhip, and the people on the coaſt were terrified on account of their having been often plundered by the pirates. Two days after Mr. Hanway went on ſhore; but ſtumps of trees and ſhallows made it difficult for a long boat to land nearer than twenty yards. However, the peaſants being at length ſatisfied that he was come on a friendly errand, came with merchandiſe; received Mr. Hanway and his attendants, and conducted them by many crooked paths through a thick wood to a ſmall village. Theſe people are ſwarthy, but their features regular and ſomewhat delicate. Our author ſent his Armenian interpreter with his compliments to Mahommed Zaman Beg, the governor of Aſtrabad, and with orders to provide neceſſaries for the freſh package of the cloth, after which he returned on board.

On the 21ſt, it was obſerved, that the ſun was riſen about an hour before it was viſible to thoſe in the ſhip, ſuch is the ſtupendous height of the mountains. The governor ſent to aſſure Mr. Hanway of his protection, and to adviſe him not to repoſe any confidence in the peaſants near the coaſt. A few days after, he was viſited by Nazeer Aga a Perſian officer, who had been recommended to him as a perſon of great probity: he made him an offer of his houſe at Aſtrabad, which Mr. Hanway accepted, and aſſured him of the ſenſe he had of his own happineſs in meeting with ſo kind and generous a friend. Nazeer Aga was accompanied by Myrza, a grave old man, who had a great reputation for wiſdom.

On the 20th, the ſhip narrowly eſcaped being burnt; for about eighty pounds of raw cotton, intended for the package of the bales, being ſet on fire in the

ſteerage, by the careleſſneſs of one of the ſeamen, it was with difficulty extinguiſhed. Mr. Hanway was aſleep in the cabin and almoſt ſuffocated with ſmoke, and the danger was the greater, as the fire was about the powder-cheſt; but it pleaſed providence that no harm was done, except burning the hands and faces of ſome of the ſailors, which were ſoon cured. But at night, the woods and the mountains took fire, occaſioned by the cuſtom of burning ruſhes on the coaſt, in order to deſtroy the inſects that breed in them, and to afford a free paſſage for the air. This fire being aſſiſted by the wind made a dreadful blaze, which ſoon extended ſeveral miles; and the wind blowing from the ſhore brought with it ſuch heat, that the butter in the ſhip ran to oil. There had been a bright ſun, and no rain for twenty days, ſo that it was with difficulty the peaſants diverted the current of the flames, and ſaved their villages.

Mr. Hanway ſoon after prepared to go on ſhore; but the Armenian interpreter began now to expreſs his fears of the dangers to which they ſhould be expoſed, in their intended journey to Meſched, where he had been robbed, in ſome former rebellion, of goods to a conſiderable value; but, being of a timorous diſpoſition, what he ſaid made but little impreſſion on Mr. Hanway; and Myrza Mahommed having received orders from the governor of the province to ſuppy him with a guard, and to entertain him in his houſe, he landed the bales without waiting for the governor, who had intimated his deſign to viſit the ſhip.

On the 2d of January, 1744, Mr. Hanway pitched his tent on the ſhore, and collected all the people who were to convey the goods to the city. Myrza then ſent him an invitation to come to his houſe, and his ſon, who delivered the meſſage, aſſured him in a complimental ſtrain, that his father would kill him if he returned without him. Our author, however, excuſed himſelf till the next day. One of the company then ſung an extempore ſong, conſiſting moſtly of wel-

comes and fulſome commendations of the ſtrangers, after which they eat their pleo, which they finiſhed in a much ſhorter time than a table could be laid for a polite entertainment in Europe. At length they made large fires, round which the danced, and ſeemed filled with joy, and in the evening they performed their devotions. During the night, the jackalls in the woods barked and howled to ſuch a degree that it was very difficult for perſons unuſed to ſuch a noiſe to receive the refreſhment of ſleep. In the morning Myrza's brother and his two ſons came with ſeveral horſes, of which Mr. Hanway took one for himſelf and another for his interpreter, and in about eight hours they arrived at the city, the carriers making but one ſtop on the way, which was to perform their devotions.

The next day, as Mr. Hanway had not yet provided a proper equipage for appearing before the governor, Nazeer Aga, in whoſe houſe he was lodged, lent him a horſe handſomely capariſoned, and inſiſted on his taking his ſervants as well as his own to attend him. Mr. Hanway's preſent to the governor was carried in before him, and conſiſted of ſeveral cuts of fine cloth and loaves of ſugar laid on a large tea-board The governor was attended by ſeveral perſons of the greateſt diſtinction in the city, who all roſe at his coming and deſired him to take his place: when the governor, obſerving that he could not accommodate himſelf to their manner of ſitting ordered a chair, bid him welcome to Perſia, and told him that the city of Aſtrabad was now at his diſpoſal. Mr. Hanway returned him thanks for this high ſtrained compliment, and aſſured him of the great ſatisfaction he felt at being received into the protection of a perſon of his character and authority. He then mentioned the favourable decree granted by the Shah to the Engliſh merchants, and obſerved that it depended on the governor to ſee his majeſty's pleaſure executed. He afterwards aſked, if the paſſage to Meſched was ſafe; the governor anſwered in the affirmative, and that he would ſend four choice ſoldiers

with him, who ſhould be bound for the ſafe delivery of his caravan at Meſched. Upon this our author returned him his thanks and retired.

Mr. Hanway now, inſpired with gratitude, went to pay his reſpects to Nazeer Aga, of whoſe humanity and politeneſs he had received ſuch ſignal proofs. This old man had been Nadir's companion when he was only the chief of a party of robbers in the neighbouring mountains. He ſeemed too honeſt for Nadir's purpoſe, and his want of ambition ſecured him from moſt of the calamities common to favourites. His white beard gave a venerable air to his perſon, and a manly chearfulneſs rendered his company perfectly agreeable. The old man received him with great marks of kindneſs, and ſent for ſome maſter carriers to agree about conveying his caravan to Meſched. Here Mr. Hanway firſt received a proof of the equivocating diſpoſition of the modern Perſians, and finding it was impoſſible to fix them to any thing, he took his leave for that time.

Mr. Hanway was viſited a day or two after by ſeveral of the principal men of the place, who made their compliments by putting their hands on their breaſts, and bowing their head. Thoſe who are more familiar preſs the palm of your hand between both theirs, and then raiſe them to their forehead, to expreſs the high and cordial reſpect they have for your perſon. Moſt of the viſitors had an air of importance, and ſpoke little, but after ſitting and ſmoaking the caallean, for a few minutes, took their leave.

The Perſians are extremely fond of tobacco: theirs is yellow, and very mild compared with that of America; and they draw the ſmoak in prodigious quantities. The caallean uſed on this occaſion is a glaſs veſſel reſembling a decanter, filled about three parts with water. The tobacco being prepared and made into a ball, is put into a ſilver utenſil not unlike a tea-cup, which has a tube that reaches almoſt to the bottom of the water. Another tube is fixed to the neck of the veſſel above

the water, faſtened to a leathern pipe through which they draw the ſmoke, and as it paſſes through the water it is cool and pleaſant.

Mr. Hanway entertained ſome of his gueſts, according to the cuſtom of the country, with ſweetmeats of which they took a little, and gave the remainder to their ſervants: theſe are often ſo numerous, that a treat of this kind will coſt ten or twelve crowns. Abſurd and expenſive as this cuſtom appears, our author thought it leſs inconſiſtent than that which prevails in ſome parts of Europe, where a ſervant is rewarded by his maſter's gueſts for doing his duty.

The difficulties and delays made by the carriers gave Mr. Hanway great vexation, and ſome of the townſmen frequently importuned him to open his bales and ſell them pieces of cloth; but rather than agree to this, he made ſeveral of the principal perſons preſents of as much as was ſufficient for a coat. At length, being perſuaded by Nazeer Aga, he with great reluctance agreed to let the camel drivers ſet out with part of the goods two or three days before he was to follow them, alleging that they could not keep pace with the horſes. Accordingly on the 10th he delivered 40 bales, which were placed on the backs of ten camels, ſent an Armenian ſervant along with them, and appointed a place of rendezvous on the other ſide the moſt difficult paſſes of the mountains.

Mr. Hanway then made a viſit to the governor, who appeared perplexed and troubled. It was ſaid that he was providing horſes to ſend the king's treaſure, amounting to 17,000 crowns, to Caſbin, and he now let our author know, that he could not ſpare him above one ſoldier. He was extremely ſtartled at this news, and uſed many arguments to purſuade the governor to alter his reſolution, but without effect. He was aſtoniſhed to find that a caravan with 17,000 crowns in money ſhould have a ſtrong guard, while he with 30,000 crowns in cloth was to have only one ſoldier: but he

was ignorant of the ſecret, and this ignorance conſtituted his happineſs. He intended to follow the firſt caravan immediately, and prepared kedgavays, a kind of covered chairs big enough for one perſon to ſit in, which the Perſians hang over camels in the manner of panniers, that he might accommodate any of his company, ſhould they happen to fall ſick, and provide for his own ſecurity againſt the extremity of the cold.

He was preparing to leave this city, the firſt he had ſeen in Perſia; but while he was giving the neceſſary orders, Nazeer Aga came and told him that it was not a lucky hour, and therefore he muſt not depart. Mr. Hanway anſwered, that as he depended on that good providence which at all times governs the world, he paid no regard to lucky hours, and would therefore go: but the other replying, that he muſt not ſet out, he thought proper to ſubmit.

A diſmal ſcene began now to diſcloſe itſelf: Nazeer Aga had hardly left him, when he heard the hoarſe ſound of trumpets to call in the neighbouring inhabitants with their cattle. The ſhops were ordered to be ſhut up, and the townſmen repair to the walls. He now began to recollect a thouſand incidents which diſcovered the play that was about to be acted. Nazeer Aga immediately returned, and adviſed him to ſend for his ſhip, acknowledging that they were all in the utmoſt danger from the rebellion which had broke out in the neighbourhood of the city; but alas! this could not be done, for the veſſel had ſailed to another port. Mr. Hanway deſired him to ſend for the ten camel loads of cloth, that it might return back to the city, but the old man told him, that none were permitted to go out of the city, and that for fear of an inſurrection within the walls, a ſtrong guard was ordered to patrole the ſtreets.

It now appeared that Mahommed Haſſan Beg, who had left the city ſome days before, was in arms at the head of a party of Khajars, with an auxiliary body of Turkuman Tartars. Mahommed Khan Beg and Sa-

doc Aga, two young men of diſtinction, who were with the governor when Mr. Hanway firſt waited on him, had joined the rebels, and all unanimouſly declared, that they were reſolved to ſeize the Shah's treaſure, and particularly our author's caravan; and the better to delude the unhappy townſmen, they gave out that the Shah was dead.

The next day, the governor ſent ten ſoldiers to guard the ten camels loaded with Engliſh cloth back into the city; but the enemy was already poſſeſſed of all the avenues, and the goods were actually lodged in a village that belonged to Mahommed Khan Beg. The only comfort Nazeer Aga now gave Mr. Hanway was, that while he lived they ſhould not touch his life. The old man was now perfectly ſenſible of the danger which threatened that gentleman and his attendants. The reſpect that had always been ſhewn to Nazeer Aga by Mahommed Haſſan Beg, and thoſe who had embarked in this deſperate enterpriſe, induced him to venture among them, and to endeavour to diſſuade them from perſiſting in it, the old man made uſe of all his eloquence; but they ſuffered him to return, without his being able to make any impreſſion on them. Hitherto he had appeared undaunted; but he now ſeemed extremely diſturbed, and as much concerned as if he was that night to render up his accounts for his paſt life, and for the years that had rendered his beard ſo venerably hoary.

A beſieged city, and a faithleſs and weak garriſon, were things as new to Mr. Hanway as Perſia and the Perſians; but the dread he had conceived of the barbarity of the Turkuman Tartars, made a deeper impreſſion on his mind: the only hope that remained was, that it could anſwer no end to theſe barbarians to do violence to his perſon, ſince it could not conceal the robbery. His attendants would have perſuaded him to put on a Perſian habit; but he choſe to remain without diſguiſe. The rebel army having advanced near the city, the governor and

Nazeer Aga eſcaped by night in the diſguiſe of peaſants.

Thoſe who were not in the rebellion now curſed our author as the cauſe of their diſtreſs, alleging that it was his valuable goods that had made the rebels riſe in arms, in order to get them into their poſſeſſion; but as he had nothing to reproach himſelf with, theſe ſuggeſtions made little impreſſion on his mind. As all reſiſtance would have been vain, the people had nothing to do but to ſubmit to the conquerors, and the city was delivered to Mahommed Haſſan Beg without tumult.

On the 17th, the rebels entered the town with great ſigns of joy and mirth. A large party drove before them the calenter, or town-clerk, who had acted as ſub-governor, and another perſon, ſtark naked, inſiſted on their giving them the poſſeſſion of the king's treaſure, which the governor had concealed before his eſcape.

Sadoc Aga, who was appointed general, with Mahommed Khan Beg, and fourteen other perſons of diſtinction, now came to the houſe where Mr. Hanway dwelt: he had collected his attendants into one room, where he waited to know his fate: from thence he ſent a Tartar boy, who underſtood the Turkiſh language, to conduct theſe hoſtile viſitors to him, and tell them that he hoped to be treated with humanity. They immediately entered, and aſſured him, that they had no intention to hurt him, and would, as ſoon as the new government was eſtabliſhed, pay him for his goods, demanding at the ſame time to be informed, where they were lodged, and requiring him to give up to them his purſe; but when they had counted the money it contained, they delivered it back to him again. Mr. Hanway, however, had the addreſs to conceal a purſe of 160 crowns in gold.

After the rebels were in poſſeſſion of the city, they put only one man to death, who was a groom belonging to the late governor, and had been the actual

executioner of Tæhmas Shah, their laſt lawful ſovereign.

It was now apparent to Mr. Hanway, on what principles his pretended friend Myrza Mahommed had acted; he was in the ſecret of the rebellion at the time of his arrival, and had brought him into the city as a ſheep to the ſlaughter; however, as he had now nothing to loſe but his life, he thought it beſt to diſſemble his knowledge of his perfidy, and intreated him to recover for him the money he had advanced to the carriers, and he actually got back one hundred and fifty crowns.

Baba Sadoc was now governor of the city; and Mr. Hanway ſecured him in his intereſt, by a preſent of a piece of rich ſilk, which he had ſecreted with the money mentioned above, and by this means obtained the poſſeſſion of his chamber, from which he had been forced by the rebels. His purſe was again demanded by Mahommed Khan Beg, and Mr. Hanway was obliged to give it him. Two of the Turkuman chiefs were then brought into the room, whoſe habits were coarſe and their perſons ill favoured. Theſe ſaid to Mahommed Khan Beg, "You give us the merchandiſe of the Ruſſians, will you not give us the Ruſſians "alſo? they will ſerve to keep our ſheep." This ſpeech made Mr. Hanway reſolve to leave the city at any rate, fearing, that if the Turkuman party ſhould continue victorious, he ſhould be carried as a ſlave into the country of thoſe barbarians.

The Turkuman Tartars ſoon after quarrelled about the plunder. Fear now took place of tumultuous joy; the gates of the city were ordered to be ſhut, and no perſon allowed to paſs in or out, without the knowledge of Mahommed Haſſan Beg. However, Mr. Hanway having given to that new governor a regular account of the real value of the goods, the better to carry on the farce, received of him a bill for the amount, which was promiſed to be paid when the new government was eſtabliſhed. The governor alſo or-

dered Myrza to provide him and his attendants, a guard of peaſants and horſes to carry them.

On the 24th of January, Mr. Hanway took leave of Aſtrabad under the convoy of Myrza, his bothers, his two ſons, and about twenty armed villagers; he carried with him all his baggage, and even his arms, and after a day's journey arrived ſafe at Koordiemalla, a village belonging to Myrza. The brother, whoſe character was not the moſt amiable, would have conducted Mr. Hanway to his houſe, in the adjacent mountain; but he abſolutely refuſed to go, in which reſolution he was confirmed by the carriers, who expreſſed their fears of him, by ſaying, "God only knows of his ſecret retirements." Myrza, who imagined Mr. Hanway was ſtill poſſeſſed of ſome things of value, thought it conſiſtent with his intereſt to ſuffer him to carry them off. His demure countenance, and ſtrict obſervance of the letter of the law, ſerved to cover the violation of ſubſtantial virtue. He had now got that unhappy gentleman in his power, and made no ſcruple to declare, that he would not anſwer for his ſafety a ſingle mile farther, and that the carriers who were under his juriſdiction ſhould not proceed, unleſs he left his baggage with him. This crafty old man, whoſe perfidiouſneſs was exceeded by nothing but his hypocriſy, reſolved to play a cunning game; if the rebellion ſucceeded, he would make a prize of the baggage, and if it did not ſucceed he would plead his loyalty by preſerving it for Mr. Hanway. That gentleman ſaw himſelf entirely at his mercy, and therefore thought it beſt not to ſeem to miſtruſt him; therefore after having ſecreted every thing that was portable, he delivered the reſt up to him.

The next day Mr. Hanway advanced with his company about twenty Engliſh miles, and that night lay in the open fields. On the 26th, after travelling over ditches, and through pathleſs woods, he arrived at a ruined cottage, where he paſſed the night. His greateſt concern there was to prevent the jackals running away

with his accoutrements; theſe animals, with which the woods abound, are remarkably fond of leather, and ſeveral of them ran over his bed in the night. He was determined to part with his conductors as ſoon as poſſible; for they ſowed rebellion wherever they came, the people receiving them as their deliverers, complained aloud that the Shah had reduced them to the extremeſt miſery. They afterwards paſſed by the ruins of the palace at Farabad, once famous for being the reſidence of the Perſian kings. From thence they proceeded through a little village upon a lake, where ſeveral peaſants ſupport themſelves by catching wild ducks. They go in boats during the night, near the marſhy banks that are covered with ruſhes, and carry great lights on the ſtern, when ringing a number of ſmall bells the birds are confounded, and even fly into their hands.

The carriers had engaged to conduct Mr. Hanway and his ſervants to Balfruſh, the capital of Mazanderan, now about twenty miles diſtant; but hearing that Mahommed Khan, the admiral of the ſea coaſt, was raiſing forces to oppoſe the Aſtrabad rebels, they would proceed no farther. He was in a country ſurrounded by marſhes, where no horſes, nor any other cattle were to be had, and therefore deſired them to conduct him at leaſt to ſome place where he could procure horſes; but this they alſo refuſed, alleging, that as he was near the ſea, he might go by water. Accordingly, on the 27th in the morning they conducted him to a poor fiſherman's hut on the ſea-coaſt, who had a leaky canoe too ſmall for ſix perſons; beſides, it could be navigated only with oars near the ſhore, where the ſurf ran ſo high, that it ſeemed impoſſible for ſuch a boat to convey Mr. Hanway and his ſervants twenty miles. He therefore repeated his entreaties, that they would either find him horſes according to their agreement, or conduct him where he might procure them. This demand they treated with contempt, which obliged him to threaten them to uſe force: upon this, two of them

being armed with match-locks, lighted their matches: two had bows and arrows; and all of them, being ſix in number, had ſabres, and put themſelves in a poſture of defence. Mr. Hanway collected his company, among whom were four muſquets, a blunderbuſs, and a pair of piſtols, but he could ſcarcely depend on more than two of his ſervants. In this ſituation they parleyed for ſome time, till at length Mr. Hanway wiſely ſubmitted, and truſting to providence embarked in the canoe, when having gentle breezes from the eaſt, he and his attendants got ſafe to Meſchedizar. The next day, he ſent an Armenian ſervant to the admiral Mahommed Khan, to inform him of his arrival, and to beg his protection: on which he received a horſe handſomely capariſoned, and four mules for his ſervants.

On the 30th, he came to Balfruſh, where he had the ſatisfaction to learn the opinion of the Perſian merchants, that the Shah would make good his loſs. Mahommed Khan congratulated him on his eſcape with life, and on his arrival within his juriſdiction. But the next day, Sadoc Aga having advanced at the head of a party of Turkumans within a few miles of the city, Mr. Hanway waited on the admiral, who now ſeemed cold to his intereſt, and complained, that he did not know but that the next day might be his laſt, as he was neither in a condition to fight, nor dared to retire, for fear of his maſter's diſpleaſure. Our author reſolved now to depend no longer on the khan's promiſes; but to hire horſes, mules, or even aſſes, where he could get them; but this he ſoon found was impoſſible; for the greateſt part of the people had fled with their moſt valuable effects, and the reſt were preparing to follow their example. Under theſe circumſtances he had nothing to do, but to prepare to receive the conquerors a ſecond time, or to walk off by himſelf unattended. The next day Mahommed Khan ſent him a horſe miſerably poor and diſtempered: he was in ſome doubt whether he ſhould accept of him or not; but at length he took his leave of his interpreter and ſervants, offer-

ing them what money they ſhould have occaſion for, and giving them the rebels paſſport, he recommended them to providence.

The Tartars entered one gate, as he went out of the other. Mr. Hanway fell in with a party which conducted the baggage of Mahommed Khan, who with his few forces ſoon followed; it was impoſſible for our author to keep pace with him. The Tartar boy followed him on foot; but ſoon grew tired, and earneſtly entreated him to take him up behind him. However, before they got ſix miles, the horſe's hind quarters gave way, and he ſet upon his tail like a dog, ſo that they were both obliged to diſmount. Mr. Hanway now hardly knew what method to purſue: he had wrapped his body round with ſoft Perſian ſaſhes to defend himſelf from the weather, which at that ſeaſon is generally ſevere in thoſe parts, ſo that he was but in a bad condition for walking. He had no guide, and underſtood but few words of the language; however, by the aſſiſtance of the Tartar boy, who ſpoke Turkiſh and Ruſs, he found his way to the ſea-coſt, carrying a blunderbuſs, and a pair of piſtols. His clothes were already very mean, and the better to deceive any robber, he ſet the boy on the horſe which was ſtill able to creep along with a ſmall weight, and led him by the bridle. He came to ſeveral rivers, at which he had the good fortune to find ferries, and being afraid to ſhew any money for fear of being robbed, pleaded poverty and paſſed gratis. In this manner he continued his journey for ten Engliſh miles, perplexed, and extremely haraſſed with fatigue. At length, to his great joy, the khan's company having halted, he came up with them, and procured ſome ſhelter from the weather, with a mat to lie on. By this time Mr. Hogg his clerk, and his Ruſſian menial ſervant came up with him, having had better fortune than their maſter, for they had rode on horſeback with the khan's retinue.

Early the next day Mr. Hanway ſent to the khan to let him know that it was impoſſible to proceed on the horſe he had ſent him: he then ordered others, but demanded above five times the value. Mr. Hanway knew that the poſſeſſion of them would be precarious, and finding a perſon who offered to ſupply him with better horſes for hire, declined the khan's propoſal. He now preceeded a ſhort day's journey to a little village on the ſea-coſt, where he halted, and was again deprived of his horſe. The khan there obſerving the beauty of his piſtols, which were mounted with ſilver, deſired the loan of them, alleging that he was going with a party to reconnoitre the rebels. Mr. Hanway begged his acceptance of them, reminding him at the ſame time that neither himſelf nor the three perſons who were yet with him, had any carriage but what depended on accident. Upon this he again aſſured him that he would take care of them. But after a few hours abſence, he returned in ſome confuſion, and ordered all the avenues of the woods to be guarded, to prevent a ſurpriſe. Mr. Hanway had not eaten any thing for near forty hours, except a few parched peas, ſo that he was obliged to beg what he dared not buy.

The men and baggage being collected within the walls of the houſe where the khan was lodged, Mr. Hanway concluded they either intended a ſecret flight, or defend themſelves in caſe of an attack: he therefore joined them, and repeated his entreaties for horſes whenever they ſhould march, on which the khan bid him not to be uneaſy, and promiſed that he would not leave any of them behind: but when night came on they began their march, and our author had the mortification to find that every thing, even to the leaſt valuable baggage, was carried off, great part of it on very good horſes, while himſelf, Mr. Hogg, the Ruſſian ſervant, and little boy was left behind. He had thought that a preſent of a pair of piſtols of ſixty crowns value would have been ſufficient to procure the loan of

a few bad horſes, for three or four days; but where generoſity is a ſtranger, gratitude has ſeldom any admittance. Truſting to the goodneſs of providence, he reſolved to follow the khan, to try if he could yet procure relief. He had not ſtrength to walk far, and was ſtopped by a deep river. He happily found a ferry, and having paſſed it, entered into a wood where the road was deep and marſhy It rained hard, and the night was very dark; but the baggage horſes being heavy and moving ſlowly, he came up to them, and having kept them company near four miles, was ſo ſpent with fatigue, that finding no other expedient, he reſolved to ſeize the bridle of the horſe on which the khan himſelf was mounted, and to try if the word Shah had any magic to bring him to that ſenſe of his duty, which neither his promiſe nor the dictates of humanity had yet produced. Having collected ſome broken words, and taken the Shah's decree out of his pocket, he advanced towards the khan, and calling him by his name, he halted. Our author's ſituation pleaded his cauſe without the aſſiſtance of many words, and the khan ordered his ſecretary to take him up behind him.

Thus mounted, he went on ſlowly for ſome miles, till the khan ordered a horſe loaded with baggage to be delivered, for which he was to pay 50 crowns, though it was too dark to diſcover whether it was a horſe or any other animal. One of the conductors of the baggage had compaſſion on the Tartar boy, and took him up, and Mr. Hogg and the Ruſſian ſervant had hitherto ſtrength to walk: but at length Mr. Hogg complained that he could go no farther, on which Mr. Hanway gave him the horſe; but was ſo little able to walk, that he was ſoon obliged to deſire him to diſmount, and left him behind.

The khan's apprehenſions of the Turkumans carried him on from ſeven in the evening till the ſame hour next morning; when after a ſhort refreſhment, he continued his march till four in the evening. The darkneſs of the approaching night had been increaſed by continual rain, while the wind, the beating of the waves

on the ſhore, and the apprehenſion of a ſavage enemy, added horror to our author's fatigues.

The next day and night they travelled twenty hours, and at length halted at a village to refreſh themſelves, where Mr. Hanway hired a barber to ſhave him, who, being aſked if he knew that he was a chriſtian, and conſequently unclean, left him in the midſt of his work. Our author could hardly forbear laughing at the figure he made on this occaſion, he was indeed literally unclean, for his clothes were very dirty, they not having been off his back for thirteen days. He was now obliged to forget that tenderneſs which his conſtitution ſeemed to require; and to lie on the bare earth, though ſometimes he had the fortune to procure a little ſtraw. The inroads of the Caſpian ſea, and the torrents from the mountains had formed many channels of water, ſome of which are hardly paſſable. The north wind alſo made ſo great a ſurge on the ſhore, that many horſes belonging to the company were thrown down by its violence, and their riders in danger of being drowned. At length he obtained a diſcharge from the baggage under which his horſe laboured, but he found him ſo weak that he choſe to truſt to his own legs in paſſing theſe channels, where he ſeldom eſcaped without being wet to the middle.

In the evening they arrived at Eſpuchin, a little village on the ſea ſhore, ſituated in a very marſhy wood abounding in ditches, with the houſes ſcattered in a wild irregular manner. Mr. Hanway having taken a lodging, reſolved to pay a viſit to the khan; but the night ſuddenly coming on, he knew not which way to take, ſo that he wandered a conſiderable time among the ditches and bogs. After being extremely fatigued and perplexed, he diſcovered a light, made up to it, and obtained the information he wanted. He would now have gladly cleaned himſelf, but that was impoſſible; the khan ſeemed extremely ſurpriſed at ſeeing him, and Mr. Hanway could not explain to him the reaſon of ſo extraordinary a viſit; but deſired to be

conducted to his own lodgings. The moſt ſtupid and ungenerous have their fits of benevolence; our author had the pleaſure to ſee victuals ſet before him, with water to waſh, and a pan of charcoal to warm him. At length he was conducted to his lodgings, where he found his Ruſſian ſervant, who had ſupported himſelf under his fatigue, and being extremely faithful, had been in the utmoſt anxiety on his maſter's account.

The next day the khan having made a forced march thought himſelf out of danger; for Sadoc Aga, with the Turkumans, had deſiſted from the purſuit; the khan therefore gave his women in charge to Shahverdie Beg, and went to Tunicabune, Shahverdie Beg, who had before ſhewn Mr. Hanway ſome inſtances of his good nature, being now detached from the khan, treated him with greater civility; but having no conveniencies of life with him, no more than related to his own perſon, he could ſupply him with nothing but proviſions. In Perſia it is not cuſtomary for any man in travelling to come near the women, except their lord, or his ſervants: but the circumſtances they were in prevented a ſcrupulous regard to this practice, and Mr. Hanway had once the office, which is not the moſt dignified in that empire, of guarding the women with his blunderbuſs. The roads through the woods were ſtill very marſhy, while the ſand on the ſhore, and the trees which the ſea had waſhed down, render travelling very diſagreeable; but the temperate quality of the air was extremely refreſhing. Mr. Hanway now firſt obſerved the delightful ſituation of many receſſes in the mountains, where they have plenty of fine running ſtreams, with a profuſion of vines, orange and lemon-trees.

In twenty-three days ſince the city of Aſtrabad was taken by the rebels, Mr. Hanway had not enjoyed an hour of ſecurity or unbroken ſleep. He was now drawing near to Langarood, which he had left ſeven weeks before, and was as deſirous of ſeeing it again, as if it had been his home; when Mr. Elton, being informed that he was on the road, ſent Mr. Loftus his interpre-

ter, with a ſervant and one of his beſt horſes to meet him.

Our author, on his arrival at Langarood, was received by Mr. Elton with open arms, and congratulated on his having eſcaped with his liberty and life. His legs and feet were much ſwelled and bruiſed, his boots not having been off for ſixteen days, and he was obliged to ſtay ſome time to provide freſh clothing, he not having ſaved any part of what he carried to Aſtrabad.

Mr. Hanway having informed Mr. Elton, where he had left Matteuſe, his interpreter, and the other Armenian ſervants, with Mr. Hogg, his clerk, whoſe ſituation, he was afraid, would expoſe him to ſome misfortune; Mr. Elton immediately ſent ſervants and horſes in queſt of him, and after a few days he was brought to Langarood. He had overtaken Mahommed Khan, who had provided him a horſe, for which he was to pay a conſiderable price, though the beaſt fell under him before he had advanced two miles. Mr. Hogg now ſeemed like a man expiring in a conſumption: he had been two days and three nights expoſed to the cold and rain without any food or ſhelter; five times robbed, and at laſt left almoſt naked, and being often in danger of his life, was at length relieved by the charity of ſome derviſes, whoſe retreat in the mountains he had the good fortune to diſcover. But Matteuſe, and the other Armenians left at Balfruſh, did not come home till three weeks after, and eſcaped theſe ſevere hardſhips. At that town, they received a paſſport from Sadoc Aga, under his ſeal, the pompous ſtyle of which, conſidering his circumſtances, may give an idea of the idiom of the oriental languages, as well as of Perſian folly. "To the victorious armies be it "known, that Matteuſe the Armenian is here. Let "him not be moleſted, but live under our ſhadow."

Mr. Hanway now took leave of Mr. Elton, and ſet out for Reſhd. He ſoon found, that though Ghilan was ſaid to have ſuffered leſs than any other province

of Perſia by the wars and cruelties of Nadir, yet the villages were in a ruinous condition. From Langarood to Lahijan is ſeven miles. The latter being ſituated on an eminence, is eſteemed the moſt healthy place in the province; for here the mountains open a paſſage for the wind. The rains had filled a large ſpot of ground, and formed a ſquare regular piece of water, in which were abundance of wild fowl. In the centre ſtood a grove upon a riſing ground, that ſerved to beautify the proſpect, and render it as delightful as the rudneſs of the ſeaſon would admit. Here he was received by Hahdgee Zamon, who was diſtinguiſhed for his good ſenſe, as well as his authority in that place.

The Hahdgee* complained aloud of the Shah's cruelty, and of the inhumanity of thoſe employed by him. Supper being brought in, a ſervant preſented a baſon of water, and with a napkin ſlung over his ſhoulders, went to every one in the company, and poured water on their hands to waſh. A large ſalver, in the form of a tea-board, was ſet before every perſon, covered with a plate of pleo, on which was a ſmall quantity of minced meat mixed up with fruits and ſpices. There were alſo plates of comfits, ſeveral china baſons of ſherbets, as ſweet, ſour and other waters, with cakes of rice, and others of wheat flour, on which were ſprinkled the ſeed of poppies, and others of the like nature. As they eſteem it an abomination to cut any kind of bread or meat, after it is dreſſed, theſe cakes are made thin, that they may be eaſily broken with the hand, and their meat, which is generally mutton or fowls, is ſo prepared, that they divide it with their fingers. When every thing is ſet in order before them, they eat faſt, and without any ceremony, with their fingers, greaſing their hands and ſmearing their beards.

Supper was no ſooner over, than warm water was brought to waſh, which being done, they reſumed their

* This title is given to all who have gone in pilgrimage to Mecca.

diſcourſe. And it is worthy of remark, that when the oldeſt man in the company ſpeaks, though he be poor, and ſits at the lower end of the room, all the reſt pay a ſtrict attention to what he ſays.

The company retired ſoon after ſupper, and beds were taken out of niches made in the wall for that purpoſe, and laid on the carpets. They conſiſted of only two thick cotton quilts, one of which was folded double, and ſerved as a mattraſs, and the other as a covering, with a large flat pillow for the head. They uſually ſleep in their under garment and drawers: but the princes and other great men uſe ſheets, and other delicate appurtenances of a bed, though with leſs parade than is practiſed in Europe; nor do they crowd their apartments with ſuperfluous furniture.

On the 18th, Mr. Hanway ſet forward for Reſhd, well pleaſed with his laſt night's entertainment, and the next day arrived at that city, where he was viſited by two Engliſh gentlemen who reſided there, from whom he received great marks of friendſhip. He had alſo a viſit from three French miſſionaries, who were ſenſible polite men. On the 20th, Mr. Hanway paid a viſit to Ordo Kouli Beg, governor of the province, who was an old man, and received him with great civility. As the cuſtoms of Europe are known in this province, he immediately ordered a chair to be ſet for him. The apartment was full of people ſeated on felts of camels hair, ſpread round the ſquares of the floor, the ſervants and ſoldiers ſtanding in the area below. After ſome converſation, in which our author related the misfortunes that had befallen him, he took his leave.

He here provided clothes, bedding, kitchen furniture, tents, mules, and horſes, as well as ſabres and firelocks for his five attendants, upon which occaſion he found that large mules are as dear there as they are in Portugal, where one coſt him 62l. 10s. but they are incomparably the moſt uſeful animals in rocky countries, being very ſure-footed, and able to carry great burthens for long journeys. In the neighbour-

hood of Reſhd, are fields of rice, and plantations of mulberry-trees: ſome of the mountains are covered with cypreſs-trees, and others are compoſed of naked rocks piled upon each other to a great height, while the valleys are interſperſed with villages, lawns, and arable lands.

On the 26th, he purſued his journey, and the next day reached Roodbar, on the banks of the river Kizilazan, where the country is covered with olive, orange, and other trees.

On the firſt of March, he travelled three farſangs, or twelve miles, over the mountains, and at length came to the great plain of Caſbin, then covered three feet deep with ſnow, which reflected ſuch brightneſs from the rays of the ſun, as to be extremely painful to the eyes. The little villages on this plain are built ſo that half the houſes are under the ſurface of the earth, and the tops of them formed into a cone, the better to carry off the ſnow. He that night took up his lodgings in a ruined ſtable, and the next day ſet out before ſun-riſe, to avoid the danger of being blinded, as well as to enjoy the benefit of a firmer road.

On his arrival at Caſbin, he paid his compliments to Hahdgee Abdulcrim, the greateſt merchant in the place, who provided him a handſome houſe near his own, and told him, that it was impoſſible at that time to proceed on his journey on account of the ſnow.

The houſes here are generally quite below the ſurface of the earth, as are many of the gardens below the level of the adjacent lands, in order to enjoy the convenience of water: for inſtead of bringing water to their houſes, as we do, they level their habitations to the water. They in general build with bricks dried in the ſun, and their cement is a ſtrong lime. Their roofs are flat, and it is not uncommon to ſleep on the houſe top. Theſe buildings are incloſed with a mud wall: they conſiſt of two diviſions; the outer one ſtands in a large area, and is a ſpacious room called the

Aviam, one ſide of which is open and ſupported with pillars: they here diſpatch their buſineſs, and eat, when they do not retire to the womens' apartment. Niches in the wall ſupply the place of tables; the floors are covered with large carpets; on the ſides of the room hang felts about a yard broad, and two or three yards long, made with either wool or camels hair very ſoft, and uſed to ſit upon. In the wings of this apartment are ſmall rooms for lodging, and in the yard are the ſervants rooms, and the ſtables. Behind theſe is another building incloſed by a wall: this is the haram, or women's apartments, into which no man enters except the maſter of the houſe.

On the third of March, Mr. Hanway viſited the hahdgee, who entertained him at dinner with milk differently prepared, cheeſe ſomewhat like our curds, comfits and cakes of bread. They here make but two meals a day, the moſt conſiderable of which is in the evening. The hahdgee enquired how he liked Perſia, and on Mr. Hanway's mentioning the uſage he had met with at Aſtrabad, he aſſured him, that the Shah would do him juſtice; but complained of the poverty and miſery to which the people were reduced, and then added, "Caſbin had 12,000 houſes inhabited, and now it "has only 1100; ſee from this eminence, how this "poor city is in ruins! nor is Iſpahan much better; "that city had formerly 100,000 houſes, many of them "not much inferior in ſplendor to the royal palace, "which is the glory of the world: but I am aſſured, "that only 5,000 houſes are now inhabited. Alas! "Sir, you know not to what miſery we are reduced." To this Mr. Hanway replied, "I am very ſorry to hear "your complaints, and to ſee ſo much reaſon for them; "for Caſbin indeed appears in ruins. When your "ſovereign has accompliſhed his deſigns, ſurely he "will change his ſyſtem: he can never mean to de-"ſtroy the people; for that would be in effect to de-"ſtroy himſelf."

Mr. Hanway ſoon after taking his leave, went to ſee the new palace built by Nadir Shah in that city, adjoining to the old one. Before the entrance is an avenue of lofty trees, three hundred yards long, and fifteen or twenty broad. It is encompaſſed by a thick and lofty wall, about an Engliſh mile and a half in circumference, with only one entrance, which is an arched gate. Within it, are four large ſquares, adorned with lofty trees, fountains, and running water. The apartments are raiſed about ſix feet from the ground; the Aviam, or open hall, is in the centre, and ſhuts in with folding doors. The rooms are ornamented in the Indian taſte, and the ceilings formed into ſmall ſquares, embelliſhed with moral ſentences in very legible characters. Moſt of the windows are of painted glaſs, in which the figures are drawn in their proper ſhades, and executed with great art; but many of the floors are only formed of hard earth, and others of a compoſition of beaten ſtone: theſe defects, are, however, concealed by the conſtant uſe of carpets.

The haram makes a magnificent appearance; it conſiſts of a ſquare within its own wall, which is of brick about thirty feet high, and two and a half thick; there are four diſtinct apartments, in ſome of which are fountains, that ſerve to moderate the heat of ſummer, by giving the air a refreſhing coolneſs. The rooms are lined with ſtucco, coloured in the Indian taſte, with birds and flowers painted with the moſt beautiful colours, and adorned with gilt edgings; but the chimney-pieces are in a mean taſte, and ſome are ornamented with looking-glaſſes in ſmall ſquares of different dimenſions ſet into the walls. There are a few rooms under ground, admirably contrived for coolneſs. Near the haram is the eunuch's apartment, remarkable only for its having but one door, and that a very ſtrong one. Here are likewiſe ſome old apartments built by Shah Abas, in which are ſome bad paintings, done by European painters: the Perſians themſelves are as ignorant of ſhades as the Chineſe.

The city of Caſbin is incloſed by a wall above a mile in each ſquare, that has a great number of turrets and port-holes for arrows. It is famous in hiſtory for being one of the chief cities of the ancient Parthia, the reſidence of many of the Perſian kings, and the burial-place of Hephæſtion, the favourite of Alexander the Great.

Mr. Hanway, before his departure, rode to ſee every thing worth notice, and in particular went to the market-place, which had once made a conſiderable figure; three parts of it were now in ruins; and old women appeared in the ſhops, which in former times was not practiſed. Here is a famous caravanſera, with a large entrance, and a magnificent dome; it has a great ſquare ſurrounded with piazzas, within which are lodgings and apartments for the reception of merchandiſe; this edifice coſt 27,000 crowns.

On the 11th of March, the weather being warm, and great part of the ſnow melted, Mr. Hanway ſet out with a caravan, in which five hundred thouſand crowns were to be carried to Shiras, under a guard of 800 Afghans. As he travelled on, hardly any thing took his ſight but the ruins of towns and villages; the richneſs of the ſoil, and the ſoftneſs of the climate, rendering this proſpect ſo much the more lamentable. This country abounds with elks, which ſeem to be as fleet as birds, for none of the horſes could reach them. The ſkeletons of ſeveral camels were lying near the road, the fleſh of which had been conſumed by wolves; for the camel is but ill qualified to travel upon the ſnow or wet ground; the breadth with which they carry their legs, when they ſlip, often occaſions their ſplitting themſelves: ſo that when they fall with great burthens, they ſeldom riſe again. They are moſt uſeful in deſarts and plain dry countries, and will travel two or three days with little or no water.

Mr. Hanway at length found, that all his Perſian fellow-travellers were in the cuſtody of a meſſenger, and took particular notice of one of them who was a

Ballouche, one of the tribes in the eaſtern parts of Perſia, who are almoſt black: he was well mounted, armed, and attended; but in debt to almoſt every one in the company, who apprehending him to be in no ſmall danger of his life from the reſentment of the Shah, demanded his horſe and arms in payment. He gave them a ſilver caallean gilt, his bow and arrows, the quiver of which was covered with black velvet, and ſtudded with gold nails. Though this man's annual appointment did not exceed 250 crowns, and he had no other revenue; yet the value of his horſes, mules, and their appurtenances, was not leſs than 1000 crowns. He was very communicative, and finding Mr. Hanway, an European, he ſpoke without reſerve: "I am, ſaid "he, come from Iſpahan, where I have been two "years raiſing forces for the Shah, and have pro- "cured him 2000 men; 1000 is the uſual number "which he annually draws from that city. In return, "he has lately taken from me 4000 crowns, and I am "now under the dread of ſome other act of violence. "It is no unuſal thing with my maſter, to ſend for a "man in order to ſtrangle him; and for my part I "ſhould be glad to compound for a ſevere beating." He endeavoured to learn by heart, a prayer, which if repeated right in the preſence of the Shah, he ſaid, would divert his wrath; but if falſely, increaſe it. He talked of the force of words, and the power of the Almighty; he alſo had another ſpell, which was the repetition of ten particular letters of the alphabet, as he entered the royal tent cloſing a figure at each, and keeping his fiſt clenched till he came before the throne; when he was ſuddenly to open his hands, and by the diſcharge of his magic artillery to ſubdue the king's wrath.

'Tis indeed amazing to ſee in how many inſtances the Perſians demonſtrate the higheſt ſuperſtition. The hands with the fingers interchanged, and ſome particular poſture of the body, are conſidered as full of magic power. Sneezing they hold a moſt happy omen;

and they fancy that the meteors that reſemble falling ſtars, are the blows of the angels on the heads of the devils. Cats are held in great eſteem, but dogs in abomination, ſo that they are never permitted to come into any room, though they ſometimes uſe them at their diverſions. The Turks are not behind them in their folly. In the reign of Shah Abas, the Grand Signior ſent to that prince to deſire, that as none but their prophet, and his children, had been dreſſed in green, none of his ſubjects might be permitted to wear that colour, eſpecially in ſtockings. To this Shah Abas, who was a man of underſtanding, made anſwer, that if the Grand Signior would prevent the dogs piſſing in the graſs in Tukey, he would comply with the requeſt.

On the 17th, they arrived about noon at a ſmall village, where an advanced guard of the army was poſted to protect the villages, as is cuſtomary when the camp is near. The commander of the forces declared that he could not find quarters for the Perſians in Mr. Hanway's company, and inſiſted upon their going directly to the camp, but on their declaring that they had paid for every thing they had upon the road, and that they were alſo charged with the care of Mr. Hanway, they were ſuffered to enter the village.

The fears of the Perſian convoy increaſed as they approached nearer the camp, and the next day they took their leave of our author with ſorrowful countenances, demanding of their conductor why he haſtened them: "Doſt thou know, ſaid one of them, that to "condemned perſons every hour of life is of great "moment?" Our author now ſent his interpreter to the Shah's miniſter appointed for the reception of ſtrangers, to enquire where he ſhould pitch his tent: but though they were ſo very near the Shah, ſome of the ſoldiers in this village did not refrain from calling him raſcal in plain terms. On the 20th he ſet out for the camp, and having entered it, pitched his tent near the royal ſtandard.

Our author had now the ſatisfaction of learning that the rebellion at Aſtrabad was ſuppreſſed; but he had ſcarcely fixed his tent, when an accident had like to have deprived him of his life; for his greater ſecurity he had cauſed his fire arms to be placed on the back part of the tent, and was walking in a penſive manner, when one of the ſervants moving a piece, it went off, and he narrowly eſcaped being ſhot. He was extremely alarmed leſt the report of the muſket, ſo near the royal pavilion, ſhould have given offence, his own being of cotton, was ſet on fire; but it was ſoon extinguiſhed, and this accident was happily attended with no other conſequence.

He immediately waited on Muſtapha Khan, who received him with great profeſſions of kindneſs, obliged him to dine with him, and aſſured him that juſtice ſhould be done him. In the mean while he delivered his petition to the chancery; and was told that it was believed his majeſty would pardon the Perſians, in whoſe company he came to Caſbin, merely to do him honour.

The Shah paſſing from his haram to his tent of audience, gave Mr. Hanway an opportunity of ſeeing him; he was plainly dreſſed, except in precious ſtones. Some days after, the royal ſtandard being taken down, as a ſignal for ſtriking the tents, the army decamped, marching about two leagues and a half north-eaſt, where another tent being prepared for the Shah, Mr. Hanway pitched his in company with the whole camp. In marching, the greateſt part of the army kept in a collected, but irregular body: the followers of the camp covered ſeveral miles. The elephants and camels were employed only in carrying great burdens: the laſt are of ſeveral kinds, but the moſt ſerviceable are thoſe with two bunches on their backs.

Mr. Hanway having delivered the bill he had received from Mahommed Haſſan, the chief of the rebellion at Aſtrabad, to the amount of his loſs, received a decree, by which it was ordered, that he ſhould give the

particulars of his loſs in writing to Behbud Khan, the Shah's general in Aſtrabad, who had orders to deliver to him whatever part of the goods might poſſibly be found, and to pay the deficiency out of the ſequeſtered eſtates of the rebels without delay to the laſt penny. This was not quite what Mr. Hanway wiſhed for, becauſe it laid him under the neceſſity of returning to Aſtrabad.

Being now eaſy on the ſubject of his loſs, he rode through the Perſian camp attended by his interpreter and another perſon, and informed himſelf of every particular relating to it. The tents of the miniſters and officers were placed in the front, near that of the Shah, that they might always be near him. The quarter allotted for his tents was very large; before it was an avenue, one ſide of which conſiſted of a line of uniform tents, ſerving for guard-rooms, and on the other were the tents in which the affairs of the chancery, and other public concers, were tranſacted. The pavilion, in which the Shah uſually ſat to give audience, was placed about 200 yards behind this avenue. It was an oblong, ſupported by three poles, adorned at the top with gilt balls. The covering was of brick-coloured cotton cloth, and the lining of clouded ſilk. It had no appearance of magnificence, and the front was always open even in the worſt weather; but when it was very cold ſeveral pots of charcoal were placed in the middle. The floor was covered with carpets, and the Shah ſat croſs-legged, ſometimes upon theſe, and at others on a ſopha. The back part of the tent was divided into ſmall apartments, and on each ſide was a kind of ally, through which the attendants might walk round. At a conſiderable diſtance behind were Shah's private tents, to ſome of which he retired at his meals. Almoſt contiguous to theſe were the tents of the Shah's ladies, which had ſeveral curtains that formed ſeparate apartments one within another. The boundaries of the Shah's quarter were occupied by his eunuchs and female ſlaves, and almoſt his whole circuit, eſpecially

towards the reſidence of the women, was ſurrounded by a ſtrong fence of net-work, round which patrolled the night guard, who ſeverely puniſhed all intruders.

The camp market begins at the end of the ſquare fronting the guard rooms, and is about half a mile long. It conſiſts of tents on each ſide like a ſtreet, ſupplied with a variety of proviſions, apparel, horſe furniture, and other neceſſaries, which are brought thither for ſale. The officer who has the care of this market, rides up and down to keep order, and when any diſputes ariſe, the contending parties are brought before the ſuperintendant of the market, who acquires a conſiderable income from rents, fees, preſents, and extortions. Many of the ſhopkeepers are little better than common ſuttlers. The great dealers are under the protection of ſome of the courtiers, who are themſelves the principal traders in flour and rice. As theſe great men have many ſupernumerary ſervants, camels and mules, they ſend them to diſtant provinces for rice, which they bring to the camp for ſale, and make vaſt profits of it. The ſhopkeepers who preſume to interfere whith them in this branch of trade are generally marked out for deſtruction.

The regimental colours are a narrow ſlip of ſilk ſloped to the point, ſome red, ſome white, and ſome ſtriped. Several hours before the moving of the camp one of the ſtandards was taken down by way of ſignal, and carried to the place where the new camp was to be pitched. The bulk of the army often moved an hour or two before the Shah; for in removing from one camp to another, he ſometimes gallopped the whole way.

Nadir had about ſixty wowen, and nearly as many eunuchs, who generally rode near his perſon and kept pace with him. Before him went his running footmen, preceded by the chanters; and before them the watch guard. Theſe ſpread a mile or two, and gave notice of the Shah's approach, by crying out, Yertie, or

make way: but when they met with people in their route, rivers, precipices, and rocks were no excuſe, they drove at them with their maces, and made all before them fly at their approach. This was only when he travelled with his women; for when he travelled without them, people were permitted to come nearer. His ladies, and indeed other ladies of diſtinction, when in Nadir's company, rode on white horſes, in the ſame manner as the men; but at other times were carried on camels ſeated in machines reſembling a covered waggon, hung like panniers over a pack-ſaddle, and entirely concealed under a covering of crimſon cloth. Ordinary women rode on horſes and mules, and mixed among the crowd, had a linen veil over their faces, and wore great coats, like men; but the veils of the pooreſt covered their whole bodies. The Uſbeck Tartar women were not ſo ſcrupulous about hiding their faces as the Perſians. The females in the camp, except when on deſperate enterpriſes, are about one to ten males.

Nadir had four complete ſets of horſe furniture, one mounted with pearls, another with rubies, a third with emeralds, and a fourth with diamonds of a prodigious ſize, many of them being of the bigneſs of a pigeon's egg. Mr. Hanway was equally ſurpriſed at their immenſe value, and the barbarous taſte in which they were ſet. In a viſit they made to Muſtapha Khan he mentioned to him the prodigious value of the Shah's horſe furniture, and obſerved that the jewels in Europe appear incomparably brighter and neater ſet, and that if his majeſty would truſt him with one of thoſe bridles, he would procure a complete ſet of horſe furniture to be made in Europe, which ſhould exceed any thing that had yet appeared in the world: but the khan replied, "My maſter has not patience enough to wait "'till it could be finiſhed."

The officers and even the ſoldiers of rank, had the bridles of their horſes mounted with ſilver with a mane piece of plate, and an ornamental chain; likewiſe the

ſword, belts, and leathern accoutrements were mounted with the ſame metal. The handles of their battle-axes were generally ſtudded or covered with thin ſilver plates. In their ſaſhes about their waiſt they wore a knife, the handle and caſe of which were covered with ſilver. Some officers and perſons of diſtinction were obliged to wear gold caſed knives, and ſome of their great men had ſilver ſtirrups. Thus Nadir endeavoured to keep them dependant, by obliging them to expend their money in articles of vanity.

The reſpect ſhewn Mr. Hanway by Muſtapha Khan, who was conſidered as the moſt upright man in the Perſian court, induced that gentleman to make him a preſent of a gold repeating watch, with ſome fine cloth and rich ſilk: this he ſeemed unwilling to receive; but Mr. Hanway inſiſting on his accepting it as a mark of his gratitude, he preſented him in return ſome jewels which had once adorned the cap of ſome unhappy Indian. The principal jewel conſiſted of a large ſapphire ſet in gold, and encompaſſed with diamonds; but theſe laſt were ſmall, and bored through in the manner in which the Aſiatics ſpoil their precious ſtones; the reverſe of this place was enamelled with flowers.

On the 27th of March, Mr. Hanway ſet out from the camp, and beſides his other attendants, had two ſoldiers given him by Muſtapha Khan for his guard. Though he now took a different road from that he paſſed before, he had every where the melancholy proſpect of vaſt tracts of excellent arable land, lying waſte in one of the fineſt climates in the world: the houſes of the deſerted villages ſupplied only fuel, and he ſaw ſeveral maroders pulling them down for that purpoſe. The next day he paſſed through a ruined village, covered on the oppoſite ſide with an inacceſſible mountain: he here diſcovered five perſons, who, as he approached ran to their horſes, which were ready ſaddled and tied to trees. Theſe fellows took to their arms as if they meant to attack him, while he prepared for his defence; but his two ſoldiers ſeemed to have his pre-

ſervation ſo little at heart, that they loitered behind, and entered into a parley with them. This gave our author ſome uneaſineſs, and induced him to ſtop upon an eminence, attended by one ſervant, to ſee the iſſue of their conference, while the reſt of his company were gone forward; but his interpreter ſoon rode back full ſpeed, and blaming him for ſtaying behind, declared, that if they did not keep together they might all be cut off; for he had diſcovered, that four of thoſe men were gone round the hill, while one kept the ſoldiers in talk. His fears were not without foundation; for the ſoldiers, who ſoon came up, had purchaſed a ſtolen horſe of theſe robbers, who acknowledged, that the reputation the Europeans had acquired for their dexterity in the uſe of fire-arms, had been their greateſt ſecurity.

On the 29th, they aſcended the mountain, and had no ſooner reached the ſummit, than they found the air ſo extremely rarified, and the wind ſo piercing, that it was with difficulty they drew their breath. In the valley, they found a very different climate, and Abar appeared before them in a delightful ſituation.

This city, however, was much in the ſame circumſtances as the others, and it was not without difficulty they obtained a lodging. The mountains, over which lay their direct road, being ſtill covered over with ſnow, they were under the neceſſity of going near three leagues about; and in the ſpace of four leagues the road was ſo formed, that they were obliged to paſs a branch of the Kizilazan ſixty-five times; one of the company having the curioſity to count them. This river was about thirty feet wide, and two or three deep; the ſtream was rapid, and the bottom covered with rocks and ſtones. After a journey of ten hours, they arrived at a deſolate caravanſera, where they found nothing but water; they had, however, provided themſelves at a village on the road, where the inhabitants had entertained them with great hoſpitality.

On the 31ſt, they travelled near ten hours without finding any proviſions, and on their approaching the mountains that cover Ghilan, they found the reflection of the ſun ſo ſtrong, that it was with difficulty they defended themſelves from the ſcorching heat. At length their drooping ſpirits, almoſt exhauſted with fatigue and hunger, were ſupported by the ſight of Arſevil, a ſmall village; but they had the mortification to find only one narrow path to it, that was fenced up with large fir-trees and a great bank of earth. This raiſed a ſuſpicion that the village was in a ſtate of rebellion, and that it might be dangerous to force their way into it: neceſſity, however, ſilenced their ſcruples, and they with much difficulty removed the impediment, when they found, that the villagers had made uſe of this expedient from the fear of the Shah's couriers, who without pity take, and without mercy ride, the horſes of the poor inhabitants. Upon our author's entering into the village, he and his attendants were received with marks of hoſpitality, for the peaſants knew that they would pay for whatever they wanted: but they had not been in the village two hours before eight couriers arrived, armed with muſquets, though they generally wear only ſabres.

These couriers, wear a white ſaſh, girded from their waiſts many times round their bodies: they take horſes wherever they can find them, which they do not always return to the owners: they even diſmount travellers, and often leave them to walk with their baggage. This occaſions their being ſometimes repulſed and ſeverely treated, though as they are employed in the Shah's buſineſs, an entire ſubmiſſion is required. Poſt-maſters were ſupplied by the Shah's orders with thirty, forty, or fifty horſes; but the demand for them is frequently greater than they are able to ſupply. One of theſe poſt-maſters being charged by Nadir with not furniſhing his couriers, anſwered, "That I have not "ſupplied them is moſt certain, becauſe for every ten "horſes you provided, you ſent me twenty couriers,

" a man had better die at once than live to ſerve a " raſcal," and immediately ſtabbed himſelf. The Shah cried out, " He is a brave fellow, ſave him;" but it was too late.

While Mr. Hanway was at this village, he obſerved youths of twenty years of age, armed with military authority, giving blows on the heads of thoſe whoſe grey beards entitled them to reverence; this was done frequently for very trifling offences, and ſometimes for no offence at all: nor could he reſtrain his own Armenian ſervants from following their example, till he aſſured them they ſhould receive ten ſtrokes for one.

Our author and his company having refreſhed themſelves, left the village in the evening, taking their route over a high mountain, from whence they deſcended into a pleaſant and fruitful valley, and croſſing the Kizilazan, took up their lodgings at two leagues diſtance from Arſevil.

On the firſt of April Mr. Hanway paſſed through the narrow paths in the mountains that guard the province of Ghilan, in view of many pleaſant valleys, and the next day arrived at Reſhd, where he had the pleaſure of ſeeing ſome of his friends. On the fourth he ſet out for Langarood, and arriving there the next morning, was kindly received by Mr. Elton, and the two French miſſionaries, who were then with him. The naval preparations carried on there, were conducted by admiral Mahommed Khan, who was extremely ignorant in maritime affairs, and finding that Mr. Hanway was returned with ſucceſs from the camp, he ſeemed afraid of reſenting his former conduct, being apprehenſive, that the value of the piſtols he had preſented to him, was greater than it really was, and being ignorant how to uſe the ſcrew-barrels, he offered to return them, to which our author had no objection. Policy did not require the appearance of reſentment on his part, and charity ſeldom warrants the reality of it. A mind ſuperior to the injuries we ſuffer, by the weakneſs or wickedneſs of others, ſeems to be the

ſureſt mark of that generoſity of ſpirit which chriſtianity requires, and bids faireſt to ſecure that tranquillity, which in a great meaſure conſtitutes our temporal happineſs.

Mr. Hanway was here viſited by a mullah, or Perſian prieſt, who came in company with Shahverdie Beg, the perſon to whom he had been ſo much obliged: they entertained him with ſeveral quotations out of their poets, particularly with regard to the pleaſures and miſeries of life ariſing from the ſociety of women, and expreſſed themſelves upon this ſubject with great delicacy. After other remarks the mullah obſerved, that though their law permitted a man's having four wives, and did not reſtrain him in the number of his concubines, yet they always conſidered him as the moſt virtuous man, who confined himſelf to one wife, without any concubine, and the mullah intimated, that it was his opinion, that celibacy ſeemed to be a war againſt nature, and was conſequently a vice.

A woman in Perſia is, before her marriage, examined with reſpect to her perſon, by the mother, or ſome other female relation of the man; as the man is by the parent or friends of the woman. A report being made, the woman's parents demands the price, which being paid, the kazzi or judge, or where there is none, the mullah marries them, very often without their having ſeen each other. The Perſians may marry for a month, or any time agreed upon between the parties, and they are at liberty to ſeparate when the time is expired; but the woman muſt not marry again immediately, unleſs ſhe is certain of her not being with child. If ſhe proves pregnant, the man is obliged to ſupport her for a year; and if the child is a male it is his; if a female hers. Marriage, however, does not entitle the women to any diſtinguiſhed privileges; for they are conſidered as little more than ſervile creatures, formed for the pleaſure of their lords.

The women of Ghilan are very induſtrious; the common ſort are often ſeen abroad without veils, planting

rice, and performing other offices of agriculture: and at home they are employed in ſpinning and in different manufactures. Thoſe in this province are fair, and their eyes and hair are black: but there, as in other places, they blacken their eyes by the uſe of a drug, which leaves a blackneſs on the eye-lids. They have a great eſteem for large eyes; their features are ſmall, their ſtature is low, and they have ſomething delicate in their form: but in general the Georgians are moſt eſteemed for their perſonal charms. Their children are very handſome when young, but the boys ſoon change their complexion. The girls who do not labour in the fields are ſeldom ſeen abroad, except in a morning before the ſun riſes, and then are covered with veils which reach down to their feet. When a lady of diſtinction travels on horſeback, ſhe is not only veiled, but has generally a ſervant who runs or rides before her to clear the way; and on ſuch occaſions the men always turn their backs till the women are paſſed; for it is thought the greateſt ill manners to look at them. The care of concealing their faces to avoid the imputation of acting indelicately and contrary to cuſtom, has made ſuch an impreſſion on them, that our author was told of a woman, who being accidentally ſurpriſed when bathing, ſhewed her whole perſon, except her face, to hide which, ſhe employed all her ſolicitude.

The Perſians are as much governed by outward appearance as any other nation; hence our factors in the ſouth of Perſia have, from motives of policy, carried this affair much farther than thoſe who come from the cold regions of Ruſſia; they have had their gold caalleans, rich ſaſhes, running footmen, led horſes, &c. Their dreſs was Perſian, except the wig and hat, and their garments were lined with ſables. Shah Sultan Huſſein gave them a noble palace and fine gardens; and at a public entertainment made for that prince, the factors once ſpread the ground with ſcarlet cloth, for him to walk on from the royal palace to their own, and afterwards gave it to the ſoldiers. This conduct was

political among ſo oſtentatious a people as the Perſians, and doubtleſs had good effects: but the invaſion of the Afghans prevented the continuance of it. Mr. Elton, however, thought it became the rank he bore in the Shah's ſervice, to have four running footmen to attend him; his adjutant was finely mounted, and carried a light fowling piece at the head of the cavalcade, and the rear was brought up by his caallean bearer on horſe-back, who carried a leathern pannier filled with outward garments, proviſions and the like.

Ghilan is covered on one ſide, by a range of mountains nearly in the form of a creſcent. What greatly adds to its beauty, is the abundance of timber and other wood, and the romantic ſcenes it every where affords. At the foot of the mountains, to the eaſtward near the bay, is a hot bath much eſteemed for its medicinal virtues; the waters of which is of a yellowiſh colour. All the paſſes into Ghilan are very difficult, and hence the kings of Perſia have hardly ever been able to keep the inhabitants of the ſouthern coaſts of the Caſpian ſea in ſubjection.

The people here enjoy a long ſpring, during which their lawns and meadows are ſtrewed with flowers, and the buſhes with roſes and honeyſuckles. The ſoil, which is exceedingly fertile, produces ſome hemp and hops, and almoſt every kind of fruit without culture; for, beſides pomegranates, peaches, oranges, and lemons, here are abundance of grapes, the vines ſupporting themſelves on the trees, and growing wild on the mountains; ſo that a great part of the province is a perfect paradiſe, notwithſtanding the many inconveniencies that attend it. However, their grapes, for want of cultivation, are not the moſt excellent, nor will they make tolerable wine without a mixture of raiſins from the ſouthern parts of the empire; but theſe, fermented together, produce very good wine. Their other fruits are reckoned unwholeſome, eſpecially to foreigners, and in particular the peaches and figs partake much of the pernicious moiſture that predominates

in the lower parts of the province. Ghilan is alſo remarkable for producing great quantities of box, of which camels are extremely fond, though it is immediate death if they eat it; for which reaſon there are few or no camels brought into the province, their caravans conſiſting of horſes, mules, and cows, that carry burthens like other animals.

On the firſt of May in the evening, Mr. Hanway ſet out for Aſtrabad. Beſides Mr. Loftus, Mr. Elton's interpreter, who had been with him in the camp, he alſo took Matteuſe the old Armenian, who was with him when the rebellion broke out. There were ſix perſons in company, well armed, and Mahommed Khan had promiſed to furniſh them with a convoy of fifty ſoldiers if neceſſary: for ſome of the inhabitants of Mazanderan as well as Aſtrabad, having been in the rebellion, and knowing that part of the money our author was to receive, would be levied on their relations, there was reaſon to apprehend they would obſtruct their journey, if they had a favourable opportunity of doing it.

The firſt evening they were benighted and loſt in a wood, though they had ſucceſſively procured ſeveral guides; but they all ran away, for fear of being uſed ill. In this perplexity they advanced towards a houſe, where they ſaw a light, but found the entrance barricaded with trees. In vain did they uſe intreaties to perſuade the maſter of it to conduct them to Radizar; theſe being ineffectual, they broke into the houſe, and tying a rope to one of his arms, compelled him to conduct them. Unwarrantable as this conduct may appear, it was agreeable to the practice of Perſia, and now ſeemed abſolutely neceſſary; but having conducted them to Radizar, he was paid handſomely for his trouble, and ſuffered to return home.

The next day they entered the province of Mazanderan, the weather being extremely delightful. On the fourth the horſes and mules being at paſture, were viſited by a wolf, of a very extraordinary ſize; but be-

ing driven off by a guard ſet for ſuch purpoſes, the animal contented itſelf with killing a cow. In the morning they ſet out early, and coming up with a detachment of fifty ſoldiers, the commander courteouſly offered his ſervice to guard them.

Mr. Hanway obſerved, that ſome of the lower parts of Mazanderan nearly reſemble Ghilan; but not being ſo cloſely encircled by mountains, the air is more pure and free. This province alſo abounds with water, many ſtreams of which iſſue from the ſprings in the higher ground. The country is as fruitful as Ghilan; and being much healthier, the inhabitants are ſtronger and more robuſt. It furniſhes great quantities of cotton, and is the only province in the north of Perſia that produces ſugar.

Mr. Hanway preſented the commander of the fifty men, with cloth for a coat, and he being obliged to leave them, gave them ten of his ſoldiers for a guard; but as they advanced deeper in the province, the peaſants grew inſolent, and one of them ſeized the commander of the ten men by his throat. It is very dangerous coming to extremities with theſe people; for if they beat or diſtreſs any one, they are puniſhed ſo ſeverely, that they think it beſt to commit murder, to prevent a diſcovery; and if that is found out, they even then ſometimes hide themſelves in their mountains. The houſe aſſigned Mr. Hanway for his lodgings, being inhabited by women and children, that humane gentleman thought it his duty to comply with their entreaties, and therefore removed, and pitched his tent: but night drawing on, he diſcovered that he was in a very bad neighbourhood; for the villagers had appeared in arms in the late rebellion, and theſe people, imagining him to be extremely rich, would not be perſuaded, but that all the braſs buttons worn by thoſe in his company were of gold: their chief boaſted of his great dexterity in the uſe of fire-arms; as a ſpecimen of which before it was dark, he killed a ſmall bird on a lofty tree with a ſingle ball. The villagers, however,

being now filled with apprehenſions, that this convoy had orders to ſeize them, took their arms and retired. The inhabitants of the neighbouring mountains were no leſs diſaffected, and ſeveral horſemen entered the village in the night; but finding Mr. Hanway and his company on their guard, they turned back.

The dangerous ſituation our author had been in during the night, made him leave this place with great ſatisfaction. By ſeven in the morning, the ſun was extremely hot; but he found the Perſians were not ſo afraid of the ſun as the Portugueſe, who ſeldom travel without a cloak and umbrella, and alſo uſe ſkull-caps of paper, or a cabbage leaf under their hats; but the common people here only ſecure the crown of the head with a ſilk quilted ſkull-cap, and often leave the reſt of the head bare. About nine they took ſhelter in a wood, and pitched their tents, reſolving to travel only in the evening or at night. On the 7th they travelled five leagues, and early the next morning ſtruck their tents; but the ſoldiers, contrary to their engagement, had left them in the night to take care of themſelves.

As they approached towards Amul, the country appeared ſtill more pleaſant: the city is ſituated in a plain at the foot of Mount Taurus, and is watered by a river, over which is a fine bridge of twelve arches. The Perſians have a tradition that if any governor or commander paſſes over it on horſeback, he will ſoon be deprived of his office, if not of his life; and that whoever would not be purſued by ill fortune, ought to walk over it: however, though the ſtream is rapid and the water foul, the Perſians generally ford it, and as our author did not chuſe to be regarded as a perſon excluded from the common bounties of Heaven, he thought proper to walk over the bridge, leading his horſe. He there found the ruins of an old fortreſs, which had been built of brick, and had been ſtronger and more regular than any building of that kind he had ſeen in Perſia. Here is alſo a palace built with ſtone,

in which the famous Shah Abas often reſided: it commands a pleaſant proſpect, and is well contrived for coolneſs and convenience. The garden is remarkable for the ſize and height of its cypreſs trees.

In this city, Mr. Hanway met a writer in the ſervice of Mahommed Khan, who received him with great civility, and expreſſed much concern at his being ignorant of his circumſtances, when he was in his company retiring before the Turkumans. Having given him an account of the ſuppreſſion of the rebellion: he invited him to hear his muſic: one inſtrument reſembled a flute, another a guitar, and a third a kettle-drum, at the ſame time an old man and two boys ſung and danced. The laſt accompliſhment is taught to none but thoſe who hire themſelves to divert others: dancing being conſidered mean and ignoble. The boys moved their heads, legs, and arms, in a very extravagant manner. The writer then ſent for a prieſt, remarkable for being a good ſinger, who raiſed his voice to an amazing degree; his quavers were mixed with harſh guttural ſounds, and the diſtortions of his viſage, created horror rather than delight; nor was the inſtrumental muſic leſs diſagreeable.

The people of Amul, as in many other parts of this coaſt, begin in May to retire into the neighbouring mountains, where they live in tents, and enjoy cool breezes, delightful ſhades, plenty of fruit, the moſt delicious water, with an extenſive proſpect of a fine country below them. They have a great deal of rice and wheat, and alſo printed cottons, in which articles they trade with the neighbouring provinces.

On the 9th in the evening, Mr. Hanway left Amul, and travelled through a delightful country till two in the morning, when after reſting with his company in tents, they departed for Balfruſh, the capital of the province. He there learned, that upon the news of the defeat of the rebels, the governor appointed by Sadoc Aga was ſeized, and holes being cut in his fleſh, lighted candles were fixed in them In this barbarous man-

ner, this unhappy rebel was led naked about the market place, till he expired with loſs of blood.

On the 11th, Mr. Hanway viſited Mahommed Khan, whoſe houſe was in a delightful ſituation a few miles from the city. It had nothing like grandeur; but the adjacent woods and rivulets gave it an air of ſimplicity, and rendered it more pleaſant than the moſt magnificent palace, where nothing is to be ſeen but finiſhed ſtrokes of art. In the area before the houſe, one hundred and fifty men were drawn up under arms, in two double lines. Mr. Hanway alighted at ſome yards diſtance, and bowing with his hands on his breaſt, advanced towards the khan, who was ſeated in his aviam, and received him with great expreſſions of kindneſs, and as a proof of his regard, releaſed a man who was tied and condemned to be beaten, telling our author that he did it for his ſake, and to do him honour. Mr. Hanway made him a preſent of ſome fine cloths, and a caſe of choice drams, of which the khan was immoderately fond. Having prevailed on our author to ſtay all night, he ordered poultry and ſheep to be killed, reſolving to ſhew him ſuch favours as would wipe off the ſtains his reputation had ſuffered by his ill treatment of him before, for which he now made an apology. After dinner he ſent for the dancers and muſic, who tormented our author the whole evening: his nerves being too weak to bear the noiſe made by eight inſtruments and ſingers; but though an European ear cannot be reconciled to their taſte in muſic, yet ours is agreeable to them. When the dancing men had ended, they preſented Mr. Hanway an orange, which was a civil way of deſiring payment for their trouble. At length, the khan invited him to drink brandy with him, and on his refuſal, expreſſed great ſurpriſe, that he, being an European and a Chriſtian, was not fond of ſpirituous liquors. As ſoon as he retired, the khan and his companions could not refrain from drinking the ſtrong waters he had preſented him: their uſual way is for each perſon to have a plate of ſweetmeats before

him, and then they drink their liquor in tea cups till they are drunk, which is generally ſoon accompliſhed.

The next morning, Mr. Hanway viſited the monument of the khan's favourite wife, who had been lately buried in a wood near his houſe. It had an epitaph, in which, according to the common ſenſe of mankind, life was compared to a flower that bloſſoms in the ſpring, and in the ſummer appears in the full luſtre of its beauty, but in autumn begins to wither and decline, and when winter comes on, every guſt of wind blows it to the ground, where it lies and rots.

Mr. Hanway, having five men for his guard, left Balfruſh, and travelled three leagues through a fine country to Alleabad, where is a palace of a mean appearance, but pleaſantly ſituated. The moſt important monument of antiquity in this country, is the cauſeway built by Shah Abas the Great, about the beginning of the laſt century, from Keſkar in the ſouth-weſt corner of the Caſpian to Aſtrabad, and ſeveral leagues farther, it being in all near 300 Engliſh miles long: it has hardly ever been repaired, but as there are few or no wheel carriages uſed in this country, the pavement is in many places very perfect: it is raiſed in the middle, with ditches on each ſide, and in ſome parts is above twenty yards broad. From Alleabad to Sari, this cauſeway is for above a league together bordered on each ſide by a thick wood, whoſe luxuriant branches afford a delightful ſhelter to travellers. The proſpect is variegated with many avenues that open into meadows and fields of rice.

The inhabitants of Sari were in a miſerable condition, complaining loudly of the Shah, and no leſs of Sadoc Aga and his Turkuman Tartars. Here are four temples of the Gebers, or worſhippers of fire, who formerly inhabited all this coaſt: theſe edifices are made of the moſt durable materials, and are rotundas of about thirty feet in diameter, raiſed to a point of near one hundred and twenty feet in height.

Scol U. Allardice

Pyramids of Heads at the entrance of Astrabad

tempt, from his ſeeing the room adorned with ſuch paintings as could only pleaſe a voluptuous Mahometan. Here were alſo portraits of Shah Abas the firſt and ſecond, and ſome other perſons, all poorly done by an European hand. They were now ſhewn a fourth houſe and garden, in which was a ſtately dome, whoſe top was indifferently well painted, and the walls were covered with Dutch tiles as high as the gallery. On an eminence at ſome diſtance, was a ſmall building that ſeemed intended for an obſervatory. The whole commands a view of a very fine country, and of the Caſpian ſea, which is about five miles diſtant: the vicinity of the mountains on the back of the palace, the numerous caſcades and the warbling of the birds, gave our author many pleaſing ideas; but the unhappy ſituation of the people inceſſantly recurred to his thoughts, and damped the pleaſure he would otherwiſe have enjoyed.

On the 15th they left Aſhreff, and upon the road met a courier with a letter from Mirza Mahommed, to beſeech Mr. Hanway to haſten his journey, and uſe his intereſt to ſave his life. As they approached Aſtrabad, they met ſeveral armed horſemen carrying home the peaſants whoſe eyes had been put out, the blood yet running down their faces. Near the entrance of the city on each ſide was a pyramid built of ſtone, whitened over and made full of nitches; they were about ſixteen or twenty feet in diameter at the baſe, and riſing gradually near forty feet, each had a ſingle head at the top, and the greateſt part of the niches were filled with human heads, ſeveral of which had beards, and being ſet a little projecting, added to the horror of this ſhocking ſight.

On the 16th of May, Mr. Hanway entered Aſtrabad a ſecond time. He now found it a ſcene of miſery and deſolation: for he was informed that the execution of that day conſiſted in putting out the left eyes of thirty men, beheading four, and burning one alive, who had

been a captain in the rebel guard: 200 women were ſent out of the city, 150 of whom were ordered to be ſold to the ſoldiers as ſlaves. The next day he paſſed through ſeveral ſtreets, which ſeemed to have no inhabitants but ſoldiers, and a few old women. Mr. Hanway ſent a preſent to Bebbud Khan, the king's general, and followed it himſelf; he found him ſeated in his aviam, with his ſoldiers drawn up in a ſemicircle before him, and was employed in judging and condemning the unhappy wretches, one or two of whom were brought before him at a time.

After the firſt compliments Mr. Hanway took the Shah's decree in both his hands, and lifting it up to his head, delivered it to the general, who ſtood up to receive it, and raiſing it up to his forehead, gave it to his ſecretary to read. On Mr. Hanway's deſiring that it might be ſpeedily executed, he promiſed that it ſhould, and then preſented him ſweetmeats and large white mulberries, which are a delicious fruit. While he was eating, the priſoners were taken from his preſence, and the ſecretary made a complimental ſpeech on the uſefulneſs of merchants, obſerving that they brought wealth into countries, were ſerviceable to kings, and ought not to be offended by any, but protected by all parties.

After a ſhort repaſt, a priſoner was ſeverely beaten with ſticks, and the ſoldiers were ordered to ſpit in his face, and put out his eyes. When the ſoldiers were dragging him to execution, he begged with bitter cries that he might rather ſuffer death; the general, whoſe heart ſeemed made of the ſame ſtuff as his ſword, refuſed this cruel mercy; and ordering him to be recalled for further enquiry, ſuſpended the execution.

Sadoc Aga, the rebel general, who had a principal ſhare in taking Mr. Hanway's caravan of cloth, and inſulting him by his jeſts, was then brought before the general. When Mr. Hanway ſaw him laſt he was a youth of more than common vivacity, was richly dreſſed, well armed, and full of mirth. But alas! how

was the ſcene now altered! his garb was mean, and his eyes were deprived of their light; he drooped his head, and his voice was changed. The general aſked about our author's goods, and told him he muſt pay for them: to which he anſwered, "All I know of them is, that "they were taken by Mahommed Haſſan, and by him "diſtributed to his people. Would to God that Ma- "hommed Haſtan and his whole houſe had been buried "deep in the earth ere I had heard of his name! And "how can I pay for the goods? I have nothing left "but this mean garb that you ſee upon my back: in- "deed this is ſufficient: you have already deprived me "of my ſight, and of what uſe is life to me?" This he expreſſed with that emotion natural to a daring ſpirit, but the general cruelly ordered him to be ſtruck acroſs the mouth to ſilence him; which was done with ſuch violence, that the blood iſſued forth.

Sadoc Aga being removed, Mizra Mahommed was brought with two large logs of wood fitted to the ſmall of his legs and rivetted together; a heavy triangular wooden collar was alſo on his neck, which likewiſe ſerved as a handcuff to his left wriſt. Mr. Hanway might now have ſaid, "How wiſe you are!" as he ſaid to him when he ſaw him laſt; but he had too much humanity to inſult the wretched, and there being no mercy to be found there, he took no notice of his former behaviour; but departed abruptly, having his heart too full of the dreadful objects he had ſeen.

He then viſited Mahommed Huſſein Khan, the father of him who was the governor of Aſtrabad before the rebellion, and had been charged with the murder of Shah Tæhmas, the laſt lawful ſovereign of Perſia. He received our author with great politeneſs, aſſuring him in the ſtrongeſt terms, that he would not leave the place 'till his buſineſs was done, agreeably to the Shah's order; and among other things ſaid, "I am charged "with a particular commiſſion to ſee the rebels puniſh- "ed: I muſt do that for which I know I ſhall be "damned; the Shah will have it ſo. Well! to-mor-

" row is a day of blood, and I will make them pay " you, though I pull the money out of their throats." Mr. Hanway had too much humanity to thank him for his bloody intention; for though theſe unhappy rebels had acted as if they meant to devote themſelves to ruin, yet an oppoſition to ſuch execrable tyranny wanted only more force and wiſdom to give it the ſtamp of glory; nor could our author behold without horror, a man, whom a blind obedience to his prince could induce to ſhake hands with everlaſting perdition.

The next day in the evening eight Turkuman Tartars being taken in the road, were brought to that city, upon which the general expreſſed great ſatisfaction, obſerving that many niches in his pyramid were yet unfilled; one of them being called Sais, and the other having the name Mahommed Huſſein Khan. The execution of a malefactor in Perſian is performed with little ceremony, he is taken to a field or open place near the reſidence of the military judge, and the executioner cauſing him to kneel, he pronounces his creed, " There is but one God, Mahommed is his prophet, " and Ali his friend:" his head is then taken off with the motion of a ſabre, with a thruſting cut, which in drawing back completes the operation.

Mr. Hanway now viſited his good friend Nazeer Aga, who had received a reward from the Shah for the ſervices he had performed during the rebellion. The old man expreſſed a high ſatisfaction at ſeeing him after the great dangers to which they had both been expoſed. A few days after Nazeer Aga informed Mr. Hanway by letter, of the arrival of captain Woodrooſe in Aſtrabad bay; and as the the Turkmans and Ogurtjoys were in arms againſt the Perſians, and poſſeſſed a great number of boats, he thought it unſafe for the ſhip to be in the road. In anſwer to this letter our author thanked him for his advice, and told him that he did not fear theſe barbarians; for if they ſhould come in numbers like a ſwarm of bees, they would meet their deſtruction from the great guns. This was proper

language for him to talk where the Turkumans had their ſpies, and were it not for the terror of captain Woodroofe's four three pounders, the ſum he was preparing to ſend on board might have induced them to attack the ſhip at anchor, and as ſome of theſe boats had twelve or fourteen hands well armed, they might have found it difficult to defend the ſhip: however, they had provided cloſe quarters and powder cheſts; ſo that they could not have taken it without a manner of fighting to which they were entire ſtrangers.

On the 21ſt, Myrza Mahommed delivered to Mr. Hanway the greateſt part of his baggage, of which he had been ſo careful, as to conceal it in a well, by which it received ſome damage; and alſo paid him as much of the money as was in his hands, as he ſaid was in his power; though it was evident that if the rebellion had ſucceeded, he would have deprived him of the whole; but he hoped that Mr. Hanway would intercede in his favour. The next morning that gentleman went to the two khans, who were together, and had juſt condemned, and ordered for execution, twenty-one perſons, and informed them that Myrza had delivered his baggage, and that he hoped he would receive the king's mercy. Mahommed Huſſein Khan aſked, if he deſired he ſhould be ſaved? to this he anſwered in the affirmative, and that he ſhould conſider mercy ſhewn to Myrza, as a particular mark of favour. To which the other replied, "For your ſake then he ſhall be ſaved: "his majeſty has ſhewn you great honour, and it is my "buſineſs to do the ſame." Mr. Hanway having returned his thanks, and Myrza being ſent for was informed that for Mr. Hanway's ſake he was pardoned, and immediately his collar and log were cut off.

Our author had before received, in ſingle pieces and cuts of cloth to the amount of 1600 crowns. A much greater value had been found in the city; but the general converted it to his own uſe. Some time after he received 3000 crowns more, and was deſired to take a part of the payment in female ſlaves, which he abſo-

lutely refuſed. At the ſame time the general, being informed that our author was only thirty-two years of age, expreſſed great aſtoniſhment at his hoary locks, 'till he was told, that what he took for his hair was only a wig.

On the 5th of June, Mr. Hanway preſſing Mahommed Huſſein Khan and the general, for the payment of the reſt of his money, the former wanted him to take his obligations for it, payable in ten or fifteen days, and the general being obliged to march, cried, "I cannot "go from hence without the receipt; the king will "demand it of me, and if you do not give it me, I "will kill men, 'till I get the money:" But Mr. Hanway anſwered, "I hope no man will die on my "account; but I cannot anſwer it to the merchants "my principals, to give a receipt for the money, in "exchange for any obligation whatſoever."

Some days after, Mr. Hanway went to Kourdiemalla, guarded by five horſe and ten foot ſoldiers, carrying with him ſeven bales of cloth, and nine bags of money, with other things to the value of 11,000 crowns, taking care to let nobody know when he intended to leave the town, 'till he actually ſet out. But he had the mortification to be forſaken by his guard, and left in a thick wood, three Engliſh miles from the place of embarkation; he, however, got ſafely on board with the money and goods, and the next day returned to Aſtrabad. On the 29th he went again on board with 5000 crowns more, leaving Matteuſe, his old Armenian clerk, and two ſervants, to ſolicit for the remainder due on the Shah's decree.

While Mr. Hanway was at Aſtrabad, he received a letter from the Shah's nephew, who was governor of Meſched, in anſwer to one he had wrote to him in relation to the payment for the piſtols inlaid with gold, and other curioſities, which Mr. Elton had provided for him by expreſs commiſſion: but this great man had ſo little ſenſe of honour, that he returned them on Mr.

Elton's hands, though they were utterly unvendable, alleging that they were too good for him.

The Perſian paper, on which they write their letters, is made of cotton and ſilk rags, and afterwards a gloſs is ſet upon it by rubbing it with a ſmooth ſtone or ſhell; but it is ſo ſoft and liable to be torn, that they roll it up. Their letters are wrote on ſmall ſlips of paper in a few words, and with great exactneſs, for their characters are rather drawn than written, no interlineations or blots being ever ſuffered: they are then made up in rolls about ſix inches long, and a piece of paper being faſtened round them with gum, it is ſealed with an impreſſion of ink, which reſembles our printers ink, but is not ſo thick; it is compoſed of a mixture of burned rice, galls, and gum, and anſwers the double purpoſe of ink and wax, as it ſerves not only for writing, but for ſubſcribing with their ſeal. Their pens are made of reeds brought from the ſouthern parts of Perſia; and in their rings they wear agates, which generally ſerve for a ſeal, there being frequently engraved on them the wearer's name, with ſome verſe of the koran.

Mr. Hanway having lived ſome time in a very friendly manner with Mr. Elton at Langarood, went to Lahijan for the recovery of his health, he having been for a conſiderable time very ill; and from thence he removed to Reſha. Mr. Elton, who had uſed him with the extremeſt kindneſs, was about this time much offended at the conduct of Mr. Hanway's employers in Europe, for their ſubmiſſion to the Ruſſian court, and being apprehenſive of our author's making a juſt repreſentation of his engagements with the Shah, which were abſolutely inconſiſtent with the views of the Ruſſia company, and of carrying on the trade into Perſia, he ſuddenly became our author's moſt bitter enemy.

Before Mr. Hanway takes leave of Perſia, he gives ſome account of the religion of the Gebers, which is ſtill preſerved by ſome of the poſterity of the ancient

Indians and Perſians. This religion was founded by Zoroaſter, who lived about the year of the world 2860. This great philoſopher being ſtruck with the demonſtrations he obſerved of the perfection of that ſelf-exiſtent Being, who is the author of all good, and being at a loſs how to account for the introduction of evil into this world, thought there were two principles or beings, one the cauſe of all good, whom he imagined reſembled the light, the other the author of all evil, whom he repreſented by darkneſs. Thus conſidering light as the moſt perfect ſymbol of true wiſdom, and darkneſs as the repreſentative of whatever is hurtful and deſtructive, he inculcated an abhorrence of all images, and taught his followers to worſhip God only under the form of fire; conſidering the brightneſs, activity, purity, and incorruptibility of that element, as bearing the moſt perfect reſemblance of the nature of the good deity. Thus the Perſians ſhewed a particular veneration for the ſun, as the brighteſt image of God; and offered up their ſacrifices in the open air, and generally on the top of a hill; for they eſteemed it injurious to the Majeſty of the God of Heaven, to ſhut him up in walls who fills immenſity with his preſence.

About ſix hundred years after the firſt Zoroaſter, another philoſopher of the ſame name aroſe, who taught, that under the Supreme Being there are two angels, the one of light, who is author of all good, and the other of darkneſs, who is author of all evil; that they by a mixture of light and darkneſs made all things, and are in a perpetual ſtruggle with each other. That where the angel of light prevails, there good reigns; and where the angel of darkneſs, there evil predominates. That this ſtruggle ſhall laſt 'till the end of the world, when the angel of darkneſs, with his followers, ſhall be for ever ſeparated from the light; but thoſe who cheriſh their ſpiritual nature, and obey the angel of light, ſhall go with him into a world, where they ſhall be rewarded amidſt everlaſting brightneſs, and

triumphant glory. In ſhort, this laſt Zoroaſter cauſed temples to be built, in which the ſacred fire was ordered to be conſtantly preſerved.

Theſe opinions, with a few alterations, are ſtill preſerved by the Gebers, or Gaurs, the poſterity, as we have ſaid, of the ancient Indians and Perſians, who are very zealous in preſerving the religion of their anceſtors, particularly with reſpect to their veneration for fire.

What is commonly called the everlaſting fire, is a phænomenon of a very extraordinary nature. This object of their devotion is about ten miles from Baku, a city ſituated by an excellent haven in the Caſpian ſea, on a dry, rocky ſoil, where there are ſeveral ancient temples of ſtone, ſuppoſed to have been all dedicated to fire; but moſt of them were only arched vaults, about ten or fifteen feet high. Among others, is a little temple, in which the Indians now perform their devotions. Near the altar is a large hollow cane, from the end of which iſſues a blue flame, like that of a lamp burning with ſpirits, but to appearance more pure. This flame, the Indians pretend, has continued ever ſince the flood, and they fancy it will laſt 'till the end of the world. Here are generally forty or fifty poor devotees, who come on a pilgrimage from their own country, and feed upon a kind of Jeruſalem artichokes, wild cellery, and ſeveral other herbs and roots. They pretend to make expiation both for their own ſins and thoſe of others, and continue longer in proportion to the number of perſons for whom they promiſe to pray. They mark their foreheads with ſaffron, and have a great veneration for a red cow. They wear but little clothing, and thoſe moſt diſtinguiſhed for their piety, put one of their arms upon their heads, or ſome other part of the body, and keep it unalterably fixed in that poſition.

At a ſmall diſtance from the temple, is a low cleft of a rock, in which is an horizontal gap two feet from the ground, near ſix long, and about three broad, from

which iſſues a blue flame like that already deſcribed: in ſtill weather it burns low, but when the wind blows, it ſometimes riſes eight feet high, and yet it is not perceived that the flame makes any impreſſion on the rock. The Indians here alſo pay their adorations, and ſay, that if theſe fires are ſtopped in one place, they will riſe in another. But what appears ſtill more extraordinary is, that the earth for above two miles round this place has this property, that on taking up two or three inches of the ſurface, and applying a live coal, the part uncovered immediately takes fire, almoſt before the coal touches it: the flame heats the ſoil, but does not conſume it, nor does it affect the earth that is near it; but this earth carried to another place does not produce this effect. If a cane, or even a paper tube, be ſet about two inches in the ground, and cloſed up with earth below, on touching the top of it with a live coal, and blowing upon it, a flame immediately iſſues, without burning either the cane or the paper, provided the edges be covered with clay; and this method they uſe for light in their houſes, which have no other floor but the earth: three or four of theſe lighted canes will boil water in a pot, and thus they dreſs their victuals. The flame may be extinguiſhed in the ſame manner as that of ſpirits of wine. The ground is here dry and ſtony, and the more ſtony it is, the ſtronger and clearer the flame; it has a ſulphurous ſmell like naphtha; but it is not very offenſive. It burns lime to great perfection.

Near this place brimſtone is dug, and ſprings of naptha are found. The chief place for the black or dark grey naptha, is the ſmall iſland Wetoy, which is now uninhabited, except when they are taking naphtha. The ſprings boil up higheſt when the weather is thick and hazy; and the naphtha often takes fire on the ſurface; and runs in great quantities in a flame into the ſea, to an almoſt incredible diſtance from the ſhore. In clear weather the ſprings do not boil up above two or three feet. This oily ſubſtance in boiling over becomes of ſuch a conſiſtence, as by degrees almoſt to

cloſe the mouth of the ſpring: ſometimes it is quite cloſed, and forms hillocks as black as pitch; but when a ſpring is reſiſted in one place, it breaks out in another; ſome that have not been long open, form a mouth of eight or ten feet diameter. It is unpleaſant to the ſmell, and is moſtly uſed by the poor among the Perſians and the neighbouring people, as we uſe oil in lamps, or to boil their proviſions; but it gives the food a diſagreeable taſte. It burns beſt when mixed with a ſmall quantity of aſhes; and as there is great plenty of it, every family is well ſupplied. They keep it in earthen veſſels under ground, at a ſmall diſtance from their houſes, on account of its being very liable to take fire.

In the peninſula of Apcheron there is a white naptha of a much thinner conſiſtence, which the Ruſſians drink as a cordial and medicine: it is alſo uſed externally, and is ſaid to be carried into India, where being prepared, it makes the moſt beautiful and laſting varniſh yet found.

Our author having with much difficulty, and after waiting a long time, obtained a recompence for his loſſes, he diſpoſed of the cloth he had recovered at Reſhd, and laid out the produce, as well as the money he had received, in raw ſilk. He left that city on the 13th of September, and arrived at Perrybazar, where he embarked in a flat-bottomed Perſian boat, and on the 29th reached Yerkie, where he was viſited by a commander of a guard-ſhip ſtationed there, by whom he was informed, that if he had any other goods on board, but ſuch as were of the province of Ghilan, and did not declare them, the law made it death to the offender, beſides burning the ſhip and cargo. As Mr. Bakcoonin, the Ruſſian conſul, had informed the governor of Aſtrachan, that the plague was at Caſhan, they were ordered to land on a ſmall uninhabited iſland, on the eaſt ſide of the entrance of the Volga; where a fire being made, a ſurgeon and his attendants took the windward of them, and deſired to ſee their breaſts, as is uſual in ſuch caſes; and after he was ſatisfied that they had no infection, their

letters were delivered to him, after being firſt dipped in vinegar and dried in the ſmoke. The next day the commander ſent for Mr. Hanway and the captain to come again on ſhore on the iſland, where they were a ſecond time interrogated whether they had any Caſhan goods on board, and in virtue of an order he had received for that purpoſe, deſired them to declare in writing, the places they had viſited ſince their leaving Ruſſia.

Having waited here till the 11th of October in very diſagreeable weather, without any freſh proviſions, a ſignal was made by the guard-ſhip for Mr. Hanway and the captain to come on board; and then they had the mortification of being ordered to perform a quarantine on an uninhabited iſland a little to the eaſtward. But what affected them moſt was the news of the loſs of all their letters, diſpatches and paſſports, with the lives of twelve ſoldiers, in one of the empreſs's boats, which was ſent up eleven days before, and had been attacked on the way by the Kalmucks, who murdered the whole crew.

At length the governor of Aſtrachan, imagining that Mr. Hanway might have ſomething to communicate to him, permitted his going to that city, on condition of his remaining a week longer in quarantine, without bringing with him the leaſt part of his clothes or baggage. He therefore on the 20th, went up a ſmall branch of the Volga, and landed on the iſland Caraza, now appointed for quarantine, where he found warehouſes and habitations, with thirty ſoldiers. Here lodgings were appointed for him in a houſe detached from the crew and the other paſſengers. On the twenty-ſixth the governor of Aſtrachan ſent his barge rowed by twelve grenadiers, with ſome of his own clothes: Mr. Hanway was then required to ſtrip himſelf entirely naked in the open air; and to paſs through the mortifying ceremony of having a large pail of warm water thrown upon him.

Having undergone this diſagreeable diſcipline, he embarked for Aſtrachan, and on the 27th arrived in that city. He waited on the governor the next day; but found his behaviour very different from what is was a twelve-month before; for he was very reſerved upon the article of trade in general, though very inquiſitive about Mr. Elton; and though Mr. Hanway did not come empty handed, he barely met with civility, and paſſed his time in a very diſagreeable manner, ſeparated from his clothes, his ſervants, and the conveniencies of life, in a place that afforded no amuſement.

On the 22d of November, he obtained leave to ſet out for Peterſburgh; but the Volga being covered with floating ice, he reſolved to travel by land on the weſtern bank of that river, and being informed that the ſecretary of the ſalt office at Aſtrachan, and ſeveral Ruſſian merchants, under the convoy of five Coſſacks, were ready to depart, he embraced the opportunity of joining them with two ſervants, who were all he had now with him, and croſſed the Volga.

On the 28th they met a large caravan going to Aſtrachan, which informed them that four perſons were miſſing in Zaritzen and Chernoyare, and as a bloody ſhirt had been found on the way, it was concluded that they were murdered. Orders were therefore given to the Coſſacks to keep a ſtricter watch than uſual; and ſome of the company who had been impatient to proceed forwards, and intended to leave the reſt, now thought it improper to ſeparate. On the 2d of December they found a Ruſſian waggon, and the harneſſes of ſeveral horſes belonging to the five perſons who had been really murdered, and the next day they reached Zaritzen.

During Mr. Hanway's ſtay there he dined with the ſecretary, who acted as ſub-governor of the town, and preſented his wife to the company, who ſaluted her according to cuſtom. She then preſented a ſalver with ſmall ſilver cups of brandy, which was repeated after dinner; but ſhe did not ſit with them at table: our

author was equally amazed at the profuſion of the meats, and at the badneſs of the cookery. The quantity of bad wine, ſtrong and ſmall beer drank by his companions was alſo prodigious; it was, however, a feaſt of friendſhip deſigned to reconcile the Aſtrachan ſecretary, and one of the principal merchants of the city, who had quarrelled; and their healths being drank, the maſter of the houſe obliged them to kiſs each other; they were then ſaluted by all the company in the ſame manner; after this, to complete the farce, they began to reproach each other for their paſt injuries.

As the ſnow now rendered the road impaſſable for wheel carriages, Mr. Hanway cauſed his waggon to be placed on a ſledge, and having taken leave of his Ruſſian friends ſet out on the 6th, attended only by two ſervants. The next day the weather was ſo cold, that ſome ſtrong wine froze under his feather bed; he that night reached Caſhaliena, ſituated on the Don: the inhabitants, who are a mixture of Ruſſians and Circaſſians, are poor, but bleſſed with liberty. The winds now blew ſo hard and exceſſive cold, that the carriers could not face it, and were frequently obliged to halt; the ground was covered with ſnow, and it often happens that the paſſengers who do not provide a compaſs to direct them, loſe their way and periſh.

On the 13th they ſtopped at Bruſano, where the inhabitants informed them that a band of robbers had the night before broke into two houſes, and not contented with plundering them, tortured the peaſants by putting fire between their fingers, to oblige them to deliver their money. Theſe robbers were ſo cloſely purſued, that Mr. Hanway and his attendants found hams and other proviſions they had dropped in their flight. Upon the road they had frequent opportunities of obſerving in what manner the peaſants render their huts habitable during the ſeverity of the cold weather. Few of theſe having chimneys, the ſmoke of the ſtoves is carried out through the windows: by this means they are filled with ſo thick a cloud of ſmoke,

that is impoſſible to breathe at above two or three feet from the floor, till the wood is burnt to aſhes; and therefore thoſe who would not be ſuffocated muſt crawl in upon their hands and knees.

On the 22d Mr. Hanway arrived at Moſcow, where he received letters, informing him of the death of a relation, who had left him a conſiderable fortune. He ſtaid there till the 28th of December, and in the mean while provided a light ſledge in which he was determined to travel poſt. Nothing can be more accommodated to eaſe and diſpatch, than travelling in ſledges in froſty weather: for in the journey our author now made from Moſcow to Peterſburgh, he ſlept without waking while he advanced 100 werſts, or 66 Engliſh miles. The whole road between theſe two cities was marked out in the ſnow by young fir-trees planted on both ſides, at the diſtance of about 20 yards, which at a moderate computation amount to 128,480 trees. At certain diſtances were alſo great piles of wood, to be ſet on fire to give light to the empreſs and her court, if they paſſed by in the night. On theſe occaſions her imperial majeſty is drawn in a large machine that contains her bed, a table and other conveniences, where four perſons may take a repaſt. This machine is fixed on a ſledge, and drawn by twenty-four poſt horſes, and if any of them fall on the road, others are ready to ſupply their places. She is generally three days and nights on the way, and has ſeveral ſmall palaces at which ſhe ſometimes ſtops to refreſh herſelf. Though the diſtance is 488 Engliſh miles, Peter the Great once made the journey in 46 hours; but he did not travel in the ſame kind of carriage.

Mr. Hanway arrived at Peterſburgh on the firſt of January 1745, having performed the journey from Moſcow in three days and a half. He had been abſent a year and ſixteen weeks, in which time he had travelled above 4000 Engliſh miles by land.

The court of Peterſburgh has enjoyed the reputation of being one of the moſt brilliant in Europe; for in

the reign of the late empreſs Anne the countenance foreigners received, added much to its ſplendid appearance. The Ruſſians are ſtill fond of rich clothes. The preſent ſovereign Elizabeth Petrowna the daughter of Peter the great, on certain days appears in mens clothes, particularly on the day of her acceſſion to the throne, when ſhe treats her company of liſe grenadier guards at ſupper in the grand ſaloon of the palace, and ſits at table with her officers in regimentals, as their colonel. This company with reſpect to their ſtature, comlineſs, and the richneſs of their uniforms, can hardly be equalled by any troops in Europe.

By the admiralty, where ſhips of war are built, is a magnificent palace, ſituated on the ſouth bank of the Neva, near the centre of city, and in the eaſtern part, is the ſummer palace and gardens, which abound in fine ſtatues and delightful walks, yet being a dead flat it can produce but little variety. Near it is the theatre, where Italian operas and French comedies are acted at the empreſs's expence, to which foreigners who make any appearance, are admitted. Maſquerades, balls, and concerts are alſo frequent at court. Two poets, our author obſerves, have lately ſtarted up as it were from a ſtate of darkneſs, and wrote tragedies according to modern dramatic rules. Lord Anſon's voyage round the world, Telemachus, and ſeveral other books have alſo been tranſlated into the Ruſſian language.

Elizabeth Petrowna, the daughter of Peter the Great by the empreſs Catharine, is one of the moſt accompliſhed ladies of her rank, nor was her perſon leſs amiable; but time which wears off the charms of youth, has rendered her corpulent: yet ſhe is very active, dances, hunts, and rides on horſeback: ſhe ſeems to delight chiefly in ſelect companies, at the houſes of her favourites.

This empreſs wears the order of St. Andrew, which is a blue ribbon: the number of knights of this order are near ſixty; but it is not confined. The order of St. Alexander, is inferior to this, and conſiſts of thirty-

ſix knights, who wear a red ribbon: there is alſo an order of St. Anne of Holſtein, which is diſtinguiſhed by red ſtriped with yellow, and another of St. Catharine, which is red with a ſilver edge, and is intended only for women.

Peterſburgh was founded by Peter the Great, in the beginning of the preſent century, and may now be conſidered as the modern polite metropolis. Though it was ſo lately a moraſs, it is now an elegant and ſuperb city, very healthy, and abounding in all the neceſſaries, and many of the ſuperfluities of life. It is ranged on both ſides of the Neva, extending near two Engliſh miles from eaſt to weſt. At the upper end of the north ſide is the citadel, which is more famous for the number of lives it coſt in building, than for its ſtrength: it contains a ſtately church, in which are depoſited the remains of its founder, Peter the Great, and his empreſs Catharine, and it is alſo a priſon for offenders againſt the ſtate. The city has neither walls nor gates; but the marſhy land near it to the north and ſouth, and the gulph of Finland to the eaſt, render it difficult of approach for an army. As Peter the Great took Amſterdam for his model, it is divided by ſeveral canals; but from the reluctance with which it was originally begun by his ſubjects, and from errors in the plan, a part of it ſtill remains unexecuted, and in others, the houſes are too near the canal; but there are ſome regular, broad, and well-built ſtreets, and ſeveral very noble edifices. The empreſs's fondneſs for building has contributed to the beauty of the city; for beſides the two royal palaces already mentioned, ſhe has built a noble one, ſaid to be intended for the great duke. There is alſo a nunnery lately erected; and at Czarſcho Zelo, about fifteen Engliſh miles diſtant, is another royal palace. Theſe edifices are moſtly of brick, plaſtered over, ſo as to make an elegant appearance; but the work is generally done in a hurry, and the materials are not very durable. An Italian architect being

eſtabliſhed in Ruſſia, notwithſtanding the difference of the climate, the taſte of Italy is adopted in almoſt all their houſes, and though the ſeverity of the cold is ſo great, they abound much more in windows than our houſes in England. The number of people in Peterſburgh are computed at 250,000, including the garriſon, which is numerous; but in reckoning the ſubjects throughout the whole empire, it is laid down as a rule, that the hundred and ſeventy-fifth male raiſes an army of near 50,000 men, and conſequently, ſuppoſing an equal number of females, the whole may be reckoned 17,500,000; but the tributary Tartars, the Ruſſian Ukraine, and the conquered provinces are not included in this account. The revenues of the Ruſſian empire, which were formerly only five millions, are now increaſed to fifteen millions of rubles, or three millions ſterling, and are yet improveable, without diſtreſſing the ſubject.

As to the climate of Ruſſia, it differs extremely in the ſeveral parts of it included in Europe, and ſtill more in their Aſiatic dominions. At Peterſburgh, February generally brings with it a bright ſun and a clear ſky, every object ſeems to glitter with gems, and the nerves become braced by the cold. There is then no ſmall amuſement in riding in ſledges upon the ſnow, to thoſe who from the length of the winter, have forgot the much ſuperior pleaſure which nature preſents, when clothed in all her verdure.

March is frequently attended with ſhowers, which, with the heat of the ſun, penetrate the ice: this is generally three quarters of a yard thick on the Neva, and in ſome great rivers to the north-eaſt much thicker. This renders it like an honey-comb, and about the end of that month it uſually breaks up.

The month of April is frequently very warm; ſummer ſeems to precede the ſpring; for it is ſometimes the firſt of June before any conſiderable verdure appears, and then the intenſe heat brings it on ſo faſt, that the eye can diſcover its progreſs from day to day.

Till the middle of July it ſeems to be one continued day, the ſun not entirely diſappearing above two hours in the twenty-four; but the delight which this ſeaſon naturally affords, is conſiderably abated by the extreme heat of the weather; however, a week ſeldom paſſes without the air being refreſhed by ſoutherly and weſterly winds, which often bring gentle ſhowers. Our author, who reſided about five years in this city, once experienced a delightful autumn to the end of September; but this rarely happens: Auguſt cloſes the ſcene, ſo that there are hardly above three months of ſummer.

September generally brings rain and froſt; the ſeverity of both is increaſed in October, and in November the Neva is always frozen. Then comes on the ſeaſon for the eaſy and ſpeedy conveyance on the ſnow, which brings freſh proviſion to market a thouſand Engliſh miles by land, and the beef of Archangel is often eaten at Peterſburgh. In December and January the cold is ſo very intenſe, that the poor who are overtaken by liquor, or expoſed to the air in open places, are frequently frozen to death. But the abundance of birch and alders with which the Ruſſians are ſupplied, and the commodiouſneſs of their ſtoves, enable them to introduce any degree of heat into their houſes.

The Ruſſians are for the moſt part of a middle ſtature, though many of them are tall and comely. The common people are fond of their ancient cuſtoms, and though the majority of them ſubmit to modern improvements, many chuſe to ſuffer great inconveniencies, and to pay additional taxes, rather than cut off their beards, and to conform to ſome regulations with reſpect to religion. Women, in general, are not ſo amiable in Ruſſia as in many other countries: indeed, they daub themſelves ſo much with paint, as to conceal the graces which nature may be preſumed to have beſtowed on them; for they generally profeſs, that if they

have ſufficient plumpneſs, they can procure themſelves beauty.

The common people are clothed with long coats, made of dreſſed ſheep-ſkins, with the wool towards their bodies; their legs and feet are ſwaddled with a coarſe cloth, ſecured by a cord of reeds, and their ſandals are of the ſame materials. Their caps are lined with fur, and cover the ears and neck, as well as the head: they wear ſaſhes round their waiſts, and double gloves, one of woollen and the other of leather, which take in the hand without any diſtinction, except the thumb, and theſe are an eſſential part of their clothing. However, people of any rank generally dreſs as we do in England, except wearing a full great coat lined with fur, with a deep quilted or fur lined cap, when they go abroad. The women of the lower claſs, beſides their petticoats, wear ſheep-ſkins like the men; but thoſe who move in a higher ſphere, wear flowered ſilk cloaks, lined with furs, of which the moſt common ſort is white hares. Ladies of great diſtinction have them lined with rich furs, and almoſt conſtantly wear them.

On the 9th of July, 1750. Mr. Hanway left Peterſburgh, and travelling along the banks of the Neva, came to the palace of Strelna Muſa, which is about twenty werſts from Peterſburgh. It is ſituated on an eminence, and commands an extenſive view of the gulph of Finland. It was intended to be a more grand and elegant building than Peterhoff, and the gardens were laid out in a fine taſte; but the death of Peter the Great, together with the badneſs of the foundation, put a ſtop to the proſecution of the deſign. The preſent empreſs has cauſed many of her courtiers to build country houſes on the ſouth of the road between this palace and that of Peterhoff: among theſe, the houſe and gardens of baron Wolf are moſt diſtinguiſhed for their extent and beauty: however, moſt of theſe country houſes are built of wood, and little expence is beſtowed on the gardens.

Peter the Great left Peterhoff a mean building; but it has been greatly enlarged and beautified by the preſent empreſs. The water-works are compared to thoſe of Verſailles, with this difference in their favour, that the waters of Peterhoff are more ſweet. This palace is ſituated on an eminence, on the ſouth ſide of the gulph of Finland, of which it commands an extenſive proſpect, as well as of the iſland of Cronſtadt. The foreſt of maſts that appears from the baſons of that iſland during the ſummer ſeaſon, gives the idea of a flouriſhing commerce; but the gardens of Peterhoff, though they afford a great variety of ſcenes, yet lying moſtly on a dead flat, and the walks being of ſand, they fall incomparably ſhort of thoſe belonging to the ſeats of many noblemen in England.

Mr. Hanway paſſing the gulf arrived at Cronſtadt, where being detained for ſeveral days by tempeſtuous weather, he had an opportunity of examining the dry dock contrived by Peter the Great, which is one of the greateſt curioſities in the world of its kind. It extends about ſeven hundred fathoms, is ſixty feet broad at the bottom, eighty feet at the top, and is forty feet deep, having flood-gates in different parts. It is intended to receive fourteen ſhips of the line of battle. There is a grand reſervoir, which was then dug almoſt eighteen feet lower than the docks, and is conſequently near ſixty feet deep: it is about ſix hundred feet long, and three hundred feet broad. The iſland of Cronſtadt is near fifteen miles in circumference; but very barren: the town is ſuppoſed to have near 25,000 inhabitants, including ſoldiers and ſailors.

On the 15th, Mr. Hanway embarked in a ſmall yatch belonging to Dantzic, and on the 18th landed at Revel, when he was conducted to the commander of the port, of whom it was neceſſary, according to cuſtom, to aſk permiſſion to enter the town. This place is the capital of Eſtonia, and is fifty leagues diſtant from Peterſburgh; it ſubmitted to Peter the Great by capitulation in 1710, and is only taxed with the ſupport

of a garriſon of 5000 ſoldiers with quarters, and 3000 ſeamen with not only quarters, but fire and candle. Within the walls are about ſix hundred houſes, containing near 8000 ſouls, and the ſuburbs are large and well inhabited. The people ſeem to be formal and reſerved; but are extremely induſtrious, and live in ſuch ſecurity, that they might ſleep with their doors open. The houſes which are of the moſt durable materials, ſeem all prepared for the reception of merchandize: the firſt apartment into which one enters reſembling a large warehouſe. The country abounds in corn, of which they have generally great magazines. This was formerly a free town, and one of the greateſt ports in the Baltic; Narva being its only competitor. The Ruſſians then brought the produce of their own country, as well as that of Perſia, to this market; but when our author was there the trade was very inconſiderable.

Great part of the city ſtands upon an eminence, and is defended by out-works, a moat, and a wall about ſix feet thick, and forty in height. The ſtreets are neither broad nor regular, but the houſes are lofty and have ſteep roofs to carry off the ſnow. The town-houſe is an ancient building, and contains nothing remarkable, but ſome fine paintings, which are in great eſteem. Here are four Lutheran churches for the citizens, and one for the peaſants of the adjacent country; alſo two Greek churches for the uſe of the Ruſſians.

On the 19th, Mr. Hanway reimbarked, and the next day reached the height of Gotland, an iſland about ſeventy miles long, and twenty broad in the middle, diminiſhing at each end almoſt to a point. It belongs to the Swedes, and has eighteen towns and villages: but though it was formerly very rich, it has been ſo often plundered in time of war, that the inhabitants are not in the moſt flouriſhing ſituation.

On the 24th in the morning, our author entered the Viſtula, which has two branches up to Dantzic, the deepeſt of which is formed into a canal, and there is a caſtle about two Engliſh miles from the town. This

city is about three Engliſh miles in circumference, and well fortified with lofty works and a double ditch of water; where theſe are weakeſt, which is on the weſt ſide, the country may be eaſily laid under water. Theſe works require twelve or fifteen hundred men to defend them; but the town cannot afford above ſeven hundred. By the civil behaviour of the ſoldiers to ſtrangers, one may eaſily obſerve the difference between troops in the immediate pay of citizens, and thoſe under crowned heads. The houſes of Dantzic are generally five ſtories high, which make the ſtreets appear the narrower, eſpecially as the entrance into the houſes is by four or five ſtone ſteps, and a balcony, both which makes a projection of ten or twelve feet: they are kept clean after the manner of the Dutch, though with leſs nicety. Many of the ſtreets are planted with wild cheſnut-trees about 30 feet high, which afford an agreeable ſhelter; but the inhabitants are more agreeable than their houſes and trees. The women reſemble the Engliſh in their ſtature, countenance, and air; but the bad ones make a market of their beauty in the neighbouring countries, where they are remarkably eminent in a profeſſion that is apt to convert beauty into deformity, and health into diſeaſe. The women of diſtinction affect the manners of the Poles, and the moſt reſpectful way of ſaluting a lady is to kiſs her hand, if one does not chuſe to ſtoop ſo low as the hem of her petticoat, as is commonly practiſed by the Poles.

A republican ſpirit prevails in this great trading city, which is under the protection of the Poles. The arſenal contains a good collection of arms: but as in moſt places of the like nature, it has many that are old and uſeleſs. They pretend to have 150 large braſs cannon, ſome of which are ſaid to weigh 15,000 pounds.

Among the curioſities that moſt engaged our author's attention, was the great Lutheran church, which is an ancient ſtructure that has not been much changed by the eſtabliſhment of the proteſtant religion in this city; for it was agreed by treaties to leave the crucifixes,

images and pictures, as in the times of popery. They ſhew a very curious piece of painting on wood, of the reſurrection by Van Dyck. It is much admired, particularly for the hands and face, and is ſaid to be one of the firſt performances in oil colours; yet is ſo perfect, and delicate, as to bear the niceſt examination.

The moſt conſiderable branch of the trade of Dantzic is that of corn, which is brought by the Polanders, in large barks of about fifty tons burthen, down the Viſtula. In plentiful years theſe barks annually amount to about 1600. As theſe cargoes are often expoſed to the weather, it is cuſtomary to ſpread their ſails on the banks of the river, and to dry their corn upon them. They alſo export bees-wax to the annual amount of near 1000 ſchippounds: beſides narrow linens, ſacking, pot-aſh, pearl-aſh, pipe-ſtaves, and oak plank.

Mr. Hanway having ſpent a week very agreeably at Dantzic, provided a chariot, and took leave of his friends. The territories of this city extend weſtward between two and three German miles*. The country is agreeable, but the ſoil ſeems mean. He then paſſed through a ſmall tract of Poliſh Pruſſia, where the inhabitants are miſerably poor.

At Dunemorſe, which is five German miles from Dantzic, he entered Pruſſian Pomerania, where the faces of things began to change much for the better. He then proceeded to Stolpe, a ſmall city, ſurrounded with corn and meadow lands, where the inhabitants ſeem to wear their chains with great chearfulneſs. The common people have a ſmattering of the French language. On our author's entering and departing, he was examined from whence he came, and where he was travelling: this is practiſed on all travellers in every town throughout the Pruſſian dominions, and being performed in a very regular manner, it ſerves to preſerve the idea of watchfulneſs and military diſcipline.

* A German mile is in ſome places four, and in others five Engliſh miles.

He proceeded three German miles to Schlave, over an open pleaſant country of arable lands, pretty well inhabited, though the ſoil is ſandy, and can therefore produce but ſlender crops. He from thence went to Coeſlin, which had ſome years before been burnt down, but is rebuilt with regularity and elegance, though with great parſimony, which the circumſtances of the inhabitants rendered abſolutely neceſſary. In the market-place is a ſtone ſtatue of the late king of Pruſſia. He then proceeded to Stargard, the metropolis of Pruſſian Pomerania, where is a cathedral church of great antiquity, and three reformed churches, in one of which the ſervice is performed in French. At three miles diſtance is a town called Pyritz, which is ſurrounded by an ancient fortification, and has a very large church built with brick.

He next arrived at Koeninſburg, a ſmall town on the Oder, and from thence travelled three miles to Angermund, paſſing over the Oder on a bridge of timber. On the north bank is a fine palace and garden belonging to the margrave of Schwedt, with a very neat town of the ſame name adjacent. The avenue to the bridge and town is thrown up between meadow lands; it is planted on each ſide with willows, as the other ſide of the town is with wild cheſnuts, which intercept the view of the corn and tobacco fields. Near this place Mr. Hanway ſaw the bodies of two malefactors who had been broken on the wheel: he obſerves, that near every town a gallows is erected on an eminence, though the good government of this country renders executions very rare.

The palace of the margrave makes a ſtriking figure, as it is the only object that has the appearance of grandeur or ſtate, on the road quite from Dantzic. The men of family and fortune in this country all flock to court; and agriculture from which they derive their ſupport, receives no improvement from their perſonal attendance.

From hence he proceeded to Berlin, and the nearer he approached to that city, the more he found the face of things improve; but here are no incloſures to beautify the proſpect, nor richneſs of ſoil to exhibit that perpetual verdure which England enjoys. From Dantzic to Berlin is fifty-ſeven German miles, which are computed to be equal to 250 Engliſh miles. The entrance into Berlin is airy and elegant; the ſtreets are regular and clean, and the houſes uniform. In going towards the palace on the Pont Neuf, or New Bridge, which is of ſtone, over the Spree, is an equeſtrian ſtatue of Frederic William the Great, which is eſteemed a piece of exquiſite workmanſhip; it was erected by Frederic I. king of Pruſſia, who alſo built the palace, which is very magnificent. A ſoldier attended our author from the gate to his lodgings, in order to examine his baggage.

This city was full of buſy pleaſant countenances, and there were ſeveral perſons at this court famous in the literary world. The firſt object that ſtrikes the ſtranger is the king's palace, called the caſtle; but one ſide of the interior ſquare of this building is no ways equal to the reſt, it being the old apartment once inhabited by the preſent king's grandfather, and has not yet been rebuilt. The walls of the grand front are ſeven or eight feet thick, which makes the rooms dark.

'Tis a pleaſure to obſerve the great œconomy of this court, the apartments in the palace are adorned with ſilver in every ſhape; but theſe ornaments are ſo maſſy, that the faſhion is not more than 7*l.* per cent. ſo that four millions of dollars might be realized with great eaſe, if the exigencies of the ſtate ſhould require it. Here are the pictures of Charles V. and his empreſs, the frames of which are of ſilver, each weighing ſix centners, or 660 pounds, and there is a grand crown luſtre of ſeventeen centners. There are alſo pieces of three, four or five centners, and a grand muſic gallery finely ornamented, all of ſilver: one end of a large apart-

ment, for about twenty feet high, and as many broad, is richly furniſhed with gilt plate: all this is merely parade, the court having other ſervices of plate for uſe.

The king's particular apartments are elegant; but have nothing extraordinary; the prevailing taſte is white ſtucco and gilding. Several of the private apartments have tables, with pens, ink and looſe papers, which indicate the diſpatch of buſineſs, more than the regularity and elegance one naturally expects to find in a royal palace. The hall has ſeveral good paintings, and the grand ſaloon is adorned with four pieces of tapeſty, repreſenting our Saviour driving out the money-changers, his waſhing the diſciples feet, the miraculous draught of fiſhes, and his laſt ſupper. The throne in the audience chamber is of velvet embroidered with gold in a grand taſte; but not loaded with ornaments. There is nothing extraordinary in the old quarter of the place, except a bed of crimſon velvet, which has above two hundred cyphers with electoral crowns, all ſet with perals, and the chairs in this room are in the ſame taſte. It is uſual for perſons of the royal blood to lie in this bed on the firſt night of their marriage.

The arſenal forms one ſide of the palace, and is ſaid to be well furniſhed with arms; but as the viſiting it is attended with ſome diſagreeable ceremonies, our author declined it. This is a very elegant ſtructure; but has rather two great a profuſion of ornaments; theſe are, however, extremely well adapted to the nature of the building.

From the palace he went to the library, which, he ſays, would be a mean apartment for a common ſchool. But all who appear like gentlemen have the liberty of reading here from ten in the morning till two in the afternoon. Here are five hundred bibles of different languages and editions, and one kept as a kind of relict, ſaid to be that which Charles I. king of England uſed when he was beheaded. It was preſented by Dr. Juxton, to the elector of Brandenburg. Here is alſo the

koran in manuſcript in a ſmall octagon; the character is ſo minute, and the paper is ſo thin, as to be only one inch and a half in bulk: there are likewiſe ſeveral manuſcripts on religion, morals, and politics, ſaid to be wrote by cardinal Mazarin.

The opera-houſe is an elegant modern edifice; the ſcenes are ſplendid, and in an exquiſite taſte. It has three galleries, and will contain about two thouſand perſons. The columns that ſupport the roof, are calculated to throw the whole into a grand ſaloon, but are apt to obſtruct the movement of the ſcenes. The orcheſtra conſiſts of about fifty muſicians, who are paid a very moderate price for their labour. This amuſement is entirely ſupported at the king's expence, and rendered in ſome degree ſubſervient to the ends of government. The extreme delight the king takes in muſic, and the great knowledge he has of that ſcience, have carried this entertainment to a very high perfection. In the upper galleries on each ſide of the ſtage, ſix trumpeters are ſeated, who ſalute the queen-conſort when ſhe enters the houſe or retires; but the king himſelf, who acts in a ſphere ſuperior to the rules of pompous ceremony, forbids this ſalutation to his own perſon.

Mon Bijou was the reſidence of the queen-mother, who was ſiſter to his late majeſty the king of Great-Britain. This is a little elegant palace. Here is a pretty gallery of blue and white porcelain, and in another apartment there are ſeveral rich pieces of Saxon porcelain. The gardens are ſmall, and proportioned to the ſize of the building.

The city of Berlin has a regular fortification, though it is not very formidable. Strangers remark, that Berlin is a little Paris, the French language being generally as well underſtood as the German. The city abounds in elegant ſtructures and regular ſtreets, and is near one-third as big as London; but does not contain more than an eighth part of the inhabitants: from whence it may be eaſily accounted for, why graſs is

found growing in many of their principal ſtreets. The people here make woollen cloth ſufficient for the army, and great part of their home conſumption. They are ſupplied with linen from Sileſia. Many thouſand French manufacturers having found protection in this country, gold and ſilver lace, and wrought ſilks are hardly to be bought in any other place ſo cheap. It was with ſurpriſe our author learned that the environs of Berlin produce 400 pounds weight of raw ſilk. Some of the courtiers who eſpouſe commercial ſchemes, flattered themſelves that the climate would admit of a large production of this kind; but it does not promiſe the ſucceſs expected.

Before Mr. Hanway took his final leave of Berlin, his curioſity carried him to Charlottenburg, which is about a German mile diſtant from the city. This palace was founded by the king's grandfather, and his preſent majeſty has finiſhed it according to his own taſte, which is extremely elegant. There is a range of about ten apartments well diſpoſed, adorned with white ſtucco and gilding. The ball-room is worthy of the king, who is ſaid to have deſigned it. It has ten windows on each ſide, and beſides the ſtucco and gilding, which are here richer than in the other rooms, it is adorned with buſts, ſtatues, and large pier glaſſes. The gardens are laid out with taſte, and the ſtatues well diſpoſed.

It will not be here either improper or unentertaining to give Mr. Hanway's character of the preſent king of of Pruſſia, dictated by that gentleman's impartiality, and well known love of truth, at a time when the prejudices of the Engliſh were ſtrongly raiſed againſt that prince. Mr. Hanway obſerves, that the king of Pruſſia was then conſidered as no friend to Great-Britain; but adds, there is a pleaſure in praiſing the worthy, whether they happen to be our friends or not. Frederick III. king of Pruſſia and elector of Brandenburg, was born on the 24th of January, 1712, and was the ſon of king Frederick William, by Sophia Doro-

thea, the ſiſter of king George II. He aſcended the throne on the 21ſt of May, 1740, and was therefore twenty-eight years of age when his father died. He had an early taſte of literature and the polite arts, and diſtinguiſhed himſelf by the delicacy of his manners, in oppoſition to the inelegant cuſtoms that prevailed at his father's court. The late king Frederick was a lover of drinking, a vice which in few countries is more familiar than in Germany. The prince abominated this vice, and this, with other correſpondent circumſtances, at length determined him to leave his father in a ſecret manner, and to go, as it was ſaid he intended, to the Britiſh court; but the attempt was fruſtrated, and coſt an unhappy gentleman his head.

When princes are really God's vicegerents, religion muſt be the baſis of their government and politics: this prince is, however, by many reputed to be a free-thinker in the worſt ſenſe of the word; but the rule of his government, and his ſuperiority to the vanities and mean gratifications of life, does not favour ſo harſh a judgment. So far from adopting Machiavelian principles, the Anti-Machiavel is ſaid to have been wrote by him, or his favourite Voltaire, in confutation of thoſe maxims which ridicule a ſtrict adherence to equity, and diſintereſted love of mankind.

One might be tempted to think, that commercial projects in a country ſo entirely military as Pruſſia could hardly be brought to any perfection; yet if we conſider the ſtrict diſcipline of the Pruſſian army, it is the more eaſy to be reconciled.

There is one circumſtance in favour of his Pruſſian majeſty beyond any other prince in Europe; I mean that great œconomy of his government and perſonal expence. The allowance of his table is but thirty crowns, or 5l. 5s. a day, fiſh and wine excepted, in which he is at no great expence. Potſdam is the favourite reſidence of the king of Pruſſia, who here avoids the empty ceremonies of a court. He entertains at his table twelve perſons: thoſe of his miniſters

moſt in favour are firſt invited, with thoſe of foreign princes who happen to be at Potſdam, and his officers, even to an enſign, fill up the vacant places: but this condeſcenſion, is not the only means he employs to recommend himſelf to the love of his ſoldiers. The meaneſt officer knows that his injuries will be redreſſed by the king: for wherever his quarters are, he need but write to his Majeſty, and by the return of the poſt he may expect an anſwer, frequently wrote by this great prince's own hand. Nay, he even ſometimes goes ſo far as to adviſe where he thinks the party errs in judgment, or is influenced by ſome unreaſonable deſire. His converſation is free and eaſy, even to jeſting; but he paſſes from the gay to the ſerious in an inſtant, and ſupports his dignity both from the fear and the affection of thoſe about him.

He requires delicate food, but eats moderately, and mixes water with his wine: he takes Spaniſh ſnuff to exceſs, ſo that his clothes can ſcarce be clear of it. He uſed to drink liberally of champaign, and eat rich fruits ſoaked in ſtrong wine; but having been ſeveral times afflicted with fevers, he is become abſtemious.

He appears rather plump than corpulent; his face looks full of blood, and his countenance is inclined to the penſive, but is very expreſſive, in ſome meaſure indicating the inceſſant labour of his mind. Since the late war he is much broken and ſtoops, which takes off from his figure. He often appears in boots, and always in his regimentals, which are a blue frock with ſilver Brandenbergs, and he is maſter of only one change for the winter, and another for the ſummer. Our author ſaw his wardrobe, which, indeed, is very mean, or very grand, according to the impreſſion it makes on the ſpectator. The king is, in this particular, a copy of Peter the Great.

His bed, which Mr. Hanway particularly obſerved at Charlottenburg, was in a ſmall alcove or nich, and conſiſted of only two mattreſſes under the cover of a down quilt, without the leaſt ornament or mark of

grandeur. He often asks his most familiar favourites, if they think the condition of a king above all others the most desirable? and then tells them how easily they may rectify their opinion, by observing the great labour and attention the duty of a king requires.

So little does he observe useless forms, that he has risen from his chair at his writing table, and caused his engraver to take his place, and write down the orders which he dictated standing. That he has a high sense of friendship and gratitude, Mr. Hanway thinks is obvious, from a single circumstance which happened during his abode at Berlin. Mr. Keith, with whom our author was acquainted, had been obliged in the late king's reign to leave his country, for his devotion to the service of his present majesty. On his return home, that gentleman naturally expected a kind reception: but the king having now adopted other principles, was resolved to inculcate the necessity of obedience to the sovereign; however, he allowed him a pension, gave him the rank of lieutenant, and placed him near the queen-mother. At length being convinced of his worth, he took an opportunity to remember his faithful servant. On occasion of a mock battle fought near Berlin, the king ordered a few trees, to an inconsiderable value, to be cut down on the estate of Madam Kneephause, the mother-in-law of Mr. Keith, with whom also Mr. Keith did not stand very fair. His majesty, seeing Mr. Keith at court the day after, called to him, and in very obliging terms asked him, "Will you do me a pleasure? Carry this casket to your mother-in-law, with my compliments, and here is the key of it." In it were found 10,000 crowns in gold, and a very polite letter to that lady, recommending Mr. Keith to her in the strongest and most affectionate terms.

With regard to filial duties, "few private men, says our author, treat their parents with more respect than he does his mother*, whom he never approaches co-

* Her majesty is since dead.

vered, nor without the higheſt expreſſions of reverence: when he is in Berlin, he viſits her every day; nor does he treat his ſiſters with leſs politeneſs. He is civil to his own queen, but nothing more: this is a part of his hiſtory, which the people do not talk of. I obſerved in the opera-houſe, that he placed the margravine of Bareith at his right hand; and when he took his leave, retired backwards two or three yards."

Beſides his great ſkill in muſic, in which he compoſes as well as performs, he has a taſte for poetry; and after ſuffering all the fatigues of a general in the day, he poſſeſſes ſuch tranquillity as to anſwer letters of pleaſure and politeneſs, and even to write verſes in the evening, as I was aſſured by one of his chaplains. His memoirs of the houſe of Brandenburg, are a proof of his abilities as an author.

The grand ſecret of life, with regard to the execution of much buſineſs of every kind, is a proper diſtribution of the ſeveral hours of the day; which nobody underſtands better than his Pruſſian majeſty. His conſtitution having ſuffered by too little reſt, he now goes to bed early, and ſleeps ſeven or eight hours; by this means he is in a condition to riſe early; and beſides the buſineſs of the cabinet and parade, he can enjoy his favourite pleaſures of books and muſic. It is amazing that he can be ſo devoted to buſineſs, and yet ſo fond of muſic, in which few, who have not a good genius arrive at any great proficiency: but of all the enjoyments of ſenſe, ſays an eminent divine, this is the leaſt ſenſual. When not engaged in war, he generally ſpends a ſhort time in playing on the German flute every morning, before he goes to the cabinet; there he ſtays till eleven; he then receives foreign miniſters, and executes buſineſs of a more public nature till noon: he then uſually goes abroad, and gratifies himſelf in ſeeing military exerciſes, performing the duty of a ſoldier, and keeping up the ſpirit of diſcipline. Soon after one he dines; about three one of the ſecretaries reads to

him, and in the evening he has a concert. This is the uſual manner in which he fills up the day. There has been much talk of the ſecret manner in which he conducts buſineſs; but beſides the execution of ſome important parts of it with his own hand, his ſecretaries have every one their private apartment, and each his particular province aſſigned, ſo that if he diſcovers that any of them are unfaithful, there is no difficulty where to fix it.

Mr. Hanway ſoon after obſerving, that the ſteady hand with which this prince conducts his government, promiſes a happy reign, adds theſe remarkable words, which the event ſeems to have rendered in a manner prophetic: "The time may come, when it will be the mutual intereſt of this nation, and the houſe of Brandenburg, to unite again.—But whatever changes time may produce in ſtates ever ſubject to change, honour, I think, will be due to the preſent king of Pruſſia from us, and all mankind. He has eſtabliſhed a reputation upon the ſureſt foundation, was it only for that bold and generous ſtroke in politics, in delivering his country from the jaws of lawyers, who before his time, at leaſt in Brandenburg, ſported with the ſufferings of the wretched, and ſaw unmoved the tears of the widow. In the Pruſſian dominions the deciſion of cauſes cannot now be protracted to a tormenting length. How long this will laſt, it is hard to ſay, unleſs the king has the art of making his ſubjects virtuous, as well as obedient to his edicts. The ſuits in Brandenburg are now brought to a ſpeedy iſſue, at an eaſy expence, a regulation that could never be made but by the ſingular attention of a ſovereign prince."

Potſdam is agreeably ſituated on a branch of the Spree; it is of a conſiderable extent, and the buildings neat and regular; but it ſeems to be entirely occupied by ſoldiers. The palace, which has not been long built, is ſmall but elegant, particularly the king's writing-chamber and ſtudy: the laſt is partitioned off by baluſtrades of ſilver. The frames of the looking-glaſſes,

and embelliſhments of the tables are alſo of the ſame metal. The officers dine every day in a large apartment, at the king's expence. The throne in the audience chamber is richly embroidered with the arms of the houſe of Brandenburg, ſupported by two Herculeſes. In one of the apartments are two curious figures in copper of a Chineſe man ſitting, and a woman of the ſame country, holding an umbrella over him. Theſe figures, which are richly gilt, ſtand in an oval nich laid with marble, and form a very convenient ſtove. In the gardens are many large and elegant ſtatues, particularly a Neptune and Amphitrité ſeated in a ſea car in a large baſon, oppoſite the eaſt front of the palace. The ſtables are contiguous, and furniſhed with good Engliſh hunters.

In Potſdam are quartered the king's guards, who are about 2000 men, of great ſtature and comelineſs, well clothed, and diſtinguiſhed by ſilver-laced hats and black cockades. His preſent majeſty has wiſely declined the oppreſſive meaſures practiſed by the king his father, to ſupport this body of men of a prodigious ſtature, and yet they are ſtill remarkably tall. An Engliſh nobleman being aſked by his late majeſty, if his maſter had an equal number of troops who would beat theſe tall fellows, anſwered, "I don't know that my maſter has "any regiments that can beat your majeſty's guards: "but I dare engage that he has one of half that num- "ber that would fight them."

The Pruſſian ſoldiers in general are remarkable for the ſhortneſs of their coats, which at firſt view ſeems to proceed from a ridiculous frugality; but is moſt plainly calculated for wiſe ends. Their clothes ſit extremely cloſe the their bodies, and are ſtrengthened at the elbows with leather in the form of a heart; which prevents the neceſſity of patching an old garment. A Pruſſian ſoldier is never ſeen the leaſt in rags; but all appear as gentlemen with reſpect to the cleanlineſs of their perſons. The king's guards, and ſome other regiments have new clothes every year; but in general,

the army has new regimentals only twice in three years. The laſt king obliged the ſoldiers to wear white ſpatterdaſhes winter and ſummer; but his preſent majeſty obſerving the inconvenience of it, gave his men black for the winter. In the ſame ſeaſon they have breeches of woollen cloth; but in ſummer they are of white dimity or linen, which are very light and clean. They all wear pigtails, which are eaſily kept in order, and are always powdered when the men are on duty. This not only ſerves to preſerve the natural hair or wig, but gives the ſoldier a reſpect for his own perſon, and the rank in which he conſiders himſelf in ſome meaſure compenſates for the ſmallneſs of his pay. The caps of the grenadiers, and the ſoldiers hats are ſmall; but at the ſame time anſwer all the purpoſes of an uniform and covering; and by this means their heads are kept cooler, which muſt be a conſiderable advantage both in marching and in action. The pay of a common ſoldier is eight groſch, or fouteen pence a week, and out of this they are ſuppoſed to ſpend three pence in waſhing, and in materials for cleaning their arms, for which they are much diſtinguiſhed: but they are allowed bread.

As Sans Souci, or without care, is in the neighbourhood of Potſdam, Mr. Hanway, indulged his curioſity in going to ſee that retreat, before he took his leave of the electorate of Brandenburg. The building ſeems intended as a ſummer-houſe and library to the palace of Potſdam, from which it is about an Engliſh mile diſtant. It is ſituated upon an eminence, and commands a fine view of the town, and a ſmall branch of the Spree, which runs by the ſide of the gardens. The apartments are moſtly on the ground floor, and are elegantly finiſhed. From the houſe to the lower part of the garden is a deſcent of about 120 yards, by ſix ſeveral ranges of ſtone ſteps, and as many terraſſes, the ſides of which are all planted with vines, covered with glaſs to ſhelter them from the cold, and ſtanding full to the ſouth and ſouth-eaſt ſun, the fruit is well ripened. The

garden below has ſeveral fine ſtatues, particularly a Venus drawing a net, and Diana with game; the pedeſtals of which are finely adorned with relievo. This garden is not half an Engliſh mile in length, and the eaſt end of it is terminated by an Egyptian pyramid, embelliſhed with hieroglyphics. The garden, however, has but little turf, and no gravel, and the ſandy walks rob it of half its beauty.

On the 23d of Auguſt, Mr. Hanway proceeded through woods and ſandy plains to Britzen, which is the Pruſſian frontier. He then entered the electorate of Saxony, when the pleaſantneſs of the verdure, and the richneſs of the ſoil, intermixed with groves, and covered with herds of cattle, gave the idea of plenty, ſuperior to what is found in Brandenburg; yet the œconomy, and happineſs of the Pruſſians compenſate ſo greatly for this inequality, that many of the Saxons have taken refuge in Brandenburg, and for the ſake of the government, chuſe the ſandy ſoil of that country. Hence the towns built by the king of Pruſſia on his own frontiers, are almoſt entirely peopled by Saxons.

Our author at length arrived at Wittenburg, a fortified town ſituated near the Elbe, famous for the manufactory of coarſe cloth: the wool in this country is remarkably good. Cloths are ſent hither from all parts to be dyed; and the blues and greens commonly called Saxon, are beſt dyed here. In this place is an academy in which are about 700 ſtudents, and here is the Sokoloff church, a building of about 300 years ſtanding, where Martin Luther firſt preached the doctrine that occaſioned his leaving the Romiſh religion. In this church that great reformer is alſo interred; but has no other monument beſides a braſs plate with an inſcription, except his original portrait at length, painted on wood, and well preſerved, ſince the year 1540. The people here, as in moſt places where the Lutheran religion prevails, have a ſtrong tincture of Romiſh ſuperſtition, among other inſtances, of which, the credulous ſay, that the devil viſited Luther in the li-

brary which now belongs to the academy; but that the reformer was ſo unpolite, as to throw his ink-ſtand at him.

In paſſing through this electorate, Mr. Hanway obſerved, that the richneſs of the ſoil did not ſeem to diminiſh the poverty of the inhabitants. The country about Groſſehagen abounds with large ſtorks with black tails, and wings tipped with the ſame colour. On the 25th he paſſed by Molſberg, a hunting-palace belonging to the king of Poland, elector of Saxony, ſituated on an eminence near the village of Iſinberg, about eight Engliſh miles from Dreſden. The avenue which leads to it is very long, and planted on each ſide with wild cheſnut-trees: it has a good garden, and is encompaſſed with woods, where the elector takes ſuch delight in hunting the wild boar, that he ſometimes remains there three months together. Hunting indeed, is the favourite diverſion of the Saxon court; but by this diverſion the induſtrious inhabitants are more diſtreſſed than the brutes. Above 30,000 head of deer are ſaid to range in the open lands and foreſts, and though they break into the corn fields of the farmer, he dare not kill one, under the penalty of being condemned to the galleys. Theſe, with the wild boars, are ſo great a nuiſance, that the Saxons, ſays our author, would gladly compound to ſupport a body of 8000 ſoldiers extraordinary, on condition of having theſe animals reduced to half their preſent number. In every town of any note fifty of the inhabitants keep watch, five every night, by rotation, with bells to frighten the deer and defend their corn from theſe devouring enemies.

The peaſants of this country carry proviſions a great diſtance to market on wheelbarrows which are well adapted for that purpoſe both in height and other dimenſions. The wheel is bound with iron, and is both larger and lighter than thoſe uſed in England.

Dreſden, the metropolis of this electorate, is ſituated in the midſt of a plain ſurrounded by lofty hills about

two leagues diſtant, the neareſt of which are converted into vineyards. The city ſtands on both ſides the Elbe, which are joined by a ſtone bridge 540 feet long, and 36 broad, containing 18 arches: but the paſſage over it being horizontal, takes off from that grand effect which a curve produces in thoſe ſtructures. Upon it is a brazen crucifix of curious workmanſhip. In this city are ſeveral ſquares and lofty ſtone buildings ſix or ſeven ſtories high, which make an elegant appearance, but are inferior in beauty to thoſe of Berlin; beſides, many of the ſtreets are narrow. Near the entrance of the new city is an equeſtrian ſtatue of the late king Auguſtus II. erected on a lofty pedeſtal, ſaid to be made by a common ſmith, and as ſuch may be admired, though it has many capital defects, particularly in the horſe's head.

The trade of Dreſden is very inconſiderable, the moſt important article is the ſilver brought in ingots every fifteen days from the mines near Fridburg, to the amount of 20,000 dollars, or 3500 l. This ſilver is immediately coined into florins of ſixteen groſch, which with reſpect to the current money of bats, driers, &c. is worth ſeven per cent. advance, and is therefore, ſo ſpeedily conveyed into the neighbouring territories to be coined again, that it is next to impoſſible to obtain change in this money for a ſingle louis d'or, in the ordinary commerce of the people.

Among the other calamities under which this country labours, the jealouſy ariſing from religion is none of the leaſt. The eſtabliſhed Lutheran clergy oppreſs the Calviniſts, who are obliged to have not only all their marriages and burials, but even their chriſtenings performed by Lutherans; while both think themſelves extremely injured by the countenance given at court to the Roman Catholics, and they think it a groſs abſurdity for a Proteſtant people to be governed by a Romiſh prince: for according to the eſtabliſhed conſtitution of Saxony, the Roman Catholics can no more have a church in Dreſden, than their elector, without

being of the Romiſh church, can be king of Poland. A chapel, however, is connived at, by which is underſtood a private, or at leaſt, a modeſt place of worſhip; but what is called a Romiſh chapel here is a pompous ſtructure, ſo richly adorned with ſtatues and architecture, that art and expence ſeem to contend for the ſuperiority. Our author obſerves, that it was not then entirely completed. The furniture was intended to be of Saxon porcelain, the altar-piece and organ not excepted, and Mr. Hanway ſaw ſome of the organ pipes in different pieces.

Mr. Hanway viſited the Grune Gewolbe, a part of the royal palace, conſiſting of ſeveral rooms filled with curioſities, collected at an immenſe expence.

The firſt chamber contains an hundred ſmall, but curious ſtatues, the greateſt part in braſs, particularly an equeſtrian ſtatue of Auguſtus II. king of Poland, Frederic William the Great, after the famous ſtatue in Berlin, Lewis XIV. Mercurius, Centaurs, &c.

The ſecond chamber contains a variety of figures in ivory, and among others, one of Abraham offering up his ſon Iſaac, with the angel deſcending, all of exquiſite workmanſhip; a fine crucifix; and a ſhip completely rigged, the ropes repreſented with gold wire.

The third contains a variety of figures in ſilver, in particular a large fountain and four vaſes of great ſize.

The fourth contains veſſels of pure gold and ſilver gilt. The pannels of the room are of looking-glaſs.

The fifth is a ſpacious room in which are many precious ſtones wrought with great art; a cup of lapis nephriticus; a ſtatue of Charles II. of England; a ball of cryſtal ſix inches in diameter, without blemiſh; a large goblet ſet round with the moſt curious and coſtly antiques; ſeveral fine tables of Moſaic; the angel Michael vanquiſhing the devil, admirably performed in wood, and coſt in England, where it was made, 2500 l. with a multitude of cups, cryſtals, mother of pearl, &c.

The ſixth chamber is of precious ſtones, with a great variety of pearls ſet in a multiplicity of forms; as the royal crown, ſceptres, balls, &c. of the king and queen, which are of falſe ſtones, the precious ones being taken out, and depoſited in the next chamber; his preſent majeſty of Poland curiouſly cut in onyx; a fine piece made of precious ſtones, repreſenting Jonas thrown into the ſea.

The ſeventh and eighth chambers, containing jewels of immenſe value, are ſurrounded with glaſs caſes. Beſides the jewels of the regalia, and ſeveral dozen of coat and waiſtcoat diamond buttons, there is a brilliant as big as a moderate ſized walnut, a green brilliant above an inch long; an onyx of ſeven inches, valued at 70,000 crowns; a gold cup repreſenting Diana in a bath; but the greateſt curioſity is an exact repreſentation of the throne of the Great Mogul, in ſilver figures, enamelled in colours, and adorned with precious ſtones. There is a view of potentates bringing preſents, and falling proſtrate at the throne, with elephants, ſervants, ſoldiers, and attendants.

Mr. Hanway having gratified his curioſity by the ſight of this expenſive collection, went to take a view of the Kunſtkammer, or cabinet of curioſities.

The firſt chamber contains a collection of prints from the commencement of the art of engraving to the preſent time.

The ſecond is the mineral gallery, in which is the earth of the different countries in the world, and ores of every denomination.

The third contains petrefactions, particularly of wood, animals, &c.

In the fourth chamber, which is a very large one, are different kinds of wood and vegetables; in particular there is a cabinet with 350 ſquares as big as the palm of a large hand, run in flat as drawers, of ſo many different kinds of wood. In this apartment are alſo the pictures of a man and his wife, who lived near Tame-

ſwar; the man was 185 years of age, and his wife 172.

In the firſt chamber is a ſmall cabinet of ſkeletons, and other anatomical curioſities. The ſixth contains the ſkins of a variety of animals ſtuffed. The ſeventh has the ſkins of fiſhes ſtuffed. The eighth has a great quantity of different kinds of ſhells. In the ninth is a cabinet of about ſix feet high, and four broad, every drawer of which has ſome natural curioſity in amber. In the tenth is a grotto with ſprings of water. In the eleventh are many curioſities in coral. The twelfth contains the ſkeletons of lions, bears, &c. of a prodigious ſize, and the ſtuffed ſkins of ſome extraordinary beaſts, particularly of a horſe, whoſe mane is ſaid to be three ells and a half long, and his tail twelve ells and a half. Mr. Hanway did not meaſure either; but was ſatisfied with the greatneſs of the curioſity, from the apparent length of them.

From theſe apartments Mr. Hanway was conducted to another at ſome diſtance, to ſee a model of Solomon's temple cut in cedar, as deſcribed in the Old Teſtament, with all its furniture. This piece coſt 12,000 crowns.

Our author next took a view of the gallery of pictures, which is one of the fineſt in the world; part of the collection conſiſts of an hundred capital pieces, which are ſaid to be all originals, and to have coſt half a million of crowns. The whole collection conſiſts of above two thouſand pieces, the capital works of Raphael, Rubens, Corregio, and all the great maſters. They are valued at between two and three millions of crowns, or near 500,000l.

Mr. Hanway next viſited the Chineſe palace, ſo called from the taſte of the building, and the furniture. It ſtands on the Elbe, and commands a view of the bridge, and the Romiſh chapel. The ornaments of the architecture, and the relievo of the frontiſpiece, are in the Chineſe taſte; but this is far from being an elegant ſtructure. It has fourteen rooms, in which are

a great number of leopards, wolves, bears, monkeys, ſquirrels, &c. ſome as big as the life, with elephants and rhinoceroſes of the ſize of a dog. A prodigious variety of birds and fowl, with a curious collection of different flowers, all of Dreſden porcelain. The Apoſtles, near three feet high, are in white porcelain. There is a repreſentation of the crucifixion four or five feet high, with many other curious pieces: the laſt are intended for the Romiſh chapel. A clock is preparing for the gallery in this palace, the bells whereof are of China; but the hammers muſt be of wood. But what is moſt wonderful, here are forty-eight China vaſes, which appear to be of no uſe, nor any ways extraordinary, except for their great ſize, and yet the preſent elector's father, was ſo charmed with them, that he purchaſed them of the late king of Pruſſia, at the price of a whole regiment of dragoons.

The king's gardens, though agreeable, want the natural beauties afforded by an inequality of ground. The palace ſituated in them is ſmall; but the approach to it is by a grand avenue of a conſiderable length. A field for tournaments is in the front, and behind is a fine piece of water. The gardens are on the ſides, and are adorned with a profuſion of marble ſtatues, many of them bigger than the life. They ſhew the genius of the late king, who being entirely devoted to his amours, left them to after ages as monuments of his laſciviouſneſs. The orangery, which is in another part of the town, has four hundred orange-trees of a very large ſize, and many exotics.

The palace of count Bruhl has been built at ſeveral times, and the apartments are elegant and richly furniſhed. They are adorned with luſtres of porcelain in beautiful figures; the tables have a variety of tea equipages, and the figures of men and women, birds and beaſts of porcelain. The drawing-room is pannelled with looking-glaſs, and his cabinet furniſhed with enamels and crayons. The houſe and gardens belonging to it are ſituated on the Elbe, near the bridge, and com-

mand a pleaſant proſpect. His library, which is in the garden, is two hundred and twenty feet long, and well furniſhed with books: but what is moſt ſtriking is the gallery of pictures, which though it does not contain a fourth part ſo many as the royal gallery, is incomparably more magnificent. It is an hundred and fifty-ſix ells long, and the paintings are ſhewn to great advantage, by being ranged only on one ſide, and fronted by lofty windows, that afford ſufficient light to ſhow the minuteſt beauties of this excellent collection. The pannels between the windows are of looking-glaſs, againſt which are placed ſtatues and buſts that have a grand effect. This miniſter is perhaps the greateſt fop the world ever produced, he has no leſs than three or four hundred ſuits of rich clothes, which are of all the brighteſt colours of the fineſt clothes, velvets and ſilks, with all the different kinds of lace and embroidery that can be procured in the different parts of Europe. When he dreſſes, he calls for his book of patterns, and chuſes the ſuit that pleaſes his fancy for that day. This great man is ſaid to have bought eſtates in Poland to the amount of twenty millions of florins, or 833,333 l. Engliſh.

It is pretended, that there are 30,000 towns and villages in Saxony, of which ſixty are to be ſeen from ſome eminences near Dreſden. They alſo reckon that the whole electorate has four millions of people; but our author does not imagine that they amount to half that number, eſpecially as they acknowledge that they have only two thouſand ſix hundred eccleſiaſtics, nor were there then in Dreſden above 110,000 ſouls. The elector's revenues amount to near 1,575,000l. and the ſtanding forces of the electorate are generally reckoned at between forty and fifty thouſand men. The people are burthened with heavy taxes, and the expences of the court are ſo great, that 6500 ducats are annually allowed for ſweetmeats, &c. which is near twice as much as the king of Pruſſia allows for his table. Yet Saxony is ſaid to owe forty millions of

dollars, the intereſt of which is not regularly paid; but his preſent majeſty is ſo fond of curioſities, and particularly paintings, that our author was told, he gave half a million of dollars, intended for part of a payment due to the king of Pruſſia, for the duke of Modena's pictures.

While Mr. Hanway was at Dreſden, he was introduced to Mr. Calkoen, who had been lately ambaſſador from the United Provinces to the Ottoman Porte, and was now envoy and plenipotentiary to the king of Poland. He had reſided ſome time in England, and profeſſed himſelf an admirer of our nation. Mr. Hanway was at his table, in company with Polanders, Italians, French, and Germans. The converſation at firſt turned upon Nadir Shah, after which, this gentleman aſked our author, which of the countries he had ſeen, he thought moſt agreeable, and where a man of ſentiment would chuſe to live. Mr. Hanway modeſtly replied, that his knowledge of the world was very limited; that he had ſeen a great deal of miſery in one ſhape or other, in every country where he had been; but after a pauſe, determined in favour of England. The company ſeemed ſurpriſed at his heſitation, and then gave their ſuffrage by a loud, but polite applauſe: and many things were ſaid on the occaſion in favour of this happy iſle.

On the 30th of Auguſt Mr. Hanway, left Dreſden, and travelled towards Meiſſen. He was delighted with the rural beauties of the country: the corn-fields, gardens, meadow-lands, and paſture produced a charming effect: the banks of the Elbe was adorned with a great number of vineyards, and the induſtry of the people made them form the ſteepeſt hills into a number of terraces covered with vines. On approaching Meiſſen the valley grows narrow, and part of the banks of the Elbe, are built on rocks, which riſe perpendicular from the river, and form a very agreeable and romantic ſcene. The caſtle of Meiſſen, in which is the porcelain manufactory, is ſituated on the weſtern bank of

the Elbe, three German miles from Dreſden, and is a large building, capable of ſome defence. Our author had an opportunity of being convinced of the ſecreſy with which this manufactory is conducted; for there is no admittance into the works without an order from the governor of Dreſden; nor are the workmen ever ſeen without the gates; for they are all confined as priſoners and ſubject to be arreſted, if they go without the walls: for this reaſon a chapel, and every thing neceſſary is provided within. The workmen amount to about 700, moſt of whom have not above ten German crowns a month, and the higheſt wages are forty; ſo that the annual expence is not eſtimated at above 80,000 crowns. This manufacture being entirely on the king's account, he ſells annually to the value of 150,000 and ſometimes 200,000 crowns, or 35,000l.

Mr. Hanway paſſed the Elbe on a bridge, and after mounting a ſteep aſcent, entered a plain country, where the ſoil is very rich and well cultivated, towns, woods and paſture lands are agreeably intermixed, and unite to give an idea of riches and pleaſure; yet the inhabitants are poor, for the taxes fall heavy on the labourers.

Mr. Hanway at length arrived at St. Hubertſburg, another of the hunting palaces belonging to the king. The adjacent country is proper for the ſport, and the king's dogs and horſes are kept in order by being exerciſed twice a week. The hunting equipage of the Saxon court is more gay, as an uniform of yellow cloth laced with ſilver, is on theſe occaſions worn by every one who appears in the field. The palace is large, but not magnificent, nor was it then entirely finiſhed. The rich apartments intended for the queen are lined with green damaſk laced with gold, and thoſe for the king, of crimſon of the ſame taſte. The dining-room, which is round, is an elegant apartment, and the gallery is of a good ſize, and was then ready for the fine pictures that his majeſty had marked from among his collection in Dreſden.

On the 31ſt of Auguſt Mr. Hanway left St. Hubertſburg, and proceeding along a pretty good road, paſſed by ſeveral towns and villages to Leipſic, one of the greateſt trading towns in Germany, though it has no river of conſequence near it. Magdeburg, which is ſeated on the Elbe, is fourteen German miles and a half diſtant, and merchandize is brought from Hamburg by that channel. The wool which is collected in this city is an important article, and greatly contributes to the wealth of the citizens, who have ſome rich manufactures, and are much diſtinguiſhed for painted cloths in imitation of tapeſtry. Here are three fairs, viz. on new year's-day, Eaſter, and Michaelmas; but now that of Eaſter is the only one very conſiderable. To theſe fairs reſort the Poles, Hungarians, Bohemians, Pruſſians, people from all parts of Germany, the French, Italians, and even Ruſſians, who all bring the produce of their reſpective countries. But what has diſtinguiſhed Leipſic through a long ſeries of ages, is the liberty of conſcience granted to all people. Hence the inhabitants have been induſtrious in the cultivation of knowledge and moral improvement; and here is an univerſity, which is ſtill very conſiderable. The inhabitants amount to about 40,000 within the gates, and the ſuburbs are very populous. There are ſix churches for the Lutherans, theirs being the eſtabliſhed religion, one for the Calviniſts, and a chapel for the Roman Catholics, which is in the caſtle. The fortifications ſeem rather calculated for the uſe of the inhabitants to walk on, than for defence. Theſe have four ſtone gates, and the citizens ſupport 200 ſoldiers. The city is of ſmall extent; but the houſes are very lofty, and have elegant fronts. The ſtreets are clean, commodious and agreeable, and there are two large ſquares which are uſed as markets. The city is ſurrounded with gardens, in particular the Apel garden is in an excellent taſte, and adorned with ſtatues, which though very indifferent, are ſo ranged as to have a pleaſing effect.

On the 2d of September Mr. Hanway departed for Landſperg, and in the way had a diſtant view of Hall, which is ſubject to Pruſſia, and famous for its univerſity, particularly for ſtudents in phyſic. At Landſperg he re-entered the Pruſſian dominions; the paſſage from one ſovereignty to another being in theſe parts very frequent; and from thence proceeded to the city of Koethen, in the petty ſovereignty of the prince of Anhalt Koethen. This is a conſiderable place, the inhabitants amounting to above 15,000. They have three churches, and the principal manufactory of gold and ſilver lace in all Germany. The people of the little independent ſovereignties of Koethen, Deſſau, Binburg, and Zerbſt, in the opinion of the Saxons, live in the land of milk and honey. Indeed theſe petty princes poſſeſs lands ſufficient for their expences: the tax on lands is four per cent. which at twenty years purchaſe is not one ſhilling in the pound. By the conſtitution of the empire, each of theſe princes is obliged to ſupport a hundred men in time of war, to defend the liberties of the empire.

In this town the prince of Anhalt Koethen has a palace. He keeps a body 250 men who are well clothed, and his revenues are computed at 160,000 dollars. The ſecurity with which a perſon travels in this part of the world is very extraordinary. The people are ſober, and the duties of morality are taught not only by the prieſts, but by parents, whence thefts and robberies in time of peace are hardly known among the Germans.

On the 3d, Mr. Hanway arrived at Magdeburg, where are eight German Lutheran and two Calviniſt churches. The fortifications of this city are very remarkable, and famed all over Europe. There are ſix deep foſſes, which, together with the lowneſs of the works, render the place very ſtrong. Magdeburg belongs to the king of Pruſſia, and is alſo remarkable for its great magazines of merchandizes brought from

Hamburg on the Elbe which is very rapid. Theſe goods are brought in flat-bottomed boats, and from hence ſent by land to Leipſic, and other parts. Here are fourteen floating-mills for grinding corn, with ſome manufactories, and remarkable buildings; and in the great ſquare is an ancient ſtatue of the emperor Otho, who is ſaid to have founded this city in the year 930.

Mr. Hanway was yet in the Pruſſian dominions, when his poſtillion attempting to paſs by a particular way, to avoid paying the duty demanded on the road, an officer poſted at an avenue to prevent this practice, rode up, ſtopped his chariot, and ſeized one of the horſes as a treſpaſs: nor would he deſiſt, till our author alighting with a piſtol in his hand let him know, that whatever fault the poſtillion had committed, it could not poſſibly reach him, as he had paid for the horſes, according to the laws, and was travelling under the protection of thoſe laws; and therefore if he preſumed to detain him, he would reſiſt him as a robber: upon which the officer thought proper to let him paſs. The German poſtillions wear the liveries of the countries to which they belong; in Brandenburg they are blue, in Saxony, yellow. They uſe ſmall French horns, and ſome of them play in no diſagreeable manner; but the majority make a ſhocking noiſe.

He next came to Helmſtet, which belongs to the duke of Brunſwic, and is ſurrounded with an old fortification. Here are two hundred ſtudents, who are chiefly ſupported by the bounty of their ſovereign. From thence he departed for Wolfenbuttel, which is four long German miles farther: the road is good, but the country hilly, and the vallies abound in cattle. There are ſeveral groves of oakes, which being kept perfectly clean, have a fine effect. The inhabitants of the towns and villages have the appearance of great health and eaſy circumſtances. A few miles to the eaſtward of this road are ſeveral mines of iron, copper, ſilver, and ſome ſay gold.

Mr. Hanway arrived at Wolfenbuttel after the gates were ſhut; but procured admiſſion. The fortifications are very neat and regular; but not calculated for an extraordinary defence. The houſes are low, but the ſtreets clean, and within the walls is an ancient palace belonging to the duke, which is rather convenient than grand; but it has ſeveral apartments well furniſhed, and two ſmall galleries of pictures. In the city are a good arſenal and library, which laſt our author declined ſeeing, from the opinion, that the ſimple view of libraries, without examining their contents, is a more barren entertainment, than ſurveying the ſky without thinking of him who made it.

The next day he travelled along a pleaſant road to Brunſwic, the walls of which are lofty, and the fortifications very conſiderable. This is the reſidence of the duke of Wolfenbuttel: his majeſty the king of Great Britain is a branch of that family, and takes the title of duke of Brunſwic. The duke's forces in time of peace are eſtimated at 13,000 men; and yet the revenues of the country are ſaid not to exceed a million and a half of dollars, or 262,000l. Theſe troops are clean, and clothed much after the Pruſſian manner; but their arms are lighter, and their exerciſe not ſo exact. In the arſenal of the city are about ſixty pieces of braſs cannon, ſeveral cohorns and mortars, and ten pieces of large battering cannon of an enormous ſize, and a great quantity of ſmall arms. On the ramparts is a braſs mortar-piece made in 1411, which is ten feet ſix inches long, and nine feet two inches in diameter. It requires 52 pounds of powder, and will carry a ball of 730 pounds weight to the diſtance of 33,000 paces, and throw a bomb of 1000 pounds weight. Here are ſeveral churches, one of them is a very ancient gothic ſtructure, the cieling of which is ornamented with twenty large paintings, repreſenting the prophets of the Old Teſtament in the clouds of Heaven, which give the edifice a very ſolemn air. The high altar is

of marble, adorned with the ſtatues of the four Evangeliſts, and ſupported below by Moſes and Aaron.

This branch of the houſe of Brunſwic is very numerous, conſiſting of near thirty perſons. People of diſtinction ſeldom leave this court without being extremely well ſatisfied with their reception, and in particular, Engliſh noblemen are well received when they occaſionally paſs that way. The duke ſeems more fond of eaſe and happineſs, than of the parade of life. He generally appears in his coach with three other perſons of his family. His livery is yellow, laced with a blue ſilk and ſilver galoon; behind his coach are uſually four footmen; two pages in blue cloth laced with ſilver, run by its ſide, and a ſingle ſervant in livery rides before to clear the way.

His palace of Saltzdahlen is ſituated above a German mile from Brunſwic, in a very mean village; but is worthy of being ſeen. The greateſt part of the edifice is of timber, and the rooms are moſtly lined with painted cloth, which gives them an air of grandeur at a ſmall expence. Our author here obſerved the magnificence of a ſovereign prince reſtrained by a parſimonious regard to ſmall revenues, and to the neceſſary ſupport of a family and an army. The garden is in no bad taſte; but the ſtatues are very mean. The gallery of pictures is a noble apartment, and contains many capital pieces done by the greateſt maſters. The left wing is furniſhed in a groteſque taſte with China porcelain, ranged in an agreeable manner; another is filled with painted enamelled ware, great part of which is ſaid to be done by Raphael of Urbino, when he was enamoured of the potter's daughter. Among the pictures are ſeveral curious originals: thoſe that moſt ſtruck our author, were Adam and Eve viewing Abel after his death, and pulling open his eyes; this piece is by Strudel. Abraham embracing his ſon after the trial which God had made of his faith; piety and joy here ſeem to contend with each other, while his looks expreſs a ſeraphic adoration: this piece is by

Liebens. Peter delivered from priſon by the angel, by Steinbeck: Judith and her attendant, an old woman, holding Holofernes's head juſt cut off, the face appearing with ſome ſigns of life: Spinola, by Rubens: the famous Rembrandt, his wife and three children, in one piece by himſelf: Cephalis and Procris, a very fine piece: the Aſcenſion by Vangerman, which is much eſteemed: Lewis XIV. and his two miſtreſſes; prince Eugene; the marriage of two Hollanders, the young man and woman looking tenderly at each other, while the parents are attentive to the notary who draws up the articles.

The duchy of Brunſwic carries on a trade of ſome conſequence with Bohemia. The country abounds in hops, that are eſteemed the beſt in Germany; and has alſo great plenty of turnips, of the ſeed of which they make good oil.

On Mr. Hanway's apppoaching the city of Hanover, it appeared at the diſtance of a long German mile, as if it ſtood in the midſt of a wood. The king was then at Ghoerd, a hunting place twenty-eight German miles from that city; and it is ſaid, that twelve hundred perſons may be accommodated in that palace. The woods are cut into viſtas, and are ſo extenſive that the trees which had been blown down in a late ſtorm, though computed at 80,000, could hardly be miſſed.

Hanover is in many reſpects a pleaſant city, and though it does not equal Berlin and Dreſden, may be eſteemed elegant. It is watered by the Leina, which is a branch of the Aller, that runs into the Weſer, and has conſequently a communication with Bremen; but has no trade worth mentioning. The fortifications are not formidable, but the walks round them are very agreeable.

The palace is ſituated on the banks of the Leina, and having ſuffered greatly by fire, a conſiderable part of it had been rebuilt. It has ſeveral courts, and the rooms are grand and commodious: this palace is moſt diſtinguiſhed by many of the rooms being hung

with very rich tapeſtry. The opera-houſe, and the theatre for the French comedians, are both within the palace, and though ancient, are commodious. The whole is rather rich, decent and elegant, than very ſplendid. The guard is always mounted, and an open table kept, even when the king is not in his electoral dominions, at which time the adminiſtration, compoſed of a council of ſtate, is conducted with the utmoſt dignity. During the whole winter a play is exhibited, and a concert performed twice a week; when the courtiers, without exception, take place according to their military rank. The king's ſtables are magnificent; and beſides his riding horſes, which were then abſent, they contained thirteen complete ſets of coach horſes, the moſt beautiful of their kind.

The king's forces in the electorate, in time of peace, are ſaid to be twenty-four thouſand, and the revenues of the electorate are about four millions of dollars, or 700,000l. a conſiderable part of which ariſes from the ſilver mines. The number of inhabitants in the city of Hanover hardly exceeds 50,000.

But nothing excites the curioſity of travellers like the palace of Herenhauſen, ſituated about two Engliſh miles to the north of the city. The way to it is through an agreeable avenue of trees, but the road is ſandy. However, Mr. Hanway obſerves, that he does not know whether he was more mortified or ſurpriſed, to find that the building fell vaſtly ſhort of his expectations; for though in England it is ſaid, our hoſpitals are palaces, and our palaces more proper for hoſpitals, yet he had conceived the opinion, that this palace, ſo much talked of, was indeed grand, and worthy of his majeſty. It was built in the year 1670, by Erneſt Auguſtus, the king's grandfather: the greateſt part of it is of wood, and the apartments in general, rather give the idea of a large ancient manſion houſe belonging to a private gentleman in England, than of the palace of a great monarch: but it has rich furniture and ſome good pictures. The garden, however, is juſtly

worthy of admiration. Mr. Hanway had ſeen none in Germany comparable to it, though it wants thoſe exquiſite charms, and that enchanting variety, capable of being produced by an inequality of ground, of which we have numerous proofs in Great-Britain. One ſide of the garden has a narrow piece of water, above a quarter of a mile in length. The walks, which are wide and ſpacious, are moſtly laid with gravel. The guard is divided into large ſquares and baſons, and in the intermediate ſpaces are lofty groves and orchards; the whole has a grand effect, but in our author's opinion, is not very rural. The ſtatues, which are moſtly of ſtone, do not appear to be of the firſt rank; but the jet d'eau erected in 1716, by Mr. Benſon, perhaps exceeds any thing of the kind in the whole world: it throws the water ſeventy feet high. Here alſo, according to the German taſte, is a ſylvan theatre, on which are ſometimes exhibited plays and maſquerades; this theatre is adorned with ſtatues, and occaſionally illuminated in a grand taſte.

On the 15th of September Mr. Hanway left Hanover, and proceeded to Zell. The chief production of the country near the road is turf, which ſerves as fuel for the neighbouring inhabitants. In ſeveral places he obſerved about three feet from the ſurface of the earth, the remains of ancient buildings, which the common people fooliſhly think have remained there ever ſince the deluge.

Zell, which is ſubject to the houſe of Hanover, is a conſiderable fortified place. The palace is alſo fortified by a wall and a moat, and being ſituated on an eminence, commands an extenſive proſpect. Here are four Lutheran churches, one French, and one Dutch reformed church, and one for the Roman Catholics. The houſes are moſtly mean, and built of wood. The town has a ſmall trade with Bremen, by means of the river Aller.

From thence our author travelled four German miles to Weiſſendorf, the greateſt part of the way appearing

like a deſart, with only three or four mean villages; but there are flocks of ſheep, and a little corn. This electorate ſupplies the greateſt part of Germany with mutton, as Brandenburg and Weſtphalia produces hogs, and Hungary beef; but as each of theſe countries produces corn enough for its own conſumption, the trade in that article of commerce is very ſmall. On the 17th he reached Hamburgh. The banks of the Elbe below that city, are in ſome places very high, and exhibit a delightful view of ſeveral ſmall iſlands in the middle of the river, which is five or ſix Engliſh miles over. It is very unlucky for travellers who are diſpoſed to entertain a good opinion of the electorate of Hanover, that the road from the metropolis acroſs the country to the Elbe, in the way to Hamburgh, has ſo barren and deſolate an appearance. The diſtricts of Zell and Lunenburgh are by no means ſcenes of pleaſure; but at ſome diſtance from the road in Hanover, it is ſaid the lands are fertile and well peopled.

Hamburgh is a Hanſe town of the greateſt importance of any in Europe; for its ſituation for trade, and the reputation of its laws, have long furniſhed it with opulent inhabitants. It ſtands in the duchy of Holſtein on the north ſide of the Elbe, where that river forms many iſlands, and ſome part of the town is ſo low, that the inhabitants are much incommoded by the overflowing of the water, when there are high tides, and north-weſt winds. The houſes are ſtrong and lofty, and many of them extremely neat; but moſt of the ſtreets are ſo narrow, as hardly to ſuffer wheel-carriages to paſs each other: their coachmen are, however, remarkably dexterous. Indeed, ſeventy years ago, coaches were hardly known among them; but they are now very common. There are alſo many ſpacious ſtreets; but thoſe lying higher, and more detached from the water, are not ſo much frequented by wealthy merchants.

This place is, with reſpect to Germany, what Amſterdam is to Europe, a magazine of the different pro-

duce and merchandize of the trading world. Many of the houſes are built on the very edge of the canals, ſo that ſhips may unload into their warehouſes. The number of veſſels of conſiderable burthen belonging to the town is computed at four hundred, of which thirty of the principal are employed in the trade to and from London. The Britiſh factory there is poſſeſſed of as diſtinguiſhed privileges, as any body of foreigners enjoy in any part of the commercial world.

The fortifications of the town on the land ſide are conſidered as very ſtrong. The walks round the ramparts extend about four Engliſh miles, and in moſt parts are very pleaſant. On the eaſt ſide is a large piece of water formed by a ſmall river called the Alſter, within the walls, on which the town's people amuſe themſelves in the ſummer, by rowing about it, attended by bands of muſicians. The citizens have alſo ſeveral gardens on the banks of the Elbe and the Alſter, ſome of which are agreeable; but being moſtly in the Dutch taſte, they are very ſmall, but kept in exquiſite order, ſo as to appear rather like a puppet-ſhew, than a rural ſcene.

The city is divided into five pariſhes, in which are five capital churches. The Lutheran is the eſtabliſhed religion; but there is not a toleration as in London and Amſterdam: the Roman Catholics are objects of great jealouſy; but the Jews, who ſupport themſelves by commerce and brokerage, are indulged.

The government of the city is compoſed of four burgomaſters, twenty-four ſenators, fourteen of whom are choſen from among the merchants, and ten bred to the ſtudy of the law: there are alſo four ſindics or lawyers, who act as ſecretaries of ſtate, and under theſe are four real ſecretaries: beſides theſe, each of the pariſhes has three officers in the nature of the tribunes of the people among the ancient Romans, and nothing of moment is reſolved on by the ſenate without their concurrence. The number of inhabitants may be reckoned at 180,000, and the ſuburbs and adjacent

villages contain half as many more. The manufactures of this place, except baking ſugar, and printing calicoes, are very inconſiderable.

The better ſort of people are extremely affable, moſt of them having travelled; but the women are very reſerved: they generally go veiled with black ſilk, but when they have reaſon to entertain a favourable opinion of their own beauty, they wear them ſo as not to hide their faces. There is here no appearance of ſtate and grandeur, their chief purſuit being trade. As there are no marks of regal authority to create a due ſubordination, the eaſy circumſtances of the greateſt part of the inhabitants have introduced a ſpecies of inſolence peculiar to a republican ſtate, and the common people tread cloſe upon the heels of thoſe of higher rank: it is obſervable, that they have here introduced the cuſtom of giving money to ſervants, and thus, as in ſome other countries, the domeſtic obligations of ſociety are converted into acts of venality.

On the 30th of September our author left Hamburg and arrived at Blankeneſs, which is two ſhort German miles from that city, through a delightful road on the banks of the Elbe, which gives a fine and extenſive view of part of the Hanoverian dominions on the weſt, and of the Daniſh territories in Holſtein on the eaſt of that river. There is no ſtage for poſt-horſes. The ferry is very ſmall for a wheel carriage, and the ruſticity of the Daniſh boors is apt to create vexations; they very frequently ſtaying on ſhore to decide, by a certain game, who ſhall attend the paſſenger. The breadth of the river here is about an Engliſh mile; and near the ſame diſtance up a creek is Crantz, a mean village in the Hanoverian dominions. At this place there being no poſt, the peaſants are obliged to find horſes for paſſengers at a certain rate. Crantz is but a mean place, though it extends above two Engliſh miles. It is built on the top of a high bank, intended to reſiſt

the overflowing of the Elbe, which ſometimes happens. The country abounds in meadow and corn lands.

On the 1ſt of October, Mr. Hanway purſued his journey to Cloſter-ſeven, through an indifferent road. The country is but thinly inhabited. From thence is three German miles to Otterſburg, through a ſandy country; but as he approached towards Bremen, he found it much improved. Within an Engliſh mile of Bremen, he took notice of three ſtones, on which were the arms of the Britiſh crown; theſe ſerve to mark out the boundaries of the Hanoverian dominions.

Bremen is ſituated on a plain on both ſides the river Weſer, over which it has a bridge. The dutchy in which is ſtands formerly belonged to the Swedes; but being conquered by the Danes, they ſold it to the elector of Hanover in 1716; yet only a ſmall quarter of the town in which ſtands a church called the Dome, is ſubject to that electorate. The reſt, with its territories, is free, and under its own laws and magiſtrates. Theſe are four burgomaſters, and twenty-four ſenators, choſen out of the citizens who profeſs Calviniſm, which is the eſtabliſhed religion; and they have five churches for the citizens of that perſuaſion. The inhabitants are ſuppoſed to amount to 30,000; and one would imagine that they are extremely pious, SOLI DEO GLORIA, or glory to God alone, being in large characters over their doors and windows, within doors and without.

Moſt of the ſtreets are narrow; but many houſes make a good appearance, and the ſhops are well ſtocked with merchandize. The city has a town-houſe, an exchange, and water-works, by which it is ſupplied from the river. In the market-place is the figure of a giant fourteen feet high clothed in armour, ſaid to repreſent a general named Rowland or Royland, who they ſay ſaved the city when it was in the utmoſt danger from the Swedes. But what is moſt remarkable, is the great Dome, where the worſhip is performed

after the Lutheran manner, the people of this perſuaſion being almoſt as numerous as thoſe of the eſtabliſhed religion. It is an ancient gothic ſtructure, reputed to be about ſix hundred years old, and under it is a vault in which are the bodies of ſeveral perſons ſaid to be depoſited in it 150 years before our author was there, and had been diſcovered forty years before that time to be entire. The linen in which they are dreſſed, is as light as tinder: their ſkins look black and parched, but their features are diſtinguiſhable: they are extremely light, and the coheſion of the parts are entire. The vault, which is about ſix feet below the ſurface of the earth, and vaulted eight or nine inches high, appears to have nothing extraordinary, except that the air ſeems temperate, and the walls perfectly dry. A dead cat that was accidentally thrown in through the window, was preſerved as well as the human bodies. The vault is not ſuffered to be cleaned, from the idle opinion that it may loſe its virtue. Several perſons have offered conſiderable ſums to have their bodies depoſited there, to which the prieſts object, alledging the ſentence of God. That man ſhall return to duſt. However, it is probable that the magiſtrates do not chuſe to indulge theſe perſons, as the Lutheran is not the eſtabliſhed church.

From Bremen is a long cauſeway, the country being often covered with water. About a mile from the town, Mr. Hanway re-entered the Hanoverian dominions, and after a journey of three long German miles, he arrived at Wildeſhauſen, a principle town, and the reſidence of the great bailiff of the diſtrict, of which there are twenty-five in the Hanoverian territories.

From thence he travelled to Haſſelune, a pretty agreeable town belonging to the elector of Cologn. Poverty and ſuperſtition here prevail, and there are crucifixes erected on almoſt every hilloc. He then came to Lingen in the circle of Weſtphalia. This town is ſubject to the king of Pruſſia, and has a ſmall fortification. The breadth of the ſtreets and regularity of

the houſes give the traveller a ſtriking idea of that good order for which the Puſſians are ſo much diſtinguiſhed. This town formerly belonged to William III. king of England, and on his death devolved to the houſe of Brandenburg.

On the 4th of October, our author approaching the dominions of the United Provinces, arrived at Northorn, where the women appeared to be almoſt blinded with the ſmoke ariſing from the turf, which they have here in great abundance, that part of the country producing ſcarce any thing elſe. The heaths preſerved for the production of this fuel, are larger than is generally imagined, conſidering the ſmall extent of the dominions of the eſtates; but except theſe, the hand of induſtry appears in a very remarkable degree: the incloſure of meadows, corn land, and kitchen-gardens, plantations of trees, and banks which are thrown up for roads, demonſtrate the labour of the peaſant, and at the ſame time afford an agreeable proſpect. Their cows are red, and conſtitute their principal riches, by the great quantity of butter and cheeſe they produce. The little towns he now paſſed through, began to exhibit that cleanlineſs for which the Hollanders are ſo much diſtinguiſhed. The marriages of this country are performed with a humorous ſolemnity; pillars and feſtoons of verdure, adorned with garlands and flowers are prepared for the decorations of a nuptial feaſt at the houſes of the parties.

From Northorn he came to Daventer, a large city in the province of Overyſſel, formerly a hans-town, but now ſubject to the ſtates. It ſtands on the river Yſſel, which bears veſſels of burthen. There is a large wooden bridge over it, which ſubjects the paſſengers to a heavy toll. This river runs into the Zuyder ſea. The town is well fortified, and has a ſtrong garriſon: the ſtreets and houſes are neat, and the ſhops well ſupplied with manufactures, and other neceſſaries. It has a good inland trade, but no manufactories.

From hence is a regular poſt four German miles to Voorthuſen. The ſoil of the country is various. Near the midway is Loo, a famous ſeat of the prince of Orange. Voorthuſen is a mean village, and the country has no agreeable aſpect. He thence proceeded to Amersfort two German miles; the firſt of which is through a ſandy country, where there is but little cultivated land, or appearances of rich inhabitants: but towards Ovelach the country appears worthy of the reputation it has in the world: here are large plantations of tobacco for the produce of which the land is thrown up in ridges two feet high. The conſumption of this article in the United Provinces is very conſiderable.

Amersfort is an ancient and conſiderable town in the province of Utrecht, on the ſmall river Eems, which runs into the Zuyder ſea. Here is a very large church, that has an excellent ſet of chimes. The houſes and ſtreets are remarkably clean; but the manners of the people are far from being equally delicate. They ſhew their ruſticity in an apparent contempt of ſtrangers. This town is ſupported by huſbandry, and has a conſiderable trade in tobacco of its own growth. Many of the people wear wooden ſhoes, which are moſt convenient, for their brick floors and inceſſant waſhing.

From Amersfort Mr. Hanway departed for Naarden, which is about two German miles diſtant. Here turnpikes are very numerous, and paſſengers are made to pay regularly in many places where there is no fence. About two Engliſh miles from Amersfort is Soeſdyke, a palace belonging to the prince of Orange, that has a park ſaid to be eight Engliſh miles in circumference. Being impatient to reach Amſterdam, he declined viſiting Utrecht, remarkable for a treaty that has blotted the annals of England, and aggrandized the houſe of Bourbon: but it is ſaid to be one of the moſt agreeable places, and as worthy the attention of a traveller as any in the United Provinces.

The road to Naarden paſſes through regular plantations of trees, and the country is well cultivated and

inhabited. This is the boundary of the province of Holland, and ſituated near the Zuyder ſea. The fortifications are conſiderable, being partly compoſed of a broad double moat filled from the ſea. From hence to Amſterdam is reckoned two German miles: the whole country conſiſts of paſtures and gardens that appear below the ſurface of the ſea, if one may judge from the hulls of ſhips on the water. The road on the banks of the canals is made with great coſt; and in the avenue to Amſterdam is a cauſeway, which has ſmall villages and gardens belonging to the citizens on each ſide, that greatly beautify the face of this artificial country. The gates of Amſterdam are ſhut at ſix in the evening, but are opened to paſſengers till ten, for a ſtiver each perſon.

The wonderful city of Amſterdam, as well as many other towns of the Netherlands, is a work of art and labour, not inferior to the greateſt monuments of human induſtry in paſt ages. It is ſituated about 220 Engliſh miles from London, and derives its name from the river Amſtel; it being formerly called Amſteldam, or the dam of the Amſtel, which is the name generally given to it in authentic records. Our author obſerves, that it was then reckoned about 400 years from its firſt beginning, and 270 from its being encloſed with walls. In 1570, the Dutch began to lay the foundation of their wealth and naval ſtrength. About twenty years before that time, they embraced the doctrines of Calvin, and being provoked by the oppreſſive meaſures of Romiſh bigotry, they ſhook off the Spaniſh yoke. The Spaniards exerted themſelves upon this occaſion, from religious as well as political motives; but they were unable to render that confederacy abortive, which at length united the Seven Provinces, and formed a powerful republic.

About the year 1600, the love of liberty and gain cauſed ſuch a conflux of people thither, that the walls were extended, and ſince that time they have been farther enlarged, ſo that they are now about three leagues

in circumference. The city is generally eſteemed near one-third as populous as London and Paris. Within the walls are reckoned 26,500 houſes, and about 240,000 inhabitants, beſides thoſe in the ſuburbs which are ſmall. The greateſt ſtrength of the place is in the difficulty of acceſs both by ſea and land; but the numerous ſhoals that render the entrance of the Texel difficult, have not obſtructed the progreſs of commerce. One remarkable proof of œconomy is obvious in the fortifications of the city; for the baſtions, which are very numerous, have each a windmill.

Moſt of the ſtreets are exremely clean; but except thoſe that have canals, they are much too narrow. However, they are rendered leſs incommodious by the hired coaches being ſet on ſledges drawn by one horſe. Merchandize is alſo drawn on ſledges, which are not only the moſt convenient vehicles for the inhabitants and their trade, but are calculated to preſerve the houſes, which being built on piles, might in time be damaged in their foundations, by having a great number of wheel-carriages. Gentlemen's coaches are, however, for the moſt part ſet on wheels, but for this liberty they pay a conſiderable tax. The principal ſtreets, or rather quays of the canals, are agreeably planted on each ſide with trees; but the canals ſometimes ſmell very offenſively. The houſes are rather neat, than elegant or commodious: the nature of the climate renders it neceſſary to waſh them often; but the greateſt part of the people carry this kind of cleanlineſs ſo far, as hardly to afford themſelves time for the neceſſary care of their perſons. The entrance of the houſes is generally by ſteps, which riſe four or five feet from the ground, and the paſſage into the rooms, which runs very deep, is floored and pannelled with marble, which has an air of grandeur in miniature. They have much neat, and ſome rich furniture, which ſeems rather occaſioned by an ancient cuſtom of neatneſs and elegance, than the effect of a luxurious and expenſive taſte.

Of all the buildings in Amſterdam, the town-houſe is the moſt diſtinguiſhed. It is two hundred and eighty-feet in front, two hundred and thirty two deep, and an hundred and ſixteen high, excluſive of the cupola. It coſt three millions of guilders, or three hundred thouſand pounds ſterling, when money was more valuable than it is now, which will be leſs ſurpriſing, if we conſider that it is founded upon thirteen thouſand large piles. This is a very grand and uſeful building, and yet is neither elegant nor agreeable. It contains the offices and tribunals for the execution of the laws in the ſeveral branches of the military, as well as civil government. It is very obſervable, that the entrance of this building is very mean; but had the doors been proportioned to the reſt of the edifice, they would have been more ſubject to be forced, upon occaſion of thoſe tumultuous aſſemblies of the people, that are not unfrequent in this country. The ſtadthouſe is guarded in the night by a body of the burghers, who are thus charged with the care of the great reſervoir of the wealth of the United Provinces. In the lower apartments is the bank, in which is ſaid to be depoſited immenſe ſums.

The exchange is two hundred and fifty feet long, and a hundred and forty broad; but it is much inferior in architecture and embelliſhments to that of London. It is ſupported by forty-ſix pillars; which are marked with numbers, and the merchants take their ſtands near particular pillars, to be more eaſily found. The city is guarded by a militia of the burghers.

The eſtabliſhed religion is that of Calviniſm, for which there are eleven churches for the Dutch, one for the Engliſh, two for the Germans, and two for the French; but the Roman Catholics are ſaid to have near thirty places of worſhip. Beſides theſe there are Lutherans and Baptiſts: the Jews are alſo numerous, and have their ſynagogues as in London; but none of theſe religions, except the Calviniſts, are allowed the uſe of bells; and the ſtates invalidate all marriages not per-

formed according to the rites of the eſtabliſhed church, unleſs the parties firſt engage themſelves in form before the civil magiſtrate, and then they may perform the ceremony according to their reſpective religions.

Mr. Hanway paſſing over the Y (which is alſo called the Ya) to Sardam, had an opportunity of obſerving the immenſe labour ſaved by the means of windmills. Here they ſaw timber at a very eaſy rate; and he obſerved in one of theſe a tree eight or nine inches in diameter, ſawed into thirty-ſix boards, with great exactneſs. This occaſions their building ſhips cheaper than in other parts. They here grind woods and other materials for dying, making gunpowder and paper, of which here are the beſt manufactories in Holland. Theſe mills are likewiſe employed in many other uſes. This work is performed by very few hands, and the women are employed as well as the men; which gives a lively idea of that induſtry and œconomy from which the United Provinces have derived their wealth. Many of theſe windmills are erected at a great expence, from their being built on ground that is little better than a marſh.

With reſpect to their dykes, the Dutch have lately made great improvements: they now line many of their ſhores with large ſtones. The dyke to the Zuyder Sea is raiſed about ſixteen feet perpendicular, and goes off upon an eaſy ſlope. The ſtones are here regularly laid, and form an excellent defence againſt the watar: but the dykes towards the north ſea are ſaid to be more lofty, and not to be ſupported but with piles at a great expence.

The neighbourhood of a dreadful volcano cannot render the ſituation of the inhabitants more precarious than that of the Dutch is from the nature of their country. In ſpite of their great ſkill and induſtry, the ocean has often paſſed its bounds, and exhibited a lively picture of the general deluge. In 1530, a great part of Zealand was overflowed. In the ſame century ſeventy-

two villages on the coaſts of Holland and Friezland were ſwallowed up, and near twenty thouſand people periſhed; and in 1665, an inundation broke down the dyke of Muydenburg, and laid the whole country round Naarden, and many places in the province of Utrecht, under water. The dyke between Amſterdam and Haerlem, and many others, were alſo broke: but the calamity was no ſooner over, than the inhabitants, in a great meaſure repaired the damage.

Amſterdam is a prodigious magazine of corn, wine, timber, and many other commodities imported from abroad; while the inhabitants excel in ſugar-baking, dying, bleaching of linen and wax, manufacturing of paper, ſail-cloth, and no inconſiderable quantity of ſilk and wool. The herring and whale fiſheries produce immenſe riches, and their Eaſt India trade is of the higheſt importance to them both in Europe and Aſia; the article of ſpices alone is a mine of gold, which they have preſerved with more care and aſſiduity than if it were really ſuch.

With reſpect to ballance of trade between Great Britain and United Provinces, the linens, flax, ſail-cloth, haberdaſhery goods, juniper-berries, &c. which this nation take of the Dutch, greatly exceed in value the tobacco, coals, lead, and tin, they take of the Britiſh ſubjects.

Though there are many Hollanders who think judiciouſly, and in ſome reſpects live elegantly, the common people are extremely booriſh. Our author obſerves, that he has ſeen a boatman in a great city, ſtrut up and down a room with his hat on, his hands on his hips, and with a careleſs air of inſolence, ſpit at the feet of a gentleman who was treating him with civility, and giving him an opportunity of getting a guinea for an inconſiderable ſervice. This they miſtake for liberty, while their knowledge is confined to the common means of gain, and the gratifications of the calls of nature. Cheeſe, beer geneva, brandy, and tobacco, are the joys that ſeem to crown the labours of the

common people; but in their cups they are apt to mix cruelty with their ruſticity.

Conſtant employment, coldneſs of complexion, and perhaps the nature of their food, may contribute to their being but little addicted to love. The women who are not of high rank, adorn their heads with gold-lace, and other of the like ornaments, but with more frugality than is generally practiſed in Germany. Except a few court ladies, they have not much taſte or delicacy in their manners. Some have good complexions; but there are few beautiful: their teeth are in general bad, and moſt of their children are ſickly till the age of eight or ten. The women in this country ſeldom breed after they are thirty; and as the men are remarkable for wearing many breeches, the women in cold weather uſe pots with live coals of wood or turf ſet into boxes bored full of holes, and put under the petticoates: this is not only apt to make them old from the waiſt downward, before the time ordained by nature, but the ſmell of the coals is offenſive. Thus there is a proverbial ſaying, that "the dirtieſt piece "of furniture in the houſe of a Dutchman is his wife."

The revenues of Amſterdam are reputed to be one fourth of what is paid by the Seven Provinces: they generally calculate two millions of people in the United Provinces, and two millions ſterling at the loweſt computation, are unnually paid in taxes.

On the 16th of October, Mr. Hanway took his leave of Amſterdam, and embarking at Haerlem gate, took roof or cabin of the Treckſcoot: theſe ſtage boats are extremely commodious, as they ſet out at ſtated hours, and perform their paſſage at a certain time almoſt to a minute. The Haerlem canal is bounded by meadow lands, ſtocked with horned cattle: but there are not many houſes near the banks. In two hours and a half he reached Haerlem, a conſiderable town remarkable for its cleanneſs; though its fortifications are in ſome parts only a brick wall. Here are twelve churches, o which only four are of the eſtabliſhed religion. A lit

tle to the ſouth of this city is Haelem Meer, which is a large lake; but it abounding in ſhallows, and being much expoſed to the wind, the canal is much preferable for the commerce with Amſterdam.

Mr. Hanway having made a ſhort ſtay at Haerlem, he embarked for Leyden. The banks of the canal to the laſt mentioned city are higher than thoſe of Haerlem. Here the cows are covered with body clothes, from the opinion that by keeping their backs warm, they give a greater quantity of milk; and the ſcene is diverſified by ſeveral country houſes, plantations of trees; and agreeable walks. The diſtance to Leyden is fifteen Engliſh miles, and he was exactly four hours on the way. This place is well known for its univerſity, which has ſtudents from all parts of Europe. The city is neat and agreeable, and the gardens about it extremely fruitful; but as moſt other places in the United Provinces has too much water, this has not enough, nor has it ſuch a communication with the ſea as to afford a proper motion by tides to keep the water ſweet.

From Leyden our author went in three hours to the Hague, which having no incloſure, is called a village. The ſtreets are broad; ſeveral of them are without canals, and the houſes for the moſt part are extremely well built. The number of coaches belonging to the noblemen and gentlemen, and the gay appearance in point of dreſs, give a very different idea of life from that of the trading cities. People here are more polite and eaſy in their behaivour, than in other pars of Holland: the moſt conſiderable perſons in Europe meeting there, as well as the aſſembly of the States General, which alſo draws thither the greateſt part of the people of the firſt diſtinction in the United Provinces. Indeed the Hague may be conſidered either as a great city, or as a rural ſcene, the environs with which it is immediately incloſed being extremely delightful, while, as is cuſtomary in great cities, they have plays and other amuſements, and at ſome diſtance a garden in imita-

tion of Vauxhall. There are, however, only two churches of any conſequence.

On the 22d of October, Mr. Hanway left the Hague and went to Delft, a very ancient and pleaſant town, ſurrounded by flat meadow-lands of conſiderable extent. This town, which is well known for its earthen ware, is well peopled, the inhabitants being computed at above 20,000.

Our author went from thence to Rotterdam, which is hardly ſeven Engliſh miles diſtant, and may juſtly be eſteemed the next in rank to Amſterdam. Indeed, it has ſeveral advantages above that city, particularly with reſpect to the ſouthern trade of Europe: beſides, the navigation of the Maeſe, is more ſafe and commodious than that of the Texel, and the air and water are better. The canals here being broad and deep, exhibit the view of a flouriſhing trade, by conveying ſhips of burthen into the heart of that city. Among other public building is a very good exchange for the uſe of the merchants: but the moſt remarkable edifice is the great church of St. Lawrence, in which are the monuments of ſeveral perſons of diſtinction, particularly of their moſt celebrated ſea officers: on the great bridge is the ſtatue of Eraſmus. There are in this city great magazines of Eaſt-India goods, this city having a ſhare of that trade. The Britiſh factory is very conſiderable, and is moſtly compoſed of North-Britons of the kirk of Scotland, who have a church here. During the war in Flanders, under the great duke of Marlborough, an epiſcopal church was built by contribution of the Engliſh officers, merchants and mariners, and it is ſaid to be the only regular epiſcopal church countenanced and eſtabliſhed, belonging to Britiſh ſubjects, out of the dominions of Great-Britain.

On the 27th, Mr. Hanway went down the Maeſe in a yacht to Halvoet Sluys, the port from whence the Harwich packet ſets out on Wedneſdays and Sundays. Though this is one of the beſt harbours in the United Provinces, yet the town is very inconſiderable, it having only three ſmall ſtreets and a quay which is of con-

ſiderable extent, and borders a great part of the harbour. From this place may be ſeen the iſland of Goree to the ſouth, and Zealand to the north.

Mr. Hanway had here the pleaſure to find a ſmall ſquadron, with four yachts, belonging to the crown of Great-Britain, under the command of lord Anſon, his Britannic majeſty being expected to embark in his return from Hanover, in a few days: a ſight which gave him the more pleaſure, as he had not ſeen a Britiſh ſhip of war for near eight years before. He embarked on board the packet ſoon after his arrival, and landed at Harwich on the 28th, after a paſſage of twenty-four hours.

AN

ACCOUNT

OF

DENMARK,

BY

THE LORD MOLESWORTH.*

Containing a general deſcription of the country, with the manners and cuſtoms of the inhabitants.

THE country properly called Denmark, conſiſts of Jutland, part of the duchy of Sleſwick, and ſeveral iſlands in the Baltic ſea. The peninſula of Jutland is the largeſt and moſt fertile of the countries included under the name of Denmark; but the iſlands are more conſiderable on account of their ſituation, eſpecially Zealand; becauſe it contains Copenhagen, the capital of Denmark, and the famous paſſage of the Sound is bordered by its ſhore, where on the narroweſt part ſtands the town of Elſeneur.

Zealand is almoſt of a circular figure, and about 180 Engliſh miles in circumference; but it produces no bread-corn, except rye, of which moſt of their bread is

* We have omitted in the account given by this great author, whatever appears to be dictated by partiality, and have improved this article with the obſervations of later writers, which, as uſual, we have diſtinguiſhed by encloſing them in [crotchets.]

made. It has few meadows, and has no want of good hay; though moſt of the graſs, which is ſhort and ſweet, grows by the ſides of the corn fields, or in ſome marſhy ſpots of ground. It has no rivers, nor above half a ſcore brooks able to turn a mill: but there are a great number of fine lakes ſufficiently ſtored with fiſh. The air is but indifferent, eſpecially at Copenhagen; which is occaſioned by its low ſituation, and frequent fogs. The inhabitants burn beach-wood for their firing, which is the only ſort of timber trees that abound in the iſland. About one-fourth part of it is foreſt, lying open for the king's hunting and game, as ſtags, wild boars, and roebucks, which are here held ſo ſacred, that nobody dares touch them, though they find them in whole herds deſtroying their corn.

The face of the land is agreeably diverſified with little hills, woods, and lakes. The horned cattle are generally ſmall and lean, and are kept within doors ſeven or eight months in the year; where they are fed partly with hay, and partly with brewers grains, roots, weeds, and ſuch traſh as their owners can provide for them: but in ſummer time when they feed on graſs, their fleſh is ſweet and juicy.

Throughout all Demark there are but two ſeaſons in the year, winter and ſummer, the more agreeable ones of ſpring and autumn not being commonly known; the ſpring never, and the autumn ſeldom; the tranſitions from cold to heat, and from heat to cold being extremely ſudden. During the months of June, July, and Auguſt, the weather is much warmer than in England, and very ſultry in the nights; but it is a gloomy heat: in the day time, people generally perceive ſome interpoſition of thick vapours between them and the ſun. In Copenhagen, during theſe three months, they are conſtantly troubled with the plague of flies, which they endeavour to deſtroy by a poiſoned water; upon the ſprinkling of which in their kitchens and chambers, I have ſeen whole buſhels of dead flies ſwept together in one room.

The only city worthy of notice in this iſland, and indeed of all Denmark, is the city of Copenhagen, there being no other in the king's whole dominions much better than our town of St. Albans. Copenhagen is neither a very ancient, nor a very large place; it approaching neareſt to Briſtol, of any of our Engliſh cities: but its excellent port renders its ſituation for trade one of the beſt in the world. It is ſurrounded with fortifications, and the port is incloſed by the bulwarks of the town, the entrance being ſo narrow, that but one ſhip can paſs at a time; and this entrance is every night ſhut up with a ſtrong boom: the citadel on one ſide, and on the other a good block-houſe well furniſhed with cannon, command the mouth. Within this haven rides the royal navy, every ſhip having her place aſſigned her; a wooden gallery ranges round the whole incloſure where the fleet lies, and extending over the water, the ſhips may be viewed from it in an eaſy and commodious a manner as if they lay on dry land. This harbour is capacious enough to hold 500 ſail, out of the reach of ſtorms and tempeſts. [But it has been found that their fortifications cannot protect them from a bombardment at ſea, nor are they always ſecure on that ſide againſt the attacks of a land army; for the Baltic has been ſo hard frozen, that the Swedes have drawn their artillery over the ice, and laid ſiege to the city.] The buildings of Copenhagen are generally very mean, they being formed of a kind of cage-work, with the intervals between the timbers filled up with brick. The public edifices, and particularly the palace, formerly made a very indifferent appearance; and ſeveral of the noblemen were infinitely better lodged than the royal family. [But on the 28th of October, 1728, the city was reduced to aſhes, and this conflagration has contributed greatly to its beauty; for it roſe again in a more magnificent form; the houſes were built with brick and free-ſtone, and the king has erected a very noble palace. The royal muſeum here contains

an admirable collection of curiosities both natural and artificial, preserved in eight chambers over the royal library, which is large and well furnished. One of these rooms is wholly taken up with medals, which are very judiciously arranged. Among the natural curiosities, one of the most remarkable is a petrified child, which was cut out of the mother's belly at the city of Sens in France in the year 1582, after having lain there between twenty and thirty years. This fœtus was first carried to Paris, where it was sold to a jeweller of Venice, who happened to be there, for about 20l. sterling; of whom it was afterwards purchased by Frederic III. king of Denmark for 60l. and added to this collection. That it is not artificial is evident beyond all dispute. Its head, shoulders and belly are of a whitish colour, and nearly resemble alabaster; the back and loins are hard and brown; but from the hips downward it is of a red colour, and perfect stone, exactly resembling the hard sort generated in the bladder.

In this fine collection are several large pieces of silver ore, dug out of mines of Norway in 1666, one of which weighs 560 pounds, and is valued at 5000 crowns: another piece is valued at above 3000: both being supposed to contain at least three parts silver. They are composed of a whitish stone, the cavities of which seem to be filled with pure virgin silver, in some places lying in broad flat plates, and in others like pieces of fine silver lace: but what are most admired, are the threads or branches of silver which shoot out an inch or two beyond the stone, in the form of small shrubs or bushes. Here are also several large pieces of amber, some weighing 40 or 50 ounces; which upon opening the ditches about Copenhagen, were found sticking to the sides of old trees that were buried there, like the gum on the plum-trees in our gardens.

Among the artificial curiosities, is a skeleton of ivory, two feet six inches high, so nicely formed that it

is ſcarcely to be diſtinguiſhed from a natural one. Another piece of ivory contains the hiſtory of our Saviour's paſſion, beautifully expreſſed in relievo. There is likewiſe a ſmall man of war in ivory, with ſilver guns, which is much admired, as is alſo a watch made of ivory. There are beſides many other curioſities in ivory, ebony, box, amber, and other materials, kept for the ſake of the elegance or minuteneſs of the workmanſhip, and it is ſaid that there is a common cherry-ſtone on the ſurface of which are engraven 220 heads; but their ſmallneſs makes them appear imperfect and confuſed.

The ſciences now begin to flouriſh at Copenhagen; learning is encouraged and makes great advances, and that city has a royal academy of ſciences, which nearly reſembles the royal ſociety of London.

The houſes of Copenhagen, do not take up above half the ground incloſed by the fortifications. The iſle of Amack, which is ſeparated from the city only by a ſmall channel of the ſea, is united to it by ſeveral bridges, that afford an eaſy communication; and in this iſland is what is called the New Town, which conſiſts of about four or five hundred houſes, and contains the arſenal, the mint, the exchange, and the caſtle. This little iſland, which is only about ſix miles in length, is called the garden of Copenhagen, and is eſteemed the moſt fertile ſpot in Denmark.] It was given long ago to ſeveral families who came from North Holland, to make butter and cheeſe for the court, and their deſcendants ſtill retain the habit, language, and cuſtoms of their predeceſſors, together with their cleanlineſs and induſtry; for they will not mix with the Danes, but intermarry with each other. This iſland, through the induſtry of theſe laborious people, plentifully ſupplies the markets of Copenhagen with all ſorts of roots and herbs: beſides butter, milk, great quantities of corn, and ſome hay.

[Elſeneur, is about twenty miles north of Copenhagen, and is defended by the neighbouring caſtle of

Cronenburg, which commands that ſide of the Sound, as Helſinburg does the other. Every ſhip that paſſes this ſtreight muſt ſtrike ſail at Cronenburg, and ſteer to the town, to compound for the cuſtom, under the penalty of forfeiting the veſſel and cargo. The caſtle of Cronenburg is four or five hundred paces diſtant from Elſeneur, and is built on oaken piles, in ſo ſolid a manner, that it is able to ſupport the fury of the tide, which ſometimes beats againſt it with great violence. It forms a large ſquare court, and was adorned with fine ſtatues: the apartments were alſo very ſplendid: it is even pretended, that not only the locks of the doors, but the very pipes of the ciſterns that ſupplied the garriſon with water, were all of ſilver, before it was plundered by the Swedes. This, however, is very improbable, and is doubtleſs no more than a vulgar error. It has four little towers at each corner, covered with copper; but the caſtle, with the chapel, ſteeple, and ornaments, are all going to decay. The land ſide is ſecured by five baſtions and a half.

Frederickſburg is a ſmall town twenty miles to the north-weſt of Copenhagen, and eighteen to the ſouth-weſt of Elſeneur. This place is famous for the fine palace that ſtands near it, which is eſteemed the moſt beautiful and delightful of any belonging to the king, and is generally called the Verſailles of Denmark. This palace ſtands on an iſland in the midſt of a ſmall lake. Here was formerly the ſeat of a private gentleman; but king Frederic II. being charmed with its ſituation, bought it, and began to erect the palace, which was finiſhed by his ſon Chriſtiern IV. This ſtructure ſtands on piles, and conſiſts of a very magnificent front, with two large wings, that contain ſeveral grand apartments. The gallery that leads to the hall of audience is adorned with a fine collection of paintings, moſt of them brought from Italy; and the hall is hung with the pictures of ſeveral of the Daniſh kings, and of the preſent royal family, as large as the life. The exploits of ſome of theſe monarchs are alſo beau-

tifully painted in different parts of the palace, and the great actions of Chriſtiern IV. are repreſented in rich tapeſtry. The chapel is covered with gilt copper, and on the inſide embelliſhed with paintings and other ornaments, among which are the ſtatues of the twelve Apoſtles in ſilver: and, it is ſaid, the locks, bolts, &c. were of ſilver, before it was plundered by the Swedes. There is a fine garden behind the palace, and in the lake is a kind of terrace, raiſed on piles, which coſt 100,000 crowns. The neighbouring park is about nine miles long, interſperſed with canals and fiſh-ponds, and agreeably diverſified with a mixture of graſs-plats, little hills, and valleys, well ſtocked with fallow-deer from England.]

The peninſula of Jutland, part of the Cimbrica Cherſoneſus, compoſes the largeſt part of the kingdom of Denmark. The ſoil of North Jutland, which alone is included in that kingdom, is not very fertile; but abounds in cattle, great numbers of which are purchaſed by the Dutch, when very lean, and tranſported to their own more fertile ſoil, where they ſoon grow exceeding fat. The ſwine of this country are excellent and very numerous. Jutland affords corn ſufficient for the ſupport of the inhabitants. The moſt fertile lands lie near the ſea-coaſts, the inland parts being full of heaths, lakes, and woods. The whole country is divided into four biſhoprics; but the cities and towns make but an indifferent figure.

[South Jutland, uſually called Sleſwic, is the moſt fertile, but the duke of Holſtein has the joint dominion of a part of this country, and in ſome great towns and territories each has a diſtinct dominion. The duke of Holſtein's capital is Gottorp; and though it is not ſubject to the crown of Denmark, it may not be improper to give here a deſcription of the gardens belonging to the caſtle, which is not only a fortreſs, but one of the nobleſt palaces in theſe northern countries.

The caſtle of Gottorp ſtands on the weſt of the river Sley in the midſt of a ſmall lake, and is built in the

form of an oblong ſquare. A rampart encompaſſes the firſt court, and the gate of the caſtle is of a fine blue ſtone as hard as marble. On the north ſide of this ſtructure is a bridge over the lake, 200 paces in length, at the end of which, a pleaſant walk, between rows of trees, leads to a fine garden adorned with caſcades, fountains, and other water-works. Particularly in a large baſon, is a ſtatue of Hercules combating the Hydra, whoſe ſeven heads ſpout water. On the north is a parterre, in the form of a creſcent, divided into compartments, and embelliſhed with the buſts of ſeveral kings and princes. But one of the moſt curious ornaments of theſe gardens is a fine copper globe, ten feet and a half in diameter, with a ſphere, exhibiting the motion of the ſun and heavenly bodies, which are carried round in exact order, by means of certain wheels turned by water. Before the houſe is a level piece of of ground about 150 paces long, divided into three parts, thoſe on the ſides being two fine parterres, and that in the middle, having a large baſon in the centre, with fine water-works. From thence you aſcend to different terraces, one above another, ſet round with ſtatues, buſts, and other ornaments. The higheſt terrace exhibits a moſt delightful proſpect of the caſtle, the ſurrounding lake, and a fine country; and on the other hand, of a noble orangery, and of the neighbouring park, which is four or five miles in circumference, and well ſtocked with deer.]

Among the iſlands included under the name of Denmark, is Funen, which is about thirty-ſix miles from eaſt to weſt, and thirty from north to ſouth. The ſoil is here fertile and well manured, and the country conſiſts of ſmall fruitful hills, ſome of them well covered with woods. It is better peopled than Zealand. Much corn, and great herds of black cattle are exported from thence, and the inhabitants have a good breed of horſes, and plenty of hogs. This iſland is the appendage of the king's eldeſt ſon, and the government of it is one of the moſt conſiderable in the kingdom. There are

ſeveral leſſer iſlands comprehended under the kingdom of Denmark. But the moſt extenſive part of this prince's dominions is Norway, of which we ſhall hereafter give a particular deſcription.

Denmark was till lately governed by a king choſen by the people of all ranks; but in their choice, they paid a due regard to the family of the preceding prince, and if they found one of his line qualified for that high honour, they thought it juſt to prefer him before any other, and were pleaſed when they had reaſon to chuſe the eldeſt ſon of their former king: but if thoſe of the royal family were deficient in abilities, or had rendered themſelves unworthy by their vices, they choſe ſome other perſon, and ſometimes a private man to that high dignity.

Frequent meetings of the ſtates was a fundamental part of the conſtitution: in thoſe meetings every thing relating to the government was tranſacted; good laws were enacted, and all affairs relating to peace and war, the diſpoſal of great offices, and contracts of marriage for the royal family, were debated. The impoſing of taxes was purely accidental, no money being levied on the people except to maintain a neceſſary war, with the advice and conſent of the nation, or now and then by way of free-gift, to add to a daughter's portion: the king's ordinary revenue, conſiſting only in the rents of his lands and demeſnes, in his herds of cattle, his foreſts, ſervices of tenants in cultivating his ground, &c. for cuſtoms on merchandiſe were not then known in that part of the world: ſo that he lived like one of our modern noblemen, upon the revenues of his eſtate. It was his buſineſs to ſee juſtice impartially adminiſtered; to watch over the welfare of his people; to command their armies in perſon; to encourage induſtry, arts, and learning; and it was equally his duty, and intereſt to keep fair with the nobility and gentry, and to be careful of the property and proſperity of the commons.

But in 1660, the three ſtates, that is, the nobility, clergy, and commonalty, being aſſembled in order to pay and diſband the troops, which had been employed againſt the Swedes, the nobility endeavoured to lay the whole burthen on the commons; while the latter, who had defended their country, their prince, and the nobility themſelves, with the utmoſt bravery, inſiſted that the nobles, who enjoyed all the lands, ſhould at leaſt pay their ſhare of the taxes, ſince they had ſuffered leſs in the common calamity, and done leſs to prevent its progreſs.

At this the nobility were enraged, and many bitter replies paſſed on both ſides. At length, the principal ſenator ſtanding up, told the preſident of the city, that the commons neither underſtood the privileges of the nobility, nor conſidered, that they themſelves were no other than ſlaves. The word ſlaves was followed by a loud murmur from the clergy and burghers: Nanſon, the preſident of the city of Copenhagen, and ſpeaker of the houſe of commons, perceiving the general indignation it occaſioned, inſtantly roſe, and ſwearing that the commons were no ſlaves, which the nobility ſhould ſoon prove to their coſt, walked out, followed by the clergy and burghers, and proceeding to the brewers-hall, debated there on the moſt effectual means of humbling the inſupportable pride of the nobles.

The next morning the commons and clergy marched in great order to the council-houſe, where the nobles were again aſſembled, and the preſident Nanſon made a ſhort ſpeech, obſerving that they had conſidered the ſtate of the nation, and found that the only way to remedy the diſorder of the ſtate was to add to the power of the king, and render his crown hereditary, in which if they thought fit to concur, they were ready to accompany them to the king, whom they had informed of their reſolution, and who expected them in the hall of his palace.

The ſuddenneſs of this propoſal, and the reſolution with which it was made, cauſed a general conſternation

among the nobles. They now endeavoured to ſoothe the commons by fair ſpeeches; and urged, that ſo important an affair ſhould be managed with due ſolemnity, and that it ſhould be regulated in ſuch a manner that it might not have the appearance of a tumult. To this the preſident replied, that they only wanted to gain time, in order to fruſtrate the intentions of the commons; who came not thither to conſult, but act. After farther debate, the commons growing impatient, the clergy and burghers, led on by their biſhop and preſident, proceeded without them to the palace; and were met by the prime miniſter, who conducted them to the hall of audience, whither the king ſoon came to them. The biſhop made a long ſpeech in praiſe of his majeſty, and concluded with offering him an hereditary and abſolute dominion. The king returned them his thanks; but obſerved, that the concurrence of the nobles was neceſſary; he aſſured them of his protection, and promiſed to eaſe their grievances. The nobles were all this while in the greateſt diſtraction; they could come to no reſolution, and broke up in order to attend the funeral of a principal ſenator; but while they were at a magnificent dinner, which was uſually provided on ſuch occaſions, they were told that the city gates were ſhut by the king's orders, and the keys carried to court. They were now filled with the apprehenſions of being all maſſacred, and the dread of loſing their lives took away all thoughts of their liberty: they therefore immediately diſpatched meſſengers both to the court and the commons, to give notice of their compliance. But the king being reſolved to purſue the affair to the utmoſt, would not ſuffer the gates to be opened till the whole ceremony of the inauguration was concluded. Three days time were neceſſary to prepare matters for the fatal hour in which they were to make a formal ſurrender of their liberty. Scaffolds covered with tapeſtry were erected in the ſquare before the caſtle: orders were given for the ſoldiers and

burghers to appear in arms under their reſpective officers; and on the 27th of October in the morning, the king, queen, and royal family being mounted on a theatre erected for that purpoſe, and placed in chairs of ſtate under canopies of velvet, received publicly the homage af all the ſenators, nobility, clergy, and commons, which was performed on their knees, each taking an oath faithfully to promote his majeſty's intereſt in all things, and to ſerve him faithfully as became hereditary ſubjects. Here one Gerſdorf, a principal ſenator, was the only man who opened his mouth in behalf of their expiring liberties, ſaying, that he hoped and truſted that his majeſty deſigned nothing but the good of his people, and not to govern them after the Turkiſh manner; but wiſhed his ſucceſſors might follow the example his majeſty would undoubtedly ſet them, and make uſe of that unlimited power for the good, and not the prejudice of his ſubjects. Not one of the reſt ſpoke a word, or ſeemed in the leaſt to murmur at what was done. Thoſe who had paid their homage now retired to the council-houſe, where the nobles were called over by name, and ordered to ſubſcribe the oath they had taken, which they all did.

Thus in four days time the kingdom of Denmark was changed from a ſtate but little different from that of an ariſtocracy, to that of an unlimited monarchy. The only comfort the commons had left, was to ſee their former oppreſſors almoſt as much humbled as themſelves; while all the citizens of Copenhagen have obtained by it is, the inſignificant privilege of wearing ſwords: ſo that now not a cobler nor a barber ſtirs abroad without one by his ſide. The clergy were indeed the only gainers; for they reaped many advantages from this change.

However, no enſigns of majeſty appear at the court of Denmark, except ſuch as are military, as horſe and foot guards, yeomen, and the ſound of drums and trumpets; but the badges of peace, as heralds, maces, the chancellor's purſe, and the ſword of ſtate, are here

unknown. The king ſits down to dinner with his queen, children, relations, and general officers of the army, till the round table be filled. The court marſhal inviting ſometimes one and ſometimes another to eat with his majeſty, till all have had their turns in that honour. A page in livery ſays grace before and after meat; for no chaplain appears here but in the pulpit. The attendants are one or two gentlemen, and the reſt livery ſervants. The kettle drums and trumpets which are ranged before the palace, proclaim aloud the very minute when the king ſits down to table; but the ceremony of the knee is not uſed to his majeſty.

Every winter, the ſnow is no ſooner firm enough to bear, than the Danes takes great delight in going in ſledges. The king and court firſt giving the example, and making ſeveral tours about the capital in great pomp, with kettle drums and trumpets; their ſledges drawn by horſes adorned with rich trappings, and harneſs full of ſmall bells. After the court hath thus opened the way, the burghers and others ride about the ſtreets all night, wrapped up in their fur gowns, with each his female in the ſledge with him.

What is moſt admirable with reſpect to Denmark are its laws, which are founded on equity, and are remarkable for their juſtice, perſpicuity, and brevity. Theſe are contained in one quarto volume wrote in the language of the country with ſuch plainneſs, that every man who can read is capable of underſtanding his own caſe, and pleading it too, if he pleaſes, without the aſſiſtance of either an attorney, or of counſel.

The common people in general, throughout all Denmark, live very mean; the food of the burghers and citizens being rye bread, ſalt-fiſh, ſtock-fiſh, excellent bacon, and very bad cheeſe; and the peaſants live on roots, white meats, and rye-bread; ſeldom taſting freſh fiſh, and ſcarce ever fleſh, unleſs on ſome extraordinary feſtivals, as on St. Martin's eve, when each family in Denmark never fails to make merry, and to have a roaſted gooſe for ſupper. However, the

tables of the rich are uſually well furniſhed; but the meat is generally lean. Wether mutton is very ſcarce and ſeldom good. Here are no pheaſants, woodcocks, rabbits, or fallow-deer; but you may ſometimes meet with a ſmall roe-buck in the market; but it is alſo generally lean: the hares are however good. Sea fiſh is ſcarce, and not good; but the river fiſh makes amends, here being moſt excellent carp, perch, and craw-fiſh. One cannot expect extraordinary fruit ſo far north, yet the gentry do not want ſuch as are very tolerable; and ſome of the nobility have melons, grapes, peaches, and all ſorts of ſalads very early, and in great perfection.

The people are fond of drinking; the liquors that are moſt in vogue with the great are Rheniſh wine, cherry brandy, and all ſorts of French wine. The poor people who are able to indulge themſelves, do it in bad beer, and Daniſh brandy.

The gentlemen and officers dreſs very ſplendidly after the French mode; but the winter dreſs of the ladies, which is Daniſh, is very convenient and becoming. The burghers, the ſervants, and even the peaſants are neat and cleanly; they love change of their ordinary white linen, which is here made cheap: the women employing their leiſure hours in ſpinning.

They are ſometimes contracted three, four or more years before marriage. The gentry give portions with their daughters: but the burghers and peaſants only give clothes, houſhould goods, and a great wedding dinner; which are all they part with till their death. Magnificent burials and monuments are much in requeſt with the nobility; and it is uſual to keep the body of a perſon of quality in a vault, or the chancel of ſome church, for ſeveral years together, till they have an opportunity to celebrate the funeral. The poorer ſort are buried in great thick cheſts; and in the towns there are about a dozen common mourners belonging to each pariſh, who are obliged to carry, and attend them to their graves.

It is difficult for ſtrangers to find conveniences of lodging or eating in Denmark; even in Copenhagen, there are few or no lodgings to be let in private houſes; and in the taverns, people muſt be content to eat and drink in a public room, into which any other company may enter, and eat at another table: unleſs a perſon pretends to higher matters than ordinary.

END OF VOLUME V.

CONTENTS OF THE FIFTH VOLUME.

The Travels of Richard Pococke, L. L. D. F. R. S. through Egypt, - - - - - - - - - - 1

A Journey to Palmyra, or Tedmor in the Deſart, by Mr. Robert Wood, - - - - - - - - - 135

A Deſcription of Aleppo, and the adjacent Parts, by Alexander Ruſſel, M. D. - - - - - - 159

The Travels of the Ambaſſadors of the Duke of Holſtein, into Muſcovy, Tartary, and Perſia, - - - 189

The Travels of J. Hanway, Eſq. through Ruſſia into Perſia, and back through Ruſſia, Germany, and Holland, - - - - - - - - - - - 333

An Account of Denmark, by the Lord Moleſworth. 471

Directions for placing the Plates in Vol. V.

	Page
View of the City of Alexandria, to face . . .	2
Two Coloſſal Statues, ...	76
The ancient City of Palmyra, ...	141
View of the City of Aleppo, ...	160
Tower of Horns at Iſpahan, ...	314
Pyramids of Heads, &c.	401